



KONICA MINOLTA

SERVICE MANUAL

FIELD SERVICE

---

# **bizhub**

## **200 / 250 / 350**

The **bizhub** 200 is available only for Inch area.

# FIELD SERVICE TOTAL CONTENTS

SAFETY AND IMPORTANT WARNING ITEMS .....	S-1
IMPORTANT NOTICE .....	S-1
DESCRIPTION ITEMS FOR DANGER, WARNING AND CAUTION .....	S-1
SAFETY WARNINGS .....	S-2
WARNING INDICATIONS ON THE MACHINE .....	S-17
MEASURES TO TAKE IN CASE OF AN ACCIDENT .....	S-20
Composition of the service manual .....	C-1
Notation of the service manual .....	C-2

## **bizhub 200/250/350 Main Unit**

General .....	1
Maintenance .....	7
Adjustment/Setting.....	111
Troubleshooting.....	221
Appendix.....	273

## **Duplex Unit/Switchback Unit**

General .....	1
Maintenance .....	3
Adjustment/Setting.....	7
Troubleshooting.....	11

## **Standard Controller**

General .....	1
Maintenance .....	3
Troubleshooting.....	5

## **FK-503**

General .....	1
Maintenance .....	5
Adjustment/Setting.....	11
Troubleshooting.....	161

## **DF-605**

General .....	1
Maintenance .....	5
Adjustment/Setting.....	17
Troubleshooting.....	27

## PC-102/PC-202

General .....	1
Maintenance .....	3
Adjustment/Setting .....	13
Troubleshooting .....	21

## PC-402

General .....	1
Maintenance .....	3
Adjustment/Setting .....	17
Troubleshooting .....	25

## JS-502

General .....	1
Maintenance .....	3
Adjustment/Setting .....	5

## FS-508/PU-501/OT-601

General .....	1
Maintenance .....	5
Adjustment/Setting .....	23
Troubleshooting .....	35

## MT-501

General .....	1
Maintenance .....	3
Adjustment/Setting .....	7
Troubleshooting .....	11

## SD-502

General .....	1
Maintenance .....	3
Adjustment/Setting .....	19
Troubleshooting .....	27

# SAFETY AND IMPORTANT WARNING ITEMS

Read carefully the Safety and Important Warning Items described below to understand them before doing service work.

## IMPORTANT NOTICE

Because of possible hazards to an inexperienced person servicing this product as well as the risk of damage to the product, KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. (hereafter called the KMBT) strongly recommends that all servicing be performed only by KMBT-trained service technicians.

Changes may have been made to this product to improve its performance after this Service Manual was printed. Accordingly, KMBT does not warrant, either explicitly or implicitly, that the information contained in this Service Manual is complete and accurate.

The user of this Service Manual must assume all risks of personal injury and/or damage to the product while servicing the product for which this Service Manual is intended.

Therefore, this Service Manual must be carefully read before doing service work both in the course of technical training and even after that, for performing maintenance and control of the product properly.

Keep this Service Manual also for future service.

## DESCRIPTION ITEMS FOR DANGER, WARNING AND CAUTION

In this Service Manual, each of three expressions “ **DANGER**”, “ **WARNING**”, and “ **CAUTION**” is defined as follows together with a symbol mark to be used in a limited meaning.

When servicing the product, the relevant works (disassembling, reassembling, adjustment, repair, maintenance, etc.) need to be conducted with utmost care.

-  **DANGER:** Action having a high possibility of suffering death or serious injury
-  **WARNING:** Action having a possibility of suffering death or serious injury
-  **CAUTION:** Action having a possibility of suffering a slight wound, medium trouble, and property damage

Symbols used for safety and important warning items are defined as follows:

	<b>:Precaution when servicing the product.</b>		<b>General precaution</b>		<b>Electric hazard</b>		<b>High temperature</b>
	<b>:Prohibition when servicing the product.</b>		<b>General prohibition</b>		<b>Do not touch with wet hand</b>		<b>Do not disassemble</b>
	<b>:Direction when servicing the product.</b>		<b>General instruction</b>		<b>Unplug</b>		<b>Ground/Earth</b>

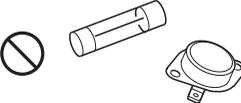
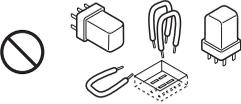
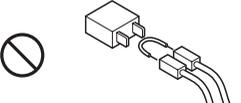
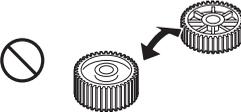
## SAFETY WARNINGS

### [1] MODIFICATIONS NOT AUTHORIZED BY KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC.

KONICA MINOLTA brand products are renowned for their high reliability. This reliability is achieved through high-quality design and a solid service network. Product design is a highly complicated and delicate process where numerous mechanical, physical, and electrical aspects have to be taken into consideration, with the aim of arriving at proper tolerances and safety factors. For this reason, unauthorized modifications involve a high risk of degradation in performance and safety. Such modifications are therefore strictly prohibited. The points listed below are not exhaustive, but they illustrate the reasoning behind this policy.

#### Prohibited Actions

#### ⚠ DANGER

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Using any cables or power cord not specified by KMBT.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Using any fuse or thermostat not specified by KMBT. Safety will not be assured, leading to a risk of fire and injury.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disabling fuse functions or bridging fuse terminals with wire, metal clips, solder or similar object.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disabling relay functions (such as wedging paper between relay contacts)</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disabling safety functions (interlocks, safety circuits, etc.) Safety will not be assured, leading to a risk of fire and injury.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Making any modification to the product unless instructed by KMBT</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Using parts not specified by KMBT</li> </ul>	

## [2] POWER PLUG SELECTION

In some countries or areas, the power plug provided with the product may not fit wall outlet used in the area. In that case, it is obligation of customer engineer (hereafter called the CE) to attach appropriate power plug or power cord set in order to connect the product to the supply.

### Power Cord Set or Power Plug

#### WARNING

- Use power supply cord set which meets the following criteria:
  - provided with a plug having configuration intended for the connection to wall outlet appropriate for the product's rated voltage and current, and
  - the plug has pin/terminal(s) for grounding, and
  - provided with three-conductor cable having enough current capacity, and
  - the cord set meets regulatory requirements for the area.
 Use of inadequate cord set leads to fire or electric shock.



- Attach power plug which meets the following criteria:
  - having configuration intended for the connection to wall outlet appropriate for the product's rated voltage and current, and
  - the plug has pin/terminal(s) for grounding, and
  - meets regulatory requirements for the area.
 Use of inadequate cord set leads to the product connecting to inadequate power supply (voltage, current capacity, grounding), and may result in fire or electric shock.



- Conductors in the power cable must be connected to terminals of the plug according to the following order:
  - Black or Brown: L (line)
  - White or Light Blue: N (neutral)
  - Green/Yellow: PE (earth)



Wrong connection may cancel safeguards within the product, and results in fire or electric shock.

### [3] CHECKPOINTS WHEN PERFORMING ON-SITE SERVICE

KONICA MINOLTA brand products are extensively tested before shipping, to ensure that all applicable safety standards are met, in order to protect the customer and customer engineer (hereafter called the CE) from the risk of injury. However, in daily use, any electrical equipment may be subject to parts wear and eventual failure. In order to maintain safety and reliability, the CE must perform regular safety checks.

#### 1. Power Supply

## Connection to Power Supply

### WARNING

- Check that mains voltage is as specified.

Connection to wrong voltage supply may result in fire or electric shock.



- Connect power plug directly into wall outlet having same configuration as the plug.

Use of an adapter leads to the product connecting to inadequate power supply (voltage, current capacity, grounding), and may result in fire or electric shock.

If proper wall outlet is not available, advise the customer to contact qualified electrician for the installation.



- Plug the power cord into the dedicated wall outlet with a capacity greater than the maximum power consumption.

If excessive current flows in the wall outlet, fire may result.



- If two or more power cords can be plugged into the wall outlet, the total load must not exceed the rating of the wall outlet.

If excessive current flows in the wall outlet, fire may result.



- Make sure the power cord is plugged in the wall outlet securely.

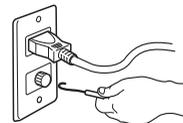
Contact problems may lead to increased resistance, overheating, and the risk of fire.



- Check whether the product is grounded properly.

If current leakage occurs in an ungrounded product, you may suffer electric shock while operating the product.

Connect power plug to grounded wall outlet.



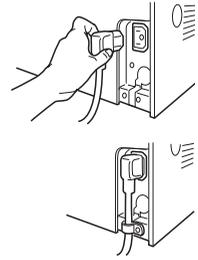
## Power Plug and Cord

### WARNING

- When using the power cord set (inlet type) that came with this product, make sure the connector is securely inserted in the inlet of the product.

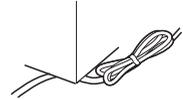
When securing measure is provided, secure the cord with the fixture properly.

If the power cord (inlet type) is not connected to the product securely, a contact problem may lead to increased resistance, overheating, and risk of fire.



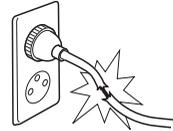
- Check whether the power cord is not stepped on or pinched by a table and so on.

Overheating may occur there, leading to a risk of fire.



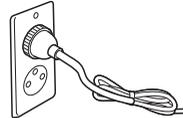
- Check whether the power cord is damaged. Check whether the sheath is damaged.

If the power plug, cord, or sheath is damaged, replace with a new power cord (with plug and connector on each end) specified by KMBT. Using the damaged power cord may result in fire or electric shock.



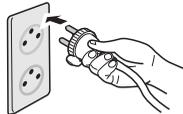
- Do not bundle or tie the power cord.

Overheating may occur there, leading to a risk of fire.



- Check whether dust is collected around the power plug and wall outlet.

Using the power plug and wall outlet without removing dust may result in fire.



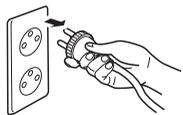
- Do not insert the power plug into the wall outlet with a wet hand.

The risk of electric shock exists.



- When unplugging the power cord, grasp the plug, not the cable.

The cable may be broken, leading to a risk of fire and electric shock.

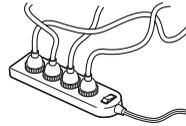


## Wiring

### WARNING

- Never use multi-plug adapters to plug multiple power cords in the same outlet.

If used, the risk of fire exists.



- When an extension cord is required, use a specified one. Current that can flow in the extension cord is limited, so using a too long extension cord may result in fire.

Do not use an extension cable reel with the cable taken up. Fire may result.



## 2. Installation Requirements

### Prohibited Installation Places

#### WARNING

- Do not place the product near flammable materials or volatile materials that may catch fire.

A risk of fire exists.



- Do not place the product in a place exposed to water such as rain.

A risk of fire and electric shock exists.

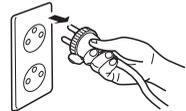


### When not Using the Product for a long time

#### WARNING

- When the product is not used over an extended period of time (holidays, etc.), switch it off and unplug the power cord.

Dust collected around the power plug and outlet may cause fire.



## Ventilation

### ⚠ CAUTION

- The product generates ozone gas during operation, but it will not be harmful to the human body.

If a bad smell of ozone is present in the following cases, ventilate the room.

- a. When the product is used in a poorly ventilated room
- b. When taking a lot of copies
- c. When using multiple products at the same time



## Stability

### ⚠ CAUTION

- Be sure to lock the caster stoppers.

In the case of an earthquake and so on, the product may slide, leading to a injury.



## Inspection before Servicing

### ⚠ CAUTION

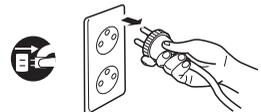
- Before conducting an inspection, read all relevant documentation (service manual, technical notices, etc.) and proceed with the inspection following the prescribed procedure, using only the prescribed tools. Do not make any adjustment not described in the documentation.

If the prescribed procedure or tool is not used, the product may break and a risk of injury or fire exists.



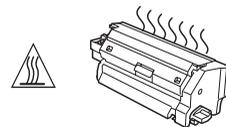
- Before conducting an inspection, be sure to disconnect the power plugs from the product and options.

When the power plug is inserted in the wall outlet, some units are still powered even if the POWER switch is turned OFF. A risk of electric shock exists.



- The area around the fixing unit is hot.

You may get burnt.



## Work Performed with the Product Powered On

### WARNING

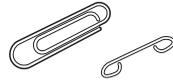
- Take every care when making adjustments or performing an operation check with the product powered.  
If you make adjustments or perform an operation check with the external cover detached, you may touch live or high-voltage parts or you may be caught in moving gears or the timing belt, leading to a risk of injury.
- Take every care when servicing with the external cover detached.  
High-voltage exists around the drum unit. A risk of electric shock exists.



## Safety Checkpoints

### WARNING

- Check the exterior and frame for edges, burrs, and other damage.  
The user or CE may be injured.
- Do not allow any metal parts such as clips, staples, and screws to fall into the product.  
They can short internal circuits and cause electric shock or fire.
- Check wiring for squeezing and any other damage.  
Current can leak, leading to a risk of electric shock or fire.
- Carefully remove all toner remnants and dust from electrical parts and electrode units such as a charging corona unit.  
Current can leak, leading to a risk of product trouble or fire.
- Check high-voltage cables and sheaths for any damage.  
Current can leak, leading to a risk of electric shock or fire.



## Safety Checkpoints

### WARNING

- Check electrode units such as a charging corona unit for deterioration and sign of leakage.

Current can leak, leading to a risk of trouble or fire.



- Before disassembling or adjusting the write unit (P/H unit) incorporating a laser, make sure that the power cord has been disconnected.

The laser light can enter your eye, leading to a risk of loss of eyesight.



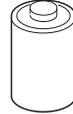
- Do not remove the cover of the write unit. Do not supply power with the write unit shifted from the specified mounting position.

The laser light can enter your eye, leading to a risk of loss of eyesight.



- When replacing a lithium battery, replace it with a new lithium battery specified in the Parts Guide Manual. Dispose of the used lithium battery using the method specified by local authority.

Improper replacement can cause explosion.



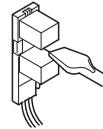
- After replacing a part to which AC voltage is applied (e.g., optical lamp and fixing lamp), be sure to check the installation state.

A risk of fire exists.



- Check the interlock switch and actuator for loosening and check whether the interlock functions properly.

If the interlock does not function, you may receive an electric shock or be injured when you insert your hand in the product (e.g., for clearing paper jam).



- Make sure the wiring cannot come into contact with sharp edges, burrs, or other pointed parts.

Current can leak, leading to a risk of electric shock or fire.



## Safety Checkpoints

### WARNING

- Make sure that all screws, components, wiring, connectors, etc. that were removed for safety check and maintenance have been reinstalled in the original location. (Pay special attention to forgotten connectors, pinched cables, forgotten screws, etc.)



× pcs?



A risk of product trouble, electric shock, and fire exists.

## Handling of Consumables

### WARNING

- Toner and developer are not harmful substances, but care must be taken not to breathe excessive amounts or let the substances come into contact with eyes, etc. It may be stimulative.

If the substances get in the eye, rinse with plenty of water immediately. When symptoms are noticeable, consult a physician.



- Never throw the used cartridge and toner into fire.

You may be burned due to dust explosion.

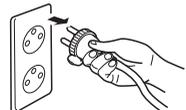


## Handling of Service Materials

### CAUTION

- Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.

Drum cleaner (isopropyl alcohol) and roller cleaner (acetone-based) are highly flammable and must be handled with care. A risk of fire exists.



- Do not replace the cover or turn the product ON before any solvent remnants on the cleaned parts have fully evaporated.

A risk of fire exists.



## Handling of Service Materials

### CAUTION

- Use only a small amount of cleaner at a time and take care not to spill any liquid. If this happens, immediately wipe it off.

A risk of fire exists.



- When using any solvent, ventilate the room well.  
Breathing large quantities of organic solvents can lead to discomfort.



## [4] Used Batteries Precautions

ALL Areas

### CAUTION

Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced.  
Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.  
Dispose of used batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Germany

### VORSICHT!

Explosionsgefahr bei unsachgemäßem Austausch der Batterie.  
Ersatz nur durch denselben oder einen vom Hersteller empfohlenen gleichwertigen Typ.  
Entsorgung gebrauchter Batterien nach Angaben des Herstellers.

France

### ATTENTION

Il y a danger d'explosion s'il y a remplacement incorrect de la batterie.  
Remplacer uniquement avec une batterie du même type ou d'un type équivalent recommandé par le constructeur.  
Mettre au rebut les batteries usagées conformément aux instructions du fabricant.

Denmark

### ADVARSEL!

Lithiumbatteri - Eksplosionsfare ved fejlagtig håndtering.  
Udskiftning må kun ske med batteri af samme fabrikat og type.  
Levér det brugte batteri tilbage til leverandøren.

Finland, Sweden

### VAROITUS

Paristo voi räjähtää, jos se on virheellisesti asennettu.  
Vaihda paristo ainoastaan laitevalmistajan suosittelemaan tyyppiin.  
Hävitätä käytetty paristo valmistajan ohjeiden mukaisesti.

### VARNING

Explosionsfara vid felaktigt batteribyte.  
Använd samma batterityp eller en ekvivalent typ som rekommenderas av apparattillverkaren.  
Kassera använt batteri enligt fabrikantens instruktion.

Norway

### ADVARSEL

Eksplosjonsfare ved feilaktig skifte av batteri.  
Benytt samme batteritype eller en tilsvarende type anbefalt av apparatfabrikanten.  
Brukte batterier kasseres i henhold til fabrikantens instruksjoner.

## [5] Laser Safety

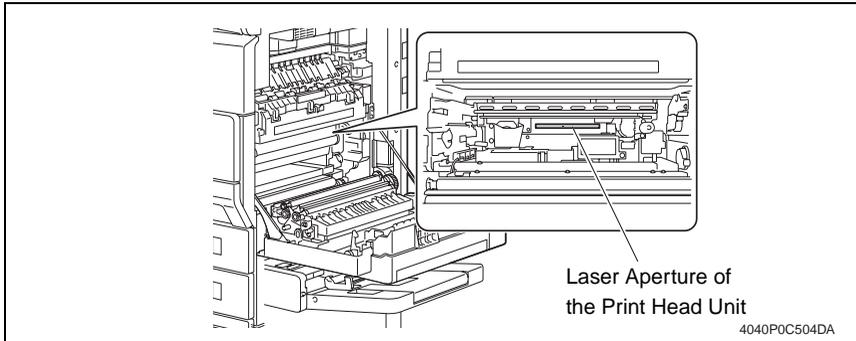
- This is a digital machine certified as a class 1 laser product. There is no possibility of danger from a laser, provided the machine is serviced according to the instruction in this manual.

### 5.1 Internal Laser Radiation

Semiconductor laser	
Maximum average radiation power(*)	28.9 $\mu$ W
Wavelength	770-795 nm

\*:Laser Aperture of the Print Head Unit

- This product employs a Class 3b laser diode that emits an invisible laser beam. The laser diode and the scanning polygon mirror are incorporated in the print head unit.
- The print head unit is **NOT A FIELD SERVICE ITEM**. Therefore, the print head unit should not be opened under any circumstances.



**the U.S.A., Canada (CDRH Regulation)**

- This machine is certified as a Class I Laser product under Radiation Performance Standard according to the Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act of 1990. Compliance is mandatory for Laser products marketed in the United States and is reported to the Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS). This means that the device does not produce hazardous laser radiation.
- The label shown to page S-16 indicates compliance with the CDRH regulations and must be attached to laser products marketed in the United States.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.**

Semiconductor laser	
Maximum power of the laser diode	5 mW
Wavelength	770-795 nm

**All Areas****⚠ CAUTION**

- **Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.**

Semiconductor laser	
Maximum power of the laser diode	5 mW
Wavelength	770-795 nm

**Denmark****⚠ ADVARSEL**

- **Usynlig Laserstråling ved åbning, når sikkerhedsafbrydere er ude af funktion. Undgå udsættelse for stråling. Klasse 1 laser produkt der opfylder IEC60825 sikkerheds kravene.**

Halvlederlaser	
Laserdiodens højeste styrke	5 mW
Bølgelængden	770-795 nm

## Finland, Sweden

⚠ **VARO!**

- Avattaessa ja suojalukitus ohitettaessa olet alttiina näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Älä katso säteeseen.

<b>LOUKAN 1 LASERLAITE</b> <b>KLASS 1 LASER APPARAT</b>
--

⚠ **VAROITUS!**

- Laitteen Käyttäminen muulla kuin tässä käyttöohjeessa mainitulla tavalla saattaa altistaa käyttäjän turvallisuusluokan 1 ylittävälle näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle.

Puolijohdelaser	
Laserdiodin suurin teho	5 mW
Aallonpituus	770-795 nm

⚠ **WARNING!**

- Om apparaten används på annat sätt än i denna bruksanvisning specificerats, kan användaren utsättas för osynlig laserstrålning, som överskrider gränsen för laserklass 1.

Halvledarlaser	
Den maximala effekten för laserdioden	5 mW
Våglängden	770-795 nm

⚠ **WARNING!**

- Osynlig laserstrålning när denna del är öppnad och spärren är urkopplad. Betrakta ej strålen.

## Norway

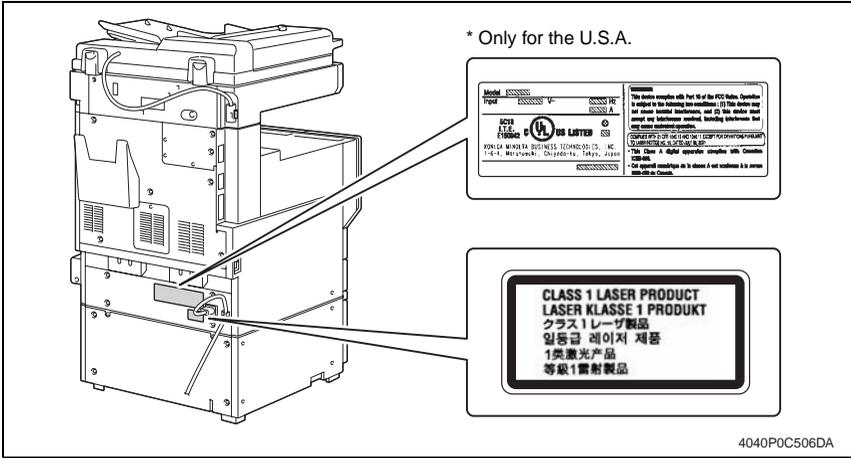
⚠ **ADVERSEL**

- Dersom apparatet brukes på annen måte enn spesifisert i denne bruksanvisning, kan brukeren utsettes for usynlig laserstrålning som overskrider grensen for laser klass 1.

Halvleder laser	
Maksimal effekt till laserdiode	5 mW
Bølgelengde	770-795 nm

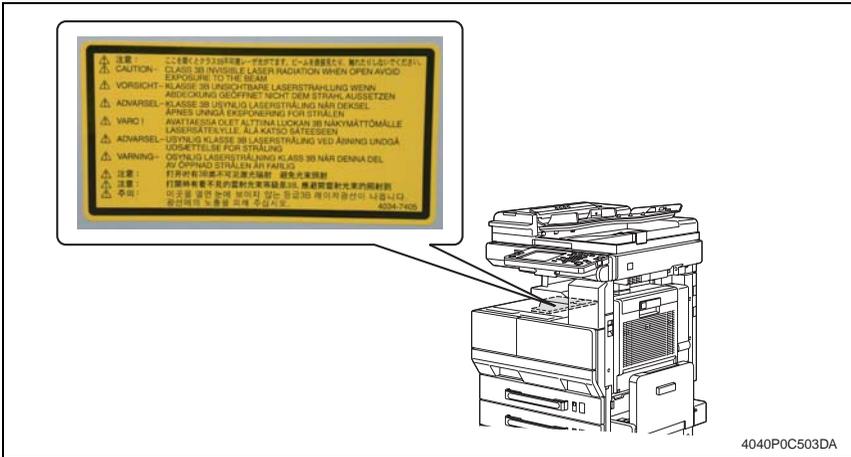
## 5.2 Laser Safety Label

- A laser safety labels is attached to the outside of the machine as shown below.



## 5.3 Laser Caution Label

- A laser caution label is attached to the inside of the machine as shown below.



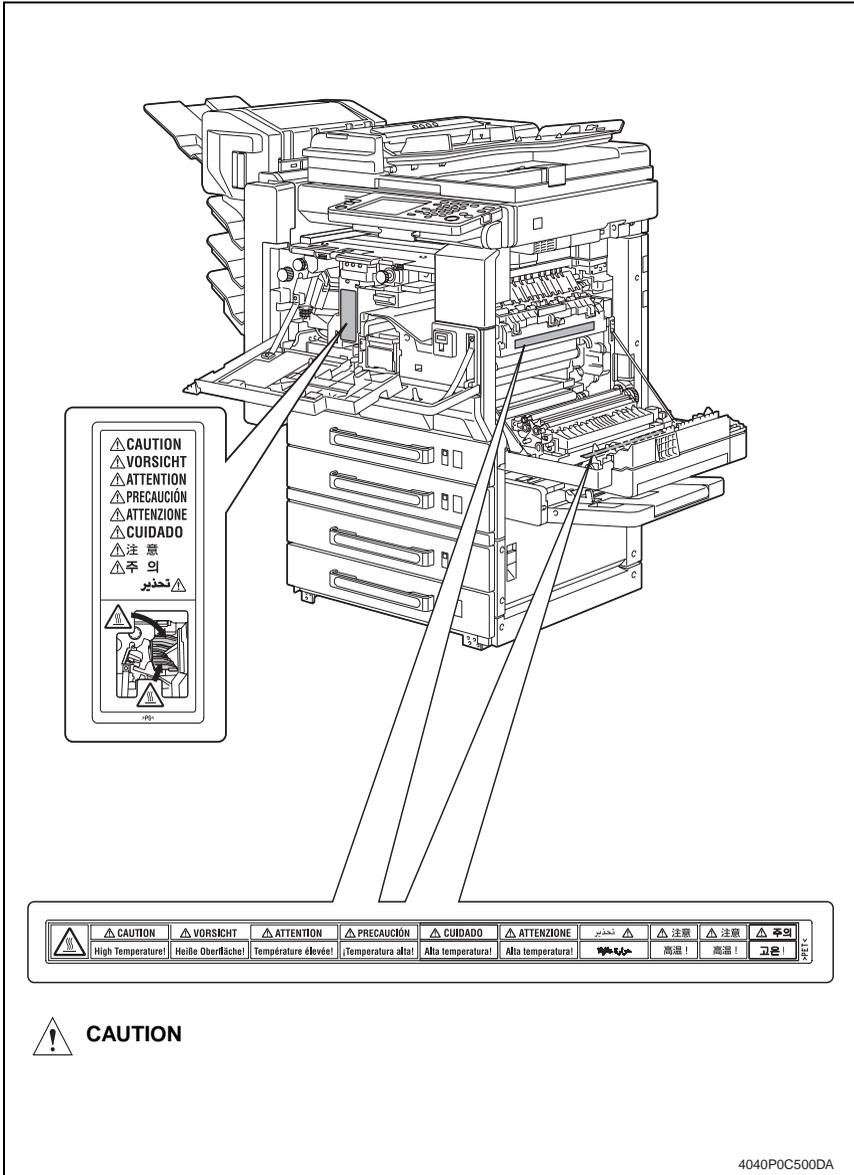
## 5.4 Precautions For Handling The Laser Equipment

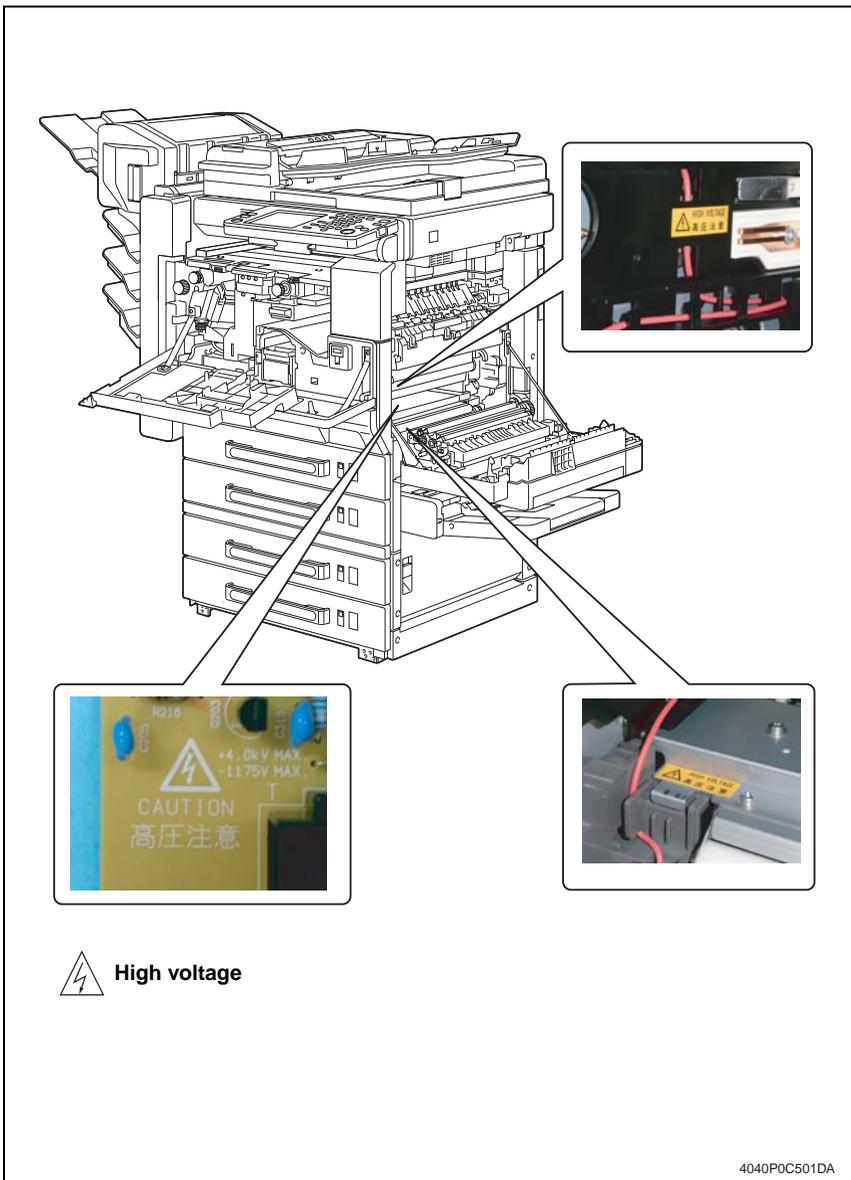
- When laser protective goggles are to be used, select ones with a lens conforming to the above specifications.
- When a disassembly job needs to be performed in the laser beam path, such as when working around the printerhead and PC Drum, be sure first to turn the copier OFF.
- If the job requires that the copier be left ON, take off your watch and ring and wear laser protective goggles.
- A highly reflective tool can be dangerous if it is brought into the laser beam path. Use utmost care when handling tools on the user's premises.

## WARNING INDICATIONS ON THE MACHINE

Caution labels shown are attached in some areas on/in the machine.

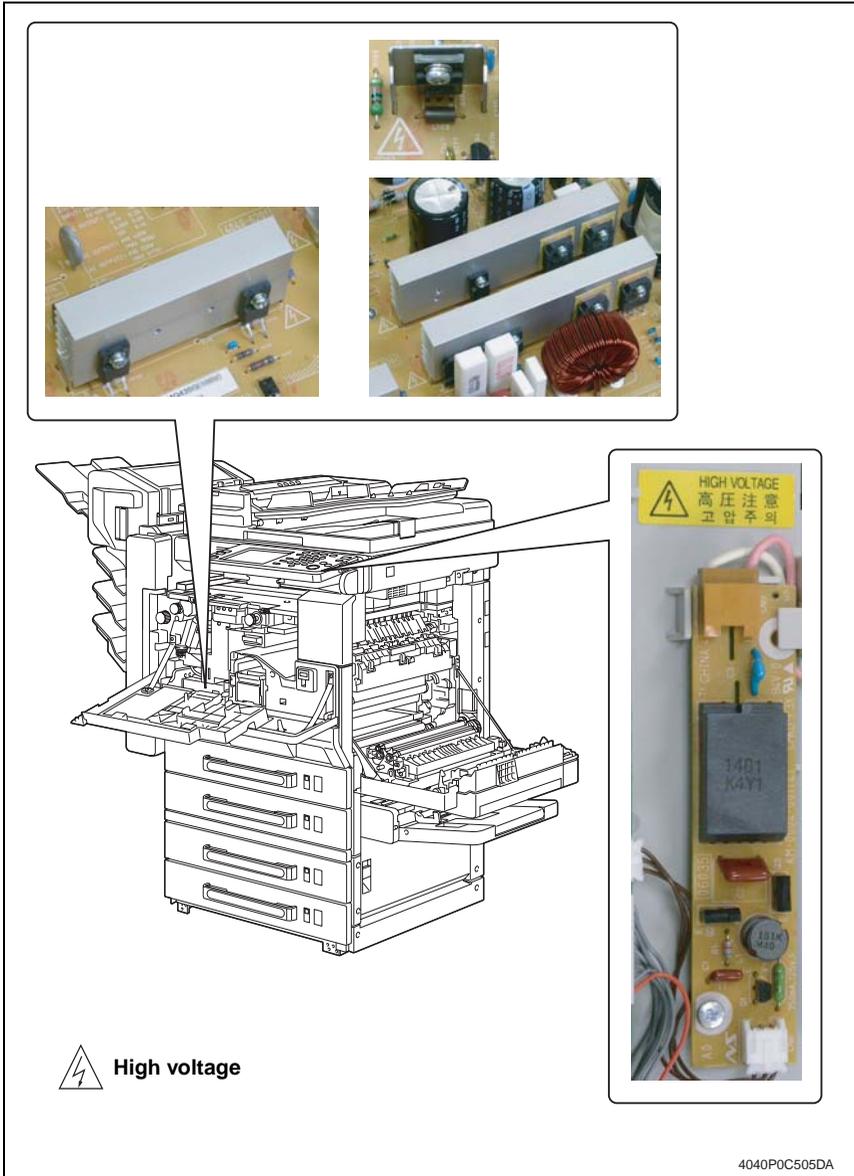
When accessing these areas for maintenance, repair, or adjustment, special care should be taken to avoid burns and electric shock.





 **High voltage**

4040P0C501DA



 **CAUTION:**

- You may be burned or injured if you touch any area that you are advised not to touch by any caution label. Do not remove caution labels. If any caution label has come off or soiled and therefore the caution cannot be read, contact our Service Office.

## **MEASURES TO TAKE IN CASE OF AN ACCIDENT**

1. If an accident has occurred, the distributor who has been notified first must immediately take emergency measures to provide relief to affected persons and to prevent further damage.
2. If a report of a serious accident has been received from a customer, an on-site evaluation must be carried out quickly and KMBT must be notified.
3. To determine the cause of the accident, conditions and materials must be recorded through direct on-site checks, in accordance with instructions issued by KMBT.
4. For reports and measures concerning serious accidents, follow the regulations specified by every distributor.

# Composition of the service manual

This service manual consists of Theory of Operation section and Field Service section to explain the main machine and its corresponding options.

Theory of Operation section gives, as information for the CE to get a full understanding of the product, a rough outline of the object and role of each function, the relationship between the electrical system and the mechanical system, and the timing of operation of each part.

Field Service section gives, as information required by the CE at the site (or at the customer's premise), a rough outline of the service schedule and its details, maintenance steps, the object and role of each adjustment, error codes and supplementary information.

The basic configuration of each section is as follows. However some options may not be applied to the following configuration.

## <Theory of Operation section>

OUTLINE:	Explanation of system configuration, product specifications, unit configuration, and paper path
COMPOSITION/OPERATION:	Explanation of configuration of each unit, operating system, and control system

## <Field service section>

GENERAL:	Explanation of system configuration, and product specifications
MAINTENANCE:	Explanation of service schedule, maintenance steps, service tools, removal/reinstallation methods of major parts, and firmware version up method etc.
ADJUSTMENT/SETTING:	Explanation of utility mode, service mode, and mechanical adjustment etc.
TROUBLESHOOTING:	Explanation of lists of jam codes and error codes, and their countermeasures etc.
APPENDIX:	Parts layout drawings, connector layout drawings, timing chart, overall layout drawing are attached.

# Notation of the service manual

## A. Product name

In this manual, each of the products is described as follows:

- |                           |                              |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| (1) IC board:             | Standard printer             |
| (2) bizhub 200/250/350:   | Main body                    |
| (3) Microsoft Windows 95: | Windows 95                   |
| Microsoft Windows 98:     | Windows 98                   |
| Microsoft Windows Me:     | Windows Me                   |
| Microsoft Windows NT 4.0: | Windows NT 4.0 or Windows NT |
| Microsoft Windows 2000:   | Windows 2000                 |
| Microsoft Windows XP:     | Windows XP                   |

When the description is made in combination of the OS's mentioned above:

- Windows 95/98/Me
- Windows NT 4.0/2000
- Windows NT/2000/XP
- Windows 95/98/Me/ NT/2000/XP

## B. Brand name

The company names and product names mentioned in this manual are the brand name or the registered trademark of each company.



KONICA MINOLTA

**SERVICE MANUAL**

FIELD SERVICE

---

**bizhub** Main Unit  
200 / 250 / 350

# Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  to the left of the revised section.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.

## NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2005/08	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

# CONTENTS

## bizhub 200/250/350 Main Unit

### General

1.	System configuration.....	1
2.	Product specifications .....	3
3.	Built-in Controllers.....	5

### Maintenance

4.	Periodical check .....	7
4.1	Service schedule .....	7
4.1.1	bizhub 350 .....	7
4.1.2	bizhub 250 .....	7
4.1.3	bizhub 200 .....	7
4.1.4	Option .....	8
4.2	Maintenance items.....	8
4.2.1	bizhub 350 .....	8
4.2.2	bizhub 250 .....	10
4.2.3	bizhub 200 .....	13
4.3	Maintenance parts.....	15
4.3.1	Replacement parts.....	15
4.3.2	Cleaning parts.....	16
4.4	Concept of parts life.....	17
4.5	Maintenance procedure (Periodical check parts) .....	18
4.5.1	Replacing the Bypass Tray Feed Roller .....	18
4.5.2	Replacing the Bypass Tray Separation Roller Assy .....	19
4.5.3	Replacing the Tray 1 Feed Roller .....	20
4.5.4	Replacing the Tray 1 Pick-up Roller .....	21
4.5.5	Replacing the Tray 1 Separation Roller Assy.....	23
4.5.6	Replacing the Tray 2 Feed Roller .....	25
4.5.7	Replacing the Tray 2 Pick-up Roller .....	26
4.5.8	Replacing the Tray 2 Separation Roller.....	28
4.5.9	Replacing of the Registration Roller Bearings and Registration Roller Gears 1, 2.....	30
4.5.10	Cleaning of the Paper Dust Remover.....	31
4.5.11	Replacing of the Toner Filter (Developing Unit).....	32
4.5.12	Replacing of the Toner Filter (Main Unit).....	33

bizhub 200/250/350

General

Maintenance

Adjustment / Setting

Troubleshooting

Appendix

	4.5.13	Replacement of the Ozone Filter .....	33
	4.5.14	Replacement of the Developer .....	34
	4.6	Replacing the unit.....	37
	4.6.1	Replacement of the Fusing Unit .....	37
	4.6.2	Replacement of the Transfer Roller Unit .....	38
	4.6.3	Replacement of the Photo Conductor Unit .....	39
	4.6.4	Replacement of the Developing Unit .....	40
	5.	Service tool .....	41
	5.1	CE Tool list .....	41
	5.2	Copy materials .....	41
	5.2.1	Developer.....	41
	5.2.2	Photo Conductor Unit .....	41
	5.2.3	Toner Bottle.....	41
	6.	Firmware upgrade .....	42
	6.1	Preparations for Firmware rewriting .....	42
	6.1.1	Service environment .....	42
	6.1.2	Writing into the Compact flash.....	42
	6.1.3	Checking ROM version .....	42
	6.2	Firmware rewriting.....	42
	6.2.1	MSC.....	42
	6.2.2	Engine.....	44
	7.	Other .....	46
	7.1	Disassembly/Adjustment prohibited items .....	46
	7.2	Disassembly/Assembly/Cleaning list (Other parts) .....	47
	7.2.1	Disassembly/Assembly parts list .....	47
	7.2.2	Cleaning parts list.....	48
	7.3	Disassembly/Assembly procedure .....	49
	7.3.1	IR Upper Left Cover/Original Scanning Glass/Front Holding Bracket/ Original Glass .....	49
	7.3.2	Lower Rear Cover/Lower Right Rear Cover/Tray Rear Cover.....	49
	7.3.3	Upper Rear Cover.....	50
	7.3.4	Rear Right Cover/Front Right Cover .....	50
	7.3.5	IR Right Cover/Rear Cover .....	51
	7.3.6	Front Door.....	51
	7.3.7	Paper Output Cover/Lower Front Cover.....	52
	7.3.8	Upper Front Cover/Front Cover.....	53
	7.3.9	IR Left Cover/Rear Left Cover/Left Cover .....	54
	7.3.10	Rear Manual Bypass Cover/Front Manual Bypass Cover/ Lower Right Cover .....	55

7.3.11	Control Panel .....	56
7.3.12	Tray 1 .....	56
7.3.13	Tray 2 .....	57
7.3.14	Mechanical Control Board Cover .....	57
7.3.15	FD Paper Size Board 1 .....	58
7.3.16	FD Paper Size Board 2 .....	59
7.3.17	Power Supply Unit.....	60
7.3.18	High Voltage Unit .....	61
7.3.19	MFBS Board .....	62
7.3.20	Inverter Board .....	63
7.3.21	BCRS Board .....	64
7.3.22	CCD Unit.....	65
7.3.23	Operation Board.....	69
7.3.24	Manual Bypass Unit .....	71
7.3.25	PH Unit.....	71
7.3.26	Toner Hopper Unit.....	74
7.3.27	Toner Replenishing Drive Unit.....	74
7.3.28	Duplex Unit.....	76
7.3.29	Switch Back Unit .....	76
7.3.30	Scanner Motor .....	77
7.3.31	Exposure Unit .....	78
7.3.32	Exposure Lamp .....	79
7.3.33	Scanner Drive Cables .....	80
7.3.34	Main Motor .....	85
7.3.35	IU Motor .....	85
7.3.36	Fusing Unit Cooling Fan Motor .....	86
7.3.37	Toner Suction Fan Motor .....	86
7.3.38	Temperature/humidity Sensor .....	87
7.3.39	ATDC Sensor .....	87
7.3.40	Thermistor.....	89
7.3.41	Paper Exit Roll 1 .....	91
7.3.42	Paper Exit Roll 2 .....	91
7.3.43	Separation Claw.....	92
7.4	Cleaning procedure .....	94
7.4.1	Manual Bypass Feed Roller .....	94
7.4.2	Manual Bypass Separation Roller.....	94
7.4.3	Tray 1 Feed Roller .....	95

bizhub 200/250/350

General

Maintenance

Adjustment / Setting

Troubleshooting

Appendix

bizhub 200/250/350	7.4.4	Tray 1 Pick-up Roller.....	96
	7.4.5	Tray 1 Separation Roller .....	97
	7.4.6	Tray 2 Feed Roller.....	98
	7.4.7	Tray 2 Pick-up Roller.....	98
	7.4.8	Tray 2 Separation Roller .....	99
	7.4.9	Registration Roller .....	100
	7.4.10	Paper Dust Remover .....	100
	7.4.11	Transport Roller .....	100
	7.4.12	Scanner Rails .....	101
	7.4.13	Bushings .....	101
	7.4.14	Mirrors.....	101
	7.4.15	Lens .....	102
	7.4.16	Original Scanning Glass .....	102
	7.4.17	Original Glass .....	102
	7.4.18	Charge Neutralizing Plate.....	103
	7.4.19	Ds Collar .....	103
	7.5	Mount Kit MK-709.....	105
	7.6	Option counter.....	106
	7.6.1	Installation method for the Key Counter.....	106
7.7	Original Size Detecting Sensors.....	108	
7.7.1	Original Size Detecting Sensor Layout .....	108	
7.7.2	Mounting of the Original Size Detecting Sensors (Option) .....	109	
7.8	EEPROM.....	110	
7.8.1	Remounting of the EEPROM.....	110	

## Adjustment/Setting

Troubleshooting	8.	How to use the adjustment section .....	111
	9.	Utility/Counter Mode .....	112
	9.1	Utility/Counter Mode function tree .....	112
	9.2	Utility/Counter Mode function setting procedure .....	116
	9.2.1	Procedure .....	116
	9.2.2	Exiting.....	116
	9.2.3	Changing the setting value in Utility Mode functions .....	116
	9.3	Settings in the User Setting.....	117
	9.3.1	User's Choice 1/6.....	117
	9.3.2	User's Choice 2/6.....	118
	9.3.3	User's Choice 3/6.....	119
	9.3.4	User's Choice 4/6.....	120

9.3.5	User's Choice 5/6.....	121
9.3.6	User's Choice 6/6.....	123
9.3.7	Store Overlay .....	124
9.4	Settings in the User Management .....	125
9.4.1	Confirmation Beep .....	125
9.4.2	Alarm Volume.....	125
9.4.3	Job Complete Beep .....	125
9.4.4	Panel Cleaning.....	125
9.4.5	Dehumidify .....	125
9.4.6	Toner Supply .....	126
9.5	Settings in the Admin. Management.....	127
9.5.1	Initial Setting .....	127
9.5.2	Admin. Set .....	127
9.5.3	Account/User Auth. ....	128
9.5.4	Call Remote Center .....	130
9.5.5	Network Setting.....	130
9.5.6	LDAP Setting.....	135
9.5.7	Frame Type Set.....	137
9.5.8	Prefix/Suffix Settings.....	138
9.5.9	Printer Setting .....	139
9.5.10	Software SW .....	139
9.5.11	Ping.....	139
9.5.12	Delete Job.....	139
9.5.13	SSL/TLS.....	139
9.6	Reports.....	140
9.6.1	TX Report.....	140
9.6.2	RX Report .....	140
9.6.3	One-Touch List.....	140
9.6.4	Mail Program List .....	140
9.7	Settings in the Printer Setting .....	141
9.7.1	MFP Set .....	141
9.7.2	Default Set .....	141
9.7.3	PDL Set.....	143
9.7.4	Test Print.....	144
9.8	Check Detail .....	144
10.	Adjustment item list .....	146
11.	Tech. Rep. Mode .....	148
11.1	Tech. Rep. Mode function setting procedure .....	148

	11.2	Tech. Rep. Mode function tree.....	149
	11.3	Settings in the Tech. Rep. Choice .....	151
	11.3.1	System Set .....	151
	11.3.2	Printer .....	153
	11.3.3	Sheet-through-ADF.....	155
	11.3.4	The amount of Center Erase .....	156
	11.3.5	Orientation Change.....	156
	11.3.6	Finisher.....	156
	11.3.7	Trail Erase (Dup).....	156
	11.4	Table of Temperatures for Adjusting the Fusing Temperature .....	157
	11.4.1	Standard paper.....	157
	11.4.2	Special Paper.....	158
	11.4.3	OHP.....	158
	11.4.4	Thin Paper .....	158
	11.5	Settings in the System Input.....	159
	11.5.1	LCT Paper Size.....	159
	11.5.2	Change Fixed Zoom .....	159
	11.5.3	Machine Configuration.....	159
	11.5.4	Technical Memo.....	159
	11.5.5	Hard Disk.....	159
	11.5.6	Original Size Detecting Option.....	160
	11.6	Settings in the Administrator # Initialize.....	160
	11.7	Settings in the Counter.....	160
	11.7.1	Checking the counter reading.....	160
	11.7.2	Clearing readings of all counters at once .....	160
	11.7.3	Clearing the reading of a specific counter .....	160
	11.7.4	Paper .....	160
	11.7.5	Jam Counter .....	161
	11.7.6	Special Parts Counter.....	161
	11.7.7	Service Call Counter.....	161
	11.7.8	Application Counter .....	162
	11.7.9	Maintenance Counter .....	162
	11.8	Settings in the Function.....	162
	11.8.1	F1.....	162
	11.8.2	F2.....	162
	11.8.3	F7-1 .....	162
	11.8.4	F7-2 .....	163
	11.8.5	F8.....	163

11.8.6	F12 .....	163
11.8.7	Hard Disk Format .....	163
11.8.8	FD .....	164
11.8.9	FC .....	164
11.8.10	Org. Width Detect Adjust .....	164
11.8.11	FW Download.....	164
11.9	I/O Check.....	165
11.9.1	Electrical Components Check Procedure Through Input Data Check .....	165
11.9.2	I/O Check Screens .....	166
11.9.3	I/O Check List.....	168
11.10	Settings in the Operation Check .....	176
11.10.1	ADF .....	176
11.10.2	Exp. Lamp Check .....	176
11.10.3	Scanner.....	176
11.11	CS Remote Care .....	177
11.11.1	Outlines.....	177
11.11.2	Setting Up the CS Remote Care .....	177
11.11.3	Software SW setting for CS Remote Care .....	180
11.11.4	Setup confirmation .....	185
11.11.5	Calling the Maintenance .....	185
11.11.6	Calling the Center from the Administrator .....	185
11.11.7	Checking the transmission log .....	185
11.11.8	Detail on settings .....	186
11.11.9	List of the CS Remote Care error code.....	191
11.11.10	Troubleshooting for CS Remote Care .....	195
11.12	ROM Version .....	196
11.13	Level History .....	196
12.	Counters.....	197
12.1	Counters Function Setting Procedure.....	197
12.1.1	Procedure .....	197
12.1.2	Exiting .....	197
12.2	Counters Function Tree .....	197
12.3	Settings in the Counters .....	198
12.3.1	Total Counter.....	198
12.3.2	Large Size Counter .....	198
12.3.3	Copy Kit Counter.....	198
12.3.4	Copy Kit.....	199
12.3.5	Plug-In Counter .....	199

	12.3.6	Key Counter .....	199
	12.3.7	Vendor Mode .....	199
	13.	Service Security Mode .....	200
	13.1	Service Security Mode Function Setting Procedure .....	200
	13.1.1	Procedure .....	200
	13.1.2	Exiting .....	200
	13.2	Service Security Mode Function Tree.....	200
	13.3	Settings in the Service Security Mode .....	200
	13.3.1	Service Code Change .....	200
	14.	Adjust Mode .....	201
	14.1	Adjust Mode Function Setting Procedure .....	201
	14.1.1	Procedure .....	201
	14.1.2	Exiting .....	201
	14.2	Adjust Mode Function Tree.....	201
	14.3	Settings in the Adjust Mode.....	202
	14.3.1	Printer .....	202
	14.3.2	Scanner .....	204
	15.	Initial Mode.....	208
	15.1	Initial Mode Function Setting Procedure .....	208
	15.1.1	Exiting .....	208
	15.2	Initial Mode Function Tree .....	209
	15.3	Settings in the Initial Mode .....	209
	15.3.1	Total Clear.....	209
	15.3.2	Touch Panel Adjustment .....	210
	15.3.3	Marketing Area .....	210
	15.3.4	Image Data Clear.....	210
	15.3.5	Clear FAX Setting .....	211
	15.3.6	Date/Time Setting.....	211
	15.3.7	Trouble Reset.....	211
	16.	Mechanical adjustment .....	212
	16.1	Mechanical adjustment of the scanner section .....	212
	16.1.1	Scanner Position Adjustment.....	212
	16.2	Mechanical adjustment of the bypass tray section .....	213
	16.2.1	Adjustment of the Bypass Paper Size Unit .....	213
	16.2.2	Manual Bypass Unit Installation Check.....	214
	16.2.3	Adjustment of the Manual Bypass Take-up Mechanical Clutch .....	215
	17.	Functions of switches and parts on PWBs.....	217
	17.1	Test Print Switch (S1) .....	217
	17.1.1	Procedure .....	217

17.2	Read white reference position adjustment.....	218
17.2.1	Jumper switch setting.....	218
17.3	Sub Power Switch (SW49).....	219
17.4	Warm Restart Switch.....	219
17.4.1	Procedure .....	219

## Troubleshooting

18.	Jam Display.....	221
18.1	Misfeed Display.....	221
18.1.1	Misfeed Display Resetting Procedure .....	221
18.2	Sensor layout.....	222
18.2.1	System Mounted with PC-102/PC-202 .....	222
18.2.2	System Mounted with PC-402 .....	223
18.3	Solution.....	224
18.3.1	Initial Check Items.....	224
18.3.2	Misfeed at Tray 1 take-up section.....	225
18.3.3	Misfeed at Image Transfer section .....	226
18.3.4	Misfeed at Fusing/Paper Exit section .....	227
18.3.5	Misfeed at Switch Back Unit/Duplex Unit transport section .....	228
18.3.6	Misfeed at Duplex Unit take-up section.....	229
18.3.7	Misfeed at Tray 2 take-up/Vertical Transport section.....	230
18.3.8	Misfeed at Manual Bypass take-up section.....	231
18.3.9	Misfeed at Tray 3 take-up/Vertical Transport section (PC-202) .....	232
18.3.10	Misfeed at Tray 4 take-up/Vertical Transport section (PC-202) .....	233
18.3.11	Misfeed at LCT take-up/Vertical Transport section (PC-402) .....	234
19.	Malfunction code .....	235
19.1	Trouble code .....	235
19.1.1	Trouble code list .....	235
19.2	How to reset.....	238
19.3	Solution.....	239
19.3.1	C0202: Tray 1 Elevator Failure .....	239
19.3.2	C0204: Tray 2 Elevator Failure .....	239
19.3.3	C0206: Tray 3 Elevator Failure .....	239
19.3.4	C0208: Tray 4 Elevator Failure .....	239
19.3.5	C0211: Bypass Lifting Motion Failure .....	240
19.3.6	C0701: Manual Paper Size Detection Adjustment Failure .....	240
19.3.7	C1080: Exit Option Communication Failure .....	240
19.3.8	C2211: IU Motor Failure.....	241

bizhub 200/250/350	19.3.9	C2351: Toner Suction Fan Motor Failure .....	241	
	19.3.10	C2557: ATDC Sensor Failure.....	242	
	19.3.11	C255C: ATDC Adjustment Failure .....	242	
	19.3.12	C2654: EEPROM Failure.....	242	
	19.3.13	C2702: Abnormal Image Transfer Voltage .....	242	
	19.3.14	C3451: Fusing Warm-Up Failure (Main) .....	243	
	19.3.15	C3452: Fusing Warm-Up Failure (Sub) .....	243	
	19.3.16	C3751: High Fuser Temperature Failure (Main) .....	243	
	19.3.17	C3752: High Fuser Temperature Failure (Sub).....	243	
	19.3.18	C3851: Low Fuser Temperature Failure (Main) .....	244	
	19.3.19	C3852: Low Fuser Temperature Failure (Sub).....	244	
	19.3.20	C4001: Main Unit Communication Failure .....	245	
	19.3.21	C4002: HSYNC Detection Failure.....	245	
	19.3.22	C4101: Polygon Motor Failure .....	246	
General	19.3.23	C4721: Main Unit G/A Communication Failure .....	246	
	19.3.24	C5102: Main Motor Failure .....	246	
	19.3.25	C5351: Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor Failure .....	247	
	19.3.26	C5352: Cooling Fan Motor Failure .....	247	
	19.3.27	C5353: IU Cooling Fan Motor Failure .....	247	
	19.3.28	CA052: MIO Device Failure .....	248	
	19.3.29	CC153: Flash ROM Failure.....	248	
	20.	Power supply trouble.....	249	
	20.1	Machine is not Energized at All (PU1 Operation Check).....	249	
	20.2	Only the Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor turns.....	249	
	20.3	The Start key (LED) on the control panel blinks green .....	250	
	Maintenance	21.	Image quality problem.....	251
		21.1	How to identify problematic part.....	251
		21.2	Initial Check Items .....	251
21.2.1		Initial Check Items 1 .....	251	
21.2.2		Initial Check Items 2 .....	252	
21.3		Solution .....	253	
21.3.1		Scanner System: Blank copy or black copy .....	253	
21.3.2		Scanner System: Low image density or rough image .....	254	
21.3.3		Scanner System: Foggy background .....	255	
21.3.4		Scanner System: Black streaks or bands .....	256	
21.3.5		Scanner System: Black spots .....	257	
21.3.6		Scanner System: White streaks or bands.....	258	
21.3.7		Scanner System: Uneven pitch.....	259	
Adjustment / Setting		<hr/>		
	x			
	Troubleshooting	<hr/>		
		x		
		<hr/>		
		x		
		<hr/>		
		x		
		<hr/>		
		x		
		<hr/>		
		x		
		<hr/>		
		x		
<hr/>				
x				
Appendix	<hr/>			
	x			
	<hr/>			
	x			
	<hr/>			
	x			
	<hr/>			
	x			
	<hr/>			
	x			
	<hr/>			
	x			
	<hr/>			
	x			

21.3.8	Printer System: Blank copy or black copy .....	260
21.3.9	Printer System: Low image density or rough image .....	261
21.3.10	Printer System: Foggy background .....	262
21.3.11	Printer System: Black streaks or bands .....	263
21.3.12	Printer System: Black spots .....	264
21.3.13	Printer System: White streaks or bands .....	265
21.3.14	Printer System: Void areas .....	266
21.3.15	Printer System: Smears on back of paper .....	267
21.3.16	Printer System: Uneven image density .....	268
21.3.17	Printer System: Gradation reproduction failure .....	269
21.3.18	Printer System: Uneven pitch .....	270
22.	Abort codes .....	271
22.1	List of Abort Codes .....	271

## Appendix

23.	Parts layout drawing .....	273
23.1	Main unit .....	273
23.2	Duplex Unit .....	277
23.3	Switch Back Unit .....	278
23.4	DF-605 .....	279
23.5	PC-102/PC-202 (Option) .....	280
23.6	PC-402 (Option) .....	281
23.7	JS-502 (Option) .....	282
23.8	FS-508 (Option) .....	283
23.9	PU-501 (Option) .....	284
23.10	MT-501 (Option) .....	285
23.11	SD-502 (Option) .....	286
24.	Connector layout drawing .....	287
25.	Timing chart .....	289
25.1	Main unit .....	289
25.2	DF-605 .....	290
25.2.1	1-Sided Mode (A4 two sheets feeding) .....	290
25.2.2	2-Sided Mode (A4 two sheets feeding) .....	291
25.2.3	Fax Fine mode (A4 two sheets feeding) .....	293
25.2.4	Fax real-time transmission mode (A4 two sheets feeding) .....	294

bizhub 200/250/350

General

Maintenance

Adjustment / Setting

Troubleshooting

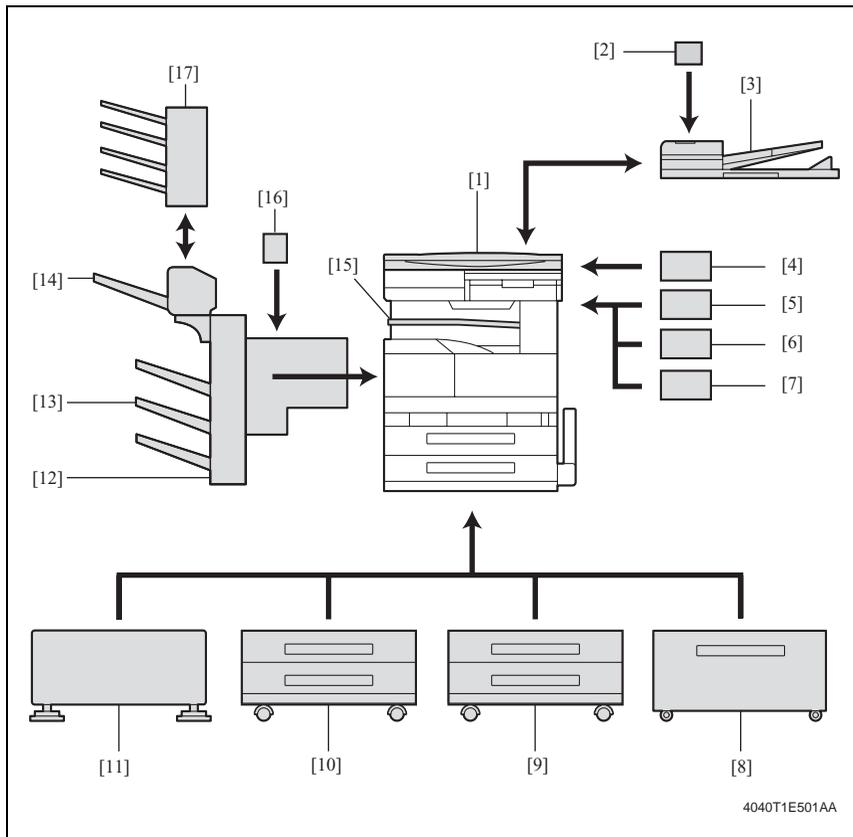
Appendix

Blank Page

# General

## 1. System configuration

### 1/2 System Front View

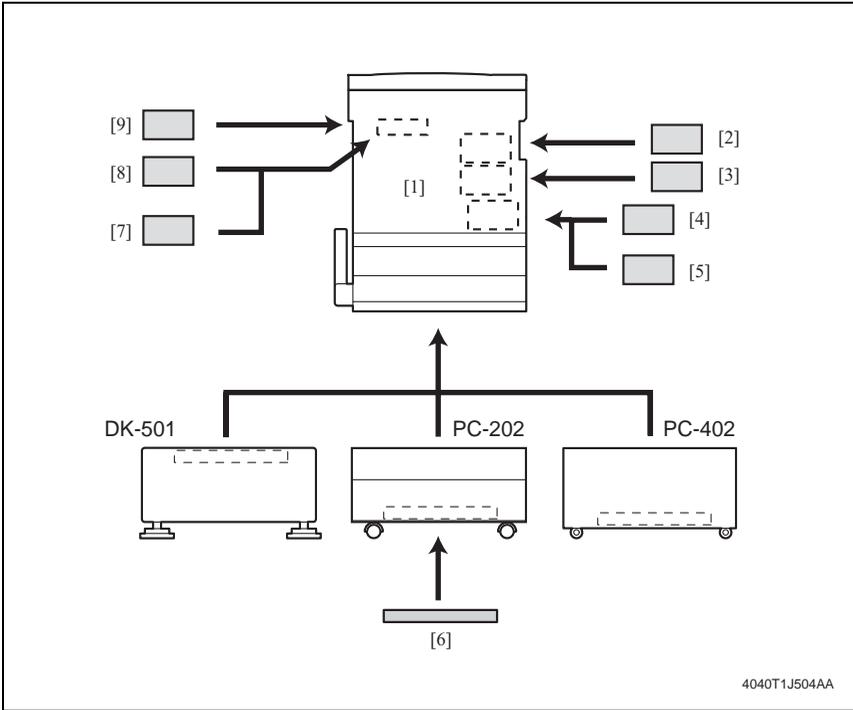


- [1] Original Cover (OC-502)
- [2] Stamp Unit (SP-501)
- [3] Reverse Automatic Document Feeder (DF-605)
- [4] Data Controller (D-103)
- [5] Key Counter Kit 4
- [6] Key Counter \*1
- [7] Key Counter Mount Kit \*2
- [8] Paper Feed Cabinet (PC-402)
- [9] Paper Feed Cabinet (PC-202)

- [10] Paper Feed Cabinet (PC-102)
- [11] Desk (DK-501)
- [12] Finisher (FS-508)
- [13] Output Tray (OT-601)
- [14] Saddle Sticher (SD-502)
- [15] Job Separator (JS-502)
- [16] Punch Unit (PU-501)
- [17] Mailbin Kit (MT-501)

\*1:Key Counter Only  
 \*2:Mount Pleate Only

2/2 System Rear View



- |                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| [1] Machine                      | [5] Dehumidifier Heater 1C                        |
| [2] Fax Kit (FK-503)             | [6] Scanner Unit (SU-501)*2                       |
| [3] Fax Multi Line (ML-502)      | [7] Expanded Memory Unit (EM-303/EM-304/EM-305)*2 |
| [4] Local Interface kit (EK-502) | [8] Hard Disk (HD-504)                            |

\*1: The Expanded Memory Unit and Scanner Unit cannot be mounted at the same time.

## 2. Product specifications

### A. Type

Type	Desktop/Console (dedicated cabinet or dedicated table)
Copying System	Electrostatic dry powdered image transfer to plain paper
PC Drum Type	OPC (organic photo conductor)
Scanning Density	Equivalent to 600 dpi
Exposure Lamp	cold-cathode tube
Print Density	Main scan: 600 dpi; sub-scan: 600 dpi
Platen	Stationary (mirror scan)
Original Scanning	Scanning in main scanning direction with a CCD
Registration	Rear left edge
Paper Feeding System (Standard) Three-way system	Multiple Bypass: 150 sheets Tray1: 500 sheets Tray2: 500 sheets
Exposure System	Electrostatic dry powdered image transfer to plain paper with a laser
Developing System	HMT developing system
Charging System	Comb electrode with scorotron system
Image Transfer System	Image transfer roller system
Paper Separating System	Separator fingers
Fusing System	Heat roller

### B. Functions

Types of Original	Sheets, books, and three-dimensional objects	
Max. Original Size	A3 or 11 × 17	
Multiple Copies	1 to 999	
Warming-up Time	14 sec. or less (when the Auxiliary Power Switch is turned ON from a stabilized state, in which the Main Power Switch is ON and Auxiliary Power Switch is OFF, with the rated power source voltage and at a room temperature of 23°C)	
Image Loss	Leading edge: 4 mm (1/4 inch), Trailing edge: 4 mm (1/4 inch), Rear edge: 4 mm (1/4 inch), Front edge: 4 mm (1/4 inch)	
First Copy Time (Tray1, A4, full size)	4.8 sec. or less (bizhub 350)	
	5.3 sec. or less (bizhub 250)	
	5.3 sec. or less (bizhub 200)	
System Speed	160 m/s (bizhub 350)	
	140 m/s (bizhub 250, bizhub 200)	
Copying Speed for Multi-copy Cycle (A4, 8-1/2 × 11)	35 copies/min (bizhub 350)	
	25 copies/min (bizhub 250)	
	20 copies/min (bizhub 200)	
Fixed Zoom Ratios	Full size	x1.000
	Reduction	Metric Area: x0.500, x0.707, x0.816, x0.930 Inch Area: x0.500, x0.647, x0.733, x0.785, x0.930
	Enlargement	Metric Area: x1.154, x1.414, x2.000 Inch Area: x1.214, x1.294, x1.545, x2.000
Variable Zoom Ratios	x0.250 to x4.000	in 0.001 increments

**C. Types of Paper**

Paper Source		Paper Source		
		Tray1	Tray2	Multiple Bypass
Copy paper type	Plain paper (56 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> / 15 to 24 lb)	○	○	○
	Translucent paper	-	-	-
	OHP transparencies	-	-	○
	Thick paper (91 to 210 g/m <sup>2</sup> / 24-1/4 to 55-3/4 lb)	-	-	○
	Postcards	-	-	○
	Envelopes	-	-	○
	Labels	-	-	○
	Thin Paper (50 to 55 g/m <sup>2</sup> / 13-1/4 to 14-3/4 lb)	-	-	○
Copy paper dimensions	Max. (width × length)	297 to 420 mm 11.5 x 16.5 inches		297 to 432 mm 11 × 17 inches
	Min. (width × length)	148 to 210 mm 5.75 x 8.25 inches		90 to 140 mm 3.5 x 5.5 inches

○: Reliably fed - : Feeding prohibited

**D. Maintenance**

Machine Durability	1200,000 prints or 5 years, whichever is earlier (bizhub 350) 800,000 prints or 5 years, whichever is earlier (bizhub 250) 500,000 prints or 5 years, whichever is earlier (bizhub 200)
--------------------	---

**E. Machine Specifications**

Power Requirements	Voltage	AC 120 V, 220 - 240 V
	Frequency	50/60 Hz
Max Power Consumption	120 V: 1380 W ± 10 % 200 V: 1300 - 1470 W ± 10 %	
Dimensions	677 (W) x 710 (D) x 718 (H) mm	
Space Requirements	687 (W) x 710 (D) mm *1	
Mass	74 kg (including the Duplex Unit, Switchback Unit, and Imaging Unit)	

\*1: Space requirements represent the dimensions of the machine when the Multi Bypass Tray is lowered.

**F. Operating Environmen**

Temperature	10 to 32 °C / 50 to 89.6° F (with a fluctuation of 10° C / 18° F or less per hour)
Humidity	15 to 85 % (with a fluctuation of 20 %/h)

### 3. Built-in Controllers

Type	Built-in type controller	
CPU	RM5231	
Printer Driver	PCL5e Emulation PCL6 (XL Ver. 2.1)Emulation PostScript3 Emulation (3011.xx.xx)	
Scan Driver	TWAIN driver	
OS Compatibility	Server	Windows NT4.0 sp6 / 2000 / 2003
	Client	Windows 98SE / Me Windows 2000 / XP Windows NT4.0 sp6 Linux (2nd-compliant) Macintosh OS 9.2 or later / OS X 10.2 or later
Interface	Ethernet (10 Base-T/100 Base-TX) USB 2.0/1.1	

**NOTE**

- These specifications are subject to change without notice.

bizhub 200/250/350

General

Blank Page

# Maintenance

## 4. Periodical check

### 4.1 Service schedule

#### 4.1.1 bizhub 350

Guarantee period (5-year or 1,200,000 prints)

	Per cycle × print number	×10,000-print																Number of times
		10	15	20	30	40	45	50	60	70	75	80	90	100	105	110	120	
Main body	100,000	●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		9
	150,000		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●	8
	300,000				●				●				●				●	4
	400,000					●						●					●	3
	450,000						●						●					2
	900,000													●				1

#### 4.1.2 bizhub 250

Guarantee period (5-year or 800,000 prints)

	Per cycle × print number	×10,000-print														Number of times	
		8	15	16	24	30	32	40	45	48	56	60	64	72	75		80
Main body	80,000	●		●	●		●	●		●	●		●	●		●	10
	150,000		●			●			●			●			●		5
	300,000					●						●					2
	320,000						●						●				2
	450,000									●							1

#### 4.1.3 bizhub 200

Guarantee period (5-year or 500,000 prints)

	Per cycle × print number	×10,000-print										Number of times			
		6.5	13	15	19.5	26	30	32.5	39	45	45.5				
Main body	65,000	●	●		●	●		●	●		●		●		7
	150,000			●			●				●				3
	260,000						●								1
	300,000							●							1
	450,000												●		1



**C. Periodical parts replacement 3 (per 150,000-print)**

No	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubri-cation	Descrip-tions
1	Overall	Paper take-up and image conditions		●				
2		Appearance		●	●			
3	Transport section	Paper Dust Remover	1			●		
4	Image Transfer Section	Transfer Roller Unit	1			●		

**D. Periodical parts replacement 4 (per 200,000-print)**

No	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubri-cation	Descrip-tions
1	Overall	Paper take-up and image conditions		●				
2		Appearance		●	●			
3	DF-605	Pick-up Roller	2			●		
4		Feed Roller	1			●		
5		Separation Roller	1			●		

**E. Periodical parts replacement 5 (per 300,000-print)**

No	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubri-cation	Descrip-tions
1	Overall	Paper take-up and image conditions		●				
2		Appearance		●	●			
3	Bypass	Feed Roller	1			●		
4		Separation Roller Assy	1			●		
5	Tray 1	Feed Roller	1			●		
6		Pick-up Roller	1			●		
7		Separation Roller Assy	1			●		
8	Tray 2	Feed Roller	1			●		
9		Pick-up Roller	1			●		
10		Separation Roller Assy	1			●		
11	PC-102	Pick-up Roller	1			●		
12	PC-202	Feed Roller	1			●		
13	PC-402	Separation Roller Assy	1			●		
14	FS-508	Rollers and rolls			●			
15	MT-501	Rollers and rolls			●			
16	SD-502	Rollers and rolls			●			

**F. Periodical parts replacement 6 (per 400,000-print)**

No	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubri-cation	Descrip-tions
1	Overall	Paper take-up and image conditions		●				
2		Appearance		●	●			
3	Processing section	Developing Unit	1			●		
4		Toner Filter (Main Unit)	1			●		

**G. Periodical parts replacement 7 (per 450,000-print)**

No	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubri-cation	Descrip-tions
1	Overall	Paper take-up and image conditions		●				
2		Appearance		●	●			
3	Fusing section	Fusing Unit	1			●		

**H. Periodical parts replacement 8 (per 900,000-print)**

No	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubri-cation	Descrip-tions
1	Overall	Paper take-up and image conditions		●				
2		Appearance		●	●			
3	Transport section	Registration Roller Bearing				●		
4		Registration Roller Gear				●		

**4.2.2 bizhub 250**

**A. Periodical parts replacement 1 (per 50,000-print)**

No	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubri-cation	Descrip-tions
1	Overall	Paper take-up and image conditions		●				
2		Appearance		●	●			
3	DF-605	Pick-up Roller	2		●			
4		Feed Roller	1		●			
5		Separation Roller	1		●			
6		Rollers and rolls			●			
7		Scanning Guide	1		●			
8		Reflective Sensor section	1		●			

**B. Periodical parts replacement 2 (per 80,000-print)**

No	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubri-cation	Descrip-tions
1	Overall	Paper take-up and image conditions		●				
2		Appearance		●	●			
3	Processing section	Photo Conductor Unit	1			●		
4		Toner Filter (Developing Unit)	1			●		

**C. Periodical parts replacement 3 (per 150,000-print)**

No	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubri-cation	Descrip-tions
1	Overall	Paper take-up and image conditions		●				
2		Appearance		●	●			
3	Transport section	Paper Dust Remover	1			●		
4	Image Transfer Section	Transfer Roller Unit	1			●		

**D. Periodical parts replacement 4 (per 200,000-print)**

No	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubri-cation	Descrip-tions
1	Overall	Paper take-up and image conditions		●				
2		Appearance		●	●			
3	DF-605	Pick-up Roller	2			●		
4		Feed Roller	1			●		
5		Separation Roller	1			●		

bizhub 200/250/350

Maintenance

**E. Periodical parts replacement 5 (per 300,000-print)**

No	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubri-cation	Descrip-tions
1	Overall	Paper take-up and image conditions		●				
2		Appearance		●	●			
3	Bypass	Feed Roller	1			●		
4		Separation Roller Assy	1			●		
5	Tray 1	Feed Roller	1			●		
6		Pick-up Roller	1			●		
7		Separation Roller Assy	1			●		
8	Tray 2	Feed Roller	1			●		
9		Pick-up Roller	1			●		
10		Separation Roller Assy	1			●		
11	PC-102	Pick-up Roller	1			●		
12	PC-202	Feed Roller	1			●		
13	PC-402	Separation Roller Assy	1			●		
14	FS-508	Rollers and rolls			●			
15	MT-501	Rollers and rolls			●			
16	SD-502	Rollers and rolls			●			

**F. Periodical parts replacement 6 (per 320,000-print)**

No	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubri-cation	Descrip-tions
1	Overall	Paper take-up and image conditions		●				
2		Appearance		●	●			
3	Processing section	Developing Unit	1			●		
4		Toner Filter (Main Unit)	1			●		

**G. Periodical parts replacement 7 (per 450,000-print)**

No	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubri-cation	Descrip-tions
1	Overall	Paper take-up and image conditions		●				
2		Appearance		●	●			
3	Fusing section	Fusing Unit	1			●		

**4.2.3 bizhub 200**

**A. Periodical parts replacement 1 (per 50,000-print)**

No	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubri-cation	Descrip-tions
1	Overall	Paper take-up and image conditions		●				
2		Appearance		●	●			
3	DF-605	Pick-up Roller	2		●			
4		Feed Roller	1		●			
5		Separation Roller	1		●			
6		Rollers and rolls			●			
7		Scanning Guide	1		●			
8		Reflective Sensor section	1		●			

**B. Periodical parts replacement 2 (per 65,000-print)**

No	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubri-cation	Descrip-tions
1	Overall	Paper take-up and image conditions		●				
2		Appearance		●	●			
3	Processing section	Photo Conductor Unit	1			●		
4		Toner Filter (Developing Unit)	1			●		

**C. Periodical parts replacement 3 (per 150,000-print)**

No	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubri-cation	Descrip-tions
1	Overall	Paper take-up and image conditions		●				
2		Appearance		●	●			
3	Transport section	Paper Dust Remover	1			●		
4	Image Transfer Section	Transfer Roller Unit	1			●		

**D. Periodical parts replacement 4 (per 200,000-print)**

No	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubri-cation	Descrip-tions
1	Overall	Paper take-up and image conditions		●				
2		Appearance		●	●			
3	DF-605	Pick-up Roller	2			●		
4		Feed Roller	1			●		
5		Separation Roller	1			●		

**E. Periodical parts replacement 5 (per 260,000-print)**

No	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubri-cation	Descrip-tions
1	Overall	Paper take-up and image conditions		●				
2		Appearance		●	●			
3	Processing section	Developing Unit	1			●		
4		Toner Filter (Main Unit)	1			●		

**F. Periodical parts replacement 6 (per 300,000-print)**

No	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubri-cation	Descrip-tions
1	Overall	Paper take-up and image conditions		●				
2		Appearance		●	●			
3	Bypass	Feed Roller	1			●		
4		Separation Roller Assy	1			●		
5	Tray 1	Feed Roller	1			●		
6		Pick-up Roller	1			●		
7		Separation Roller Assy	1			●		
8	Tray 2	Feed Roller	1			●		
9		Pick-up Roller	1			●		
10		Separation Roller Assy	1			●		
11	PC-102	Pick-up Roller	1			●		
12	PC-202	Feed Roller	1			●		
13	PC-402	Separation Roller Assy	1			●		
14	FS-508	Rollers and rolls			●			
15	MT-501	Rollers and rolls			●			
16	SD-502	Rollers and rolls			●			

**G. Periodical parts replacement 7 (per 450,000-print)**

No	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubri-cation	Descrip-tions
1	Overall	Paper take-up and image conditions		●				
2		Appearance		●	●			
3	Fusing section	Fusing Unit	1			●		

bizhub 200/250/350

Maintenance

### 4.3 Maintenance parts

- To ensure that the machine produces good copies and to extend its service life, it is recommended that the maintenance jobs described in this schedule be carried out as instructed.
- Replace with reference to the numeric values displayed on the Life counter.
- The conditions are: A4 or 8-1/2x11, standard mode, and no Sleep.

#### 4.3.1 Replacement parts

##### A. Main unit

No	Classification	Parts name		Quantity	Actual durable cycle *1	Parts No.	Descriptions	Ref. Page in this manual
1	Bypass	Feed Roller		1	300 K	4131-3001-XX		18
2		Separation Roller Assy		1	300 K	4034-0151-XX		19
3	Tray 1	Feed Roller		1	300 K	4030-3005-XX	Replace those three parts at the same time.	20
4		Pick-up Roller		1	300 K	4030-3005-XX		21
5		Separation Roller Assy		1	300 K	4030-0151-XX		23
6	Tray 2	Feed Roller		1	300 K	4030-3005-XX	Replace those three parts at the same time.	25
7		Pick-up Roller		1	300 K	4030-3005-XX		26
8		Separation Roller Assy		1	300 K	4030-0151-XX		28
9	Transport section	Registration Roller Bearing		4	900 K	1164-3549-XX		30
10		Registration Roller Gear 1		1	900 K	1164-3508-XX		30
		Registration Roller Gear 2		1	900 K	1164-3515-XX		30
11		Paper Dust Remover		1	150 K	4040-0778-XX		31
12	Fusing section	Fusing Unit		1	450 K	4040-0765-XX	120 V/127 V areas only.	37
						4040-0766-XX	220 - 240 V areas only.	
						4040-0767-XX	110 V areas only.	
13	Transfer section	Transfer Roller Unit		1	150 K	4040-0760-XX		38
14	Processing section	Photo Conductor Unit	bizhub 350	1	100 K	-	*2	39
15			bizhub 250	1	80 K			
16			bizhub 200	1	65 K			
17		Developer	bizhub 350	1	100 K	-		34
18			bizhub 250	1	80 K			
19			bizhub 200	1	65 K			
20		Developing Unit	bizhub 350	1	400 K	4040-0752-XX	*3	40
21			bizhub 250	1	320 K	4040-0752-XX		
22			bizhub 200	1	260 K	4040-0752-XX		
23	Toner Filter (Developing Unit)	bizhub 350	1	100 K	4040-5217-XX	*2	32	
24		bizhub 250	1	80 K	4040-5217-XX			
25		bizhub 200	1	65 K	4040-5217-XX			

No	Classification	Parts name	Quantity	Actual durable cycle *1	Parts No.	Descriptions	Ref. Page in this manual
26	Processing section	Toner Filter (Main Unit)	bizhub 350	1	400 K	4040-2093-XX	*3 33
27			bizhub 250	1	320 K	4040-2093-XX	
28			bizhub 200	1	260 K	4040-2093-XX	
29		Ozone Filter	1	300 K	4011-2031-XX	33	

\*1: Actual durable cycle is the Special Parts Counter value.

\*2: The Photo Conductor Unit and Toner Filter (Developing Unit) should be replaced with new ones at the same time.

\*3: The Developing Unit and Toner Filter (Main Unit) should be replaced with new ones at the same time.

## B. Option

No	Classification	Parts name	Quantity	Actual durable cycle *1	Parts No.	Descriptions	Ref. Page in this manual
1	PC-102	Pick-up Roller	1	300 K	4030-3005-XX	Replace those three parts at the same time.	*2
2	PC-202	Feed Roller	1	300 K	4030-3005-XX		
3	PC-402	Separation Roller Assy	1	300 K	4030-0151-XX		
4	DF-605	Pick-up Roller	1	200 K	4344-5003-XX	Replace those three parts at the same time.	
5		Feed Roller	1	200 K	4582-3014-XX		
6		Separation Roller	1	200 K	4582-3047-XX		
7	SP-501	Spare TX Marker Stamp 2	1	As required	-	Ink running out	

\*1: Actual durable cycle is the Special Parts Counter value.

\*2: See each Option Service Manual.

### 4.3.2 Cleaning parts

No	Classification	Parts name	Actual durable cycle *1	Descriptions	Ref. Page in this manual
1	DF-605	Pick-up Roller	50 K		*2
2		Feed Roller	50 K		
3		Separation Roller	50 K		
4		Misc. rollers and rolls	50 K		
5		Scanning Guide	50 K		
6		Reflective Sensor section	50 K		
7	FS-508	Rollers and rolls	300 K		*3
8	MT-501	Rollers and rolls	300 K		*4
9	SD-502	Rollers and rolls	300 K		*5

\*1: Actual durable cycle is the Special Parts Counter value.

\*2: See DF-605 Service manual.

\*3: See FS-508 Service manual.

\*4: See MT-501 Service manual.

\*5: See SD-502 Service manual.

## 4.4 Concept of parts life

	Description	Life value (Specification value)	Lift stop
Photo Conductor Unit	The distance through which the Photo Conductor has been rotated is converted to a corresponding number of printed pages produced on A4 paper at 4P/J and the life condition is detected when a predetermined value is reached.	100 <sup>*1</sup>	Not stopped *2
Developer		100 <sup>*1</sup>	
Developing Unit	Photo Conductor Unit × 4 times	400 <sup>*1</sup>	Not stopped *2
Fusing Unit	Count the number of times paper is fed out.	450 <sup>*1</sup>	Not stopped

\*1: On the bizhub 350

\*2: The setting can be changed to "stopped" by using the soft switch of the Tech. Rep. mode.

### A. Conditions for Life Specifications Values

- The life specification values represent the number of copies made or figures equivalent to it when given conditions (see the Table given below) are met. They can be more or less depending on the machine operating conditions of each individual user.

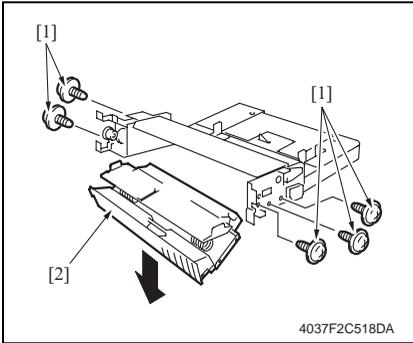
Item	Description		
	bizhub 350	bizhub 250	bizhub 200
Job Type	4 page/Job	3 page/Job	2 page/Job
Paper Size	A4		
Original Density	B/W ratio: 6 %		
Average Copy Volume (copies/month)	7,000	4,000	2,500

## 4.5 Maintenance procedure (Periodical check parts)

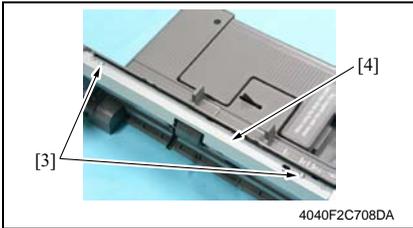
### 4.5.1 Replacing the Bypass Tray Feed Roller

1. Remove the Multi Bypass Unit.

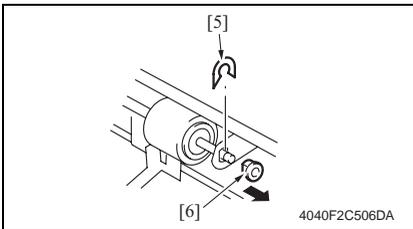
 71



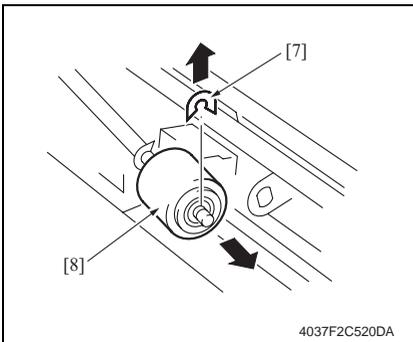
2. Remove five screws [1] and the Manual Bypass Unit Lower Frame [2].



3. Remove two screws [3] and the Feed Roller Cover [4].



4. Snap off the C-clip [5] for the Feed Roller, and remove the bearing. [6].



5. Snap off the C-clip [7], and remove the Bypass Feed Roller [8].
6. To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.
7. Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [Counter] → [Special Parts Counter] → [Bypass] and clear the counter.

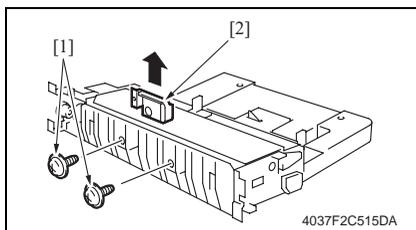
#### NOTE

- Replace the Bypass Feed Roller and the Bypass Separation Roller Assy at the same time.

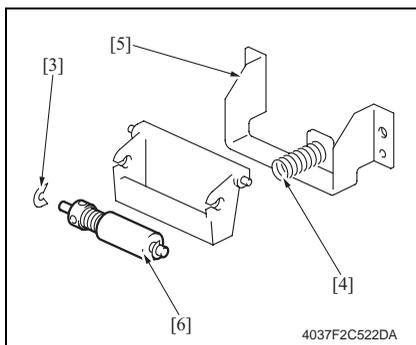
### 4.5.2 Replacing the Bypass Tray Separation Roller Assy

1. Remove the Multi Bypass Unit.

☞ 71



2. Remove two screws [1], and remove Bypass Paper Separation Roller fixing bracket Assy [2].

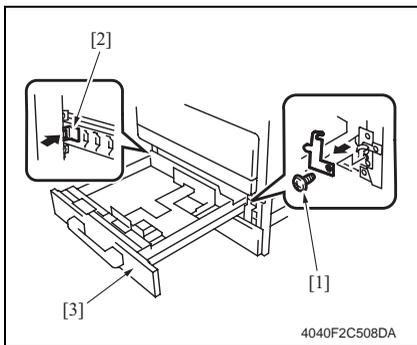


3. Snap off the C-clip [3], and remove the spring [4] and the guide plate [5]. Remove the Bypass Paper Separation Roller Assy [6].
4. To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.
5. Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [Counter] → [Special Parts Counter] → [Bypass] and clear the counter.

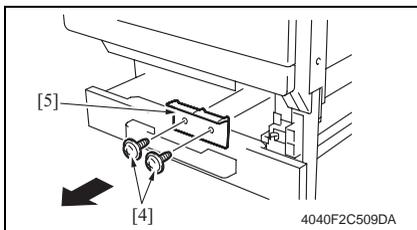
#### NOTE

- Replace the Bypass Feed Roller and the Bypass Separation Roller Assy at the same time.

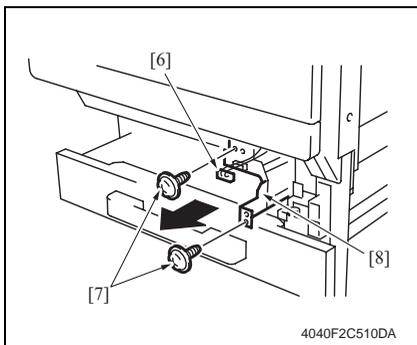
### 4.5.3 Replacing the Tray 1 Feed Roller



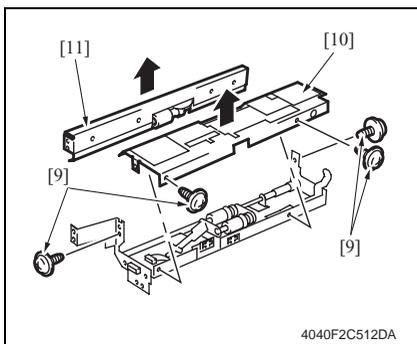
1. Remove the screw [1] and, holding the stopper [2], remove Tray 1 [3].



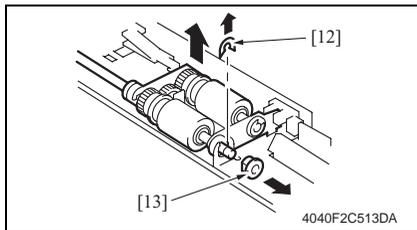
2. Remove two screws [4] and the Connector Cover [5].



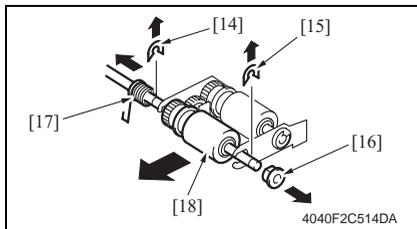
3. Remove the Connector [6].
4. Remove two screws [7] and the Tray 1 Feed Roller Assy [8].



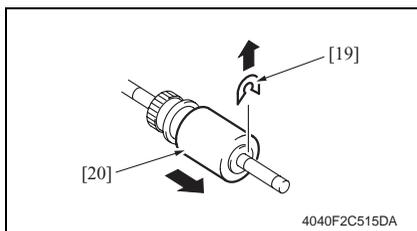
5. Remove four screws [9] and the Tray 1 Feed Roller Assy Cover [10] and the Tray 1 Separator Roll Assy [11].



- Remove the C-clip [12] and the bearing [13].

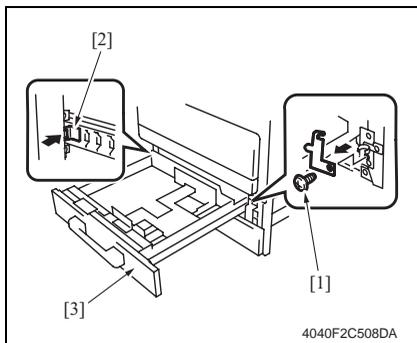


- Remove the C-clip [14], E-ring [15], bearing [16] and spring [17] to remove the Tray 1 Feed Roller Assy [18].

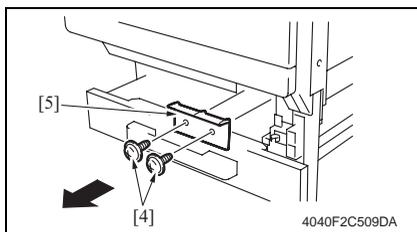


- Remove the C-clip [19] and the Tray 1 Feed Roller [20].
- To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.
- Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [Counter] → [Special Parts Counter] → [Tray 1] and clear the counter.

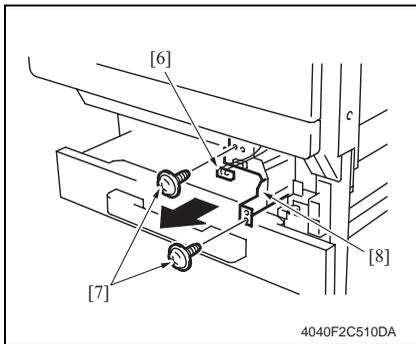
#### 4.5.4 Replacing the Tray 1 Pick-up Roller



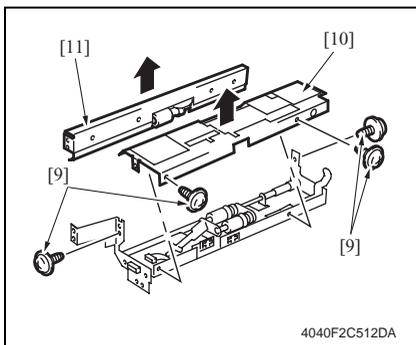
- Remove the screw [1] and, holding the stopper [2], remove Tray 1 [3].



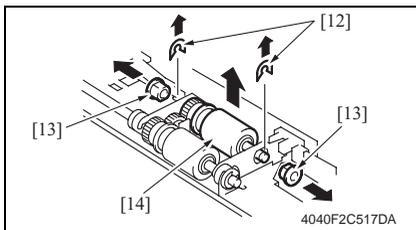
- Remove two screws [4] and the Connector Cover [5].



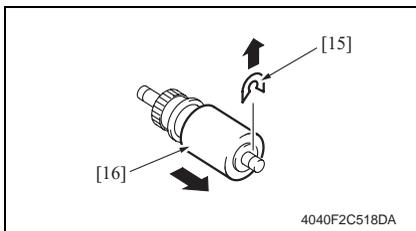
3. Remove the Connector [6].
4. Remove two screws [7] and the Tray 1 Feed Roller Assy [8].



5. Remove four screws [9] and the Tray 1 Feed Roller Assy Cover [10] and the Tray 1 Separator Roll Assy [11].

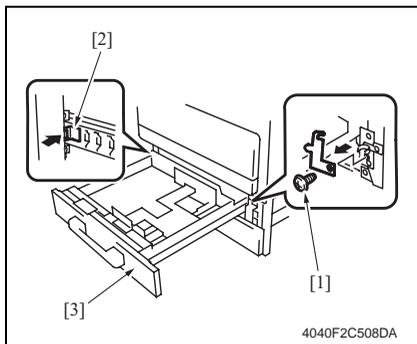


6. Remove two C-clips [12] and two bearings [13]. Then, remove the Pick-up Roller Assy [14].

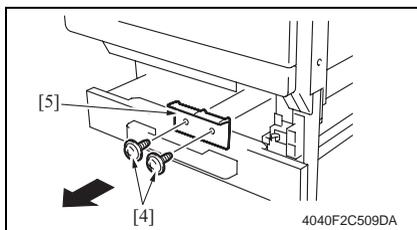


7. Remove one C-clip [15] and the Tray 1 Pick-up Roller [16].
8. To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.
9. Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [Counter] → [Special Parts Counter] → [Tray 1] and clear the counter.

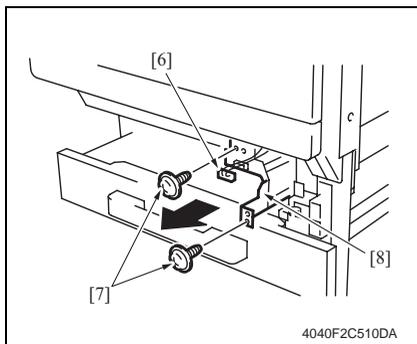
### 4.5.5 Replacing the Tray 1 Separation Roller Assy



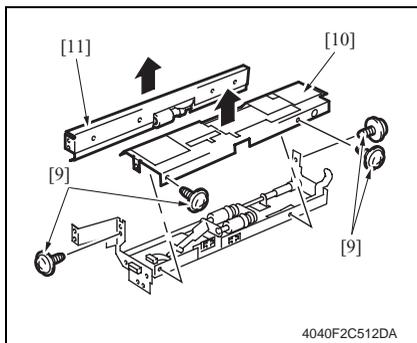
1. Remove the screw [1] and, holding the stopper [2], remove Tray 1 [3].



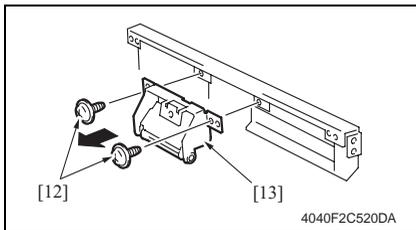
2. Remove two screws [4] and the Connector Cover [5].



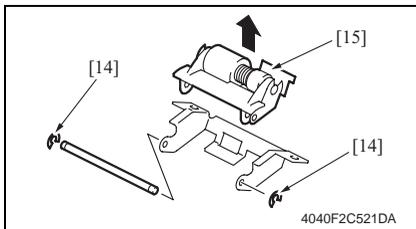
3. Remove the Connector [6].
4. Remove two screws [7] and the Tray 1 Feed Roller Assy [8].



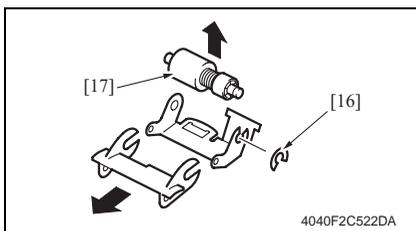
5. Remove four screws [9] and the Tray 1 Feed Roller Assy Cover [10] and the Tray 1 Separator Roll Assy [11].



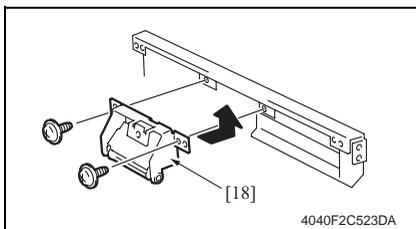
6. Remove two Screws [12] and the Tray 1 Separation Roller installation plate Assy [13].



7. Remove two C-clips [14] and the Tray 1 Separation Roller installation plate [15].



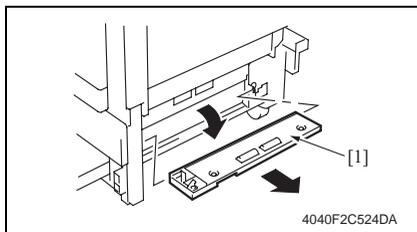
8. Remove the C-clip [16] and the Tray 1 Separation Roller Assy [17].
9. To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.
10. Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [Counter] → [Special Parts Counter] → [Tray 1] and clear the counter.



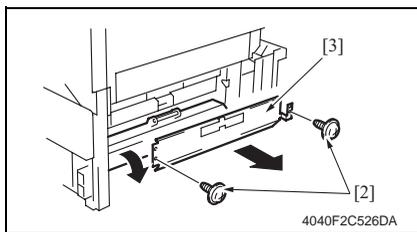
**NOTE**

- Install the Tray 1 Separation Roller Mounting Bracket Assy [18] while pressing the holder up so that it coheres to the metal bracket of the copier.

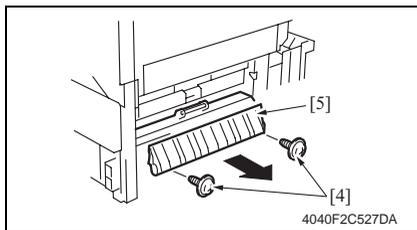
### 4.5.6 Replacing the Tray 2 Feed Roller



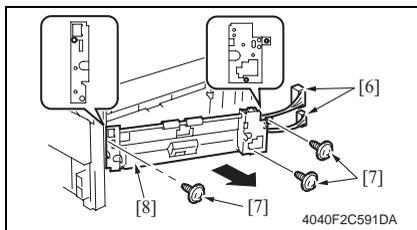
1. Slide out the Tray 2.
2. Remove the Multi Bypass Unit.
- ☞ 71
3. Remove the Lower Right Cover [1].



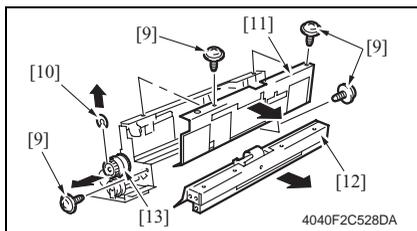
4. Remove two screws [2] and the Transport Roller Cover [3].



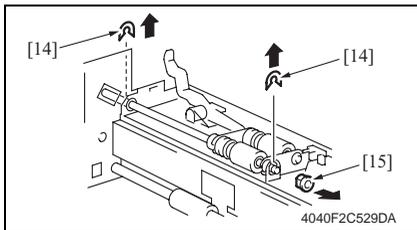
5. Remove two screws [2] and the Mis-feed Clearing Cover [5].



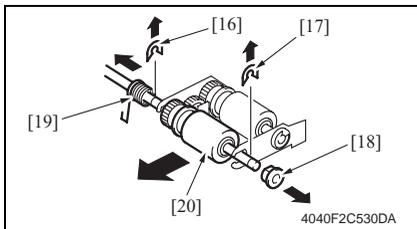
6. Unplug two connectors [6].
7. Remove three screws [7] and the Tray 2 Feed Roller Assy [8].



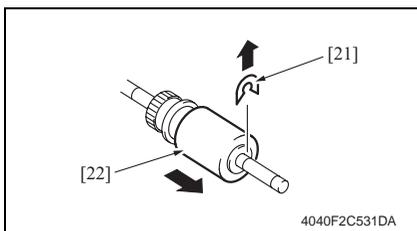
8. Remove four screws [9] and the Clip [10]. Then, remove the Tray 2 Feed Roller Cover [11], the Tray 2 Separation Roller Assy [12], and the Tray 2 Feed Roller Clutch [13].



9. Remove two C-clips [14] and the bearing [15].

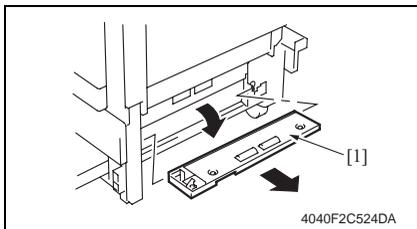


10. Remove the C-clip [16], E-ring [17], bearing [18] and spring [19] to remove the Tray 2 Feed Roller Assy [20].

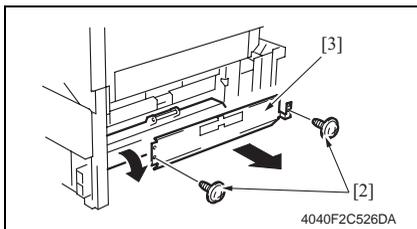


11. Remove the C-clip [21] and the Tray 2 Feed Roller [22].
12. To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.
13. Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [Counter] → [Special Parts Counter] → [Tray 2] and clear the counter.

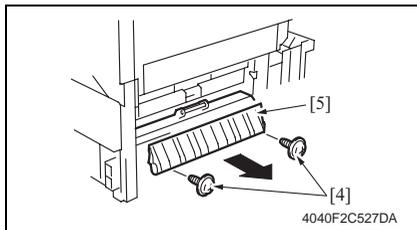
#### 4.5.7 Replacing the Tray 2 Pick-up Roller



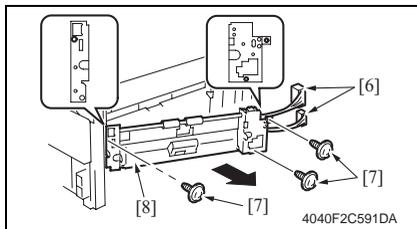
1. Slide out the Tray 2.
2. Remove the Multi Bypass Unit.
- 71
3. Remove the Lower Right Cover [1].



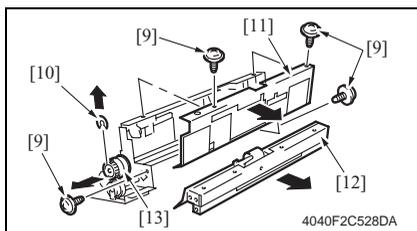
4. Remove two screws [2] and the Transport Roller Cover [3].



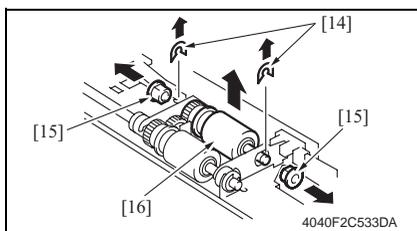
5. Remove two screws [2] and the Mis-feed Clearing Cover [5].



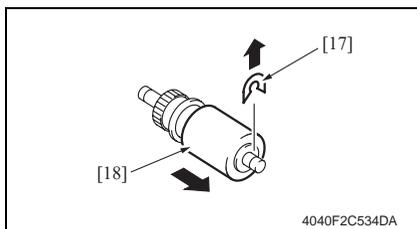
6. Unplug two connectors [6].
7. Remove three screws [7] and the Tray 2 Feed Roller Assy [8].



8. Remove four screws [9] and the C-clip [10]. Then, remove the Tray 2 Feed Roller Cover [11], the Tray 2 Separation Roller Assy [12], and the Tray 2 Feed Roller Clutch [13].

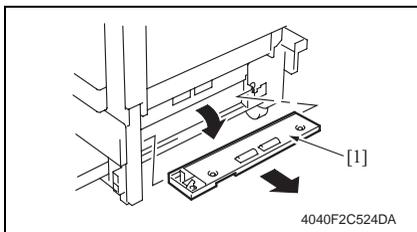


9. Remove two C-clips [14] and two bearings [15]. Then, remove the Tray 2 Pick-up Roller Assy [16].

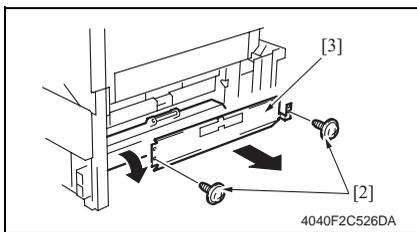


10. Remove the C-clip [17] and the Tray 2 Pick-up Roller [18].
11. To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.
12. Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [Counter] → [Special Parts Counter] → [Tray 2] and clear the counter.

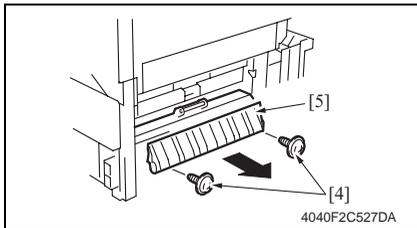
**4.5.8 Replacing the Tray 2 Separation Roller**



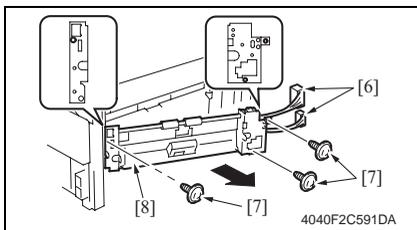
1. Slide out the Tray 2.
2. Remove the Multi Bypass Unit.
- ☞ 71
3. Remove the Lower Right Cover [1].



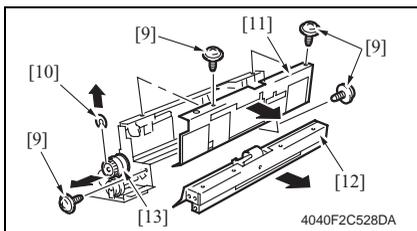
4. Remove two screws [2] and the Transport Roller Cover [3].



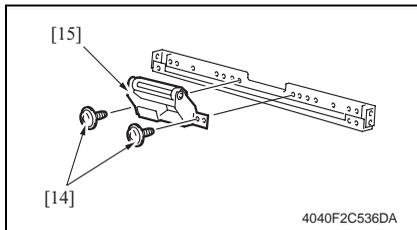
5. Remove two screws [2] and the Mis-feed Clearing Cover [5].



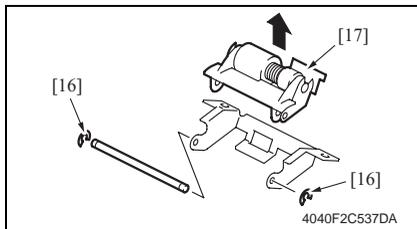
6. Unplug two connectors [6].
7. Remove three screws [7] and the Tray 2 Feed Roller Assy [8].



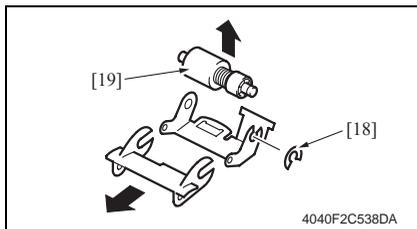
8. Remove four screws [9] and the C-clip [10]. Then, remove the Tray 2 Feed Roller Cover [11], the Tray 2 Separation Roller Assy [12], and the Tray 2 Feed Roller Clutch [13].



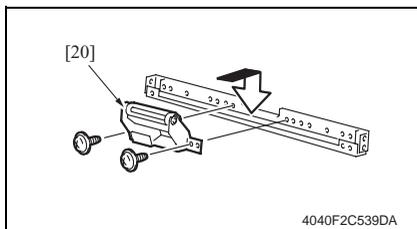
9. Remove two Screws [14] and the Tray 2 Separation Roller installation plate Assy [15].



10. Remove two C-clips [16] and the Tray 2 Separation Roller installation plate [17].



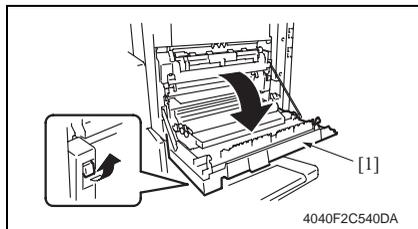
11. Remove the C-clip [18] and the Tray 2 Separation Roller Assy [19].
12. To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.
13. Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [Counter] → [Special Parts Counter] → [Tray 2] and clear the counter.



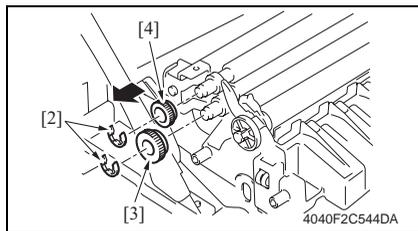
**NOTE**

- Install the Tray 2 Separation Roller Mounting Bracket Assy [20] while pressing the holder up so that it coheres to the metal bracket of the copier.

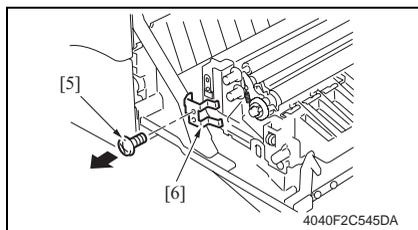
### 4.5.9 Replacing of the Registration Roller Bearings and Registration Roller Gears 1, 2



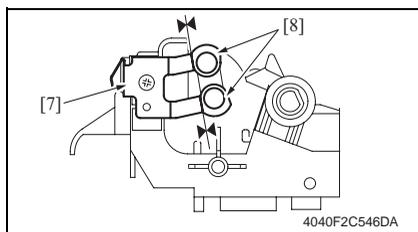
1. Open the Right Door [1].



2. Remove two E-rings [2], Registration Roller Gears 1 [3] and Registration Roller Gears 2 [4].

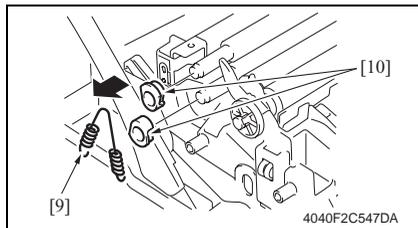


3. Remove the screw [5] and the ground plate [6].



#### ⚠ CAUTION

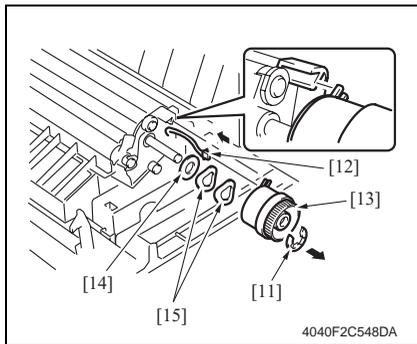
- When reinstalling the ground plate, make sure that the ground plate [7] is in contact with the side faces of the bushings [8].



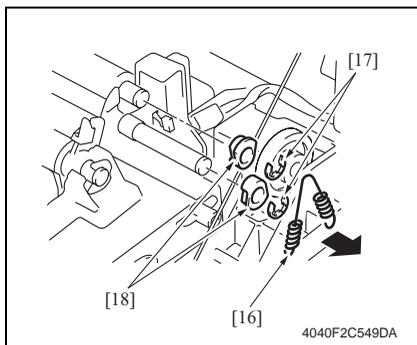
4. Remove the spring [9] and two Registration Roller Bearings [10].

#### NOTE

- When reinstalling the bearings, make sure that the flanges of the bearings are on the outside.



5. Remove the E-ring [11] and unplug the connector [12]. Then, remove the Registration Roller Clutch [13].
6. Remove the washer [14] and two wave washers [15].

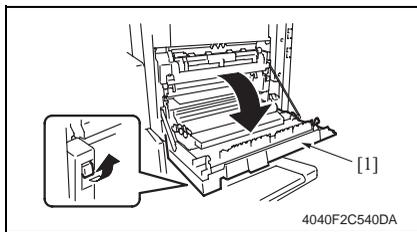


7. Remove the spring [16], two E-rings [17], and two Registration Roller Bearings [18].

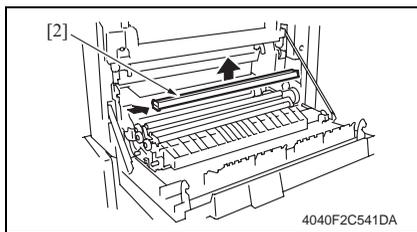
**NOTE**

- When reinstalling the bearings, make sure that the flanges of the bearings are on the outside.

**4.5.10 Cleaning of the Paper Dust Remover**

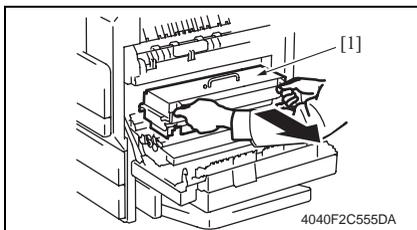


1. Open the Right Door [1].

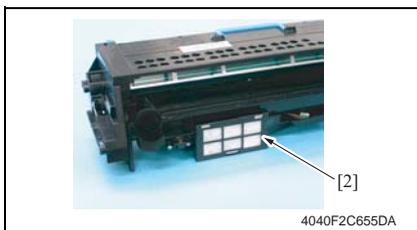


2. Remove the Paper Dust Removal [2].

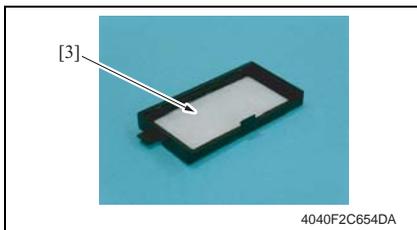
### 4.5.11 Replacing of the Toner Filter (Developing Unit)



1. Open the Right Door.
2. Remove the IU [1].



3. Remove the Toner Filter Cover [2].

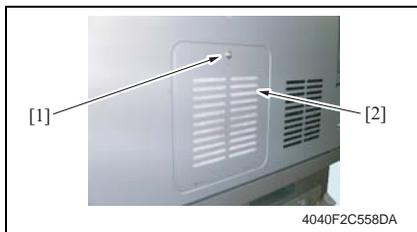


4. Remove the Toner Filter (Developing Unit) [3].

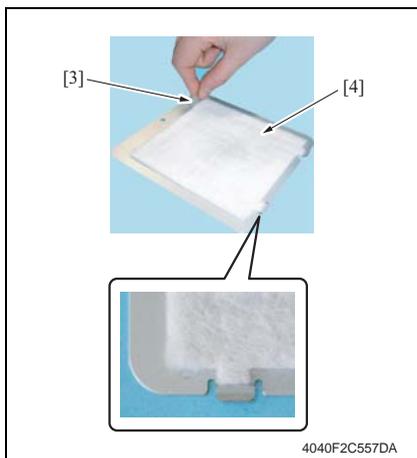
**NOTE**

- Replace the Photo Conductor Unit with a new one at the same time.

### 4.5.12 Replacing of the Toner Filter (Main Unit)



1. Remove the screw [1] and the Toner Filter Rear Cover [2].

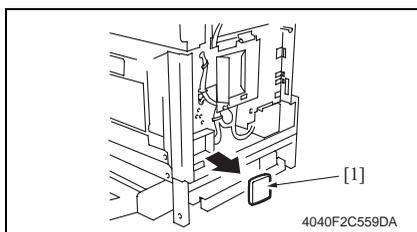


2. Pull on the tape portion [3] and peel off the Toner Filter (Main Unit) [4].

**NOTE**

- When mounting the filter, not the correct mounting position that is shown on the left.
- Replace the Developing Unit with a new one at the same time.

### 4.5.13 Replacement of the Ozone Filter



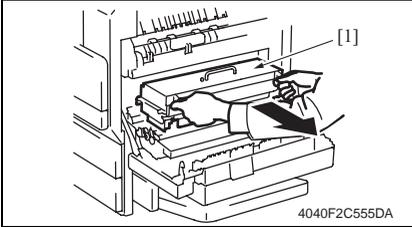
1. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.
  - ☞ 50
2. Remove the Rear Cover.
  - ☞ 51
3. Remove the Ozone Filter [1].

**4.5.14 Replacement of the Developer**

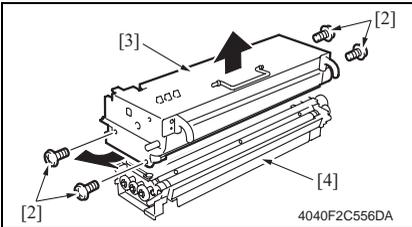
1. Select Tech. Rep. Mode → [Counter] → [Special Parts Counter] → [PC Life].
2. Press the Clear key to clear the counter value.
3. Turn OFF the main power switch.

**NOTE**

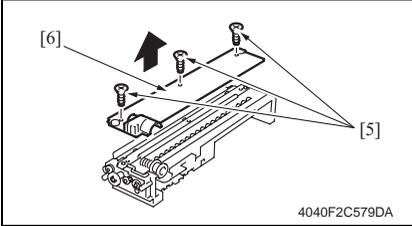
- Clear the PC Life counter before removing the IU.
- After clearing the PC Life counter, be sure to turn OFF the main power switch.



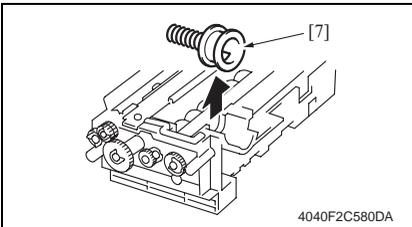
4. Open the Right Door.
5. Remove the IU [1].



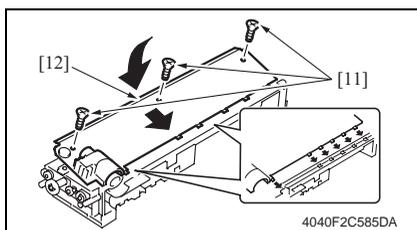
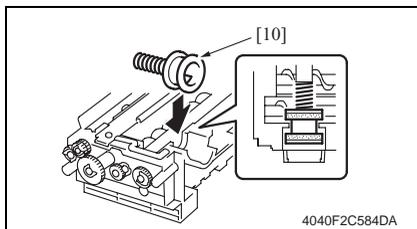
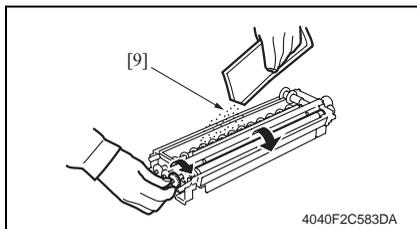
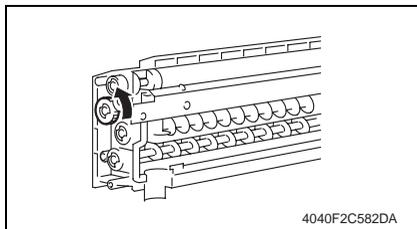
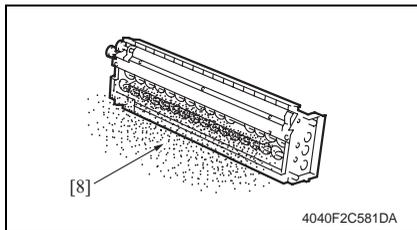
6. Remove four screws (silver) [2] and disassemble the Photo Conductor Unit [3] and the Developing Unit [4].



7. Remove three screws [5] and the Developer Scattering Prevention Plate [6].



8. Remove the Toner Supply Port [7].



9. Remove the developer [8].

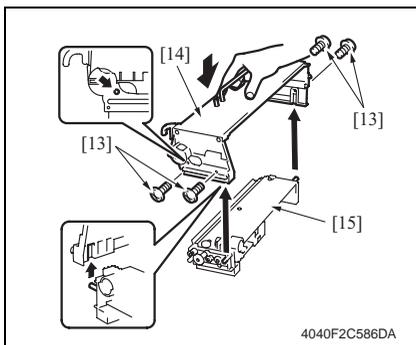
**Removal of the Developer**

- Dump the developer on the Sleeve Roller by rotating the gear in the direction of the arrow.
- If you rotate the gear in reverse, mylar for cleaning the ATDC Sensor.
- Dump developer until almost no developer sticks to the Sleeve Roller.

10. Set the developer [9] while rotating the gear in the direction of the arrow.

11. Reinstall the Toner Supply Port [10].

12. Using three screws [11], secure the Developer Scattering Prevention Plate [12].



13. Install the four screws [13] to secure the Photo Conductor Unit [14] and Developing Unit [15].
14. Install the IU in the copier.

15. Turn ON the main power switch.

16. Select Tech. Rep. Mode → [Function] → [F8] and press the Start key.

**NOTE**

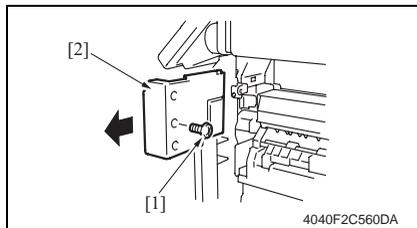
- After replacing the developer, be sure to execute F8 under Function of Tech. Rep. Mode.
- When the main power switch is turned ON, execute F8 quickly.

## 4.6 Replacing the unit

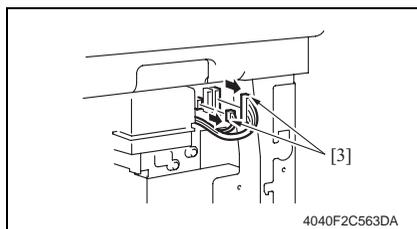
### 4.6.1 Replacement of the Fusing Unit

#### ⚠ CAUTION

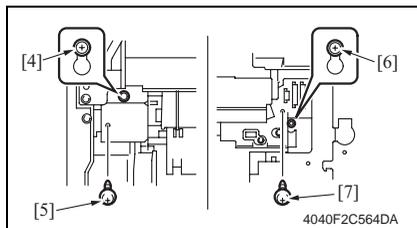
- From the safety viewpoint, the Fusing Unit is replaced as a unit. No parts intended for other models should be used for the Fusing Unit of this machine. Note, however, that the thermistor and several other parts mentioned in this machine may be replaced as an individual part with a new one.



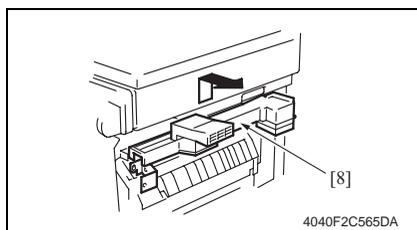
1. Open the Right Door.
2. Remove the Rear Right Cover.
3. Remove the screw [1] and the Front Right Cover [2].



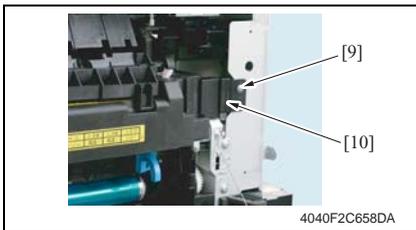
4. Unplug two connectors [3] of the Switch Back Unit.



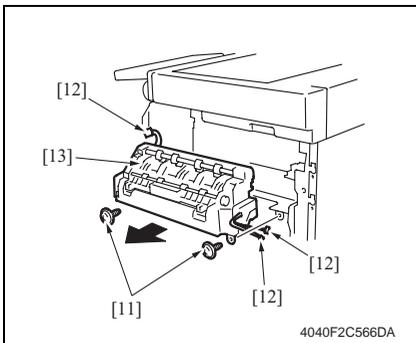
5. Loosen the screw [4] in front.
6. Remove the screw [5] in front.
7. Loosen the screw [6] in the back.
8. Remove the screw [7] in the back.



9. Remove the Switch Back Unit [8].

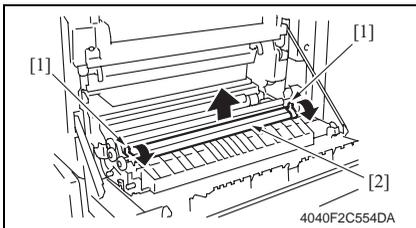


10. Remove the screw [9] and the Connector Cover [10].



11. Remove two screws [11] and unplug three connectors [12]. Then, remove the Fusing Unit [13].

### 4.6.2 Replacement of the Transfer Roller Unit



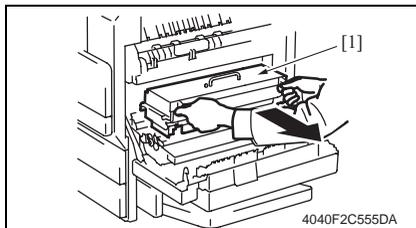
1. Open the Right Door.
2. Pull down the knobs [1] forward and remove the Transfer Roller [2].

### 4.6.3 Replacement of the Photo Conductor Unit

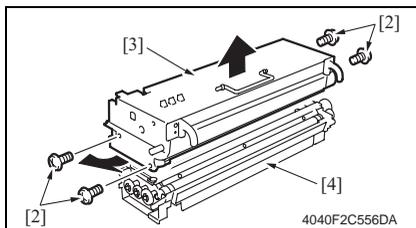
1. Select Tech. Rep. Mode → [Counter] → [Special Parts Counter] → [PC Life].
2. Press the Clear key to clear the counter value.
3. Turn OFF the main power switch.

#### NOTE

- Clear the PC Life counter before removing the IU.
- After clearing the PC Life counter, be sure to turn OFF the main power switch.



4. Open the Right Door.
5. Remove the IU [1].



6. Remove four screws (silver) [2] and disassemble the Photo Conductor Unit [3] and the Developing Unit [4].
7. Replace the Photo Conductor Unit [3].
8. To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.

#### NOTE

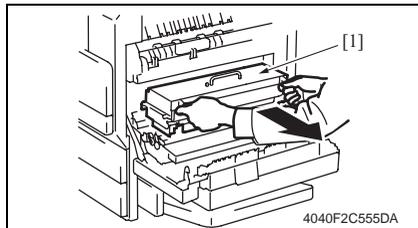
- Replace the Toner Filter (Developing Unit) with a new one at the same time.

#### 4.6.4 Replacement of the Developing Unit

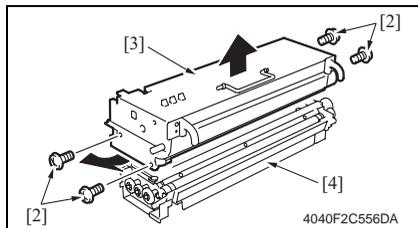
1. Select Tech. Rep. Mode → [Counter] → [Special Parts Counter] → [Developer].
2. Press the Clear key to clear the counter value.
3. Turn OFF the main power switch.

#### NOTE

- Clear the Developer counter before removing the IU.
- After clearing the Developer counter, be sure to turn OFF the main power switch.

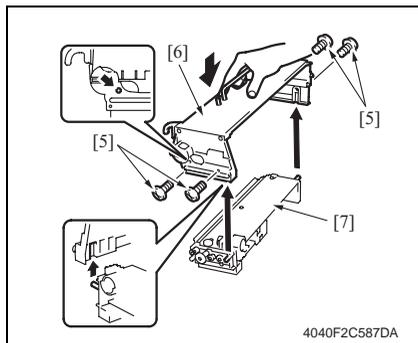


4. Open the Right Door.
5. Remove the IU [1].



6. Remove four screws (silver) [2] and disassemble the Photo Conductor Unit [3] and the Developing Unit [4].
7. Replace the Developing Unit [4].
8. Supply new developer to the new Developing Unit.

☞ 34



9. Install the four screws [5] to secure the Photo Conductor Unit [6] and Developing Unit [7].
10. Install the IU in the copier.

11. Turn ON the main power switch.
12. Select Tech. Rep. Mode → [Function] → [F8] and press the Start key.

#### NOTE

- After replacing the developer, be sure to execute F8 under Function of Tech. Rep. Mode.
- When the main power switch is turned ON, execute F8 quickly.

## 5. Service tool

### 5.1 CE Tool list

Tool name	Shape	Personnel	Parts No.	Remarks
Thermistor Holding/Check Jig	 4040F2C728DA	1	4040-7901-01	

### 5.2 Copy materials

#### 5.2.1 Developer

Parts name	Replacing period
bizhub 350	100,000 copies
bizhub 250	80,000 copies
bizhub 200	65,000 copies

#### 5.2.2 Photo Conductor Unit

Parts name	Replacing period
bizhub 350	100,000 copies
bizhub 250	80,000 copies
bizhub 200	65,000 copies

#### 5.2.3 Toner Bottle

	Parts name	Replacing period
bizhub 350	5,000-copy Copy Kit	5,000 copies
	15,000-copy Toner Kit	15,000 copies
bizhub 250 bizhub 200	5,000-copy Copy Kit	5,000 copies
	10,000-copy Toner Kit	10,000 copies

## 6. Firmware upgrade

### 6.1 Preparations for Firmware rewriting

#### 6.1.1 Service environment

- Drive which enables writing/reading of Compact flash
- Compact flash (with 32 MB or more)

#### 6.1.2 Writing into the Compact flash

- Copy the firmware files using the computer.

#### NOTE

- The copying operation should be performed on the files contained in the folder, instead of the folder.
- Copy only those files to be upgraded to the compact flash.
- If wrong firmware is copied, no control panel display is given and thus no firmware can be downloaded.

#### 6.1.3 Checking ROM version

- Before attempting to upgrade the firmware, check the current ROM version.

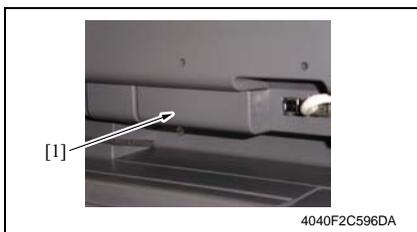
☞ 196

## 6.2 Firmware rewriting

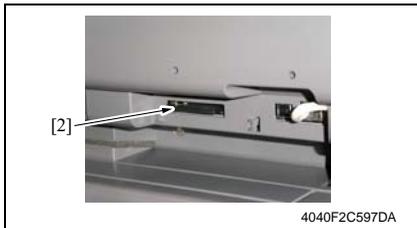
#### NOTE

- NEVER attempt to remove or insert the compact flash with the machine power turned ON.

#### 6.2.1 MSC



1. Turn OFF the main power switch.
2. Remove the Compact flash Cover [1].



3. Insert the compact flash card [2], in which only the MSC upgrading files have been written, into the slot.

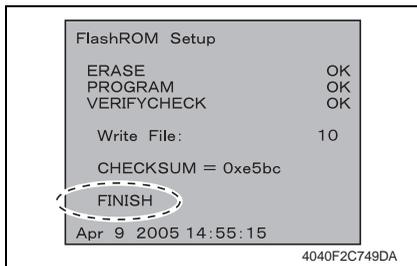
#### NOTE

- Make sure that this compact flash card contains only the upgrading firmware of the MSC, and not that of the engine or Finisher.

**NOTE**

- Be sure to turn ON the sub power switch first before turning ON the main power switch.

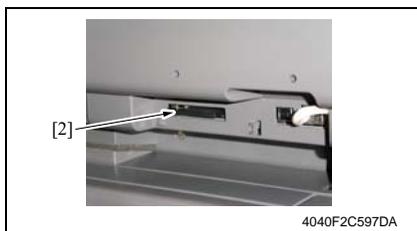
4. Turn ON the main power switch.



5. The firmware upgrading sequence will start.
6. When the upgrading sequence is completed, which is notified by the message "FINISH" appearing on the screen, turn OFF the main power switch.

**NOTE**

- NEVER turn OFF the main power switch until the message "FINISH" appears on the screen.



7. Remove the Compact Flash [2] card from the slot.

8. Turn ON the main power switch.
9. Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.
- ➡ 148
10. Select [ROM Version].
11. Make sure if the version of Firmware is updated.

### 6.2.2 Engine

#### NOTE

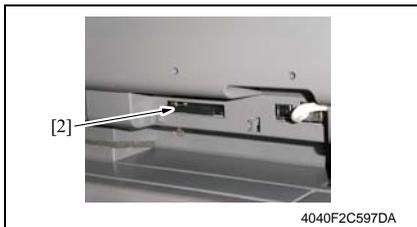
- Make sure that the MSC firmware has not been copied to the compact flash card.
- To upgrade both the engine firmware and Finisher firmware at the same time, they must first be copied onto a single compact flash.

☞ For the Finisher firmware upgrading procedures, see FS-508 Service Manual.

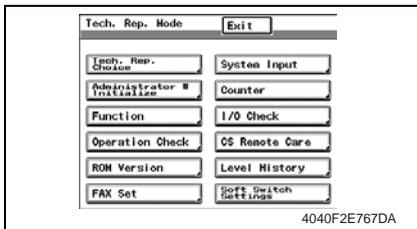
- If the files copied to the compact flash card are those of either the engine or Finisher, or wrong, no screen display is given and thus no firmware can be downloaded.



1. Turn OFF the main power switch.
2. Remove the Compact flash Cover [1].



3. Insert the compact flash card [2], to which the engine upgrading files have been copied, into the slot.



4. Open the Right Door.

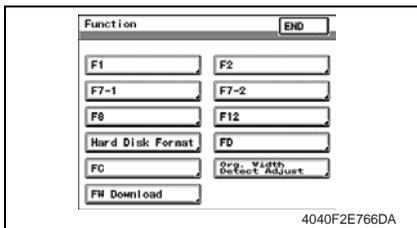
#### NOTE

- Be sure to open the Right Door before turning ON the main power switch.

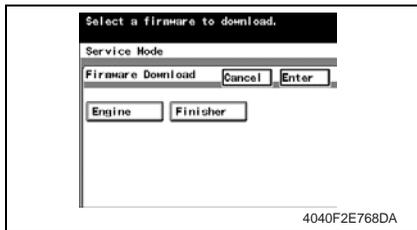
5. Turn ON the main power switch.
6. Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.

☞ 148

7. Touch [Function].



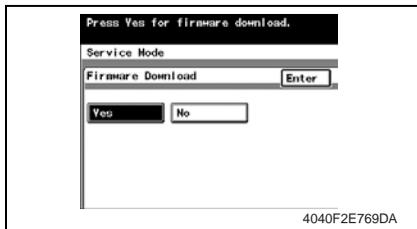
8. Touch [FW Download].



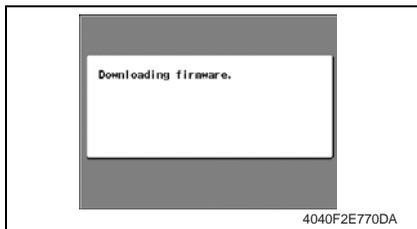
9. Select [Engine] and touch [Enter].

**NOTE**

- Touch [Finisher] also if the Finisher firmware is to be upgraded at the same time.



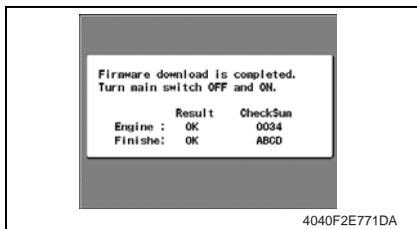
10. Select [Yes] and touch [Enter].



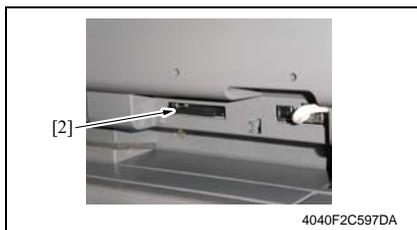
11. The firmware upgrading sequence will start.

**NOTE**

- The firmware upgrading sequence will last for 5 to 6 min. During this period, NEVER turn off the machine power.
- If the Finisher firmware is also upgraded, the entire sequence will take about 10 to 11 min.



12. When the upgrading sequence is completed, turn OFF the main power switch.



13. Remove the compact flash card [2] from the slot. After some while thereafter, turn ON the main power switch.

14. Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.

148

15. Select [ROM Version].

16. Make sure if the version of Firmware is updated.

## 7. Other

### 7.1 Disassembly/Adjustment prohibited items

#### A. Screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied

- Blue paint or green paint is applied to some screws to prevent them from coming loose.
- As a general rule, screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied should not be removed or loosened.

#### B. Red-painted screws

- Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.

#### C. Variable Resistors on Board

#### NOTE

- Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.

#### D. Removal of PWBs

#### CAUTION

- When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to “SAFETY AND IMPORTANT WARNING ITEMS” and follow the corresponding removal procedures.
- The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.
- Where it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.

## 7.2 Disassembly/Assembly/Cleaning list (Other parts)

### 7.2.1 Disassembly/Assembly parts list

No	Section	Part name	Ref. Page
1	Exterior parts	Original Scanning Glass	 49
2		Original Glass	 49
3		Front Holding Bracket	 49
4		Control Panel	 56
5		Upper Front Cover	 53
6		Front Cover	 53
7		Front Door	 51
8		Lower Front Cover	 52
9		Paper Output Cover	 52
10		Left Cover	 54
11		Rear Left Cover	 54
12		Front Right Cover	 50
13		Rear Right Cover	 50
14		Lower Right Rear Cover	 49
15		Lower Right Cover	 55
16		Rear Cover	 51
17		Upper Rear Cover	 50
18		Lower Rear Cover	 49
19		Tray 1	 56
20		Tray 2	 57
21		Tray Rear Cover	 49
22		Front Manual Bypass Cover	 55
23		Rear Manual Bypass Cover	 55
24		IR Right Cover	 51
25		IR Left Cover	 54
26		IR Upper Left Cover	 49
27	Board and etc.	Mechanical Control Board Cover	 57
28		MFBS Board	 62
29		Inverter Board	 63
30		BCRS Board	 64
31		CCD Unit	 65
32		FD Paper Size Board 1	 58
33		FD Paper Size Board 2	 59
34		High Voltage Unit	 61
35		Power Supply Unit	 60
36		Operation Board	 69

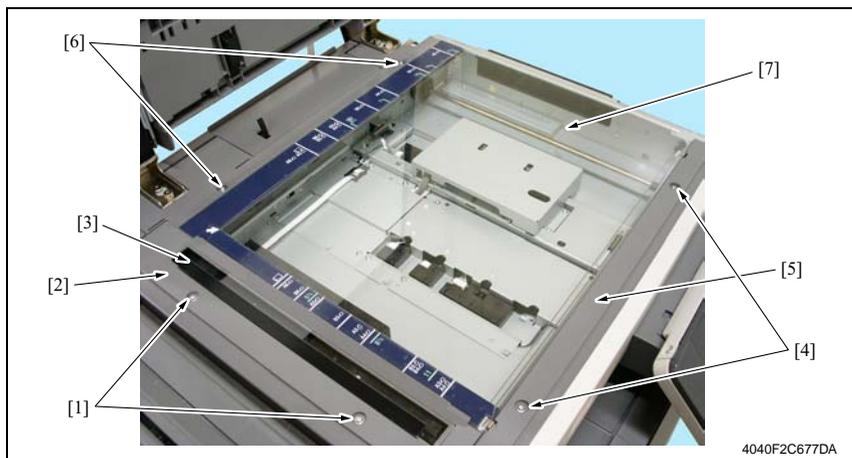
No	Section	Part name	Ref.Page
37	Unit	Manual Bypass Unit	☞ 71
38		PH Unit	☞ 71
39		Toner Hopper Unit	☞ 74
40		Toner Replenishing Drive Unit	☞ 74
41		Duplex Unit	☞ 76
42		Switch Back Unit	☞ 76
43	IR	Scanner Motor	☞ 77
44		Exposure Lamp	☞ 79
45		Exposure Unit	☞ 78
46		Scanner Drive Cables	☞ 80
47	Others	Main Motor	☞ 85
48		IU Motor	☞ 85
49		Fusing Unit Cooling Fan Motor	☞ 86
50		Toner Suction Fan Motor	☞ 86
51		Temperature/humidity Sensor	☞ 87
52		ATDC Sensor	☞ 87
53	Fusing Unit	Thermistor	☞ 89
54		Paper Exit Roll 1	☞ 91
55		Paper Exit Roll 2	☞ 91
56		Separation Claw	☞ 92

### 7.2.2 Cleaning parts list

No	Section	Part name	Ref.Page
1	Bypass	Feed Roller	☞ 94
2		Separation Roller	☞ 94
3	Tray 1	Feed Roller	☞ 95
4		Pick-up Roller	☞ 96
5		Separation Roller	☞ 97
6	Tray 2	Feed Roller	☞ 98
7		Pick-up Roller	☞ 98
8		Separation Roller	☞ 99
9	Transport	Registration Roller	☞ 100
10		Paper Dust Remover	☞ 100
11		Transport Roller	☞ 100
12	IR	Scanner rails	☞ 101
13		Bushings	☞ 101
14		Mirrors	☞ 101
15		Lens	☞ 102
16		Original Scanning Glass	☞ 102
17		Original Glass	☞ 102
18	Others	Charge Neutralizing Plate	☞ 103
19		Ds Collar	☞ 103

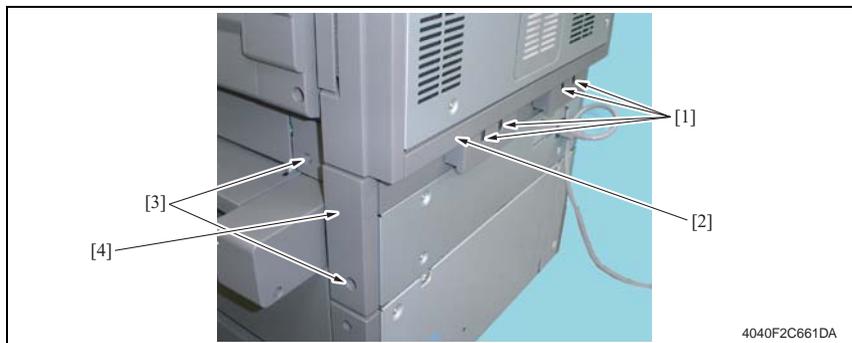
## 7.3 Disassembly/Assembly procedure

### 7.3.1 IR Upper Left Cover/Original Scanning Glass/Front Holding Bracket/Original Glass

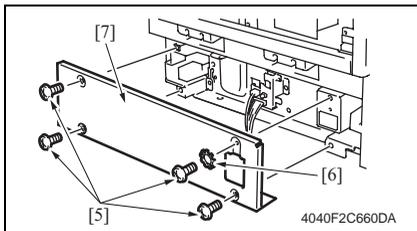


1. Remove two Screws [1], and remove the IR Upper Left Cover [2].
2. Remove the Original Scanning Glass [3].
3. Remove two Screws [4], and remove the Front Holding Bracket [5].
4. Remove two Screws [6], and remove the Original Glass [7].

### 7.3.2 Lower Rear Cover/Lower Right Rear Cover/Tray Rear Cover



1. Remove four Screws [1], and remove the Lower Rear Cover [2].
2. Remove two Screws [3], and remove the Lower Right Rear Cover [4].

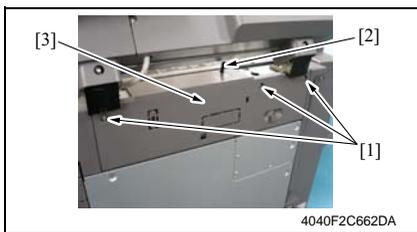


3. Remove the four screws [5], one wave washer [6], and the Tray Rear Cover [7].

**CAUTION**

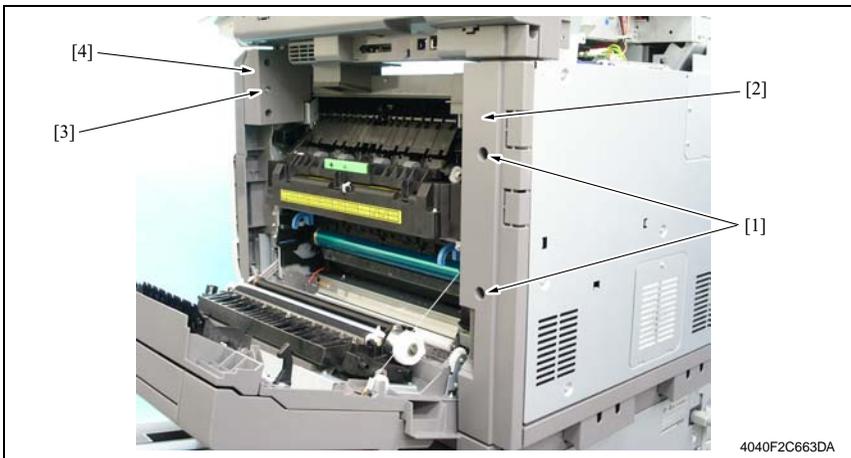
- Make sure that the wave washer is installed at the correct position.

### 7.3.3 Upper Rear Cover



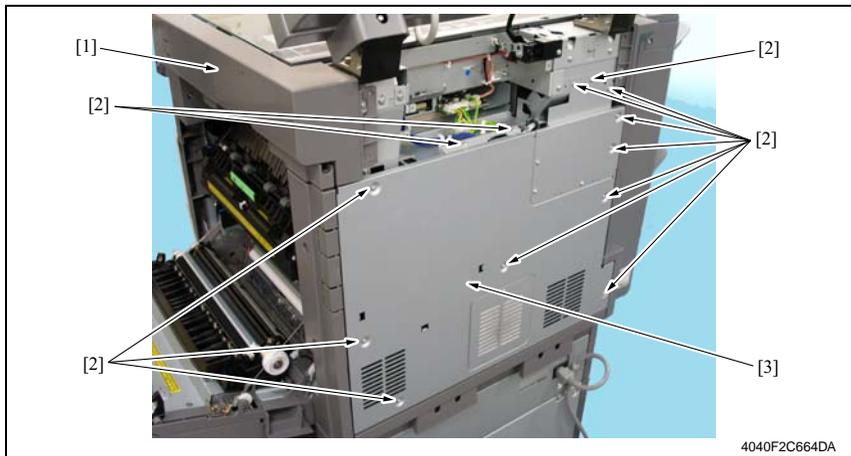
1. Remove three screws [1] and, pushing down the actuator [2], remove the Upper Rear Cover [3].

### 7.3.4 Rear Right Cover/Front Right Cover



1. Open the Right Door.
2. Remove two Screws [1], and remove the Rear Right Cover [2].
3. Remove the Screws [3], and remove the Front Right Cover [4].

### 7.3.5 IR Right Cover/Rear Cover



1. Open the Right Door.
2. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.
3. Remove the IR Right Cover [1].
4. Remove thirteen Screws [2], and remove the Rear Cover [3].

### 7.3.6 Front Door



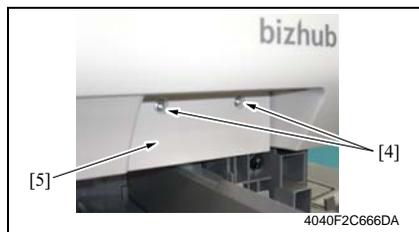
1. Open the Front Door [1].
2. Remove the screw [2], C-clip [3], and the Front Door [1].

### 7.3.7 Paper Output Cover/Lower Front Cover



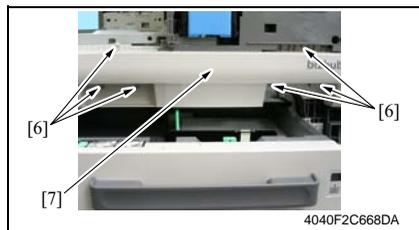
4040F2C575DA

1. Open the Front Door [1].
2. Remove three screws [2] and the Paper Output Cover [3].



4040F2C666DA

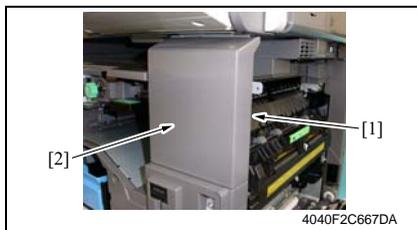
3. Slide out the Tray 1.
4. Remove two screws [4] and the Connector Cover [5].



4040F2C668DA

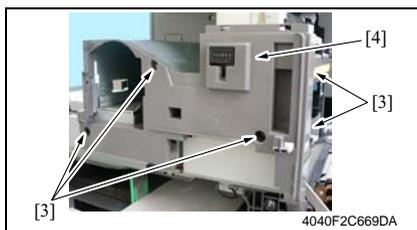
5. Remove the Front Door.
- 51
6. Remove six screws [6] and the Lower Front Cover [7].

### 7.3.8 Upper Front Cover/Front Cover



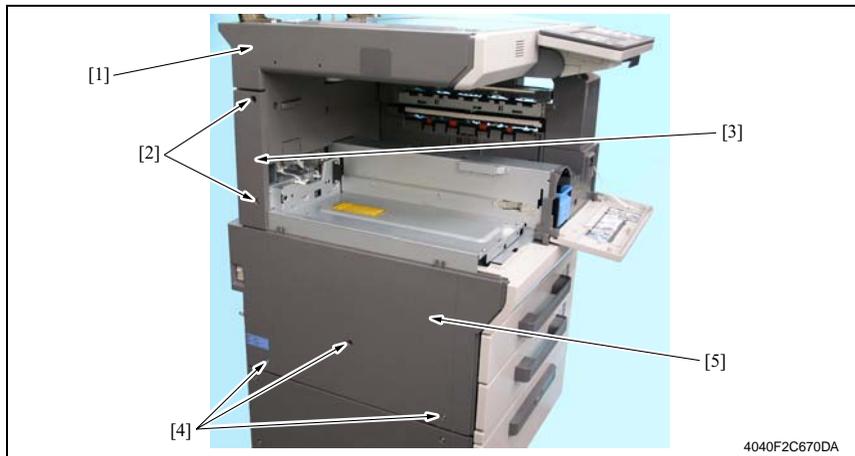
1. Open the Right Door.
2. Remove the Front Right Cover.  
☞ 50
3. Remove the screw [1] and the Upper Front Cover [2].

4. Remove the Toner Hopper Unit.  
☞ 74
5. Remove the Paper Output Cover.  
☞ 52
6. Remove the Front Door.  
☞ 51
7. Remove the Lower Front Cover.  
☞ 52

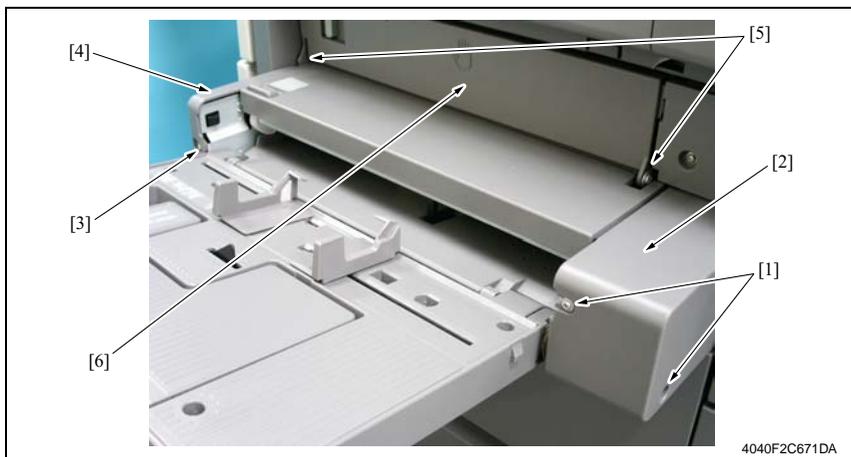


8. Remove five screws [3] and the Front Cover [4].

### 7.3.9 IR Left Cover/Rear Left Cover/Left Cover



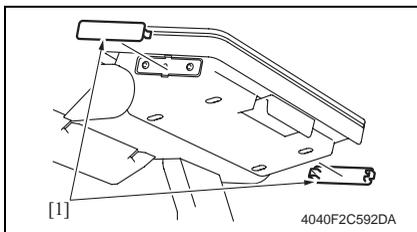
1. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.  
🔧 50
2. Remove the IR Left Cover [1].
3. Remove two screws [2] and the Rear Left Cover [3].
4. Remove the Rear Cover.  
🔧 51
5. Remove the Paper Output Cover.  
🔧 52
6. Remove three screws [4] and the Left Cover [5].

**7.3.10 Rear Manual Bypass Cover/Front Manual Bypass Cover/Lower Right Cover**

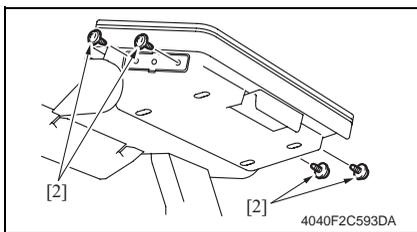
1. Remove two screws [1] and the Rear Manual Bypass Cover [2].
2. Remove the screw [3] and the Front Manual Bypass Cover [4].
3. Remove the Manual Bypass Unit.
4. Remove two tabs [5] and the Lower Right Door Cover [6].

☞ 71

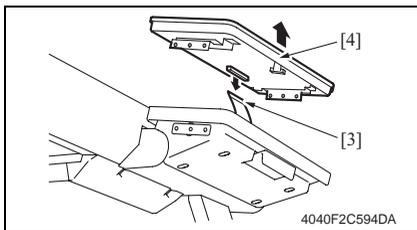
### 7.3.11 Control Panel



1. Remove two screw covers [1].

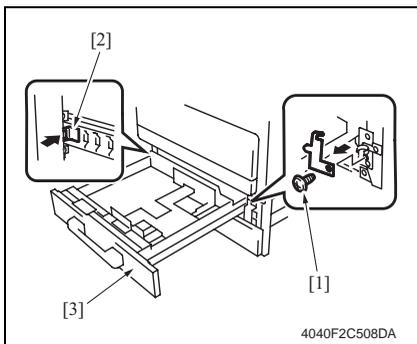


2. Remove the four screws [2] on the sides of the Control Panel.



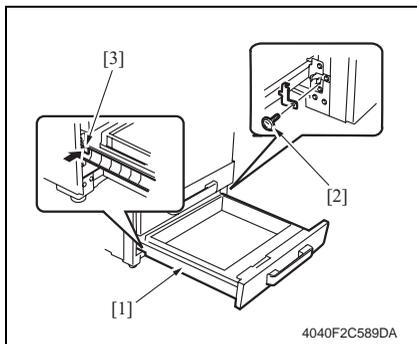
3. Disconnect the connector [3] and remove the Control Panel [4].

### 7.3.12 Tray 1



1. Slide out the Tray 1 [3].  
2. Remove the screw [1] and, holding the stopper [2], remove the Tray 1 [3].

### 7.3.13 Tray 2



1. Slide out the Tray 2 [1].
2. Remove the screw [2] and, holding the stopper [3], remove the Tray 2 [1].

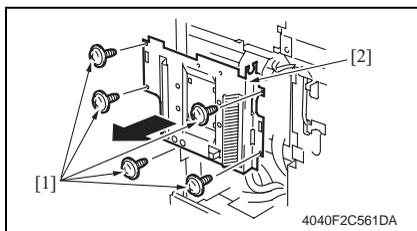
### 7.3.14 Mechanical Control Board Cover

1. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.

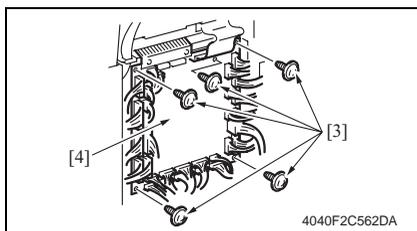
☞ 50

2. Remove the Rear Cover.

☞ 51



3. Remove five screws [1] and the Mechanical Control Board Cover [2].



4. Unplug the all connectors.
5. Remove five screws [3] and the Mechanical Control Board [4].

#### NOTE

- When replacing the Mechanical Control Board, be sure to replace the EEPROM.

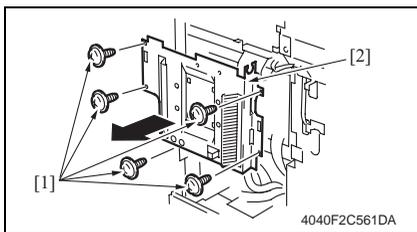
☞ 110

- When the Mechanical Control Board has been replaced with a new one, check the ROM version and upgrade the firmware to the latest version.

☞ 42

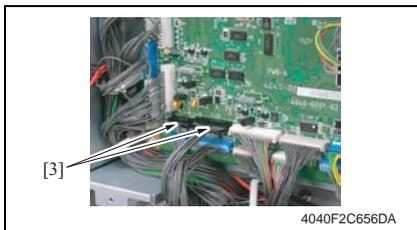
### 7.3.15 FD Paper Size Board 1

1. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.  
☞ 50
2. Remove the Rear Cover.  
☞ 51

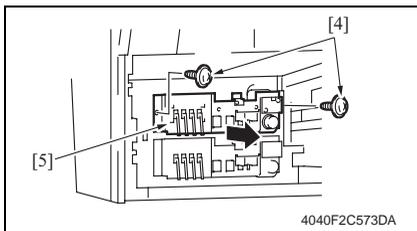


3. Remove five screws [1] and the Mechanical Control Board Cover [2].

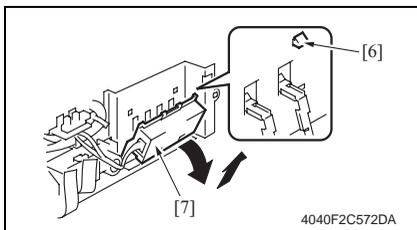
4. Remove the Tray 1.  
☞ 56



5. Disconnect two connectors (PJ23, PJ24) [3] from the Mechanical Control Board.



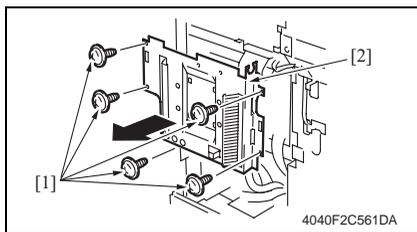
6. Remove two screws [4] and the Lift-Up Assy [5].



7. Remove four tabs [6] and the FD Paper Size Board Assy [7].

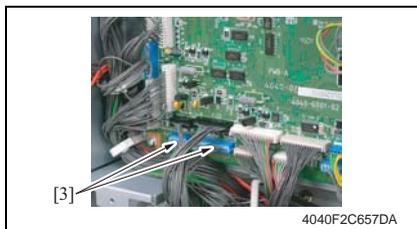
### 7.3.16 FD Paper Size Board 2

1. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.  
☞ 50
2. Remove the Rear Cover.  
☞ 51

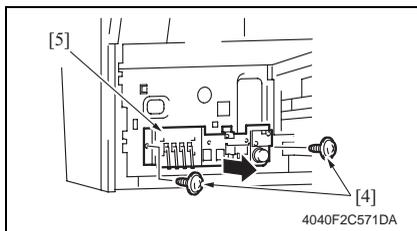


3. Remove five screws [1] and the Mechanical Control Board Cover [2].

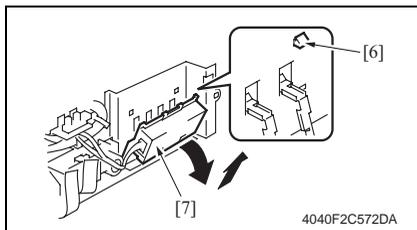
4. Remove the Tray Rear Cover.  
☞ 49
5. Remove the Lower Rear Cover.  
☞ 49
6. Remove the Tray 2.  
☞ 57



7. Disconnect two connectors (PJ25, PJ26) [3] from the Mechanical Control Board.



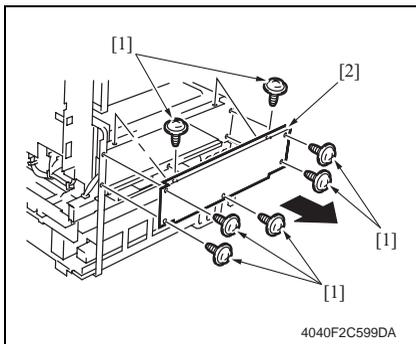
8. Remove two screws [4] and the Lift-Up Assy [5].



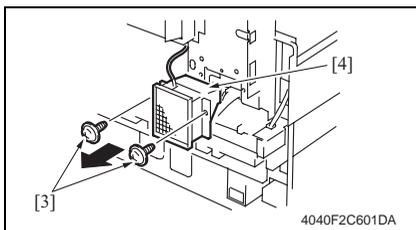
9. Remove four tabs [6] and the FD Paper Size Board Assy [7].

### 7.3.17 Power Supply Unit

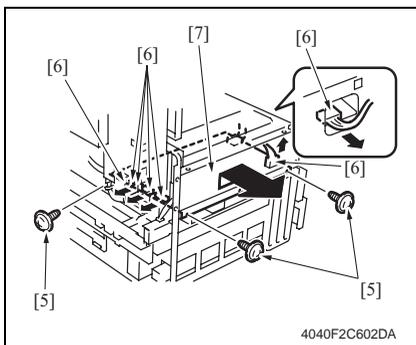
1. Remove the Paper Output Cover.  
☞ 52
2. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.  
☞ 50
3. Remove the Rear Cover.  
☞ 51
4. Remove the Rear Left Cover.  
☞ 54
5. Remove the Left Cover.  
☞ 54



6. Remove seven screws [1] and the Power Supply Unit Cover [2].



7. Remove two screws [3] and the Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor [4].

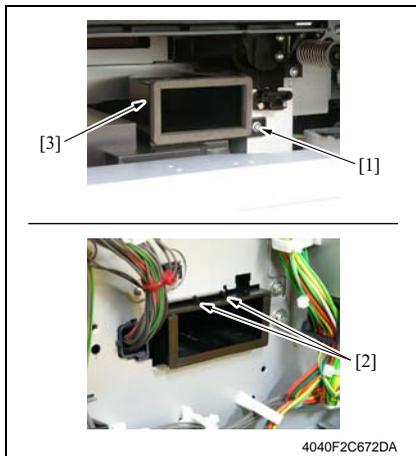


8. Unplug seven connectors [5] and remove three screws [6] and the Power Supply Unit Assy [7].

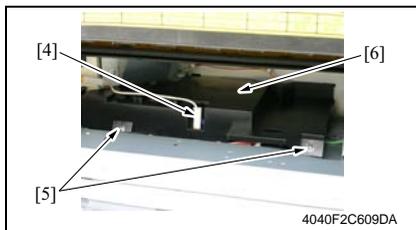
- CAUTION**
- At reinstallation, make sure that the harness is not slack.

### 7.3.18 High Voltage Unit

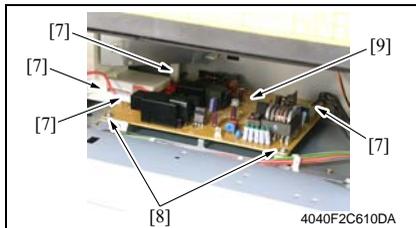
1. Open the Right Door.
2. Remove the Imaging Unit.
3. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.  
☞ 50
4. Remove the Rear Cover.  
☞ 51
5. Remove the Toner Suction Fan Motor.  
☞ 86



6. Remove the screw [1] and unhook two tabs [2] on the rear side surface. Then, remove the Toner Suction Duct [3].



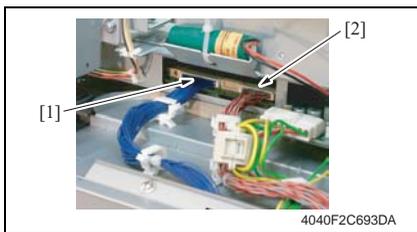
7. Unplug the connector [4] and remove two screws [5] and the High Voltage Unit Cover [6].



8. Unplug four connectors [7] and remove two screws [8] and the High Voltage Unit [9].

### 7.3.19 MFBS Board

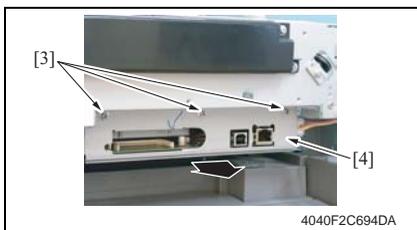
1. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.  
👉 50
2. Remove the IR Right Cover.  
👉 51



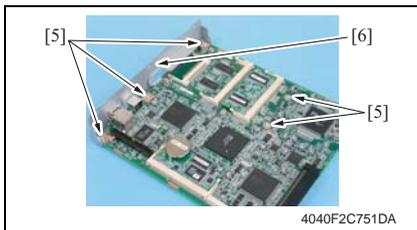
3. Unplug the connector (CN7) [1].

#### NOTE

- If the Fax Kit is mounted, disconnect the two connectors (CN7 [1], CN6 [2]).



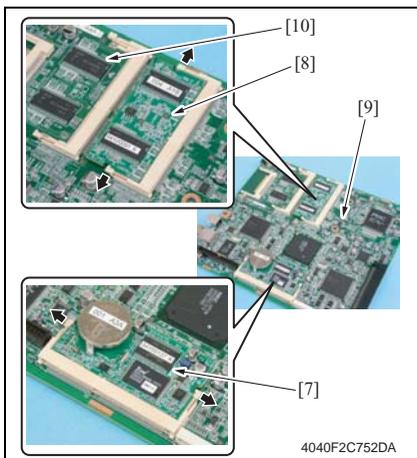
4. Remove three screws [3] and the MFBS Board Assy [4].



5. Remove five screws [5] and the MFBS Board mounting bracket [6].

#### NOTE

- Remove the Hard Disk if one is mounted.



6. Remove the stopper, RAMS Board [7], and MEMS Board [8].

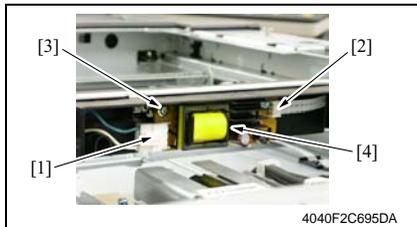
7. Remove the MFBS Board [9].

#### NOTE

- Remove the MEM Board [10] if mounted in the expansion slot.

### 7.3.20 Inverter Board

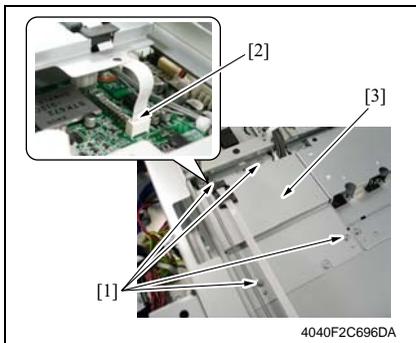
1. Remove the IR Upper Left Cover.  
☞ 49
2. Remove the Front Holding Bracket.  
☞ 49
3. Remove the Original Glass.  
☞ 49



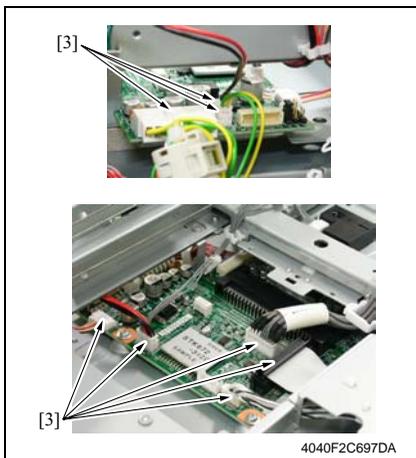
4. Disconnect the connector [1] and remove the flat cable [2], screw [3], and the Inverter Board [4].

### 7.3.21 BCRS Board

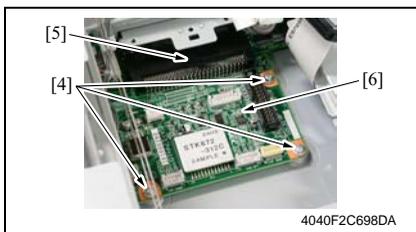
1. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.  
☞ 50
2. Remove the IR Upper Left Cover.  
☞ 49
3. Remove the Front Holding Bracket.  
☞ 49
4. Remove the Original Glass.  
☞ 49



5. Remove four screws [1], flat cable [2], and the BCRS Board cover [3].



6. Unplug eight connectors [3].

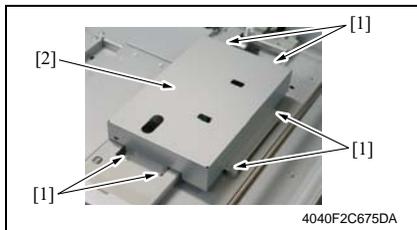


7. Remove three screws [4], disconnect the connector [5], and remove the BCRS Board [6].

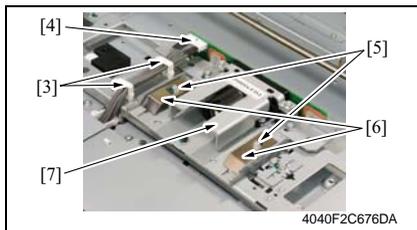
### 7.3.22 CCD Unit

#### A. Replacing Procedure

1. Remove the IR Upper Left Cover.  
☞ 49
2. Remove the Front Holding Bracket.  
☞ 49
3. Remove the Original Glass.  
☞ 49



4. Remove six screws [1] and the CCD Unit Cover [2].



5. Move the Exposure Unit, remove the wiring saddle [3], and disconnect the connector [4].
6. Remove two screws [5] and two flat springs [6]. Then, remove the CCD Unit [7].

#### NOTE

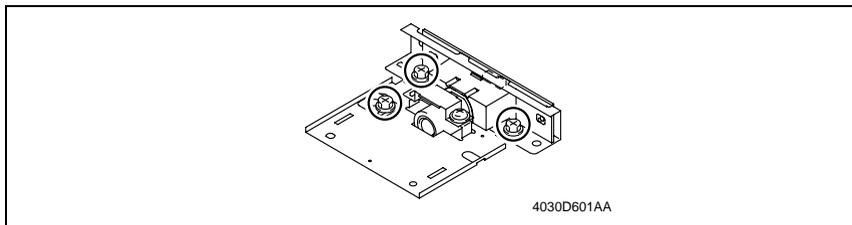
**When the CCD Unit has been replaced with a new one, make the installation adjustment that must be made when the CCD Unit is replaced.**

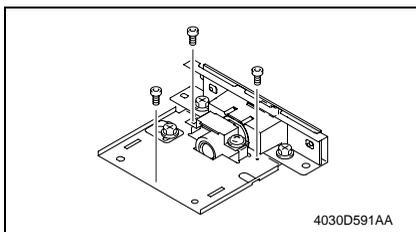
☞ 65

#### B. Installation Adjustment to be Made when CCD Unit is Replaced

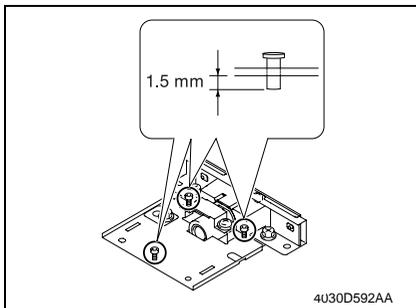
##### NOTE

- **Make this adjustment only when the CCD Unit has been replaced with a new one.**
- **Before attempting to make this adjustment, make sure that registration and erase adjustments for the printer have been completed.**
- **Do not loosen or remove the screws shown below.**





1. Screw the three adjusting screws [2] into the CCD Unit [1] only to half the thread length of each screw.

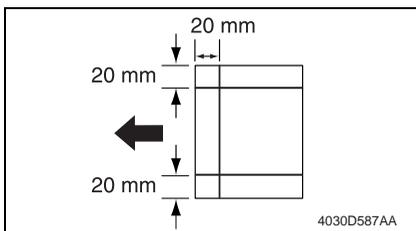


2. From the bottom side of the CCD Unit, adjust the dimension of the screw thread protrusion to 1.5 mm (at three places).

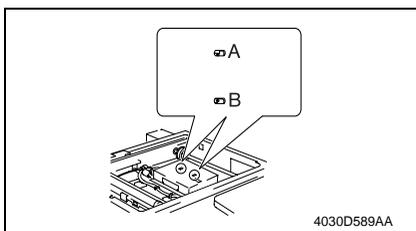
3. Using two screws and a flat spring, install the CCD Unit in position.
4. Fit two cables to the CCD Unit.
5. Using six screws, install the CCD Unit cover.
6. Install the Original Glass, Front Holding Bracket and IR Upper Left Cover.

#### NOTE

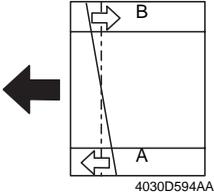
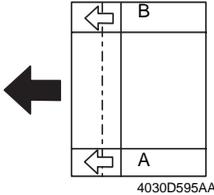
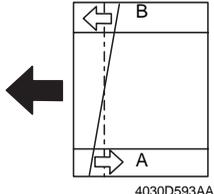
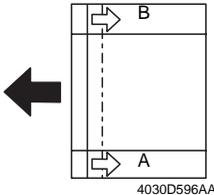
- The CCD Unit is to be adjusted through the subsequent procedures and there is no need to tighten the screws of the Original Glass, Front Holding Bracket, and IR Upper Left Cover.

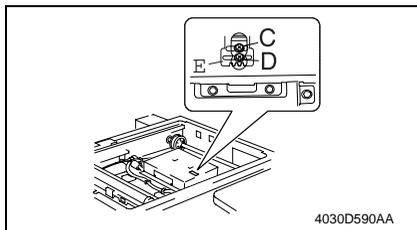


7. Turn ON the main power switch.
8. If the setting in Scanner Registration or Scanner Zoom Adjust available from the Adjust mode has been changed, set the function to 0 (zero) or 1.000 (zoom ratio).
9. Prepare a test chart as shown on the left and make a copy of it.

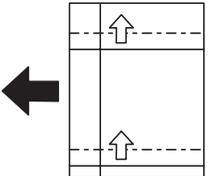
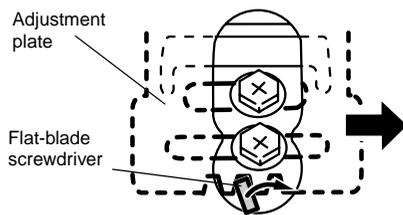
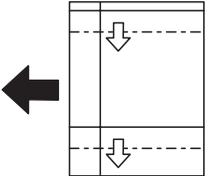
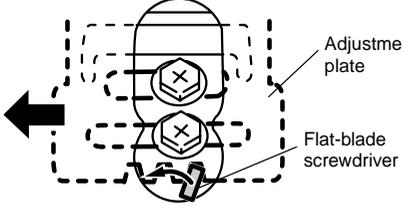


10. Measure tilt and deviation in the FD direction of the produced copy as compared with reference to the reference line in the FD direction of the test chart.
11. If there is any tilt or deviation in the FD direction, follow the steps given below to make an adjustment using screws A and B.

Tilt and FD Deviation	Adjustment Procedure Using Screws A and B
 <p>4030D594AA</p>  <p>4030D595AA</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If tilt or deviation in the FD direction is as shown on the left                      A: Using an Allen wrench (3 mm), turn screw A counterclockwise.                      B: Using an Allen wrench (3 mm), turn screw B clockwise.</li> </ul> <p>* 1/4 turn of the screw results in deviation of 1 mm.</p>
 <p>4030D593AA</p>  <p>4030D596AA</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If tilt or deviation in the FD direction is as shown on the left                      A: Using an Allen wrench (3 mm), turn screw A counterclockwise.                      B: Using an Allen wrench (3 mm), turn screw B clockwise.</li> </ul> <p>* 1/4 turn of the screw results in deviation of 1 mm.</p>



- Measure deviation in the CD direction of the produced copy as compared with reference to the reference line in the CD direction of the test chart.
- If there is any deviation in the CD direction, loosen screws C and D and follow these steps to make an adjustment using adjustment plate E.

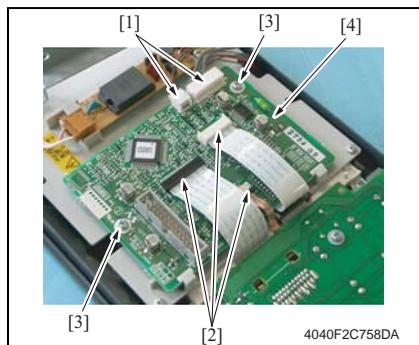
CD Deviation	Adjustment Procedure Using Adjustment Plate E
 <p>4030D597AA</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If deviation in the CD direction is as shown on the left</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Using a flat-blade screwdriver, turn adjustment plate E counterclockwise.</li> </ol>  <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tighten screws C and D.</li> </ol>
 <p>4030D598AA</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If deviation in the CD direction is as shown on the left</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Using a flat-blade screwdriver, turn adjustment plate E clockwise.</li> </ol>  <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tighten screws C and D.</li> </ol>

- Remove the CCD Unit cover.
- Apply lock paint to adjusting screws A, B, C, and D.
- Reinstall the CCD Unit cover.
- Reinstall the Original Glass, Front Holding Bracket and IR Upper Left Cover.
- Reinstall all covers that have been removed.

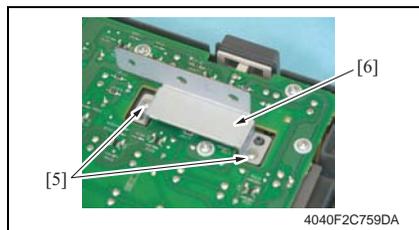
### 7.3.23 Operation Board

1. Remove the Operation Panel.

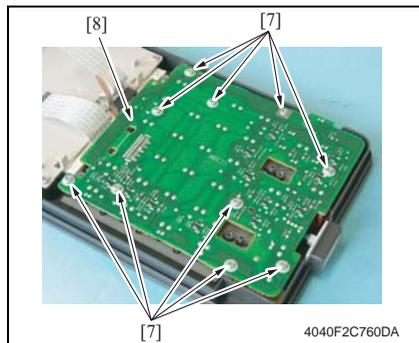
56



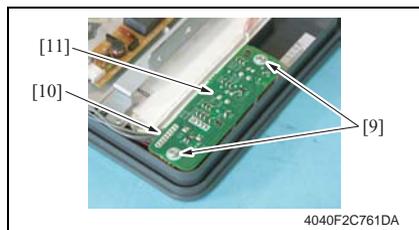
- 2. Disconnect two connectors [1] and remove three flat cables [2]
- 3. Remove two screws [3] and the Operation Board 1 [4].



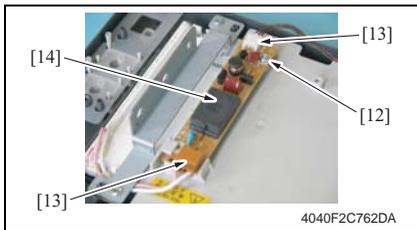
- 4. Remove two screws [5] and the Bracket [6].



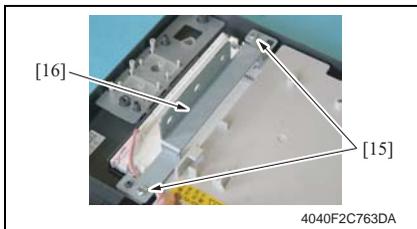
- 5. Remove ten screws [7] and the Operation Key Board 1 [8].



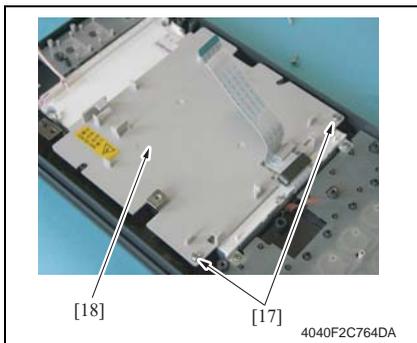
- 6. Remove two screws [9], connector [10], and the Operation Key Board 2 [11].



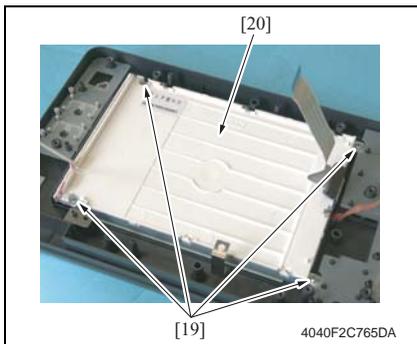
7. Remove the screw [12], two connectors [13], and the Operation Board 2 [14].



8. Remove two screws [15] and the Bracket [16].



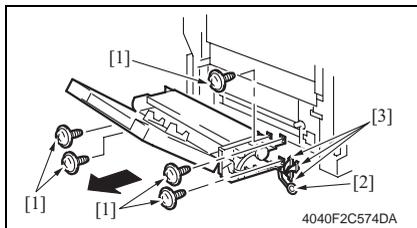
9. Remove two screws [17] and the LCD Board Cover [18].



10. Remove four screws [19] and the LCD Board [20].

### 7.3.24 Manual Bypass Unit

1. Remove the Rear Right Cover.  
☞ 50
2. Remove the Lower Right Rear Cover.  
☞ 49
3. Remove the Front Manual Bypass Cover.  
☞ 55
4. Remove the Rear Manual Bypass Cover.  
☞ 55



5. Remove five screws [1] and ground wire [2], disconnect the three connectors [3], and remove the Manual Bypass Unit [4].

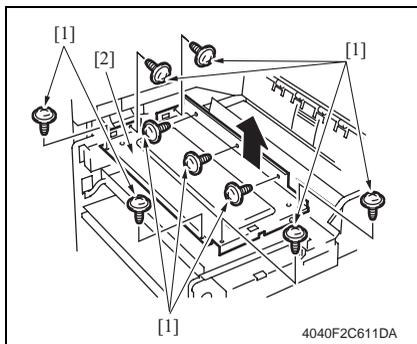
#### NOTE

- When the Manual Bypass Unit has been mounted, be sure to perform the Manual Bypass Unit Installation Check procedures.

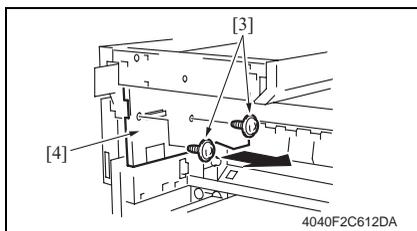
☞ 214

### 7.3.25 PH Unit

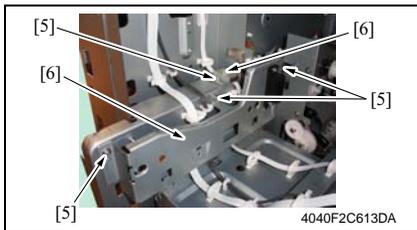
1. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.  
☞ 50
2. Remove the Rear Cover.  
☞ 51
3. Open the Front Door.
4. Remove the Paper Output Cover.  
☞ 52



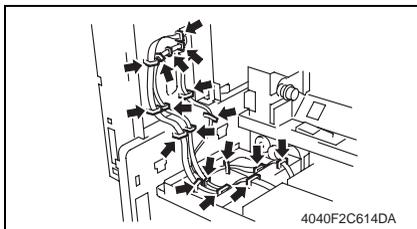
5. Remove nine screws [1] and the PH protective metal bracket [2].



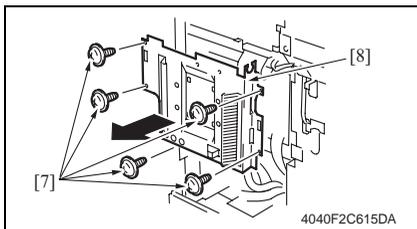
6. Remove two screws [3] and the Paper Output Tray Rear Cover [4].



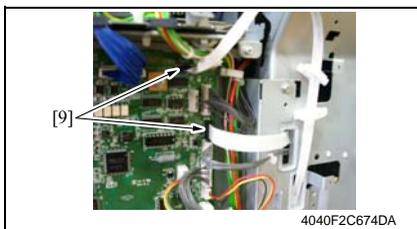
7. Remove four screws [5] and two harness protective metal brackets [6].



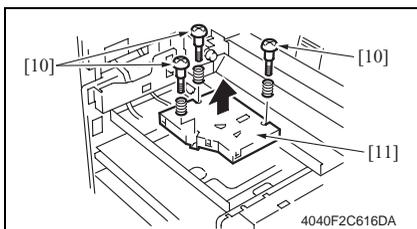
8. Remove the harness from the cord holder.



9. Remove five screws [7] and the Mechanical Control Board Cover [8].



10. Remove two flat cables (PJ3, PJ35) [9].



11. Remove three screws [10] and the PH Unit [11].

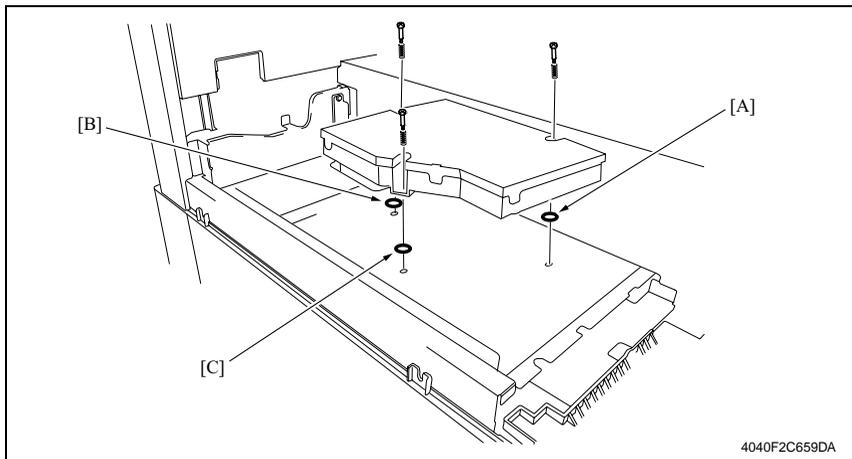
- When replacing the PH, install spacers according to the color of the labels affixed to the PH.

PH label color	Screw Position		
	A	B	C
Green label	No spacer	No spacer	No spacer
Blue label	No spacer	0.1 mm spacer	0.2 mm spacer
Yellow label	0.2 mm spacer	0.1 mm spacer	No spacer

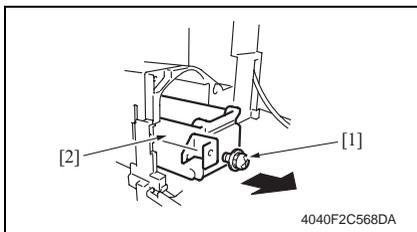
- Spacers Used

	Part No.	Spacer Color
0.1 mm spacer	4030-2053-01	Black
0.2 mm spacer	4030-2054-01	White

- Should be screw installation position



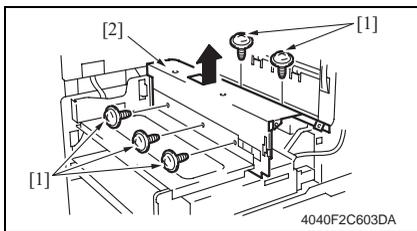
### 7.3.26 Toner Hopper Unit



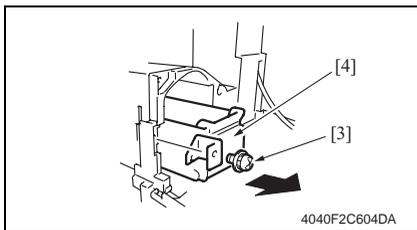
1. Open the Front Door.
2. Remove the screw [1] and the Toner Hopper Unit [2].

### 7.3.27 Toner Replenishing Drive Unit

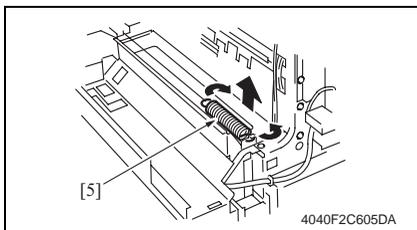
1. Remove the Imaging Unit.
2. Remove the Front Door.
- ☞ 51
3. Remove the Paper Output Cover.
- ☞ 52
4. Open the Right Door.
5. Remove the Front Cover.
- ☞ 53
6. Remove the Lower Front Cover.
- ☞ 52



7. Remove five screws [1] and the toner hopper protective metal bracket [2].



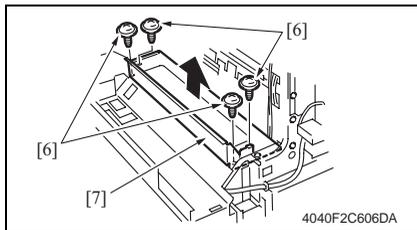
8. Remove the screw [3] and the Toner Hopper Unit [4].



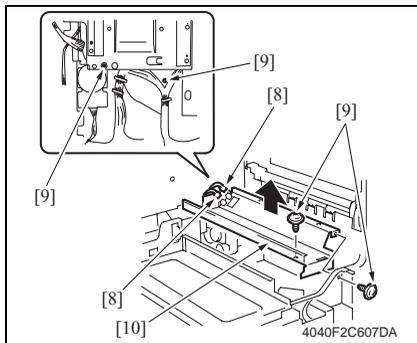
9. Close the right door and remove the pressure spring [5].

#### NOTE

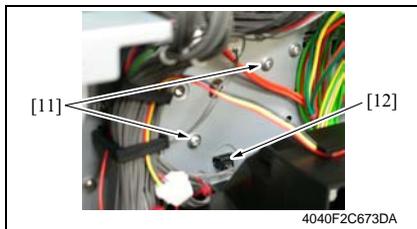
- Make sure that the right door is kept closed.



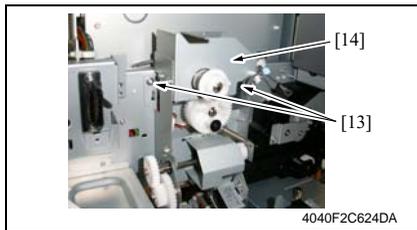
10. Remove four screws [6] and the imaging unit protective metal bracket [7].



11. Unplug two connectors [8] and remove four screws [9] and the Toner Hopper Assy [10].



12. Remove the two screws [11] and disconnect the connector [12] from the rear side surface.

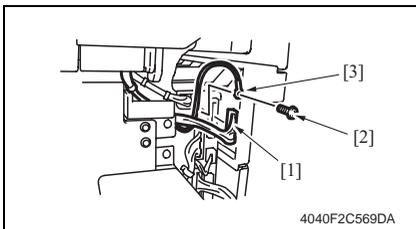


13. Remove two screws [13] and the Toner Replenishing Drive Unit [14].

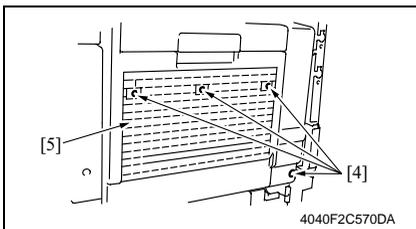
### 7.3.28 Duplex Unit

1. Remove the Lower Right Rear Cover.

 49



2. Disconnect the connector [1] and remove the screw [2] and ground wire [3].

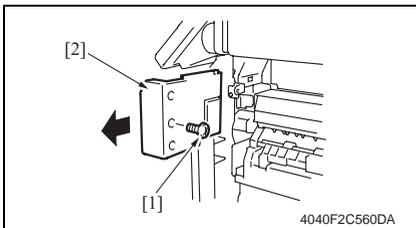


3. Remove four screws [4] and the Duplex Unit [5].

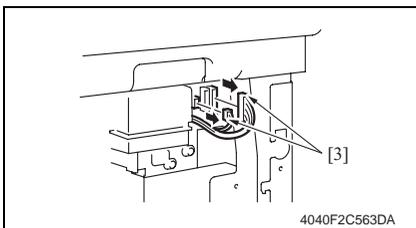
### 7.3.29 Switch Back Unit

1. Open the Right Door.
2. Remove the Rear Right Cover.

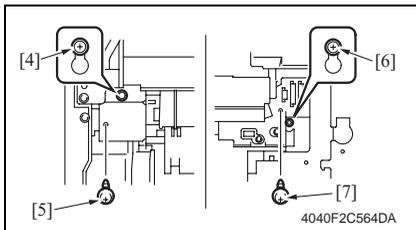
 50



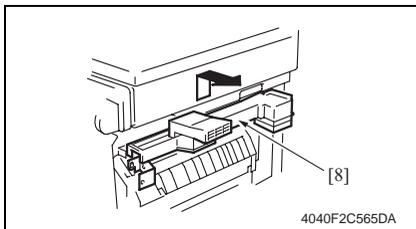
3. Remove the screw [1] and the Front Right Cover [2].



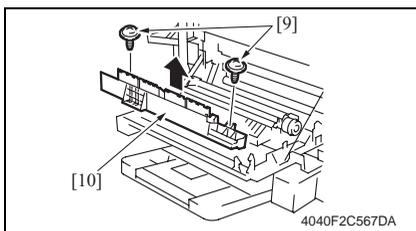
4. Unplug two connectors [3] of the Switch Back Unit.



5. Loosen the screw [4] in front.
6. Remove the screw [5] in front.
7. Loosen the screw [6] in the back.
8. Remove the screw [7] in the back.



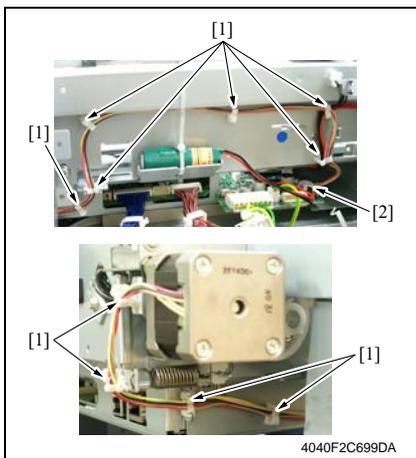
9. Remove the Switch Back Unit [8].



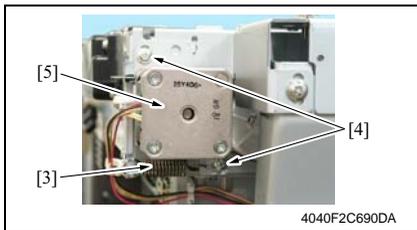
10. Remove two screws [9] and the lower Switch Back Unit [10].

### 7.3.30 Scanner Motor

1. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.
  - ☞ 50
2. Remove the IR Right Cover.
  - ☞ 51



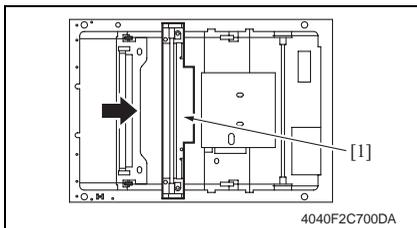
3. Remove ten wiring saddles [1] and disconnect the connector [2].



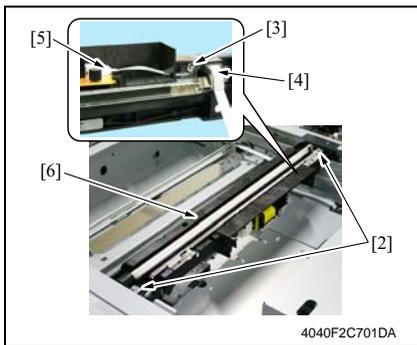
4. Remove the spring [3], two screws [4] and the scanner motor [5].

### 7.3.31 Exposure Unit

1. Remove the IR Upper Left Cover.  
☞ 49
2. Remove the Front Holding Bracket.  
☞ 49
3. Remove the Original Glass.  
☞ 49



4. Slide the Exposure Unit [1] to the removal position.



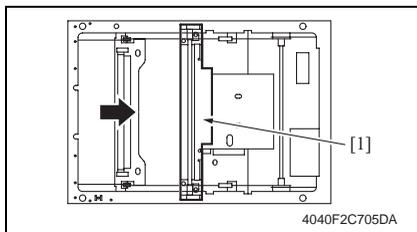
5. Remove two screws [2].
6. Remove the screw [3] and the flat cable [4].
7. Remove the flat cable [5] and the Exposure Unit [6].
8. To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.

#### NOTE

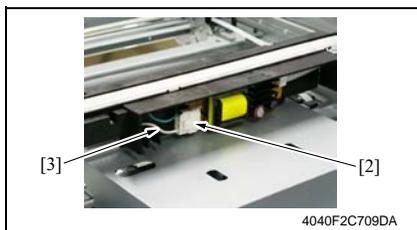
- If the Exposure Unit has been removed, be sure to make the Scanner positioning adjustment.

☞ 212

### 7.3.32 Exposure Lamp

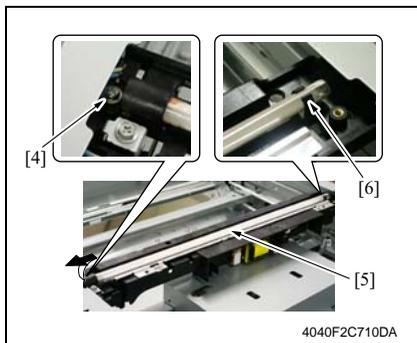
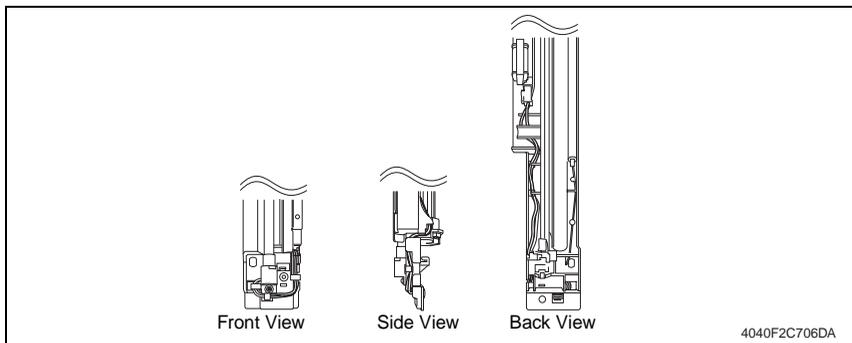


1. Remove the IR Upper Left Cover.  
☞ 49
2. Remove the Front Holding Bracket.  
☞ 49
3. Remove the Original Glass.  
☞ 49
4. Move the Exposure Unit [1] to the removal position.



5. Disconnect the connector [2] and remove the Exposure Lamp harness [3].

• Reinstall the Exposure Lamp harness as follows.

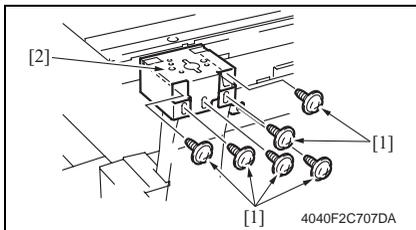


6. Remove the screw [4].
7. Slide the Exposure Lamp [5] to the front and pull it off the holder [6].

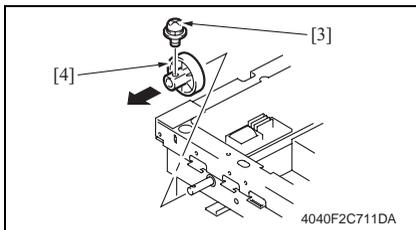
### 7.3.33 Scanner Drive Cables

#### A. Removal Procedure

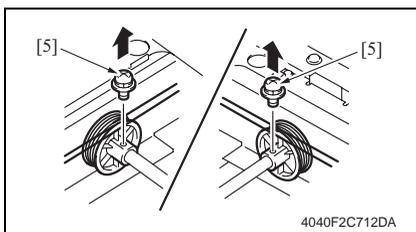
1. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.  
☞ 50
2. Remove the IR Upper Left Cover.  
☞ 49
3. Remove the Front Holding Bracket.  
☞ 49
4. Remove the Original Glass.  
☞ 49
5. Remove the Exposure Unit.  
☞ 78
6. Remove the Scanner Motor.  
☞ 77



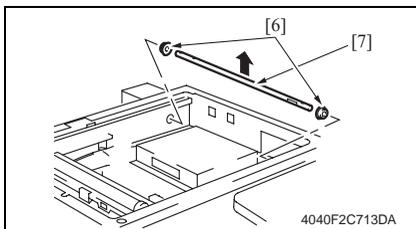
7. Remove six screws [1] and the Original Cover hinge support [2].



8. Remove the screw [3] and the Scanner Drive Gear [4] from the shaft.



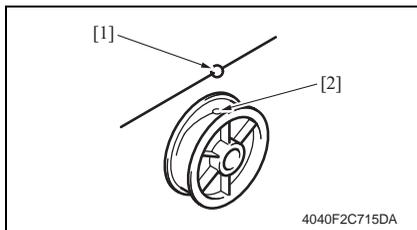
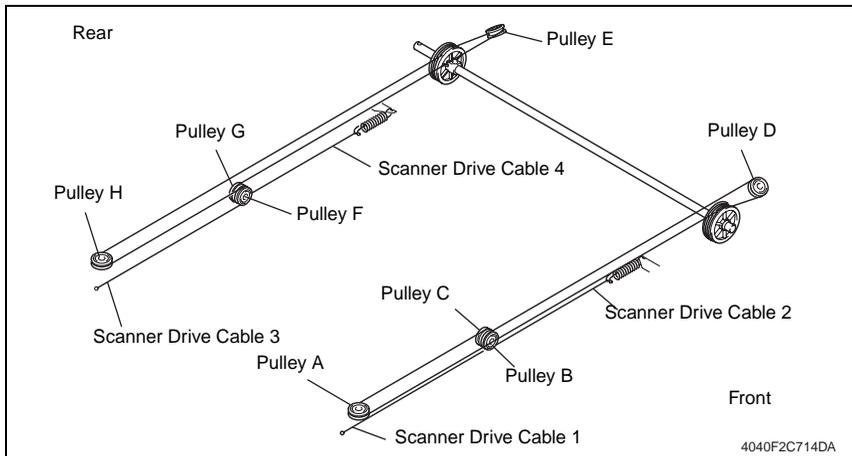
9. Remove two screws [5] and the front and rear pulleys.



10. Remove the bearing [6] and shaft [7].
11. Remove the Scanner Drive Cables from each hook.

**B. Reinstallation Procedure**

<General View>

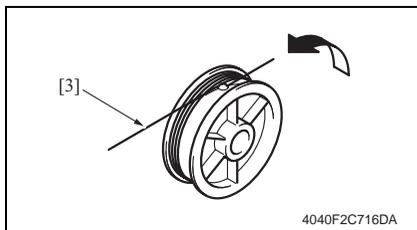


<Front>

1. Position the round bead [1] of the Scanner Drive Cable in the slit [2] in the pulley.

**NOTE**

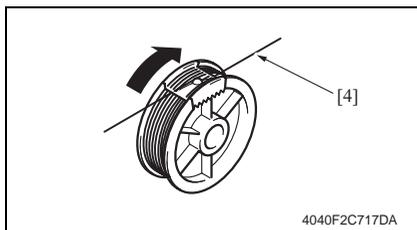
- Make sure that the bead snugly rests in the slit in the pulley.



2. Wind Scanner Drive Cable 1 [3] around the pulley four turns counter-clockwise, from the rear toward the front side.

**NOTE**

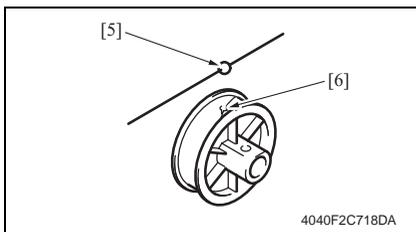
- Make sure that no part of the cable rides on the other.



3. Wind Scanner Drive Cable 2 four turns clockwise from the front to the rear side. Then, secure the cable with tape.

**NOTE**

- Make sure that no part of the cable rides on the other.

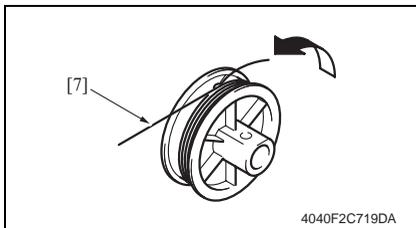


<Rear>

- Position the round bead [5] of the Scanner Drive Cable in the slit [6] in the pulley.

**NOTE**

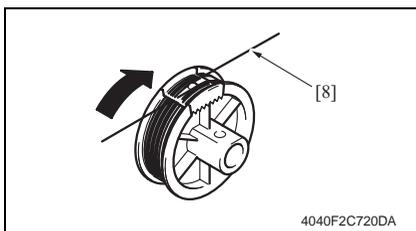
- Make sure that the bead snugly rests in the slit in the pulley.



- Wind Scanner Drive Cable 3 [7] around the pulley four turns counter-clockwise, from the rear toward the front side.

**NOTE**

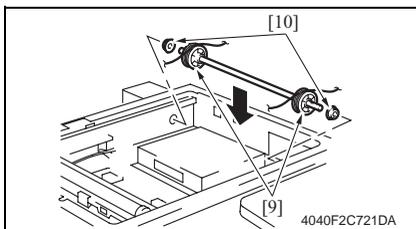
- Make sure that no part of the cable rides on the other.



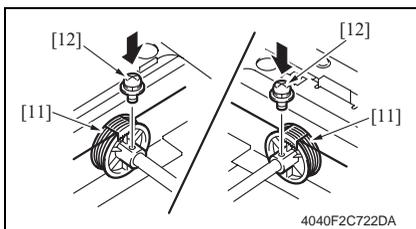
- Wind Scanner Drive Cable 4 [8] four turns clockwise from the rear to the front side. Then, secure the cable with tape.

**NOTE**

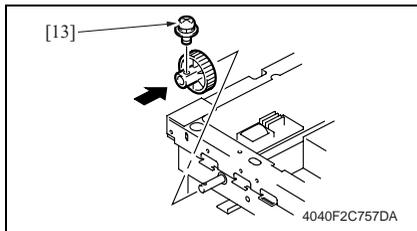
- Make sure that no part of the cable rides on the other.



- Install two pulleys (front and rear) [9] to the shaft.
- Attach two bushings [10] to the shaft.



- Secure the front and rear pulleys [11] using one screw each [12].

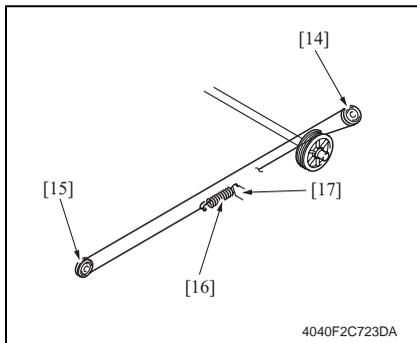


10. Attach the Drive Gear [13] using one screw.

**NOTE**

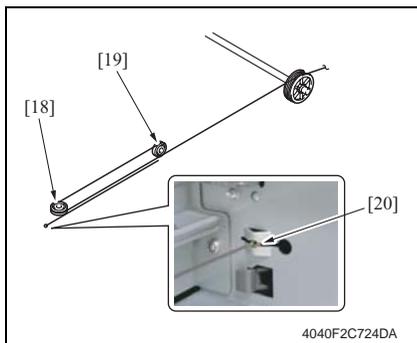
- **Allow a clearance of about 0.1 mm between the Drive Gear and bushing.**

11. Mount the Scanner Motor Assy.

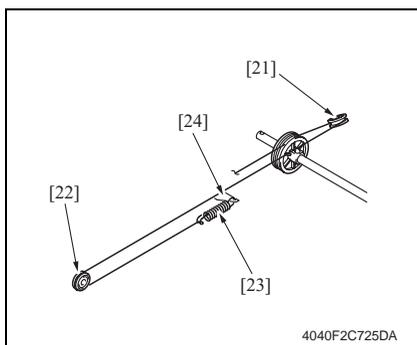


<Front>

12. Wind Scanner Drive Cable 2 around pulley D [14] and pulley B [15], hook the fixing bead to the fixing spring [16], and then hook the spring to the catch [17] in the frame.

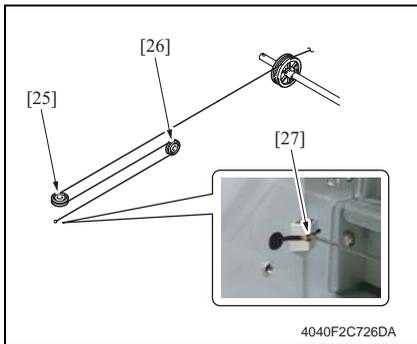


13. Wind Scanner Drive Cable 1 around pulley A [18] and pulley C [19] and hook the bead to the side surface [20] of the Scanner Frame.



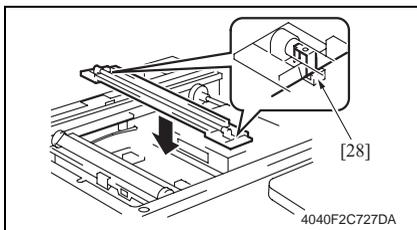
<Rear>

14. Wind Scanner Drive Cable 4 around pulley E [21] and pulley G [22] and hook the fixing bead to the fixing spring [23], and then hook the spring to the catch [24] in the frame.



15. Wind Scanner Drive Cable 3 around pulley H [25] and pulley F [26] and hook the bead to the side surface [27] of the Scanner Frame.

16. Remove the pulley tape.



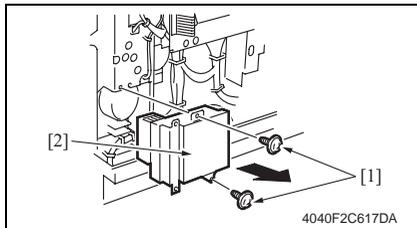
17. Mount the cable to the Exposure Unit [28].

18. Readjust the position of the Exposure Unit.

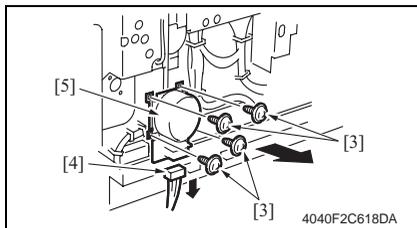
☞ 212

**7.3.34 Main Motor**

1. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.  
☞ 50
2. Remove the Rear Cover.  
☞ 51
3. Remove the Rear Right Cover.  
☞ 50



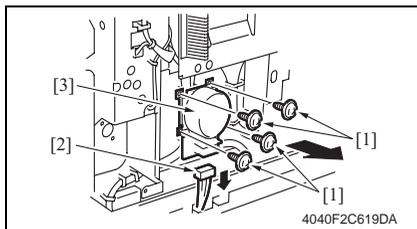
4. Remove two screws [1] and the Ozone Filter Assy [2].



5. Remove four screws [3], disconnect the connector [4], and remove the Main Motor [5].

**7.3.35 IU Motor**

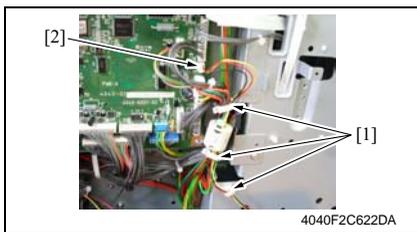
1. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.  
☞ 50
2. Remove the Rear Cover.  
☞ 51



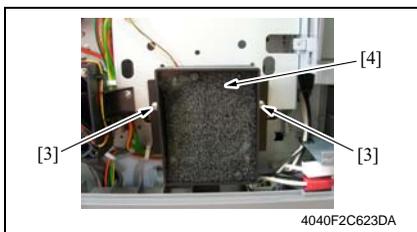
3. Remove four screws [1], disconnect the connector [2], and remove the IU Motor [3].

### 7.3.36 Fusing Unit Cooling Fan Motor

1. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.  
🔧 50
2. Remove the Rear Cover.  
🔧 51



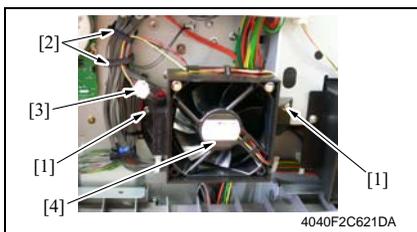
3. Remove three wiring saddles [1] and disconnect the connector (PJ33) [2].



4. Remove two screws [3] and the Fusing Unit Cooling Fan Motor [4].

### 7.3.37 Toner Suction Fan Motor

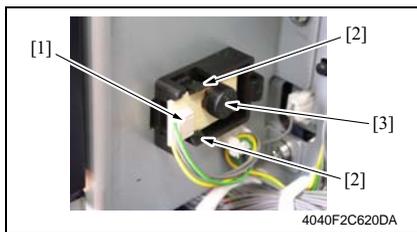
1. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.  
🔧 50
2. Remove the Rear Cover.  
🔧 51



3. Remove two screws [1] and two wiring saddles [2], disconnect the connector [3], and remove the Toner Suction Fan Motor [4].

### 7.3.38 Temperature/humidity Sensor

1. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.  
☞ 50
2. Remove the Rear Cover.  
☞ 51



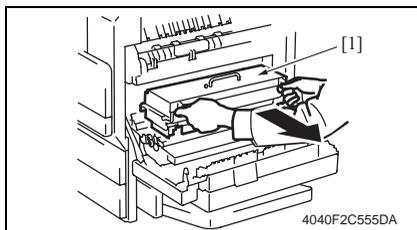
3. Disconnect the connector [1], widen the two tabs [2], and remove the Temperature/humidity Sensor [3].

### 7.3.39 ATDC Sensor

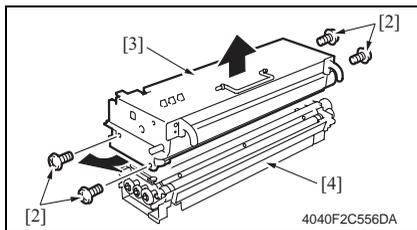
1. Select Tech. Rep. Mode → [Counter] → [Special Parts Counter] → [Developer] and clear the counter.
2. Turn OFF the main power switch.

**NOTE**

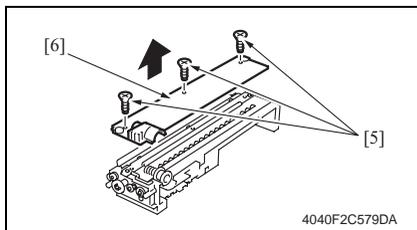
- Clear the counter before removing the IU.
- After clearing the counter, be sure to turn OFF the Main Power Switch.



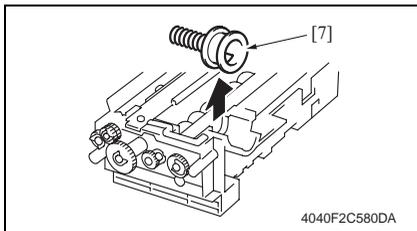
3. Open the Right Door.
4. Remove the Imaging Unit [1].



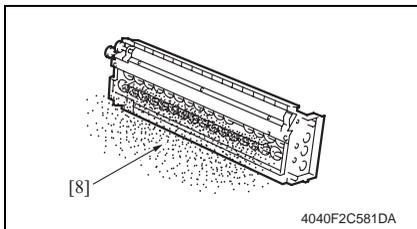
5. Remove four screws (silver) [2] and disassemble the Photo Conductor Unit [3] and the Developing Unit [4].



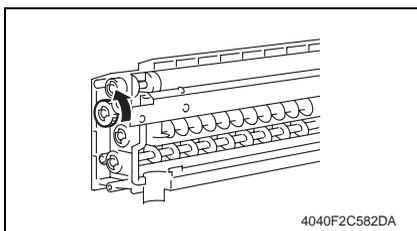
6. Remove three screws [5] and the Developer Scattering Prevention Plate [6].



7. Remove the Toner Supply Port [7].

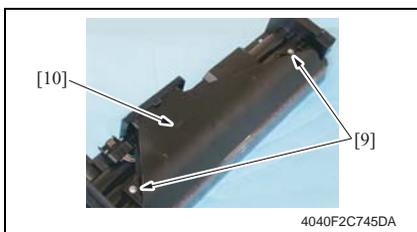


8. Remove the developer [8].

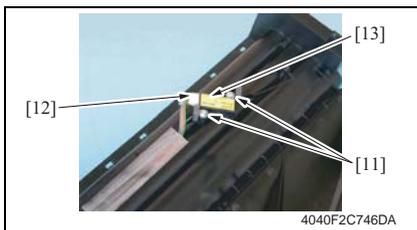


**Removal of the Developer**

- Dump the developer on the Sleeve Roller by rotating the gear in the direction of the arrow.
- If you rotate the gear in reverse, mylar for cleaning the ATDC Sensor
- Dump developer until almost no developer sticks to the Sleeve Roller.



9. Remove two screws [9] and open the Cover [10].



10. Remove two screws [11], disconnect the connector [12], and remove the ATDC Sensor [13].

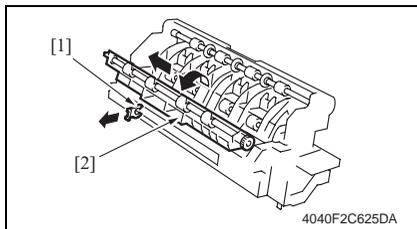
11. Add developer.

☞ 34

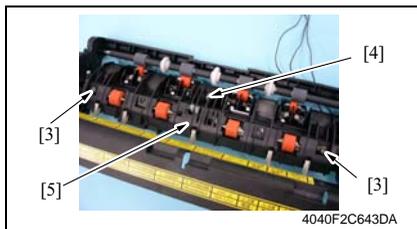
### 7.3.40 Thermistor

1. Remove the Fusing Unit.

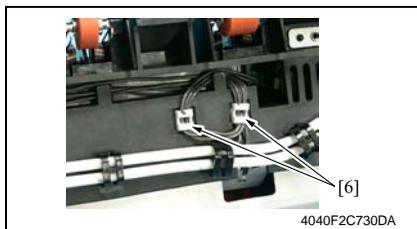
☞ 37



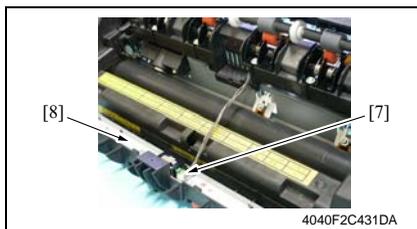
2. Snap off the C-clip [1] and remove the Fusing Entrance Guide Plate [2].



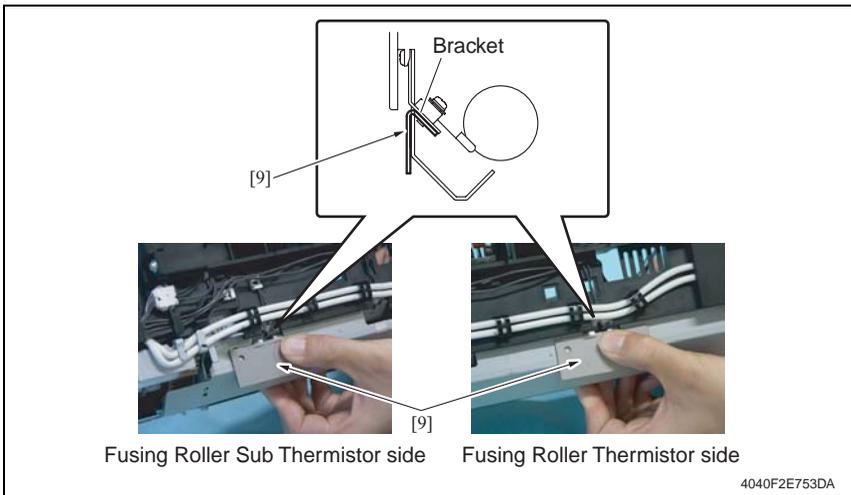
3. Remove two shoulder screws [3], the screw [4], and the Exit Rolls 2 Assy [5].



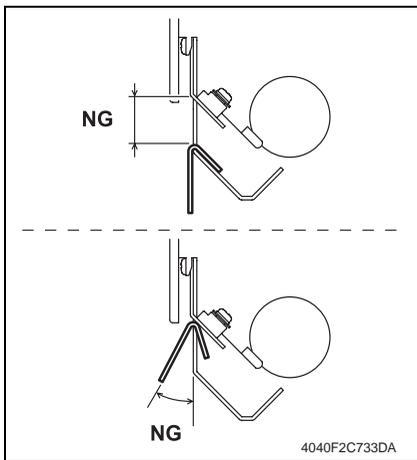
4. Remove the wiring saddle [6] and the harness.



5. Disconnect the connector [7] of the Exit Sensor and remove the Exit Rolls 2 Assy [8].

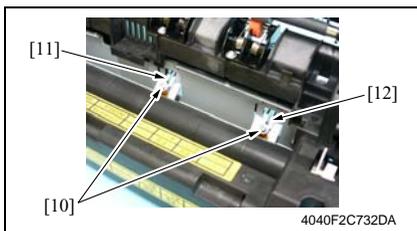


6. Press the Thermistor Holding/Check Jig [9] up against the bracket and fix it in position.



**CAUTION**

- Press the Thermistor Holding/Check Jig squarely so as to eliminate no gap between the bracket that supports the thermistor and the jig.



7. Remove two screws [10], the Fusing Roller Thermistor [11], and Fusing Roller Sub Thermistor [12].

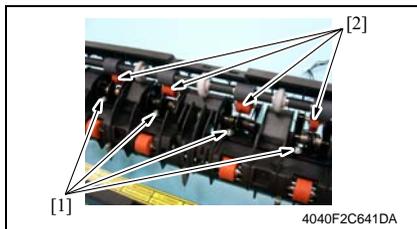
**Precautions for mounting the thermistors**

- When reinstalling the thermistors, use the Thermistor Holding/Check Jig.
- After installation, use the jig to make sure that the bracket is not bent.

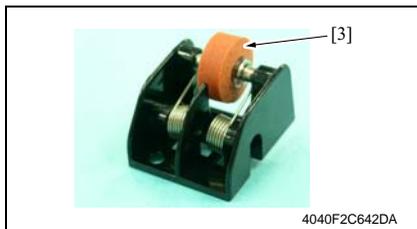
### 7.3.41 Paper Exit Roll 1

1. Remove the Fusing Unit.

☞ 37



2. Remove four screws [1] and four Exit Rolls 1 Assy [2].

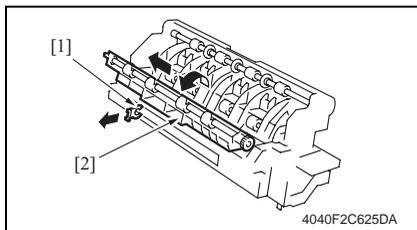


3. Remove the Exit Roll 1 [3].

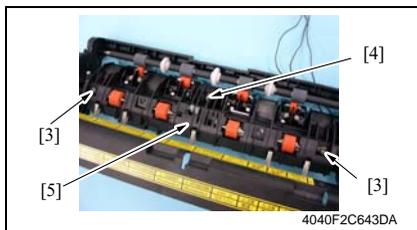
### 7.3.42 Paper Exit Roll 2

1. Remove the Fusing Unit.

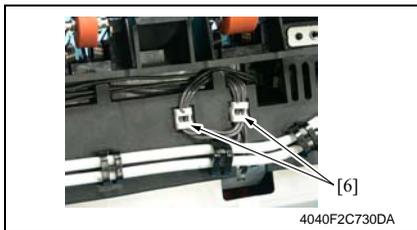
☞ 37



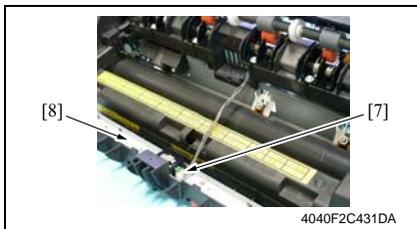
2. Snap off the C-clip [1] and remove the Fusing Entrance Guide Plate [2].



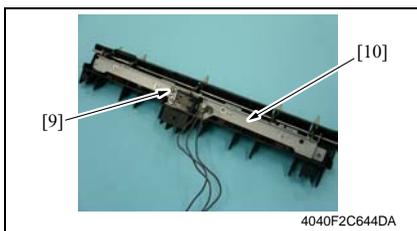
3. Remove two shoulder screws [3], the screw [4], and the Exit Rolls 2 Assy [5].



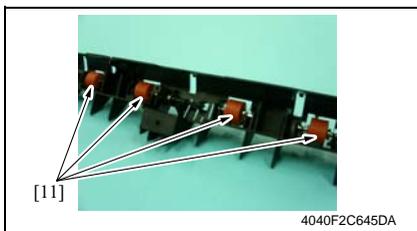
4. Remove the wiring saddle [6] and the harness.



5. Disconnect the connector [7] of the Exit Sensor and remove the Exit Rolls 2 Assy [8].



6. Remove the screw [9] and the Separation Claw Assy [10].

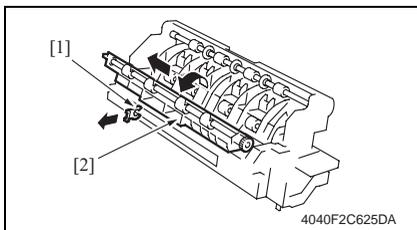


7. Remove the Exit Roll 2 [11].

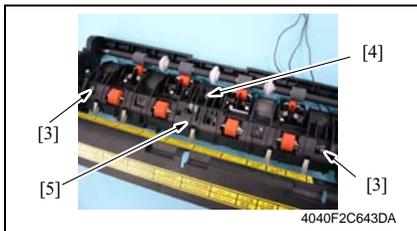
### 7.3.43 Separation Claw

1. Remove the Fusing Unit.

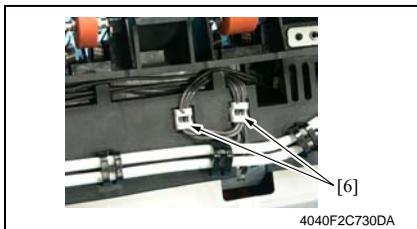
☞ 37



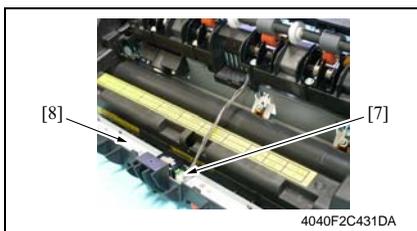
2. Snap off the C-clip [1] and remove the Fusing Entrance Guide Plate [2].



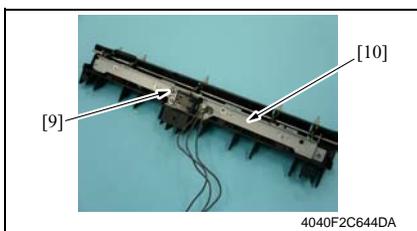
- 3. Remove two shoulder screws [3], the screw [4], and the Exit Rolls 2 Assy [5].



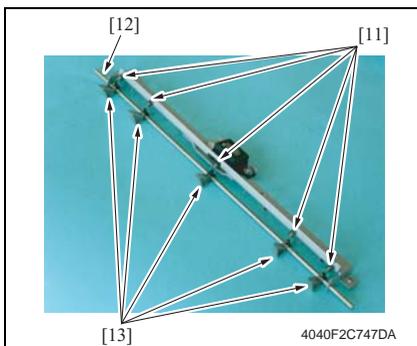
- 4. Remove the wiring saddle [6] and the harness.



- 5. Disconnect the connector [7] of the Exit Sensor and remove the Exit Rolls 2 Assy [8].



- 6. Remove the screw [9] and the Separation Claw Assy [10].



- 7. Remove four springs [11], the shaft [12], and four Separation Claws [13].

### 7.4 Cleaning procedure

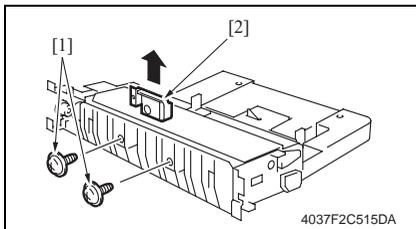
#### NOTE

- The alcohol described in the cleaning procedure represents the isopropyl alcohol.

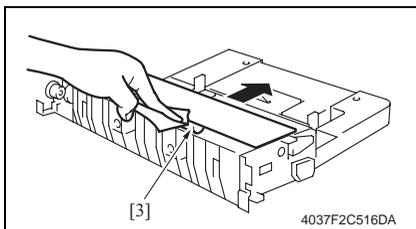
#### 7.4.1 Manual Bypass Feed Roller

1. Remove the Manual Bypass Unit.

☞ 71



2. Remove two screws [1] and the Manual Bypass Separation Fixing Bracket Assy [2].

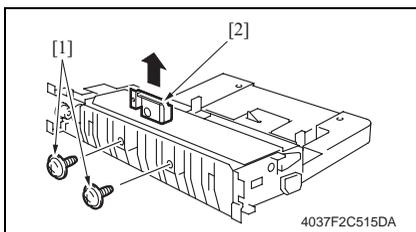


3. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Manual Bypass Feed Roller [3] clean of dirt.

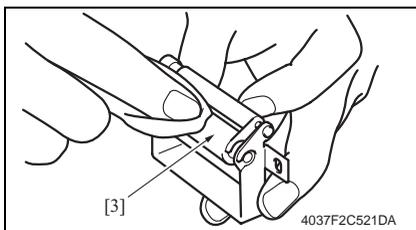
#### 7.4.2 Manual Bypass Separation Roller

1. Remove the Manual Bypass Unit.

☞ 71

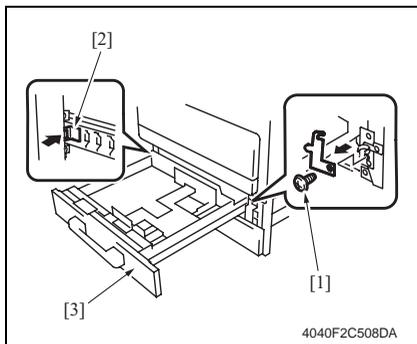


2. Remove two screws [1] and the Manual Bypass Separation Fixing Bracket Assy [2].

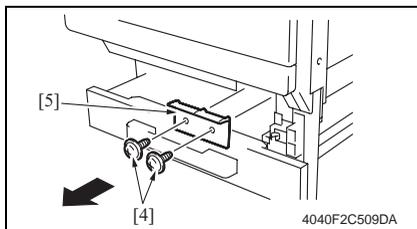


3. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Manual Bypass Separation Roller [3] clean of dirt.

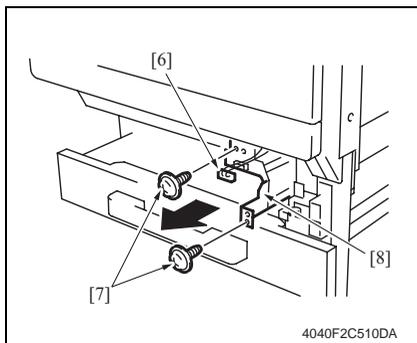
### 7.4.3 Tray 1 Feed Roller



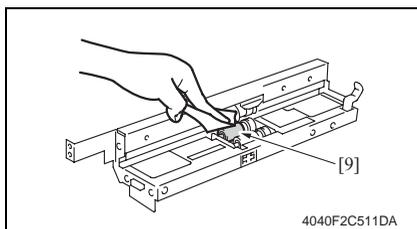
1. Remove the screw [1] and, holding the stopper [2], remove the Tray 1 [3].



2. Remove two screws [4] and the Connector Cover [5].

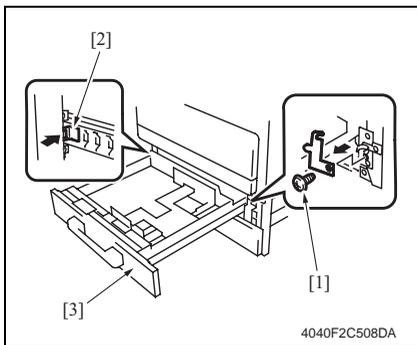


3. Unplug the connector [6].
4. Remove two screws [7] and the Tray 1 Feed Roller Assy [8].

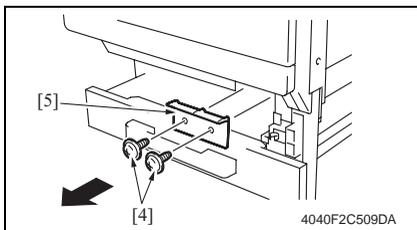


5. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Tray 1 Feed Roller [9] clean of dirt.

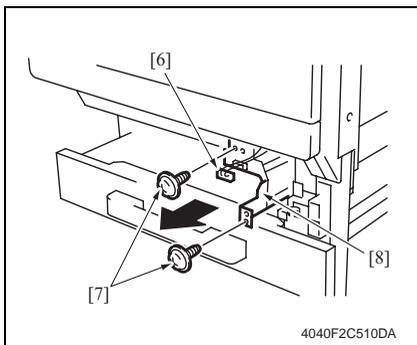
### 7.4.4 Tray 1 Pick-up Roller



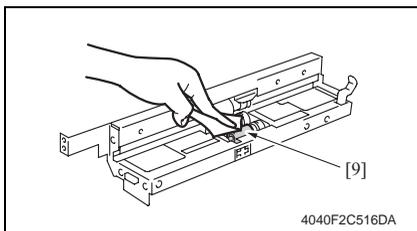
1. Remove the screw [1] and, holding the stopper [2], remove the Tray 1 [3].



2. Remove two screws [4] and the Connector Cover [5].

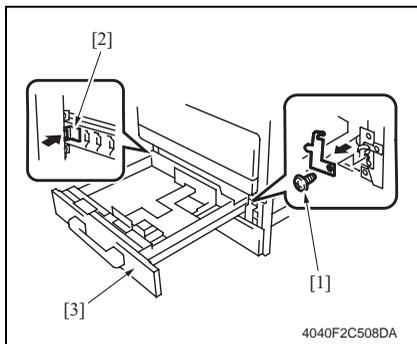


3. Remove the connector [6].
4. Remove two screws [7] and the Tray 1 Feed Roller Assy [8].

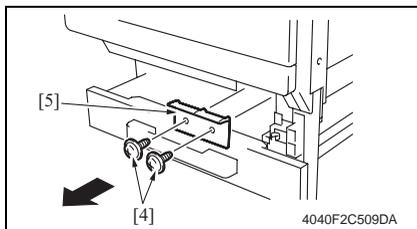


5. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Tray 1 Pick-up Roller [9] clean of dirt.

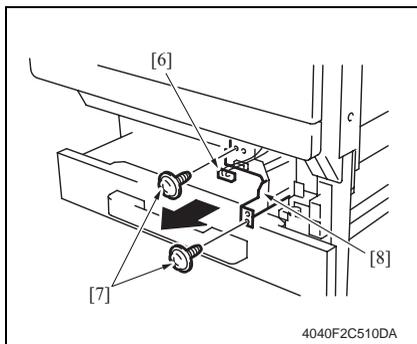
### 7.4.5 Tray 1 Separation Roller



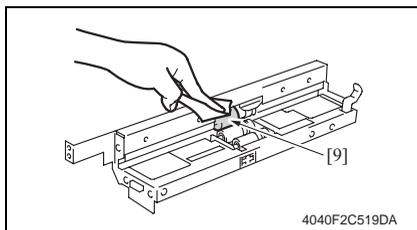
1. Remove the screw [1] and, holding the stopper [2], remove the Tray 1 [3].



2. Remove two screws [4] and the Connector Cover [5].



3. Remove the connector [6].
4. Remove two screws [7] and the Tray 1 Feed Roller Assy [8].

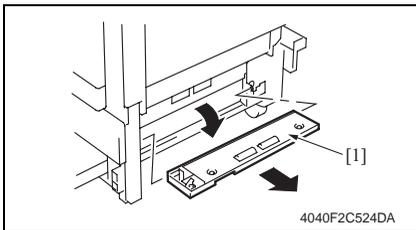


5. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Tray 1 Separation Roller [9] clean of dirt.

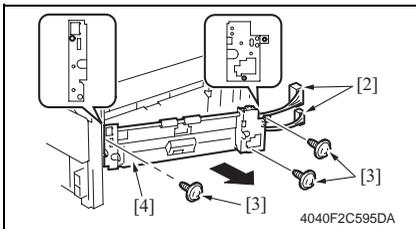
### 7.4.6 Tray 2 Feed Roller

1. Slide out the Tray 2.
2. Remove the Manual Bypass Unit.

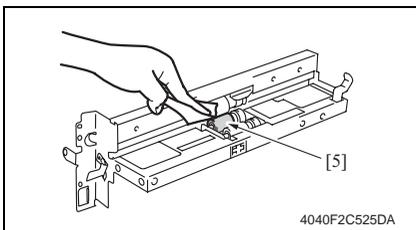
☞ 71



3. Remove the Lower Right Cover [1].



4. Remove two connectors [2].
5. Remove three screws [3] and the Tray 2 Feed Roller Assy [4].

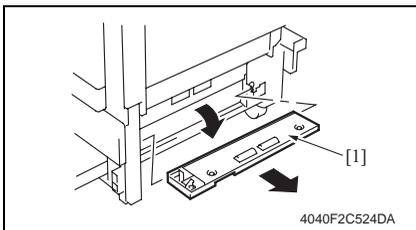


6. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Tray 2 Feed Roller [5] clean of dirt.

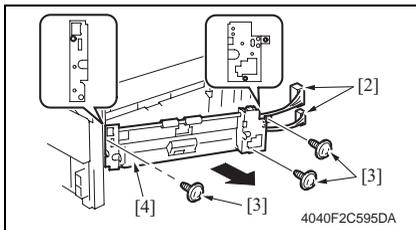
### 7.4.7 Tray 2 Pick-up Roller

1. Slide out the Tray 2.
2. Remove the Manual Bypass Unit.

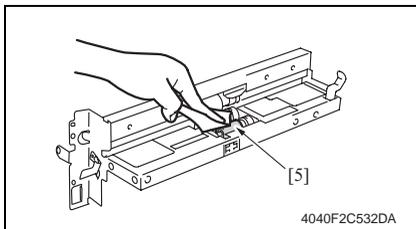
☞ 71



3. Remove the Lower Right Cover [1].



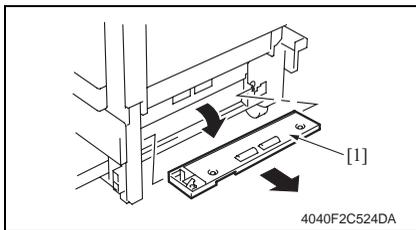
- 4. Remove two connectors [2].
- 5. Remove three screws [3] and the Tray 2 Feed Roller Assy [4].



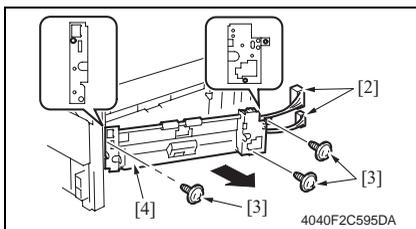
- 6. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Tray 2 Pick-up Roller [5] clean of dirt.

### 7.4.8 Tray 2 Separation Roller

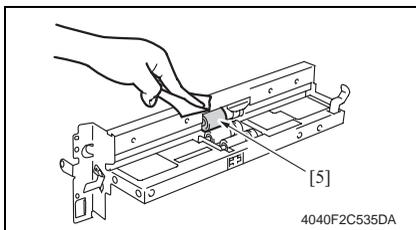
- 1. Slide out the Tray 2.
  - 2. Remove the Manual Bypass Unit.
- ☞ 71



- 3. Remove the Lower Right Cover [1].

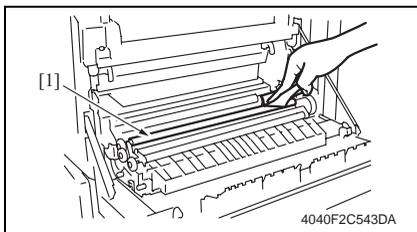


- 4. Remove two connectors [2].
- 5. Remove three screws [3] and the Tray 2 Feed Roller Assy [4].



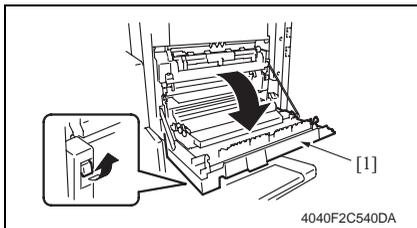
- 6. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Tray 2 Separation Roller [5] clean of dirt.

### 7.4.9 Registration Roller

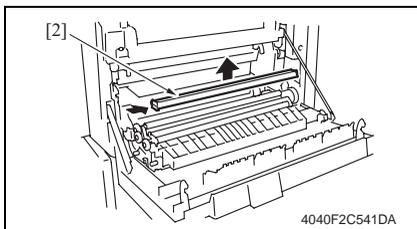


1. Remove the Paper Dust Remover  31
2. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Registration Roller [5] clean of dirt.

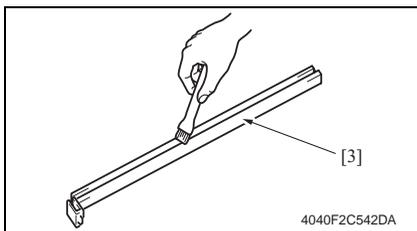
### 7.4.10 Paper Dust Remover



1. Open the Right Door [1].

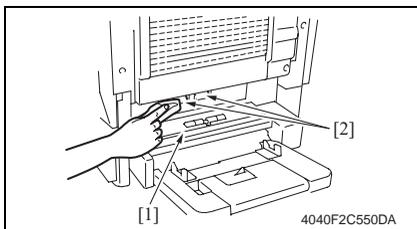


2. Remove the Paper Dust Remover [2].



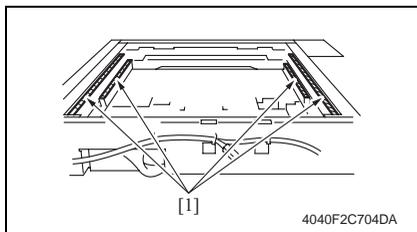
3. Using a brush, whisk dust and dirt off the Paper Dust Remover [3].

### 7.4.11 Transport Roller



1. Open the Lower Right Door [1].
2. Using a brush, whisk dust and dirt off the Transport Roller [2].

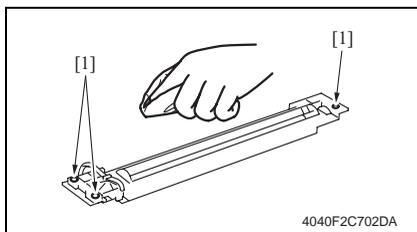
### 7.4.12 Scanner Rails



1. Remove the IR Upper Left Cover.  
☞ 49
2. Remove the Front Holding Bracket.  
☞ 49
3. Remove the Original Glass.  
☞ 49
4. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Scanner Rails [1] clean of dirt.

### 7.4.13 Bushings

1. Remove the IR Upper Left Cover.  
☞ 49
2. Remove the Front Holding Bracket.  
☞ 49
3. Remove the Original Glass.  
☞ 49
4. Remove the Exposure Unit.  
☞ 78



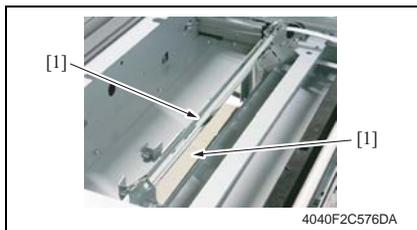
5. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Bushings [1] clean of dirt.

#### NOTE

- When installing the Exposure Unit, be sure to perform scanner position adjustment.  
☞ 212

### 7.4.14 Mirrors

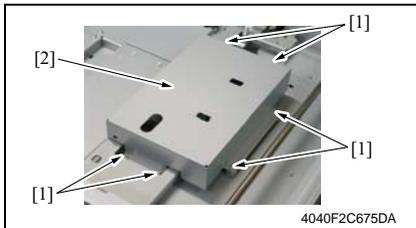
1. Remove the IR Upper Left Cover.  
☞ 49
2. Remove the Front Holding Bracket.  
☞ 49
3. Remove the Original Glass.  
☞ 49



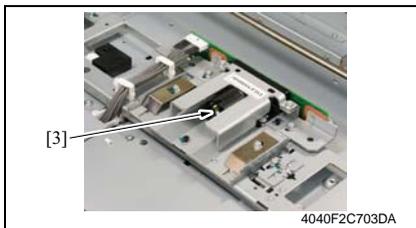
4. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Mirrors [1] clean of dirt.

**7.4.15 Lens**

- 1. Remove the IR Upper Left Cover.  
☞ 49
- 2. Remove the Front Holding Bracket.  
☞ 49
- 3. Remove the Original Glass.  
☞ 49

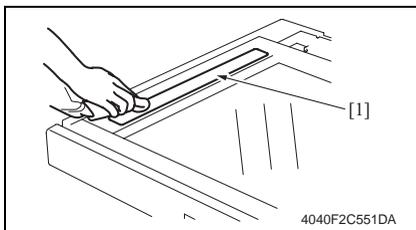


- 4. Remove six screws [1] and the CCD Unit Cover [2].



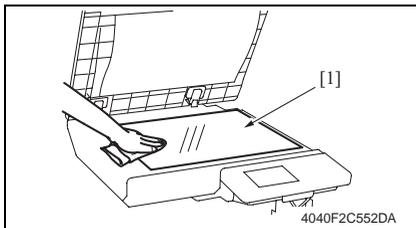
- 5. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Lens [3] clean of dirt.

**7.4.16 Original Scanning Glass**



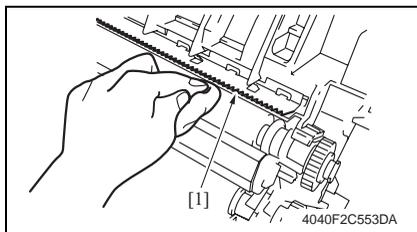
- 1. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Original Scanning Glass [1] clean of dirt.

**7.4.17 Original Glass**



- 1. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Original Glass [1] clean of dirt.

### 7.4.18 Charge Neutralizing Plate



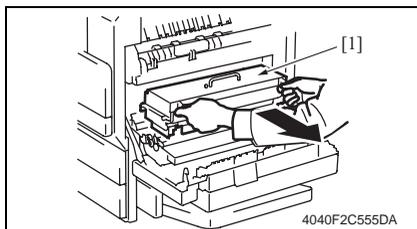
1. Open the Right Door.
2. Wipe the Charge Neutralizing Plate [1] clean of dirt with a cloth.

### 7.4.19 Ds Collar

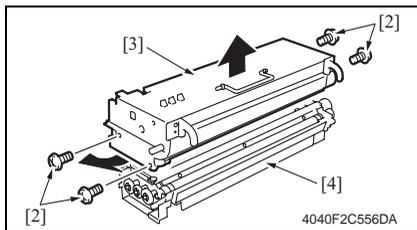
1. Turn OFF the main power switch.

**NOTE**

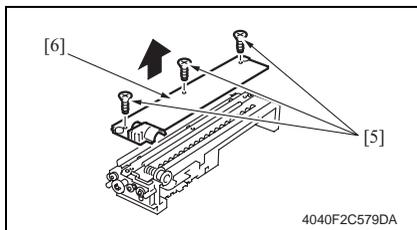
- Clear the PC Life counter before removing the IU.
- After clearing the PC counter, be sure to turn OFF the Main Power Switch.



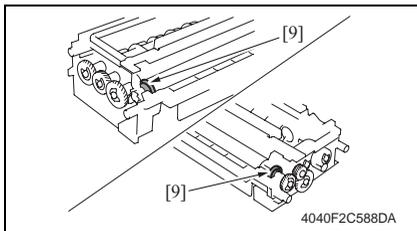
2. Open the Right Door.
3. Remove the Imaging Unit [1].



4. Remove four screws (silver) [2] and disassemble the Photo Conductor Unit [3] and the Developing Unit [4].



5. Remove three screws [5] and the Developer Scattering Prevention Plate [6].



- Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Ds Collar [9] clean of dirt.

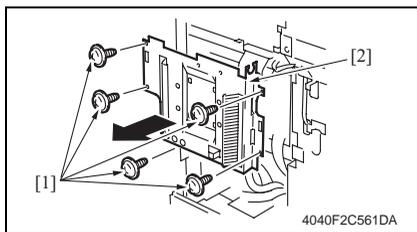
**NOTE**

- Make sure the alcohol does not touch the Developer Roller.**

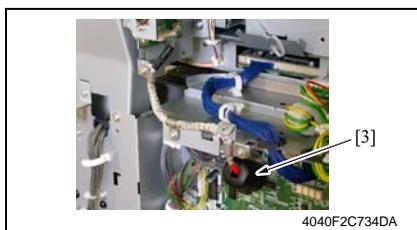
- Turn ON the main power switch.

### 7.5 Mount Kit MK-709

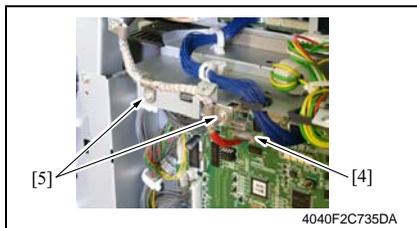
1. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.  
☞ 50
2. Remove the Rear Cover.  
☞ 51



3. Remove five screws [1] and Mechanical Control Board Cover [2].



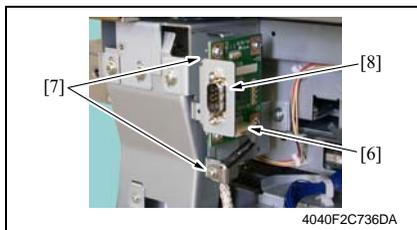
4. Remove the ferrite core (black) [3].



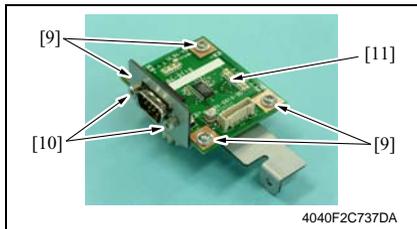
5. Remove the Connector [4].
6. Remove two screws [5], shield clamp, and harness.

**NOTE**

- When the connector is to be connected, plug the side of the harness, around which red tape is wound, in the connector (PJ38) of the Mechanical Control Board.



7. Remove the Connector [6].
8. Remove two screws [7] and the Mount Kit Assy [8].

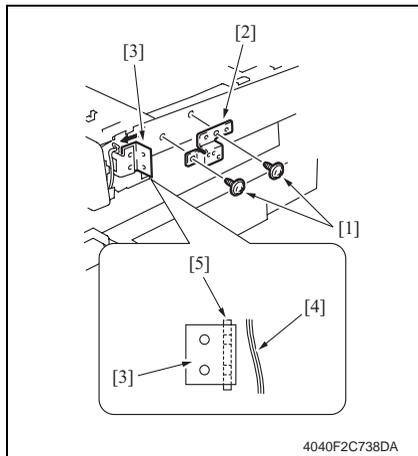


9. Remove four screws [9], two shoulder screws [10], and the Mount Kit Board [11].

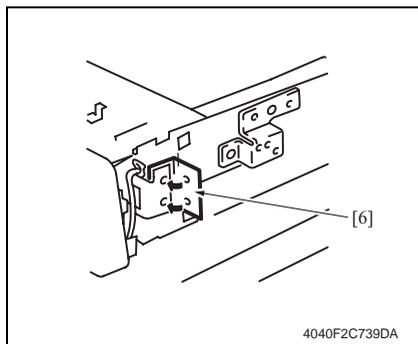
## 7.6 Option counter

### 7.6.1 Installation method for the Key Counter

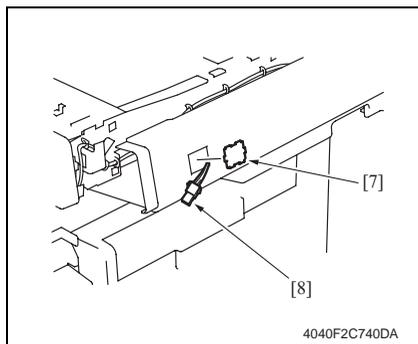
1. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.  
☞ 50
2. Remove the IR Right Cover.  
☞ 51



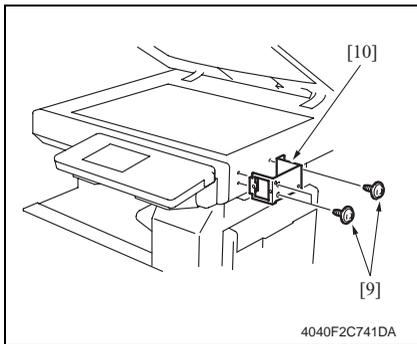
3. Install the spacer [2] using two screws [1].
4. Fold the sheet [3] in half.
5. Insert the edge of the sheet having no holes between the harness [4] and the Key Counter Mounting Bracket [5].



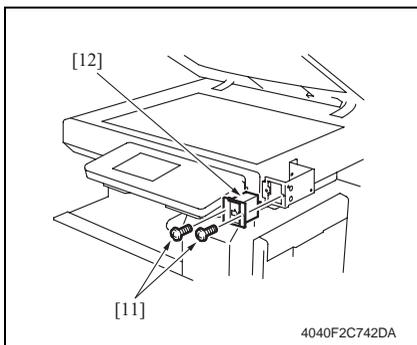
6. Peel off the tape [6] from the sheet.
7. Align threaded holes in the sheet with those in the Key Counter Mounting Bracket. Then, affix the folded halves together so as to sandwich the Mounting Bracket.



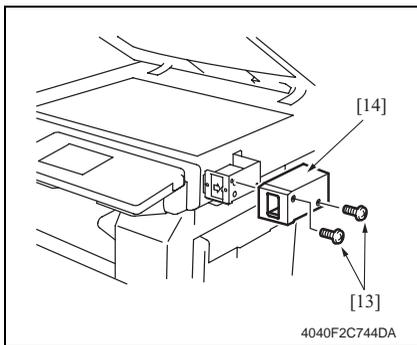
8. Remove the knockout [7] from the IR Right Cover.
9. Pass the Key Counter Harness [8] through the IR Right Cover.
10. Reinstall the IR Right Cover.



11. Using three screws [9], secure the Counter Mounting Bracket [10].



12. Connect the Key Counter Socket connector.  
13. Using two screws [11], secure the counter socket [12].

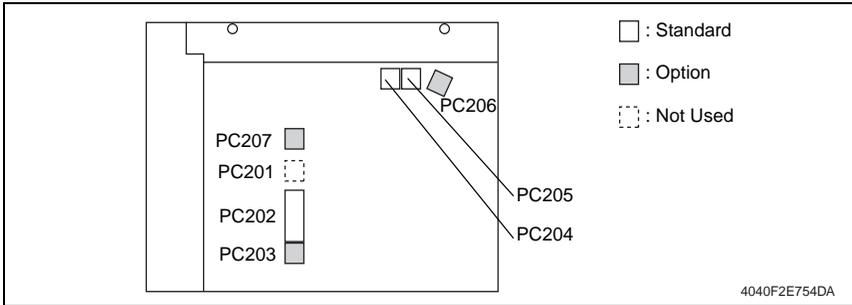


14. Using two screws [13], secure the Key Counter Cover [14].

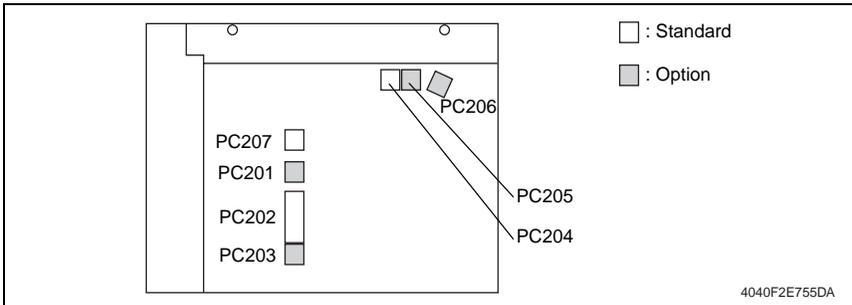
### 7.7 Original Size Detecting Sensors

#### 7.7.1 Original Size Detecting Sensor Layout

##### A. For U.S.



##### B. For Europe and Others



### 7.7.2 Mounting of the Original Size Detecting Sensors (Option)

1. Remove the IR Upper Left Cover.  
☞ 49
2. Remove the Front Holding Bracket.  
☞ 49
3. Remove the Original Glass.  
☞ 49
4. Mount the Original Size Detecting Sensor (option).
5. Reinstall all parts which have been removed.
6. Select the functions as follows: Tech. Rep. Mode → [System Input] → [Original Size Detecting Option]. Then, change the setting for Original Size Detecting Option from [No] to [Yes].
7. Select the Tech. Rep. Mode → [Function] → [F7-1].

#### NOTE

- **Select [F7-2] if the Fax Kit is mounted.**
8. Stack five sheets of blank A3 paper on the Original Glass.
  9. Press the Start key to perform automatic adjustment by the Original Size Detecting Sensor
  10. Turn OFF the Main Power Switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.

#### NOTE

- **The Start key remains lit up orange while this function is being run and lights up green as soon as the sequence is completed.**

## 7.8 EEPROM

### 7.8.1 Remounting of the EEPROM

#### NOTE

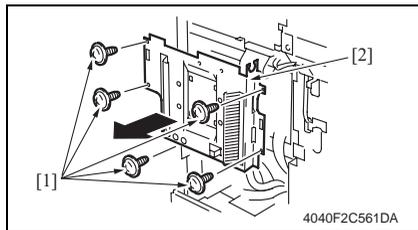
- When the Mechanical Control Board is replaced with a new one, be sure to demount the EEPROM (IC3A) from the old Mechanical Control Board and mount it on the new Mechanical Control Board.

1. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.

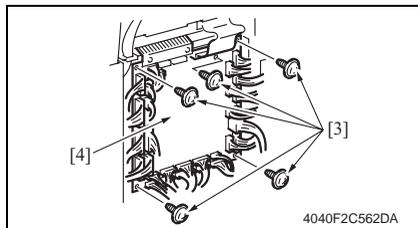
☞ 50

2. Remove the Rear Cover.

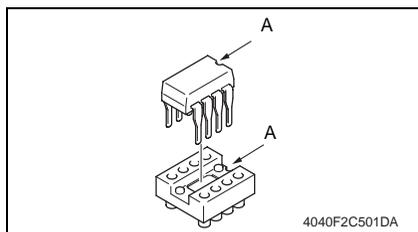
☞ 51



3. Remove five screws [1] and Mechanical Control Board Cover [2].



4. Unplug the all connectors.
5. Remove five screws [3] and Mechanical Control Board [4].



6. Demount the EEPROM (IC3A) from the new Mechanical Control Board.
7. Mount the EEPROM (IC3A) from the old Mechanical Control Board to the new Mechanical Control Board.

#### NOTE

- Note the alignment notch on the EEPROM (IC3A) when mounting the IC.

## Adjustment/Setting

### 8. How to use the adjustment section

- “Adjustment/Setting” contains detailed information on the adjustment items and procedures for this machine.
- Throughout this “Adjustment/Setting,” the default settings are indicated by “ ”.

#### Advance Checks

Before attempting to solve the customer problem, the following advance checks must be made. Check to see if:

- The power supply voltage meets the specifications.
- The power supply is properly grounded.
- The machine shares the power supply with any other machine that draws large current intermittently (e.g., elevator and air conditioner that generate electric noise).
- The installation site is environmentally appropriate: high temperature, high humidity, direct sunlight, ventilation, etc.; levelness of the installation site.
- The original has a problem that may cause a defective image.
- The density is properly selected.
- The Original Glass, slit glass, or related part is dirty.
- Correct paper is being used for printing.
- The units, parts, and supplies used for printing (developer, PC Drum, etc.) are properly replenished and replaced when they reach the end of their useful service life.
- Toner is not running out.

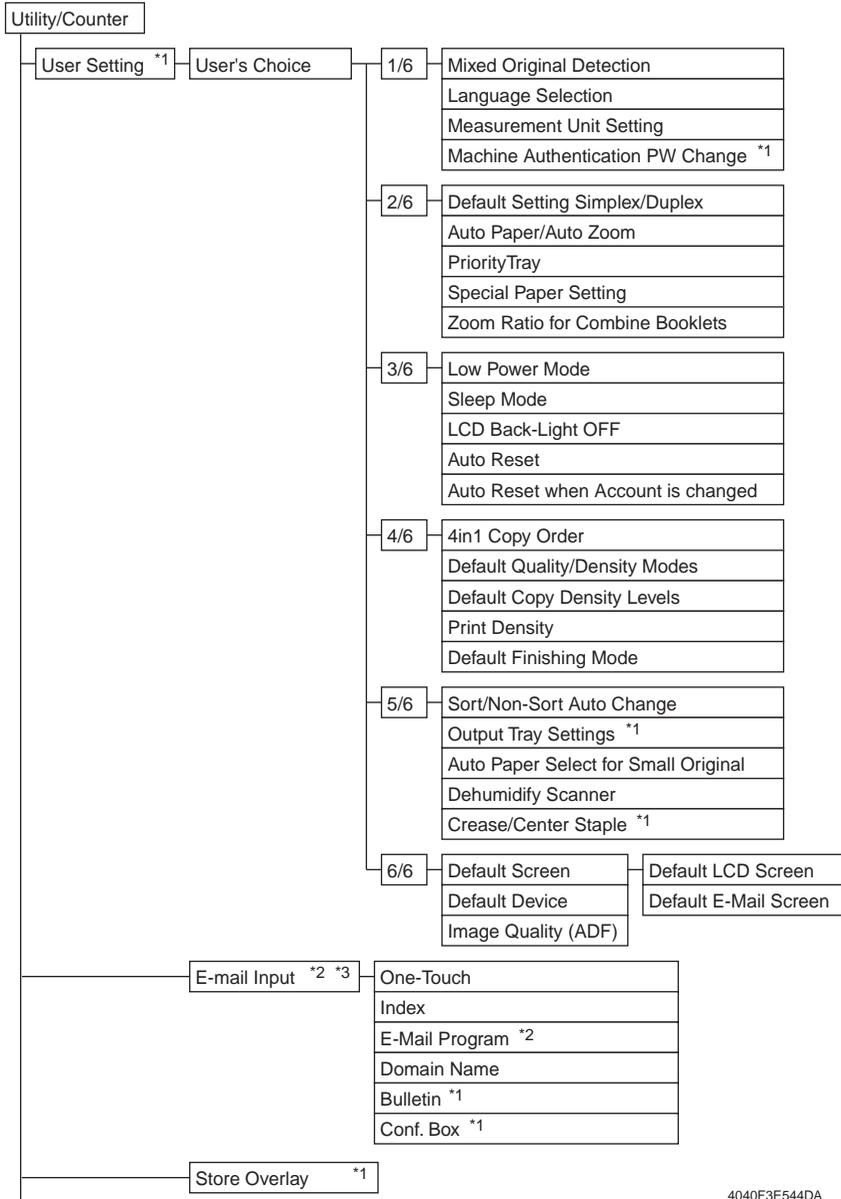
#### CAUTION

- **To unplug the power cord of the machine before starting the service job procedures.**
- **If it is unavoidably necessary to service the machine with its power turned ON, use utmost care not to be caught in the Scanner Cables or gears of the Exposure Unit.**
- **Special care should be used when handling the Fusing Unit which can be extremely hot.**
- **The Developing Unit has a strong magnetic field. Keep watches and measuring instruments away from it.**
- **Take care not to damage the PC Drum with a tool or similar device.**
- **Do not touch IC pins with bare hands.**

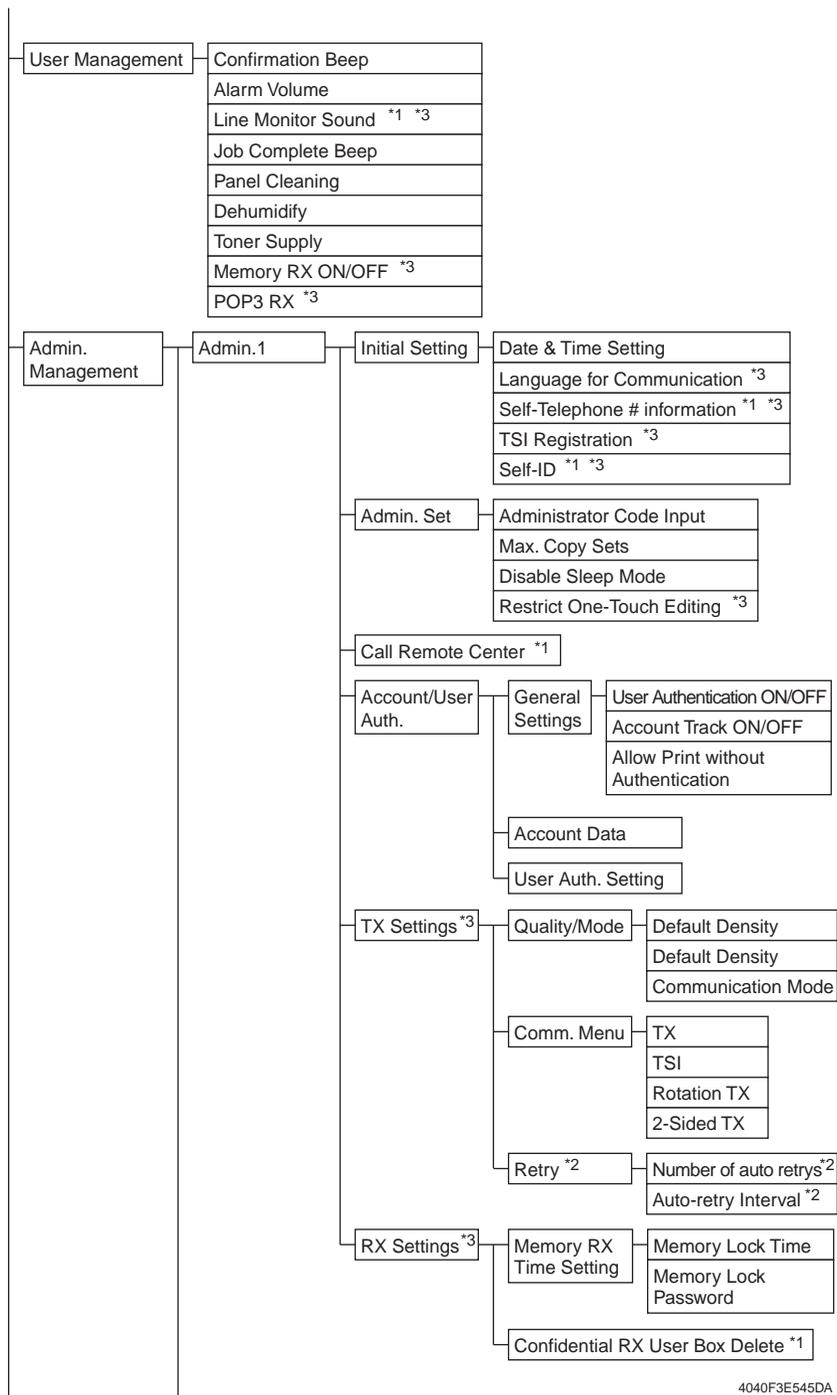
# 9. Utility/Counter Mode

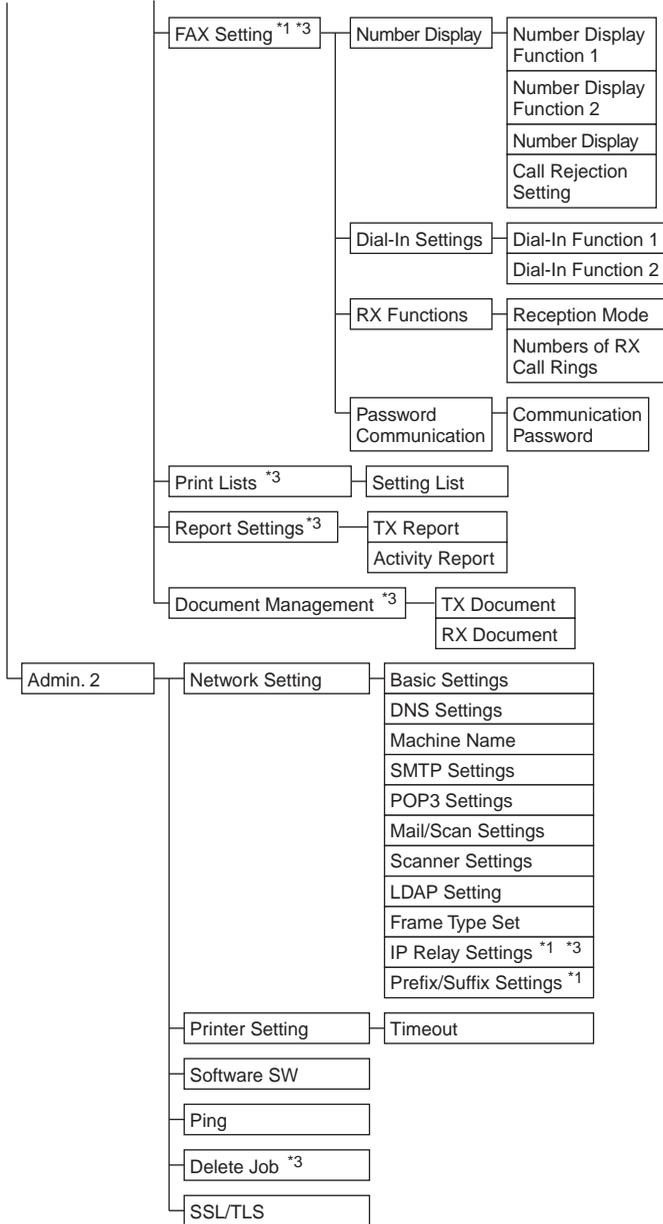
## 9.1 Utility/Counter Mode function tree

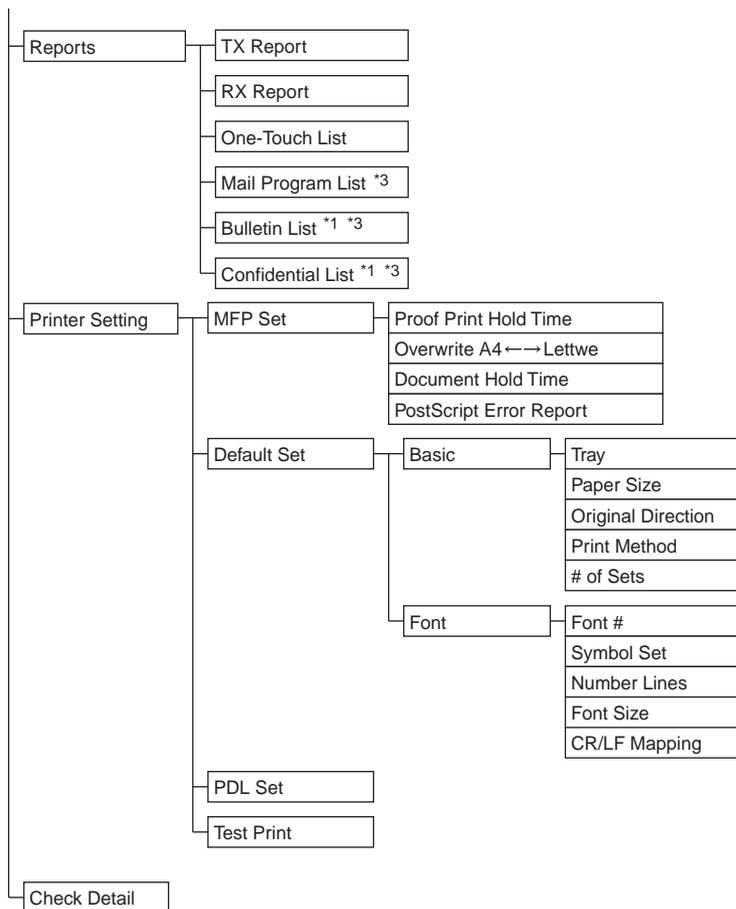
- The function tree is shown to comply with the format displayed on the screen.



4040F3E544DA







4040F3E547DA

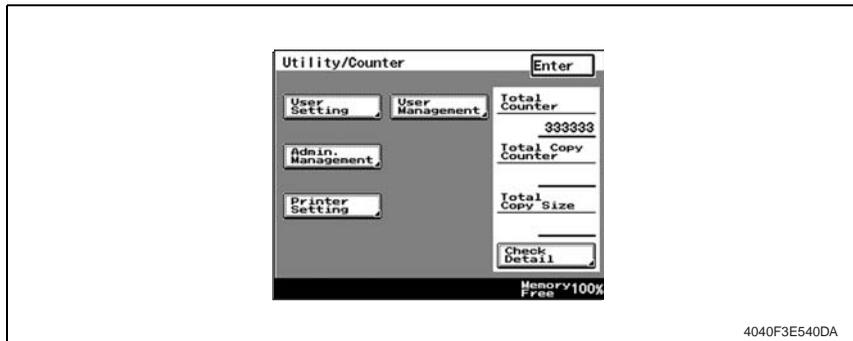
**NOTE**

- Keys displayed on screens are different depending on the setting.
- \*1: Become available on the screen if a corresponding option is mounted or depending on the setting made.
- \*2: Key names are different if the Fax Kit FK-503 is mounted.
- \*3: For more details, see the FK-503 manual.
- If HD-504 is not mounted, [User's Choice] is directly shown.

## 9.2 Utility/Counter Mode function setting procedure

### 9.2.1 Procedure

1. Press the Utility/Counter key.
2. The Utility/Counter mode screen will appear.



### 9.2.2 Exiting

- Touch the [Enter] key.

### 9.2.3 Changing the setting value in Utility Mode functions

- Use the +/- key to enter or change the setting value.
- Use the 10-Key Pad to enter the setting value. (To change the setting value, first press the Clear key before making an entry.)

### 9.3 Settings in the User Setting

#### 9.3.1 User's Choice 1/6

##### A. Mixed Original Detection

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set whether or not the Mixed Original Detection function is selected when the screen shifts to the initial one.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set Mixed Original Detection as the default.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "OFF".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">ON                      "OFF"</p>

##### B. Language Selection

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select the language of the Touch Panel messages.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the language of the control panel display to the corresponding language.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select the language, and then touch [Enter] to set the language.</li> </ul> <p>&lt;For U.S.&gt;</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Japanese              "English"              French              Spanish</p> <p>&lt;For Europe&gt;</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Japanese              "English"              French              Spanish</p> <p style="text-align: center;">German              Italian</p>

##### C. Measurement Unit Setting

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select the unit displayed on the LCD display.</li> <li>Available only in machines for U.S.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the unit displayed on the control panel.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Inch (Fraction)".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"Inch (Num. Value)"                      Inch (Fraction)</p>

##### D. Machine Authentication PW Change

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The password entered for machine authentication with user authentication can be changed.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available only when the machine authentication setting is made.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p>[Current Password]: Type in the currently specified machine authentication password.</p> <p>[New Password]: Type in the new machine authentication password.</p> <p>[Confirm New Password]: Type in the new machine authentication password again for confirmation.</p>

**9.3.2 User's Choice 2/6**

**A. Default Setting Simplex/Duplex**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the default copy mode selected when the screen shifts to the initial one.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the default copy mode selected when the screen shifts to the initial one.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "1 → 1" if "Simplex/Duplex" is "Simplex &amp; Duplex" that is accessed by the following: Tech. Rep. Mode → [Tech. Rep. Choice] → [System Set] → Simplex/Duplex.  <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin: 5px 0;"> <span>1→2</span> <span>2→2</span> <span>1→1</span> </div> </li> <li>The default setting is "1 → 2" if "Simplex/Duplex" is "Duplex Only" that is accessed by the following: Tech. Rep. Mode → [Tech. Rep. Choice] → [System Set] → Simplex/Duplex.  <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin: 5px 0;"> <span>1→2</span> <span>2→2</span> </div> </li> </ul>

**B. Auto Paper/Auto Zoom**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the default Auto mode selected when the screen shifts to the initial one.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the default Auto mode selected when the screen shifts to the initial one.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Auto Paper Select".  <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin: 5px 0;"> <span>"Auto Paper Select"</span> <span>Auto Zoom</span> <span>Manual</span> </div> </li> </ul>

**C. Priority Tray**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select the priority paper source that is selected when the copier is set to [Auto Size] or [Manual].</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set a priority paper source.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Tray 1".  <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin: 5px 0;"> <span>"Tray 1"</span> <span>Tray 2</span> <span>Tray 3</span> <span>Tray 4</span> </div> </li> </ul>

**D. Special Paper Setting**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To specify the type of paper used in each paper Tray.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the type of paper used in each paper Tray.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Normal".  <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin: 5px 0;"> <span>"Normal"</span> <span>1-Sided only</span> <span>Recycled</span> <span>Special Paper</span> </div> </li> </ul>

**E. Zoom Ratio for Combine Booklets**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select whether or not to call up an optimum zoom ratio automatically when the 2in1, 4in1, or Booklet function is selected.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set so as to call up an optimum zoom ratio automatically when the 2in1, 4in1, or Booklet function is selected.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Recall".  <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin: 5px 0;"> <span>"Recall"</span> <span>Do Not Recall</span> </div> </li> <li>4in1: ×0.500</li> <li>2in1/Booklet: ×0.647 &lt;For U.S.&gt;</li> <li>2in1/Booklet: ×0.707 &lt;For Europe&gt;</li> </ul>

**9.3.3 User's Choice 3/6**

**A. Low Power Mode**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the time until Low Power starts operating after the last key operation has been completed.</li> <li>Low Power: To turn LED and LCD OFF, and lower the power consumption.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the time until Low Power starts.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the 10-Key Pad for setting.</li> <li>The default setting is "15 min."</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"15 min." (10 to 240)</p>

**B. Sleep Mode**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the time until Sleep Mode starts operating after the last key operation has been completed.</li> <li>Turn all lines OFF except 3.3 V line for Control.</li> <li>"OFF" will only be displayed when "Disable Sleep Mode" in Admin. Management is set.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the time until the Sleep Mode starts.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the 10-Key Pad for setting.</li> <li>The default setting is "15 min."</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"15 min" (1 to 240) <span style="float: right;">OFF</span></p>

**C. LCD Back-Light OFF**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the time until LCD Back-Light OFF starts operating after the last key operation has been completed.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the time until LCD Back-Light OFF starts operating after the last key operation has been completed.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the 10-Key Pad for setting.</li> <li>The default setting is "1 min."</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"1 min" (1 to 240)</p>

**D. Auto Reset**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the time until Auto Reset starts operating after the last key operation has been completed.</li> <li>Auto Reset: Resets the panel to the default settings.</li> </ul>						
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the time until Auto Reset starts operating after the last key operation has been completed.</li> </ul>						
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "1 min."</li> </ul> <table style="width: 100%; text-align: center;"> <tr> <td>30 seconds</td> <td>"1 min"</td> <td>2 min</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3 min</td> <td>5 min</td> <td>OFF</td> </tr> </table>	30 seconds	"1 min"	2 min	3 min	5 min	OFF
30 seconds	"1 min"	2 min					
3 min	5 min	OFF					

**E. Auto Reset when Account is changed**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set so that the screen changes to the initial one when the Plug-in Counter is removed, a Data Controller card is removed, or the administrator access code is entered to access the Admin. Management mode.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select not to allow the screen to change to the initial one even when the users are changed as they use a machine for account management.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "ON"</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"ON"                      OFF</p>

**9.3.4 User's Choice 4/6**

**A. 4in1 Copy Order**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select the layout of copied images when a 4in1 Copy setting is selected.</li> </ul>								
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the layout of copied images when a 4in1 Copy setting is selected.</li> </ul>								
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is the following layout of copied images.</li> </ul> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <table border="1" style="border-collapse: collapse; text-align: center;"> <tr><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>4</td></tr> </table> <table border="1" style="border-collapse: collapse; text-align: center;"> <tr><td>1</td><td>3</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>4</td></tr> </table> </div> <p style="text-align: center;">Default</p>	1	2	3	4	1	3	2	4
1	2								
3	4								
1	3								
2	4								

**B. Default Quality/Density Modes**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the default image density and image quality selected when the screen shifts to the initial one.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the default image density and image quality selected when the screen shifts to the initial one.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p>&lt;Density&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Auto".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"Auto"                      Manual</p> <p>&lt;Original Type&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Text"</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"Text"                      Photo                      Text &amp; Photo</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Dot Matrix</p>

**C. Default Copy Density Levels**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the default image density level when the Auto or Manual Exposure is selected.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the default image density level when the Auto or Manual Exposure is selected.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p>When "Auto" is selected:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Std."</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">Lighter                      "Std."                      Darker</p> <p>When "Manual" is selected:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "EXP5"</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">EXP1 (Light) through EXP9 (Dark)</p>

**D. Print Density**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To specify the default print density.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the default print density.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "0".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">-2      -1      0      1      2</p>

**E. Default Finishing Mode**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the default finishing mode selected when the screen shifts to the initial one.</li> <li>The contents of the display vary depending on the types of finishing options mounted on the machine.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the default finishing mode selected when the screen shifts to the initial one.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Non-Sort".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"Non-Sort"      Sort      Group Corner Staple      2 Staples</p>

**9.3.5 User's Choice 5/6**

**A. Sort/Non-Sort Auto Change**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select whether to enable or disable the function that automatically switches between [Sort] and [Non-Sort] according to the number of originals and the number of copy sets to be made.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set so as to enable the function that automatically switches between [Sort] and [Non-Sort] according to the number of originals and the number of copy sets to be made.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "ON".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"ON"                      OFF</p>

**B. Output Tray Settings**

**(1) Copier/Printer**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To specify the output tray for copies and computer printouts when output options are mounted on the copier.</li> <li>The screen that appears differs depending on the options that are mounted on the copier.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the output tray for copies and computer printouts.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p>&lt;Printer&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "1".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"1"                      2                      (3)</p> <p>&lt;Copies&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "2"; or "1" if the Mailbin Kin is mounted.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">("1")                      "2"                      3</p> <p>* ( ): when the Mailbin Kit is mounted</p>

bizhub 200/250/350

Adjustment / Setting

**C. Auto Paper Select for Small Original**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set whether or not to specify the paper tray when an original, whose size falls outside the detectable range, is loaded or no originals are loaded at all with the [Auto Paper Select] setting selected.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Copy]: Enables copying by using the priority paper source.</li> <li>[Prohibit Copy]: Displays a screen prompting the user to select the paper source.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Copy".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"Copy"                      Prohibit Copy</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If "Copy" is selected, the copy can be made after a paper source is selected.</li> </ul>

**D. Dehumidify Scanner**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the time at which the Scanner is dehumidified in order to prevent dew condensations from being formed on the Scanner.</li> <li>Becomes available when the corresponding Tech. Rep. Mode function is set.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the time at which the Scanner is dehumidified.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The 10-Key Pad is used for setting the time.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">Hour: 00 to 24      Minute: 00 to 59</p>

**E. Crease/Center Staple**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To specify the folding position when the [Crease] setting is selected.</li> <li>To specify the binding position when the [Corner Staple] setting is selected.</li> <li>Available only when the options mounted.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To adjust the folding position of the [Crease] function and the binding position of the [Center Staple] function.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select [Crease/Center Staple].</li> <li>Select the paper size.</li> <li>Adjust the position of crease and center staple.</li> </ol> <p>&lt;Crease&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "0"</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">-10 to +10</p> <p>&lt;Center Staple&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "0"</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">-10 to +10</p>

**9.3.6 User's Choice 6/6**

**A. Default Screen**

**(1) Default LCD Screen**

Functions	• To set the default screen selected when the screen shifts to the initial one.
Use	• To change the default screen selected when the screen shifts to the initial one.
Setting/ Procedure	• The default setting is "Copy" "Copy" E-mail

**(2) Default E-Mail Screen**

Functions	• To set the default screen selected when the Scanner is selected.
Use	• To change the default screen selected when the Scanner is selected.
Setting/ Procedure	• The default setting is "One-Touch" "One-Touch" Search Address Input Index

**B. Default Device**

Functions	• To set the mainly used function.
Use	• To change the mainly used function.
Setting/ Procedure	• The default setting is "Copy" "Copy" Printer

**C. Image Quality (ADF)**

Functions	• To adjust the copy image density level when the ADF is being used. • Mode 1: When a standard original (text, etc.) is used • Mode 2: To improve the reproduction of a faint original.
Use	• To change the copy image density level when the ADF is being used.
Setting/ Procedure	• The default setting is "Mode 1" Mode1 (for black lines): "  " Mode2 (standard): 

### 9.3.7 Store Overlay

#### NOTE

- Available only when the HD-504 is mounted.

#### A. Set

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To store an image to be called up in overlay.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To store image in the Hard Disk.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Place the original to be stored for overlay.</li> <li>2. Press the Utility/Counter key.</li> <li>3. Touch [User Setting] and then [Store Overlay].</li> <li>4. Touch [Set] and select the number key, in which the image is to be stored.</li> <li>5. Select the size of the range to be read.</li> <li>6. Touch [Auto Detect] to let the machine automatically detect the reading range according to the image of the original.</li> <li>7. Touch [Custom Size]. Then, a screen that prompts the user to enter an irregular size will appear. Touch [X] or [Y], enter the value from the 10-Key Pad, and touch [Enter].</li> <li>8. Touch the [Enter].</li> <li>9. Select the orientation of the original.</li> </ol> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>Portrait: "</p>  <p>"</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>Landscape: "</p>  <p>"</p> </div> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>10. Press the Start key.</li> </ol>

#### B. Delete

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To delete an image that has previously been stored.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To delete an image that has previously been stored in the Hard Disk.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the Utility/Counter key.</li> <li>2. Touch [User Setting] and then [Store Overlay].</li> <li>3. Touch [Delete] and select the number key, in which the image to be deleted is stored.</li> </ol>

#### C. Check

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To check the image that has previously been stored by having it printed.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To check the image that has previously been stored in the Hard Disk.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the Utility/Counter key.</li> <li>2. Touch [User Setting] and then [Store Overlay].</li> <li>3. Touch [Set] and select the number key, in which the image to be checked is stored.</li> <li>4. Select paper and press the Start key.</li> </ol>

## 9.4 Settings in the User Management

### 9.4.1 Confirmation Beep

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set whether or not to produce a sound when a key in the Keypad is pressed.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change whether or not to produce a sound when a key in the Keypad is pressed.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "3".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">0 to 5</p>

### 9.4.2 Alarm Volume

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To specify the volume of the alarm that sounds when an error occurs or an incorrect operation is specified.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the volume of the alarm that sounds when an error occurs or an incorrect operation is specified.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "3".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">0 to 5</p>

### 9.4.3 Job Complete Beep

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the volume of the beep that sounds when a job is completed.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the volume of the beep that sounds when a job is completed.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "3".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">0 to 5</p>

### 9.4.4 Panel Cleaning

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To disable control panel key operations.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To disable control panel keys before cleaning the display on the control panel.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To cancel this function, press the Panel Reset key to display the Basics screen.</li> </ul>

### 9.4.5 Dehumidify

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To dehumidify the Scanner when dew condensations are formed on the Scanner because of sudden changes in temperature or high humidity.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To prevent dew condensations from being formed on the Photo Conductor during changes in ambient conditions.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When [Dehumidify] is touched, the Photo Conductor or Exposure Lamp is operated for a predetermined period of time and then stops in the mode set by the corresponding Tech. Rep. Choice function.</li> </ul>

### 9.4.6 Toner Supply

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>To adjust the set toner-to-carrier level by providing an auxiliary supply of toner when a low image density occurs due to a lowered toner-to-carrier ratio after large numbers of copies have been made of originals having a high image density.</li></ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>To replenish the supply of toner in an auxiliary manner.</li></ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Touch [Toner Supply] for the copier to detect the current toner density and, if the density is lower than the standard value, a toner-replenishing sequence, then a developer agitation sequence are performed. If the toner density is detected to be higher than the standard value, only a developer agitation sequence is performed.</li></ul>

## 9.5 Settings in the Admin. Management

- The Admin. Management will be available by entering the administrator password (8 digits) set by the Admin. Set. (The administrator password is initially set to "00000000")

### 9.5.1 Initial Setting

#### A. Date & Time Setting

##### (1) Date & Time Setting

Functions	• To set the date and time of day.
Use	• To set or change the date and time of day.
Setting/ Procedure	• Use the Keypad to type in the date (Month, Day, and Year) and time of the day. • Touching [Enter] will start the clock.

##### (2) Time Zone

Functions	• To set the time difference from the standard time appended to the mail header when sending e-mail.
Use	• To change the time difference from the standard time.
Setting/ Procedure	• The default setting is "-05:00". -12:00 to +12:00

##### (3) Day Light Saving Time

Functions	• To adjust daylight saving time automatically.
Use	• To set daylight saving time.
Setting/ Procedure	• The default setting is "Auto". "Auto"                      OFF

### 9.5.2 Admin. Set

#### A. Administrator Code Input

Functions	• To change the administrator access code.
Use	• To change the administrator access code.
Setting/ Procedure	• Setting range: 00000000 to 99999999 [Current Code]: Enter the current administrator access code. [New Code]: Enter the new administrator access code. [Retype New Code]: Enter the new administrator access code again for confirmation.

#### B. Max. Copy Sets

Functions	• To set whether or not to limit the number of copies to be made at one time.
Use	• To limit the number of copies to be made at one time.
Setting/ Procedure	• The default setting is "OFF". 1 to 99                      OFF

**C. Disable Sleep Mode**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To display the setting [OFF] in the Sleep Mode Setting screen, available from the User's Choice screen.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To enable the setting of [OFF] in the Sleep Mode Setting screen available from the User's Choice screen.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "NO".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">Yes                      "No"</p>

**9.5.3 Account/User Auth.**

**A. General Settings**

**(1) User Authentication ON/OFF**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set whether or not to make user authentication.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select the scheme of user authentication, whether it is made by an external server or MFP.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "OFF".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">ON (External Server)                      ON (MFP)                      "OFF"</p>

**(2) Account Track ON/OFF**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set whether or not to enable the account track function.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To enable the account track function.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "OFF".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">ON                      "OFF"</p>

**(3) Allow Print without Authentication**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set whether or not to authorize printing of data, which is specified for computer printouts and for which no accounts are specified, when the account track function is enabled.</li> <li>* Available only when [Account Track ON/OFF] is set to [ON].</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To authorize printing of data, which is specified for computer printouts and for which no accounts are specified, when the account track function is enabled.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "OFF".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">ON                      "OFF"</p>

**B. Account Data**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To control the Total Counter by setting a password and the upper limit for the output pages for each account.</li> <li>* Available only when [Account Track ON/OFF] is set to [ON].</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set, control, or delete account data.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p>&lt;Set&gt;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select an unused account number (000 to 999).</li> <li>Enter the Account Name and Password.</li> <li>Set the Max. Print Allowance (0 to 999999).</li> <li>Touch [Enter].</li> </ol> <p>&lt;Control&gt;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select the account number to be controlled.</li> <li>Select [Counter].: Each of different counters of the selected account will be displayed.</li> <li>Select [General Settings].: Change the settings made for the selected account.</li> <li>Select [Clear Counter].: The counter of the selected account is cleared.</li> <li>Touch [Enter].</li> </ol> <p>&lt;Delete&gt;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select the account number to be deleted.</li> <li>Select [Delete Account].</li> <li>Select [Yes] and touch [Enter].</li> </ol>

**C. User Auth. Setting**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To control the Total Counter by setting a password for each user.</li> <li>Available only when [User Authentication ON/OFF] is set to [ON (External Server)] or [ON (MFP)].</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set authentication by external server or by MFP.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p>&lt;Set of external server authentication&gt;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch [General Settings] and select the authentication scheme.             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Active Directory".</li> </ul> </li> </ol> <p style="text-align: center;"> <span style="margin-right: 100px;">"Active Directory"</span> <span style="margin-right: 100px;">NTLM</span> <span>NDS</span> </p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch [Domain Name] and enter the domain name (up to 64 en-size characters).</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>If [NDS] is selected, enter [Tree Name] and [Context Name].</b></li> </ul> <p>&lt;Set of MFP authentication&gt;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch [User Registration] and select an unused user number key.</li> <li>Touch [User Information] and enter the User Name and User Password.</li> <li>Touch [Enter].</li> </ol> <p>&lt;Control of MFP authentication&gt;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select the user number key to be controlled.</li> <li>Select [Counter].: The counter of the selected account is cleared.</li> <li>Select [General Settings].: Change the settings made for the selected user.</li> <li>Select [Clear Counter].: Each of different counters of the selected account will be displayed.</li> <li>Touch [Enter].</li> </ol> <p>&lt;Delete of MFP authentication&gt;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select the user number key to be deleted.</li> <li>Select [Delete User].</li> <li>Select [Yes] and touch [Enter].</li> </ol>

bizhub 200/250/350

Adjustment / Setting

### 9.5.4 Call Remote Center

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To call the CS Remote Care Center from the Administrator, When the CS Remote Care setup is complete.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch and highlight [Call Remote Center].</li> <li>The highlight display is cancels as soon as the function terminates normally.</li> </ol>

### 9.5.5 Network Setting

#### A. Basic Settings

##### (1) DHCP

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set DHCP for the network.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To use DHCP.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "IP Input".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">Auto-Obtain      IP Input</p>

##### (2) IP Address Setting

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the IP address of the device used in the network.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To enter the IP address of the machine.</li> <li>Use this function when [IP Input] is selected for [DHCP].</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IP address Version 4 format [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255]</li> </ul>

##### (3) Subnet Mask

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the subnet mask of the device used in the network.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To enter the subnet mask of the machine.</li> <li>Use this function when [IP Input] is selected for [DHCP].</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IP address Version 4 format [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255]</li> </ul>

##### (4) Gateway

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the gateway address of the device used in the network.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To enter the gateway address of the machine.</li> <li>Use this function when [IP Input] is selected for [DHCP].</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IP address Version 4 format [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255]</li> </ul>

##### (5) Self-Domain Name

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the domain name of the local machine.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To enter the domain name of the local machine.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Self-Domain Name].</li> <li>Enter the domain name of the local machine from the 10-Key Pad or the keyboard on the screen and then touch [Enter].</li> </ol>

**(6) Network Board Set**

<Network Board Speed>

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the data transfer rate of the Network Board.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set a specific network data transfer rate.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Auto".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"Auto"                      100M                      10M</p> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Be sure to set the correct transfer rate so as to ensure that communications are carried out correctly.</b></li> <li><b>If the network data transfer rate has been changed, be sure to turn OFF the Main Power Switch of the machine, wait for 10 sec. or more, and then turn the switch ON again.</b></li> </ul>

<Duplex>

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the packet transmission/reception mode when the switching hub is connected.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the setting between Full Duplex and Half Duplex.</li> <li>Use this function when Network Board Speed has been set to [100M] or [10M].</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Half Duplex".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"Half Duplex"                      Full Duplex</p> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>If the Duplex setting has been changed, be sure to turn OFF the Main Power Switch of the machine, wait for 10 sec. or more, and then turn the switch ON again.</b></li> </ul>

**B. DNS Settings**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the DNS Server.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To enter DNS Server.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "NO".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">YES                      "NO"</p> <p>&lt;Host Name&gt;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Host Name].</li> <li>Enter the host name of the local machine from the 10-Key Pad or the keyboard on the screen and then touch [Enter].</li> </ol> <p>&lt;Domain Name&gt;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Domain Name].</li> <li>Enter the domain name of the local machine from the 10-Key Pad or the keyboard on the screen and then touch [Enter].</li> </ol> <p>&lt;DNS Server Address&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IP address Version 4 format [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255]</li> <li>* Up to three places can be set.</li> </ul>

**C. Machine Name**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the name of the machine.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To enter the name of the machine.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Machine Name].</li> <li>Enter the machine name of the local machine from the 10-Key Pad or the keyboard on the screen and then touch [Enter].</li> </ol>

**D. SMTP Settings****(1) SMTP Server Address**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the SMTP server address.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the SMTP server address required for performing Scan to E-Mail and Internet Fax.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IP address Version 4 format [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255]</li> </ul>

**(2) E-Mail Address**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the e-mail address of the machine.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To enter the e-mail address of the machine.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [E-Mail Address].</li> <li>Enter the e-Mail address of the local machine from the 10-Key Pad or the keyboard on the screen and then touch [Enter].</li> </ol>

**(3) SMTP Authentication User Name**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the user name for SMTP authentication.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To enter the user name when the mail transfer authentication (SMTP authentication) function is used.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [SMTP Authentication User Name].</li> <li>Enter the SMTP Authentication User Name of the local machine from the 10-Key Pad or the keyboard on the screen and then touch [Enter].</li> </ol>

**(4) SMTP Authentication Password**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the password for SMTP authentication.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To enter the password when the mail transfer authentication (SMTP authentication) function is used.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [SMTP Authentication Password].</li> <li>Touch [New Password], enter the password, and then touch [Enter].</li> <li>Touch [Confirm New Password], enter the password once again, and then touch [Enter].</li> </ol>

**E. POP3 Settings****(1) POP3 Server Address**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the POP3 server address.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To enter the POP3 server address required for receiving Internet Fax.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IP address Version 4 format [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255]</li> </ul>

**(2) POP3 User Name**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the POP3 server user name.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To enter the POP3 server user name required for receiving Internet Fax.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [POP3 User Name].</li> <li>Enter the POP3 User Name of the local machine from the 10-Key Pad or the keyboard on the screen and then touch [Enter].</li> </ol>

**(3) POP3 Password**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the POP3 password.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To enter the POP3 password.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [POP3 Password].</li> <li>Touch [New Password], enter the password, and then touch [Enter].</li> <li>Touch [Confirm New Password], enter the password once again, and then touch [Enter].</li> </ol>

**(4) Auto-RX Check**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set intervals, at which a check is made by connecting to the POP3 server.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the intervals, at which a check is made by connecting to the POP3 server.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Check OFF".</li> <li>Setting range: 1 to 99 M</li> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Auto-RX Check].</li> <li>Enter the value from the 10-Key Pad and touch [Enter].</li> <li>Select [Check OFF] to select not to make the auto check.</li> </ol> </ul>

**F. Mail/Scan Settings**

**(1) E-Mail Mode**

<TX Size (Max.)>

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the upper limit of the size of the document to be sent.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the default upper limit of the size of the document for Internet Fax.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "11x17".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">Letter/Legal      "11x17"</p>

<TX Quality (Max.)>

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the upper limit of the image quality to be sent.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the upper limit of the image quality to be sent.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "600 dpi".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">200 dpi      400 dpi      "600 dpi"</p>

<Coding Method>

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the coding method for the data to be sent.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the coding method for the data to be sent.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "MH".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"MH"      MR      MMR</p>

**(2) Scan Mode**

<File Type>

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the file type of the data to be sent.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the file type of the data to be sent.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "TIFF".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"TIFF"      PDF</p>

<Coding Method>

Functions	• To set the coding method for the selected file type.
Use	• To set the coding method for the selected file type.
Setting/ Procedure	• The default setting is "MH". "MH"                      MMR

**G. Scanner Settings**

**(1) Activity Report**

Functions	• To set whether or not to give an activity report.
Use	• To set whether or not to return an activity report to the sending end of e-mail.
Setting/ Procedure	• The default setting is "ON". "ON"                      OFF

**(2) RX Doc. Header Print**

Functions	• To set whether or not to print header in a received document.
Use	• To set whether or not to print the e-mail header on the first page of a received document.
Setting/ Procedure	• The default setting is "OFF". ON                      "OFF"

**(3) E-Mail Header Text**

Functions	• To set whether or not to insert text in a transmitted document.
Use	• To set the insertion method of text to be inserted in the transmitted document.
Setting/ Procedure	• The default setting is "Fixed Text". "Fixed Text"              Custom Text              OFF

**(4) Gateway TX**

Functions	• To set whether to enable or disable transmission of e-mail during fax transfer in gateway communications.
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	• The default setting is "Restrict". Allow                      "Restrict"

**(5) Subject Registration**

Functions	• To set the subject during transmission.
Use	• To enter the subject during transmission.
Setting/ Procedure	• The maximum number of characters to be registered is 40 en-size (20 em-size) characters.

**(6) Division Settings**

<Page Division>

Functions	• To set whether or not to make page division during transmission.
Use	• To transmit data by dividing it by the page.
Setting/ Procedure	• The default setting is "OFF".  ON                      "OFF"

<Binary Division>

Functions	• To set whether or not to make binary division during transmission.
Use	• To transmit data through binary division.
Setting/ Procedure	• The default setting is "OFF".  ON                      "OFF"

<Binary Division Size>

Functions	• To set the binary division size.
Use	• To set the binary division size when Binary Division is set to [ON].
Setting/ Procedure	• The default setting is "500 KB". • Setting range: 16 to 2000 KB • Enter the value from the 10-Key Pad and touch [Enter].

**9.5.6 LDAP Setting**

**A. LDAP Search**

Functions	• To enable or disable address search using the LDAP server.
Use	• To enable address search using the LDAP server.
Setting/ Procedure	• The default setting is "No".  Yes                      "No"

**B. LDAP Server Setting**

**(1) LDAP Server Name**

Functions	• To set the LDAP server name.
Use	• To enter the LDAP server name.
Setting/ Procedure	1. Touch the [LDAP Server Setting]. 2. Touch the LDAP server key to be registered or changed. 3. Touch the [LDAP Server Name]. 4. Enter the LDAP Server Name of the local machine from the 10-Key Pad or the keyboard on the screen and then touch [Enter].

**(2) Server Address**

Functions	• To set the IP address of the LDAP server.
Use	• To enter the IP address of the LDAP server.
Setting/ Procedure	• IP address Version 4 format [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255]

**(3) Search Base**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the starting point of LDAP search.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To enter the starting point of LDAP search.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Search Base].</li> <li>Enter the starting point from the 10-Key Pad or the keyboard on the screen and then touch [Enter].</li> </ol>

**(4) Authentication Setting**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To make settings for authentication.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>General Settings: Use to select the LDAP authentication method.</li> <li>Login name: Use to set the logon name for authentication.</li> <li>Password: Use to set the password for authentication.</li> <li>Domain Name: Use to set the domain name for authentication by GSS-SPNEGO.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p>&lt;General Settings&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Anonymous".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">             "Anonymous"          Simple          Digest-MD5/CRAM-MD5              GSS-SPNEGO         </p> <p>&lt;Login name&gt;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Login name].</li> <li>Enter the logon name from the 10-Key Pad or the keyboard on the screen and then touch [Enter].</li> </ol> <p>&lt;Password&gt;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Password].</li> <li>Touch [New Password], enter the password, and then touch [Enter].</li> <li>Touch [Confirm New Password], enter the password once again, and then touch [Enter].</li> </ol> <p>&lt;Domain Name&gt;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Domain Name].</li> <li>Enter the domain name from the 10-Key Pad or the keyboard on the screen and then touch [Enter].</li> </ol>

**(5) Maximum number of search**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the maximum number of search items for LDAP search.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "100".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">5 to 100</p>

**(6) Connection time out**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the connection timeout for the LDAP server.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "60 sec".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">5 to 300</p>

**(7) SSL/TLS**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set whether or not to use SSL/TLS during communications carried out with the LDAP server.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To use SSL/TLS during communications carried out with the LDAP server.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "OFF".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">ON                      "OFF"</p>

**(8) Port Number**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the port number used for communications with the LDAP server.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "389".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">1 to 65535</p>

**(9) Initialize Setting**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To format all settings made in LDAP Server Setting.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Touch the [Initialize Setting].</li> <li>2. Select [Yes] and touch [Enter].</li> </ol>

**(10) Check Connection**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To check connection to the LDAP server.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Touch the [Check Connection].</li> <li>2. When the message indicating the completion of connection check appears, touch [Enter].</li> </ol>

**9.5.7 Frame Type Set**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the frame type for NetWare settings of NIC.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To specify the frame type used for communications.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Auto Detect".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"Auto Detect"    Ethernet-II    802.2 802.3                      SNAP</p>

### 9.5.8 Prefix/Suffix Settings

#### A. ON/OFF Setting

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set whether to add Prefix or Suffix to the address when calling or entering an address.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To add Prefix or Suffix to the address.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "OFF".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">ON                      "OFF"</p>

#### (1) Key Name

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the Key Name for Prefix/Suffix Settings.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To enter the Key Name for Prefix/Suffix Settings.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Key Name].</li> <li>Enter the Key Name (consisting of up to eight en-size characters) from the 10-Key Pad or the keyboard on the screen and then touch [Enter].</li> </ol>

#### (2) Fixed File Format

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set whether or not to fix the file format.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select not to fix the file format.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "ON".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"ON"                      OFF</p>

#### (3) Prefix Setting

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To register or change the Prefix.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To register or change the address displayed for Prefix.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Up to ten en-size characters can be used.</li> </ul>

#### (4) Suffix Setting

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To register or change the Suffix.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To register or change the address displayed for Suffix.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Up to 30 en-size characters can be used.</li> </ul>

**9.5.9 Printer Setting****A. Timeout**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the timeout for reception of print data.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the timeout for reception of print data.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Timeout].</li> <li>Press the Clear key and enter the value from the 10-Key Pad.</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "300 sec".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">10 to 1000</p>

**9.5.10 Software SW**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the status of each function according to the use using the software switch.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the status of each function using the software switch.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Call Admin. 2 to the screen and touch [Software SW].</li> <li>Touch [Mode Selection] and enter the mode number (a 3-digit numeral) using the 10-Key Pad.</li> <li>Touch [Bit Selection].</li> <li>Align the cursor using [←] or [→] key and define the bit with 0 or 1 of the 10-Key Pad. (To define the value in hexadecimal, touch [HEX Selection] and enter the value using the 10-Key Pad and A to F keys.)</li> <li>Touch the [Enter].</li> </ol>

**9.5.11 Ping**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To execute Ping.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To check the TCP/IP network for condition.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Ping].</li> <li>Select the address key to be executed and press the Start key.</li> </ol>

**9.5.12 Delete Job**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To delete all confidential print jobs.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Delete Job].</li> <li>Select [Yes] and touch [Enter].</li> </ol>

**9.5.13 SSL/TLS**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set whether or not to use SSL/TLS for communications.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To use SSL/TLS for communications.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "OFF".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">ON                      "OFF"</p>

## 9.6 Reports

### 9.6.1 TX Report

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To print the TX report.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the Utility/Counter key and touch [Reports].</li> <li>Touch the [TX Report].</li> </ol>

### 9.6.2 RX Report

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To print the RX report.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the Utility/Counter key and touch [Reports].</li> <li>Touch the [RX Report].</li> </ol>

### 9.6.3 One-Touch List

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To print the one-touch list.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the Utility/Counter key and touch [Reports].</li> <li>Touch the [One-Touch List].</li> </ol>

### 9.6.4 Mail Program List

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To print the mail program list.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the Utility/Counter key and touch [Reports].</li> <li>Touch the [Mail Program List].</li> <li>Select the mail program to be printed.</li> </ol>

## 9.7 Settings in the Printer Setting

### 9.7.1 MFP Set

#### A. Proof Print Hold Time

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the hold time of the proof print job.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "10 min."</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"10 min."          20 min.          30 min.</p>

#### B. Overwrite A4←→Letter

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set whether to enable or disable the override function of A4 and Letter.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To enable the function that allows Letter to be used instead of A4, or vice versa, for printout.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "OFF".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">ON                  "OFF"</p>

#### C. Document Hold Time

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the hold time of print data invoked when a condition, in which memory capacity has exceeded, at the expiration of which the print data is discarded.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "5Min".</li> <li>Setting range: 0 to 30</li> </ul>

#### D. PostScript Error Report

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set whether or not to print error information when an error occurs during computer printing.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To print error information when an error occurs during computer printing.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "OFF".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">ON                  "OFF"</p>

### 9.7.2 Default Set

#### A. Basic

##### (1) Tray

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set a paper source when none is specified by the printer driver during computer printing.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To specify a paper source when one cannot be specified by the printer driver during printing from Windows DOS or in a similar case.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Auto Paper Select".</li> </ul>



**(2) Symbol Set**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the Font Symbol Set when not specified by the printer driver during PC printing.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To use when the Font Symbol Set cannot be specified by the printer driver during printing from Windows DOS, etc.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Setting range: 0 to 35</li> <li>&lt;For U.S.&gt;</li> <li>The default setting is "29" (Window 3.1 Latin2).</li> <li>&lt;For Europe&gt;</li> <li>The default setting is "35" (ISO8859-10).</li> </ul>

**(3) Number Lines**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the number of lines per page for printing the text data.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the number of lines per page for printing the text data.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Setting range: 5 to 128</li> <li>&lt;For U.S.&gt;</li> <li>The default setting is "60".</li> <li>&lt;For Europe&gt;</li> <li>The default setting is "64".</li> </ul>

**(4) Font Size**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the font size when not specified by the printer driver during PC printing.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the font size when it cannot be specified by the printer driver during printing from Windows DOS, etc.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Bit Map Font Size" (10.00 Pitch).</li> <li>Setting range: Scalable font (4.00 to 999.75 points)</li> <li>Setting range: Bit map font size (0.44 to 99.00 pitch)</li> </ul>

**(5) CR/LF Mapping**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the mode for replacing data when printing the text data.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the mode for replacing data when printing the text data.</li> <li>OFF: Does not replace</li> <li>Mode 1: Replacing CR with CR-LF</li> <li>Mode 2: Replacing LF with CR-LF</li> <li>Mode 3: Replacing CR and LF with CR-LF, and FF with CR-FF</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "OFF".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;"> <span style="margin-right: 100px;">"OFF"</span> <span style="margin-right: 100px;">Mode 1</span> <span style="margin-right: 100px;">Mode 2</span> <span>Mode 3</span> </p>

**9.7.3 PDL Set**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the PDL (Page Description Language) for PC printing.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To fix the PDL as necessary. It usually switches automatically.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Auto".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;"> <span style="margin-right: 100px;">Auto</span> <span style="margin-right: 100px;">PCL</span> <span>PostScript</span> </p>

bizhub 200/250/350

Adjustment / Setting

### 9.7.4 Test Print

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To output the report or Demo Page concerning the print setting.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To check the setting concerning the printer. The types of report available for output are as follows.  Check Job Details: The list of printer setting will be output. PCL Demo Page: PCL Demo page will be output. PS Font List: PS Font List will be output. PCL Font List: PCL Font List will be output.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the Utility/Counter key, and then touch [Printer Setting] and [Test Print] in that order.</li> <li>Touch the test print key, for which test print is to be produced.</li> </ol>

### 9.8 Check Detail

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To check the counter reading or display a list of counters.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the Utility/Counter key.</li> <li>Touch the [Check Detail].</li> </ol>

Blank Page

# 10. Adjustment item list

Replacement Part/Service Job		No	Replace Feed Roller	Replace Separation Roller	Replace Pick-up Roller	Replace Registration Roller Bearing	Replace Registration Roller Gear	Replace Transfer Roller Unit	Replace Photo Conductor Unit	Replace Developer	Replace Developing Unit	Replace F using Unit	
Adjustment/Setting Items		No											
Adjust Mode	Printer	Registration (CD)	1										
		Registration (FD)	2										
	Scanner	Registration (CD)	3										
		Registration (FD)	4										
		Zoom (CD)	5										
		Zoom (FD)	6										
Function	F7-1	Document detection adjustment	7										
	F8	ATDC Sensor adjustment	8					(4)	(4)	(5)			
	F1	Paper passage test	9	(2)	(2)	(2)	(1)	(1)					
	FD	Bypass paper max/min set	10										
	HDD Format		11										
Tech. Rep. Mode	Counter	Special Parts Counter	PC Life Clear	12					(1)	(1)	(1)		
			I/C Life Clear	13					(2)	(2)	(2)		
		Developer Clear	14								(3)		
		Counter clear	15	(1)	(1)	(1)		(1)				(1)	
Tech. Rep. Choice	Sheet-through-ADF	Registration Loop	16										
		Zoom	17										
		Feed (CD)	18										
		Feed (FD)	19										
	Printer	Leading Edge Erase	20										
		Trailing Edge Erase	21										
		Right/Left Edge Erase	22										
		Loop Adjustment	23				(2)	(2)					
System Input	HDD selection		24										
	Optional Original Size Sensor selection		25										
Scanner Position Adjustment		26											
Remounting of the EEPROM		27											
Install I/U in machine		28						(3)	(3)	(4)			
Replace Developer		29											
F/W upgrading		30											

- This table shows the adjustment items that are required when a part of the machine has been replaced. Priority order, if applicable, during the adjustment procedures is indicated by the corresponding number in the parentheses.

No	Replace ATDC Sensor	Replace Mechanical Control Board	Replace PH Unit	Replace CCD Unit	Wind Scanner Drive Cables	Install Scanner Unit	Replace Multi Bypass Unit	Install Hard Disk	Install Optional Original Size Sensors
1			(1)						
2			(2)						
3			(8)	(2)					
4			(9)		(3)				
5			(6)	(1)					
6			(7)		(2)				
7									(2)
8	(5)								
9							○		
10									
11								(2)	
12	(1)								
13	(2)								
14									
15									
16									
17									
18									
19									
20									
21			(3)						
22			(4)						
23			(5)						
24								(1)	
25									(1)
26					(1)	○			
27		(1)							
28	(4)								
29	(3)								
30		(2)							

## 11. Tech. Rep. Mode

### 11.1 Tech. Rep. Mode function setting procedure

#### NOTE

- Ensure appropriate security for Service mode function setting procedures. They should NEVER be shown to any unauthorized person not involved with service jobs.

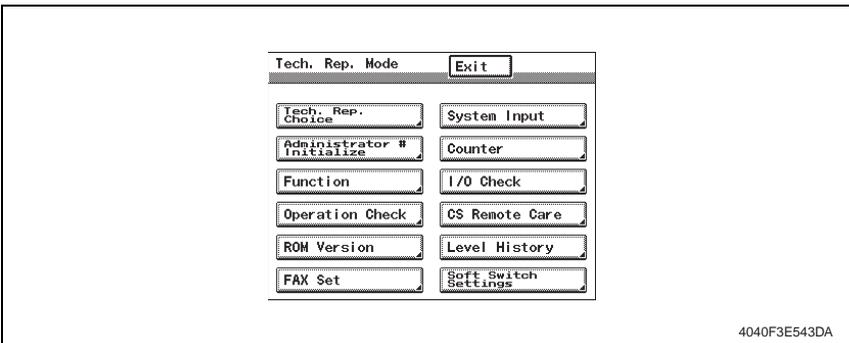
#### A. Procedure

1. Press the Utility/Counter key.
2. Touch [Check Detail].
3. Press the following keys in this order.  
Stop → 0 → 0 → Stop → 0 → 1
4. Enter the 8-digit service code and touch [END]. (Default value: 00000000)

#### NOTE

- When [END] is touched after a wrong service code has been entered, the Basic screen reappears.
- At the fourth access after entries of three wrong access codes, [END] is not available on the screen. It is therefore necessary to turn OFF and ON the Main Power Switch.
- If you forget the service code, it becomes necessary to replace the RAMS Board with a new one. Take necessary steps not to forget the service code.
- The RAMS Board is not available as a replacement part. If it requires replacement, contact Office Printing Support Division by way of CSES.

5. The Tech. Rep. Mode menu will appear.



#### NOTE

- To change the service code, see “Service Security Mode.”

☞ 200

#### B. Exiting

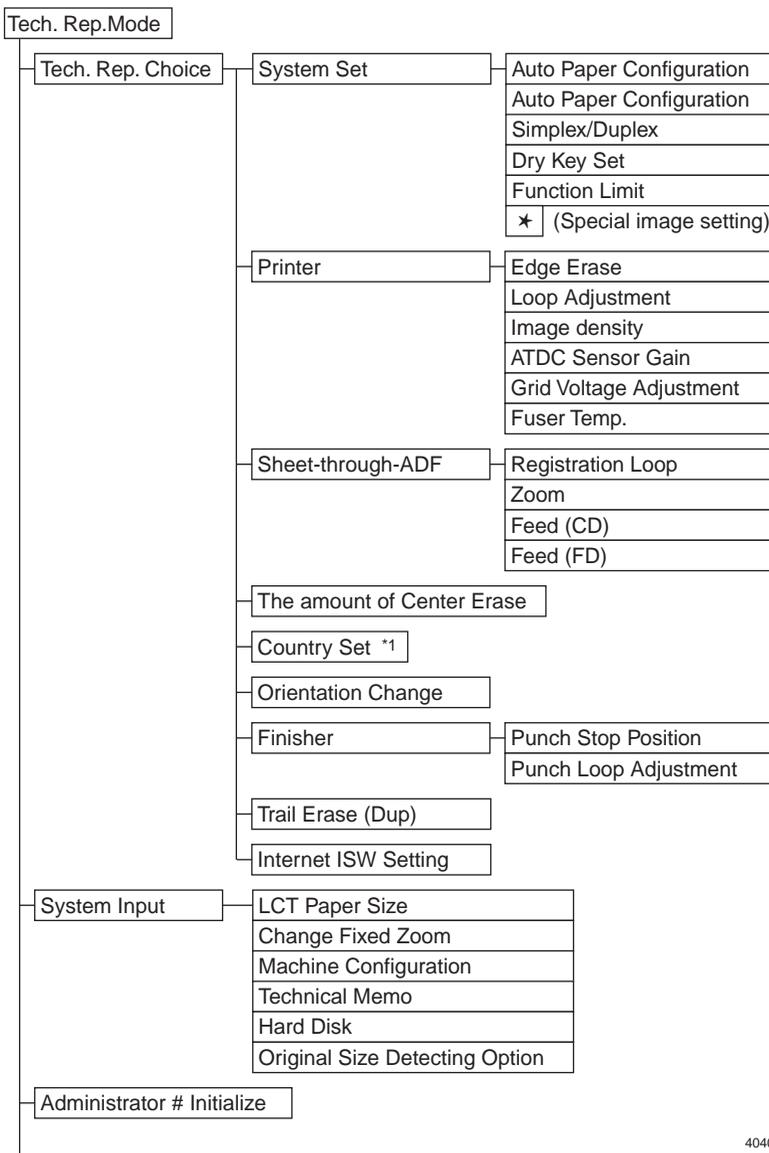
- Touch the [Exit] key.

#### C. Changing the Setting Value in Service Mode Functions

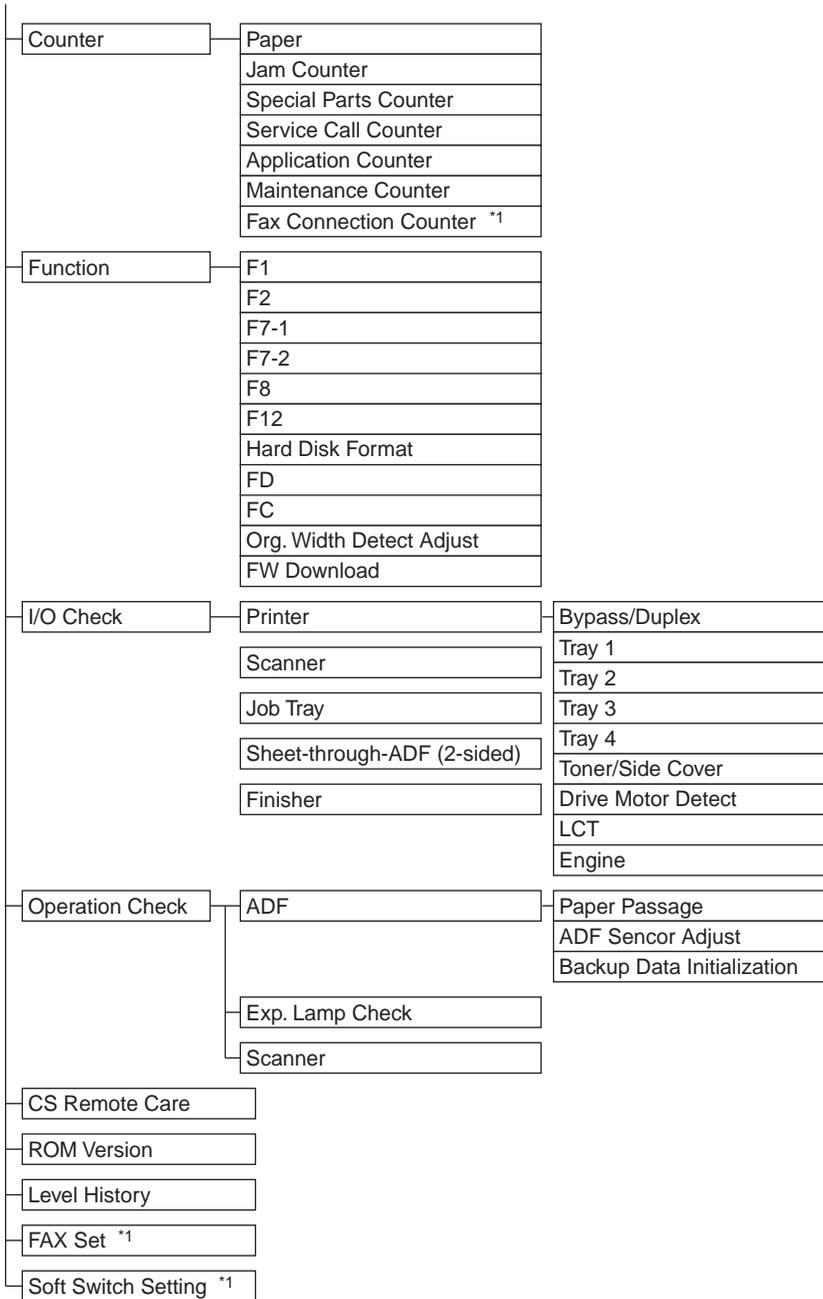
- Use the +/- key to enter or change the setting value.
- Use the 10-Key Pad to enter the setting value. (To change the setting value, first press the Clear key before making an entry.)

### 11.2 Tech. Rep. Mode function tree

- The function tree is shown to comply with the format displayed on the screen.



4040F3E541DA



4040F3E542DA

\*1: For more details, see FK-503 Service Manual.

### 11.3 Settings in the Tech. Rep. Choice

#### 11.3.1 System Set

##### A. Auto Paper Configuration

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select whether the paper source is selected according to the results of the original size detection or whether the nearest larger size is selected according to the marketing region.</li> </ul>
Use	<p>&lt;Inch/Metric&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>&lt;Metric&gt; or &lt;Inch&gt; is displayed according to the applicable marketing area.</li> </ul> <p>&lt;Inches&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All original sizes detected are corrected to ones in mm.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Inch/Metric".</li> </ul> <p>&lt;For U.S.&gt; "Inch/Metric"      Inches</p> <p>&lt;For Europe and Others&gt; "Inch/Metric"      Metric</p>

##### B. Priority Foolscap

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the paper size for foolscap.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the paper size for foolscap.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select the foolscap paper size from among the following four.</li> <li>The default setting is "F: 330 mm, C: 210 mm".</li> </ul> <p>F: 330 mm      "F: 330 mm"      F: 330 mm      F: 330 mm C: 203 mm      "C: 210 mm"      C: 216 mm      C: 220 mm</p>

##### C. Simplex/Duplex

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select whether or not the [1→1] setting is available for the [Default Setting Simplex/Duplex] function in User's Choice.</li> </ul>
Use	<p>&lt;Simplex &amp; Duplex&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To display all modes in [Default Setting Simplex/Duplex] of User's Choice.</li> </ul> <p>&lt;Duplex Only&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To display Duplex only in [Default Setting Simplex/Duplex] of User's Choice.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Inch/Metric".</li> </ul> <p>"Simplex &amp; Duplex"      Duplex Only</p>

**D. Dry Key Set**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select whether or not the [Dehumidify] button is available on the User Management screen of the Utility/Counter mode.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the image density is low</li> </ul> <p>&lt;Scanner&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The [Dehumidify] button appears and the operation is performed only for the scanner.</li> </ul> <p>&lt;Scanner/Drum&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The [Dehumidify] button appears and the operation is performed for both the scanner and the PC Drum.</li> </ul> <p>&lt;Disable&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The [Dehumidify] button does not appear.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Scanner/Drum".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">Scanner                      "Scanner/Drum"                      Disable</p>

**E. Function Limit**

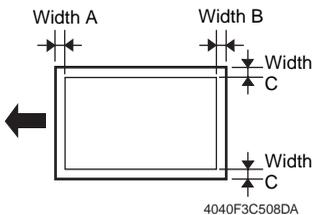
Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select whether or not access to some of the copy functions is restricted.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To disable some of the copy functions.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "OFF".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">ON                      "OFF"</p>

**F. [★] (Special image setting)**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select whether or not to display the special image [★] key on the Density screen.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Highlight the [★] key on the Density screen and then select the appropriate mode to produce a special image output.</li> <li>When Photo mode is selected: Low density mode</li> <li>When Text mode is selected: The image density level is increased two steps higher than in the ordinary Text mode.</li> <li>When Text/Photo mode is selected: The image density level is increased one step higher than in the ordinary Text mode.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p>&lt;[★] highlighted&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The special image key is displayed on the Density screen.</li> </ul> <p>&lt;[★] not highlighted&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The special image key is not displayed on the Density screen.</li> </ul>

### 11.3.2 Printer

#### A. Edge Erase

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the laser emission timing to adjust the width of the image area that is erased at the leading edge, trailing edge and top and bottom.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the PH unit is replaced</li> </ul>
Adjustment Specification	 <p>Adjust the following erase width values so that each falls within the following adjustment range: Width A (Leading Edge); Width B (Trailing Edge); and Width C (Top/Bottom).</p> <p>Default setting: 4 mm Adjustment range: 0 to 5 mm (in 1-mm increments)</p> <p>The default setting for 2-sided trailing edge erase width is "2 mm."</p>
Adjustment Instructions	<p>To make the erase width (Width A, B, or C) smaller, decrease the setting value. To make the erase width (Width A, B, or C) greater, increase the setting value.</p>
Adjustment Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.</li> <li>2. Touch the keys in this order: [Tech. Rep. Choice] → [Printer] → [Edge Erase].</li> <li>3. Select the specific edge to be adjusted.</li> <li>4. Press the Clear key and change the setting value using the 10-Key Pad.</li> <li>5. Touch [END] to validate the new setting value.</li> </ol>

#### B. Loop Adjustment

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To adjust the length of the loop formed in the paper before the Regist Rollers.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When a paper skew occurs.</li> <li>When a paper jam occurs.</li> </ul>
Adjustment Range	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "0".</li> <li>The adjustment range is -5 mm to +5 mm. (in 1 mm increments)</li> </ul>
Adjustment Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.</li> <li>2. Touch the keys in this order: [Tech. Rep. Choice] → [Printer] → [Loop Adjustment].</li> <li>3. Select the paper source, for which the adjustment is made.</li> <li>4. Press the Clear key and change the setting value using the 10-Key Pad.</li> <li>5. Change the + or - sign using the Access key or * key.</li> <li>6. Touch [END] to validate the new setting value.</li> </ol>

### C. Image density

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the Vg and Vb of the engine to select the image density.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the image density is high or low:</li> <li>With the Printing Density setting specified in User's Choice as a reference point, the density can be set to one of seven settings.</li> </ul>
Adjustment Range	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "0".</li> <li>The adjustment range is -3 mm to +3 mm. (in 1 mm increments)</li> </ul>
Adjustment Instructions	<p>If the image density is high, decrease the setting value.          If the image density is low, increase the setting value.</p>
Adjustment Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.</li> <li>Touch the keys in this order: [Tech. Rep. Choice] → [Printer] → [Image density].</li> <li>Press the Clear key and change the setting value using the 10-Key Pad.</li> <li>Change the + or - sign using the Access key or * key.</li> <li>Touch [END] to validate the new setting value.</li> </ol>

### D. ATDC Sensor Gain

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To display the value automatically adjusted using function F8 and to change that value.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the spare Developing Unit or the Imaging Unit has been temporarily used</li> </ul> <p>&lt;Current&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ATDC control voltage automatically adjusted using function F8</li> </ul> <p>&lt;Job Setting&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Normally, the value displayed here is the same as that displayed for Current.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>If a Developing Unit other than a new one is installed, type in the setting for the installed product.</b></li> </ul>
Adjustment Range	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The adjustment range is 0 to 255.</li> </ul>
Adjustment Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.</li> <li>Touch the keys in this order: [Tech. Rep. Choice] → [Printer] → [ATDC Sensor Gain].</li> <li>Press the Clear key and change the setting value using the 10-Key Pad</li> <li>Touch [END] to validate the new setting value.</li> </ol>

### E. Grid Voltage Adjustment

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the Vg setting for sensitivity variations due to the durability of the PC Drum and adjust the image density.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the PC Drum Unit is replaced</li> <li>If a foggy background occurs, increase the setting value.</li> </ul>
Adjustment Range	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "0".</li> <li>The adjustment range is -2 to +2.</li> </ul>
Adjustment Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.</li> <li>Touch the keys in this order: [Tech. Rep. Choice] → [Printer] → [Grid Voltage Adjustment].</li> <li>Press the Clear key and change the setting value using the 10-Key Pad</li> <li>Touch [END] to validate the new setting value.</li> </ol>



### 11.3.4 The amount of Center Erase

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the amount of center erase for bound originals.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the amount of center erase for bound originals.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "12 mm".</li> <li>The adjustment range is 2 to 20 mm.</li> </ul>

### 11.3.5 Orientation Change

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set whether or not to match the orientation of the image when paper is fed out between the normal mode and Staple and Punch mode.</li> </ul>
Use	<p>&lt;ON&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn ON the function if the orientation of the image when paper is fed out is matched between the normal mode and Staple and Punch mode.</li> </ul> <p>&lt;OFF&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn OFF the function if the orientation of the image when paper is fed out is not matched between the normal mode and Staple and Punch mode.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "OFF".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">ON                      "OFF"</p>

### 11.3.6 Finisher

#### A. Punch Stop Position

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To adjust the paper stop position for punching.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To adjust the punch position.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p> For details on adjustment, see the Service Manual for Option FS-508.</p>

#### B. Punch Loop Adjustment

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To adjust the length of the loop for correcting skew during punching.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To correct any skew in the punch position.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p> For details on adjustment, see the Service Manual for Option FS-508.</p>

### 11.3.7 Trail Erase (Dup)

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the adjustment value for the amount of erase on the trailing edge for 2-sided printing.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The amount erased at the trailing edge of the second side of a 2-sided print is the Trailing setting for Edge Erase + Duplex Trailing Erase setting.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "2 mm".</li> <li>The adjustment range is 0 to 5 mm.</li> </ul>

## 11.4 Table of Temperatures for Adjusting the Fusing Temperature

### 11.4.1 Standard paper

Touch Panel Setting		Paper width	Marketing region	Tech. Rep. Choice Setting	
				Mode 1	Mode 3
				Heater temperature (main/sub)	
1	bizhub 350	221 or more	U.S.	180 °C	
			Europe	200 °C	190 °C
		220 mm or less	U.S.	170 °C	
			Europe	180 °C	
	bizhub 250 bizhub 200	221 or more	U.S.	180 °C	
			Europe	180 °C	
	220 mm or less	U.S.	160 °C		
		Europe	180 °C		
2	bizhub 350	221 or more	U.S.	190 °C	
			Europe	200 °C	
		220 mm or less	U.S.	180 °C	
			Europe	190 °C	
	bizhub 250 bizhub 200	221 or more	U.S.	190 °C	
			Europe	190 °C	
	220 mm or less	U.S.	170 °C		
		Europe	190 °C		
3	bizhub 350	221 or more	U.S.	200 °C	
			Europe	190 °C	
		220 mm or less	U.S.	190 °C	
			Europe	170 °C	
	bizhub 250 bizhub 200	221 or more	U.S.	200 °C	
			Europe	200 °C	
	220 mm or less	U.S.	180 °C		
		Europe	200 °C		
4	bizhub 350	221 or more	U.S.	170 °C	
			Europe	180 °C	
		220 mm or less	U.S.	160 °C	
			Europe	160 °C	
	bizhub 250 bizhub 200	221 or more	U.S.	170 °C	
			Europe	170 °C	
	220 mm or less	U.S.	160 °C		
		Europe	170 °C		

**11.4.2 Special Paper**

Touch Panel Setting	Tech. Rep. Choice Setting	
	Mode 1	Mode 3
	Heater temperature (main/sub)	
1	200 °C	
2	190 °C	
3	180 °C	

**11.4.3 OHP**

Touch Panel Setting		Tech. Rep. Choice Setting	
		Mode 1	Mode 3
		Heater temperature (main/sub)	
1	bizhub 350	165 °C	
	bizhub 250 bizhub 200	160 °C	
2	bizhub 350	170 °C	
	bizhub 250 bizhub 200	170 °C	
3	bizhub 350	155 °C	
	bizhub 250 bizhub 200	150 °C	

**11.4.4 Thin Paper**

Touch Panel Setting	Tech. Rep. Choice Setting	
	Mode 1	Mode 3
	Heater temperature (main/sub)	
1	170 °C	
2	180 °C	
3	160 °C	

## 11.5 Settings in the System Input

### 11.5.1 LCT Paper Size

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To enter the paper size when the LCT is installed.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The function can be set only when the LCT is mounted on the machine.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Letter".</li> </ul> <p>&lt;For U.S.&gt; A4 "Letter"</p> <p>&lt;For Europe and Others&gt; "A4" Letter</p>

### 11.5.2 Change Fixed Zoom

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the fixed zoom ratio.</li> </ul>
Use	
Adjustment Range	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>x0.250 to x4.000 (common to all zoom keys)</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.</li> <li>Touch [System Input] and [Change Fixed Zoom] in that order.</li> <li>Select the specific zoom ratio to be changed.</li> <li>Press the Clear key and change the setting value using the 10-Key Pad.</li> <li>Touch [Set] to validate the setting value.</li> </ol>

### 11.5.3 Machine Configuration

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Displays the machine configuration.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Yes] or [No] indicates whether or not the option is installed.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.</li> <li>Touch [System Input] and [Machine Configuration] in that order.</li> </ol>

### 11.5.4 Technical Memo

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter the serial number and other data.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.</li> <li>Touch [System Input] and [Technical Memo] in that order.</li> <li>Enter the Password from the 10-Key Pad or the keyboard on the screen and touch [Enter].</li> </ol>

### 11.5.5 Hard Disk

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set whether or not the HDD is mounted.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select [Yes] if the HDD is mounted.</li> <li>[Yes] is automatically set when Hard Disk Format is executed.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "No".</li> </ul> <p>Yes "No"</p>

### 11.5.6 Original Size Detecting Option

Functions	• To set whether or not the optional Original Size Sensors are mounted.
Use	• Select [Yes] when the optional Original Size Sensors are mounted.
Setting/ Procedure	• The default setting is "No".  Yes                      "No"

## 11.6 Settings in the Administrator # Initialize

Functions	• To initialize the administrator number.
Use	• To initialize the administrator number (00000000).
Setting/ Procedure	1. Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen. 2. Touch the [Administrator # Initialize]. 3. Select [Yes] and touch [Enter].

## 11.7 Settings in the Counter

### 11.7.1 Checking the counter reading

1. Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.
2. Touch the [Counter].
3. Touch [Check] and the specific counter key whose reading is to be checked.

### 11.7.2 Clearing readings of all counters at once

1. Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.
2. Touch the [Counter].
3. Touch the [Counter Reset].
4. Touch the counter keys to be cleared and then touch [OK].

### 11.7.3 Clearing the reading of a specific counter

1. Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.
2. Touch the [Counter].
3. Touch the specific counter key to be cleared and press the Clear key.  
If the reading of a wrong counter key has been cleared, press the Interrupt key to undo the clearing operation.

### 11.7.4 Paper

Functions	• To display the number of sheets used for each paper size and each paper type. To clear the data for any counter.
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	Checking the counter reading ☞ 160 Clearing the counter reading (all and a specific one) ☞ 160

### 11.7.5 Jam Counter

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To display the number and frequency of misfeeds.</li> </ul>
Use	To clear the data for any counter.
Setting/ Procedure	Checking the counter reading ☞ 160 Clearing the counter reading (all and a specific one) ☞ 160

### 11.7.6 Special Parts Counter

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To display the number of times that each PM part is used.</li> <li>To clear the data for any counter.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When any maintenance part is replaced.</li> <li>PC Life: Is the ratio of the PC Drum rotation compared to PC Drum Life. Clear this counter when the PC Drum Unit or developer has been replaced.</li> <li>I/C Life: Displays the number of prints according to the length of the paper.</li> <li>Developer: Number of times that the Developing Unit is replaced. Automatically counts up when the PC Life counter is cleared.</li> <li>Bypass: Number of sheets of paper fed from the Manual Feed Tray.</li> <li>Tray 1: Number of sheets of paper fed from the Tray 1.</li> <li>Tray 2: Number of sheets of paper fed from the Tray 2.</li> <li>Tray 3: Number of sheets of paper fed from the Tray 3.</li> <li>Tray 4: Number of sheets of paper fed from the Tray 4.</li> <li>LCT Parts 1: Number of sheets of paper fed from the LCT.</li> <li>Other PM Parts 1: Number of sheets of paper fed.</li> <li>Other PM Parts 2: Number of sheets of paper fed.</li> <li>Other PM Parts 3: Number of sheets of paper fed.</li> <li>ADF Take-Up: Number of document pages fed through the take-up section of the ADF.</li> <li>ADF Reverse: Number of document pages fed through the turnover unit of the ADF</li> <li>IR 1: Number of IR scans.</li> <li>IR 2: Number of IR scans.</li> <li>Toner Pages: Number of pages equivalent to the number of black dots on A4 original with B/W 5%</li> <li>Fusing Unit: Number of pages fed out.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	Checking the counter reading ☞ 160 Clearing the counter reading (all and a specific one) ☞ 160

### 11.7.7 Service Call Counter

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To check the number of malfunctions that have occurred for each type of malfunction.</li> </ul>
Use	To clear the data for the counter.
Setting/ Procedure	Checking the counter reading ☞ 160 Clearing the counter reading (all and a specific one) ☞ 160

### 11.7.8 Application Counter

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To display or clear the readings of application counters.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Copy: Number of copies made</li> <li>Printer: Number of printed pages produced via computer</li> <li>List Print: Number of printed pages of lists</li> <li>Fax Print: Number of printed pages received as fax and mail</li> <li>Fax Transmission: Number of pages of fax transmitted</li> <li>Mail Transmission: Number of pages transmitted by fax/scanner</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	Checking the counter reading  160 Clearing the counter reading (all and a specific one)  160

### 11.7.9 Maintenance Counter

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the counter value at which maintenance should be performed for any given part.</li> </ul>
Use	<Maintenance Counter (Set)> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the Keypad to type in the maintenance counter value.</li> <li>When the reading reaches a predetermined value,  appears in the sub-message display area.</li> </ul> <Maintenance Counter (Count)> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Counts up when a sheet of paper is fed through the copier.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	Checking the counter reading  160 Clearing the counter reading (all and a specific one)  160

## 11.8 Settings in the Function

### 11.8.1 F1

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To check the paper feeding in the paper take-up/transport sections without printing on the paper with the engine unit.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When a paper misfeed occurs.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, touch [Function] → [F1] in that order.</li> <li>Select the paper source, and then press the Start key. Touch [Duplex] to feed out the paper along the paper path for 2-sided copying.</li> <li>The sequence is halted when the Stop key is pressed or there is no paper. These pages are not counted with the counters.</li> </ol>

### 11.8.2 F2

- This test is for factory adjustment only and should NOT be used.

### 11.8.3 F7-1

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To automatically adjust the Original Size Detecting Sensor.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the Original Size Detecting Sensor is replaced</li> <li>When an optional sensor is mounted</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, touch [Function] → [F7-1] in that order.   109           </li> </ol>

**11.8.4 F7-2**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To automatically adjust the Original Size Detecting Sensor. (only for a FAX)</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the Original Size Detecting Sensor is replaced</li> <li>When an optional sensor is mounted</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p> For details on adjustment, see the Service Manual for Option FK-503.</p>

**11.8.5 F8**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To automatically adjust the ATDC sensor.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When developer is replaced</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, touch [Function] → [F8] in that order.</li> <li>Press the Start key to perform the ATDC sensor gain adjustment.</li> <li>After the adjustment is finished, the operation stops automatically.</li> <li>The adjusted setting overwrites the current setting for ATDC Sensor Gain in Printer of Tech. Rep. Mode.</li> </ol>

**11.8.6 F12**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To print on paper with the engine unit and check the printing and paper feeding in the paper take-up/transport sections.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, touch [Function] → [F12] in that order.</li> <li>Select the paper source, and then press the Start key. Touch [Duplex] to feed out the paper along the paper path for 2-sided copying.</li> <li>The sequence is halted when the Stop key is pressed or there is no paper.</li> </ol>

**11.8.7 Hard Disk Format**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To format the hard disk.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When a hard disk drive is installed.</li> <li>When the hard disk is initialized.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, touch [Function] → [Hard Disk Format] in that order.</li> <li>Press the Start key to start the HDD formatting sequence.</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>NEVER turn OFF the power while the formatting sequence is in progress.</b></li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn OFF the Main Power Switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the Main Power Switch again.</li> </ol>

**11.8.8 FD**

Functions	• To set the maximum and minimum sizes for manually fed paper.
Use	• When the Manual Feed Unit is replaced.
Setting/ Procedure	<p>&lt;Maximum Size&gt;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. From the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, touch [Function] → [FD] in that order.</li> <li>2. Load paper with a maximum size of 301 mm into the Manual Feed Tray.</li> <li>3. In the Touch Panel, touch [Maximum Size], and then press the Start key to automatically adjust the setting.</li> </ol> <p>&lt;Minimum Size&gt;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. From the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, touch [Function] → [FD] in that order.</li> <li>2. Load paper with a minimum size of 89 mm into the Manual Feed Tray.</li> <li>3. In the Touch Panel, touch [Minimum Size], and then press the Start key to automatically adjust the setting.</li> </ol>

**11.8.9 FC**

Functions	• To check the Finisher operations.
Use	<p>Mode 1: Performs the move operation for the Stapling Unit.</p> <p>Mode 2: Performs the move operation for the Aligning Plate.</p> <p>Mode 3: Performs the ascent operation for the Elevator Tray.</p> <p>Mode 4: Performs the descent operation for the Elevator Tray.</p> <p>Mode 5<sup>*1</sup>: Performs the Punch drive operation.</p> <p>Mode 6<sup>*1</sup>: Performs the Punch drive operation. (2 holes)</p> <p>Mode 7: Performs the open/close operations for the Exit.</p> <p>Mode 8<sup>*2</sup>: Performs the drive operation for the Creasing Unit.</p> <p>Mode 9<sup>*2</sup>: Performs the open/close operations for the Saddle Exit.</p> <p>Mode 10: Drives the transport section.</p> <p>Mode 11: Performs the open/close operations for the Shutter.</p> <p>Mode 12<sup>*3</sup>: Drives the Mail Bin Solenoid.</p> <p>Mode 13: Performs the single rotate operation for the Storage Paddle.</p> <p>Mode 14: Performs the single rotate operation for the Exit Paddle.</p>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. From the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, touch [Function] → [FC] in that order.</li> <li>2. Select an operation, and then press the Start key to begin the operation.</li> </ol>

\*1: appears only when the Punch Kit PU-5016 is installed.

\*2: appears only when the Saddle Kit SD-502 is installed.

\*3: appears only when the Mail Bin Kit MT-501 is installed.

**11.8.10 Org. Width Detect Adjust**

Functions	• To set the maximum and minimum sizes of the original for the ADF.
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	☞ For details on adjustment, see the Service Manual for Option DF-605.

**11.8.11 FW Download**

Functions	• To upgrade the firmware of the engine or Finisher.
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<p>☞ For details of upgrading of engine firmware, see p. 44.</p> <p>☞ For details of upgrading of Finisher firmware, see FS-508 (Option) Service Manual.</p>

## 11.9 I/O Check

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To display the states of the input ports of sensors and switches when the machine remains stationary.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Used for troubleshooting when a malfunction or a misfeed occurs.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The operation of each of the switches and sensors can be checked on a real-time basis.</li> <li>It can be checked as long as the 5-V power line remains intact even when a cover is open.</li> </ul>

### 11.9.1 Electrical Components Check Procedure Through Input Data Check

#### <Example>

- When a paper misfeed occurs in the paper take-up section of the machine, the Vertical Conveyance Sensor is considered to be responsible for it.
  - Remove the sheet of paper misfeed.
  - From the Sensor Check List that follows, check the panel display of the Vertical Conveyance Sensor. For the Vertical Conveyance Sensor, you check the data of "2nd Paper Feed".
  - Call the Service mode to the screen.
  - Touch [I/O Check] → [Printer] → [Bypass/Duplex] in that order and call to the screen the sensor check screen that contains 2nd Paper Feed.
  - Check that the data for 2nd Paper Feed is [0] (sensor blocked).
  - Move the actuator to unblock the Vertical Conveyance Sensor.
  - Check that the data for 2nd Paper Feed changes from [0] to [1] on the screen.
  - If the input data is [0] change the sensor.

11.9.2 I/O Check Screens

- These are only typical screens which may be different from what are shown on each individual machine.

Bypass/Duplex			END
Paper Passage	FD Size 3	0	
Timing Roller	FD Size 4	0	
Exit	Bypass Tray Pick-Up	0	
2nd Paper Feed	Duplex		
3rd Paper Feed	Duplex Paper Passage 1	0	
4th Paper Feed	Duplex Paper Passage 2	0	
Bypass	Reverse	0	
Bypass Tray	Duplex Set	0	
Paper Empty	Duplex Cover	0	
FD Size 1	Bypass Paper Width Detect		
FD Size 2	Bypass Paper Width Detect	0	

Tray 1		END
Tray Set	0	
Paper Near Empty	0	
Paper Empty	0	
Upper Side Detect	0	
CD Size 1	0	
CD Size2	0	
FD Size 1	0	
FD Size 2	0	
FD Size 3	0	
FD Size 4	0	

Tray 2		END
Tray Set	0	
Paper Near Empty	0	
Paper Empty	0	
Upper Side Detect	0	
CD Size 1	0	
CD Size2	0	
FD Size 1	0	
FD Size 2	0	
FD Size 3	0	
FD Size 4	0	
2nd Take-up	0	

Tray 3			END
Tray Set	0	Pickup	0
Paper Near Empty	0		
Paper Empty	0		
Upper Side Detect	0		
CD Size 1	0		
CD Size2	0		
FD Size 1	0		
FD Size 2	0		
FD Size 3	0		
FD Size 4	0		
Take-up Lower	0		

Tray 4		END
Tray Set	0	
Paper Near Empty	0	
Paper Empty	0	
Upper Side Detect	0	
CD Size 1	0	
CD Size2	0	
FD Size 1	0	
FD Size 2	0	
FD Size 3	0	
FD Size 4	0	
Pickup	0	

Toner /Side Cover		END
Side Cover	0	
Front Cover	0	
Sub Hopper Empty	0	

Drive Motor Detect		END
Main Motor	0	
I/U Motor	0	
Polygon Motor	0	
Cooling Fan (Power Supply)	0	
Cooling Fan	0	
IU Cooling Fan	0	
Toner Suction Fan (Ventilation)	0	

LCT			END
LCT1		LCT2	
Vertical Transport	0	Raised(Lift-Up)	0
Feed	0	Lowered (Lift up)	0
Shift Tray	0	Home(Shift)	0
Paper Empty	0	Shift Tray Stop Position	0
Main Tray	0	Elev. Mtr Pulse	0
Paper Empty	0	Shift Mtr Pulse	0
Paper Empty	0	Dividing Position	0
Lower Overrun	0	Right Door Open	0
Manual Button Down	0		
Tray Open	0		

4040F3E548DA

Engine		END
Fusing Thermistor	I/C Type	
Fusing Thermistor 1	0	I/C Discrimination 0
Fusing Thermistor 2	0	
ATDC Sensor		
ATDC Sensor	0	
Drum Thermistor		
Drum Thermistor	0	
Temperature & Humidity Sensor		
Temperature	0	
Humidity	0	

Scanner		END
Scanner (HP)	0	
Size reset \$	0	
Orig. cover detecting \$	0	

Job Tray		END
Upper Tray Full	0	
Turn Over Unit	0	
Job Tray	0	

Sheet-through-DR (2-sided)		END
Empty	0	Org. Width Detect 1 0
Registration	0	Org. Width Detect 2 0
Before Scanning	0	Side Cover 0
Exit and Turn over	0	Org. Width Vol. 0
Orig. Length 1	0	
Orig. Length 2	0	
Orig. Length 3	0	
Orig. Length 4	0	
Behind Separator	0	
Org. Width Detect 0	0	

Finisher		Fwd	END
Paper Path Sensor	Lower (Elev.)	0	
Paper Passage (ModdSurface)	(Elev.)	0	
Paper Passage (F0edOptional Tray)			
Tray	(Elevate)	0	
Elevate Tray	Elevate Tray position	0	
Upper/Lowered		0	
Shutter Status		0	
Front Door Set		0	
Punch Pulse		0	

Finisher		Back	Fwd	END
Finisher Tray	Staple Home	0		
Align Home 1	Punch	0		
Align Home 2	Punch Pos. 1	0		
Home (Shutter)	Punch Pos. 2	0		
Paddle Home (Exit)	Punch Scraps Full Detect	0		
Exit R Home	Home (Paper Hold R)	0		
Empty (Finisher)	Middle Guide	0		
Staple				
Staple Home (CD)		0		
Self Priming		0		
Staple Empty		0		

Finisher		Back	Fwd	END
Saddle	Layable Guide Home (Saddle)	0		
Exit (Saddle)		0		
Saddle Empty		0		
Saddle Reset		0		
Staple Home 1 (Saddle)		0		
Self Priming 1 (Saddle)		0		
Staple Empty 1 (Saddle)		0		
Staple Home 2 (Saddle)		0		
Self Priming 2 (Saddle)		0		
Staple Empty 2 (Saddle)		0		
Home (Saddle In & out Guide)		0		

Finisher		Back	END
Mail Bins	3rd Mail Bin		
Paper Passage 1 (Mail Bins)	Empty	0	
Paper Passage 2 (Mail Bins)	3rd Mail Bin Full	0	
Mail Bin Door	4th Mail Bin	0	
1st Mail Bin	Empty	0	
Empty	4th Mail Bin Full	0	
1st Mail Bin Full		0	
2nd Mail Bin			
Empty		0	
2nd Mail Bin Full		0	

4040F3E549DA

**11.9.3 I/O Check List**

**A. Printer (Main Unit, PC-102, PC-202, PC-402)**

Symbol	Panel Display	Part/Signal Name	Operation Characteristics/ Panel Display	
			1	0
PC1	Timing Roller	Synchronizing Roller Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC4	Exit	Paper Exit Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC2	2nd Paper Feed	Vertical Conveyance Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC117-PF	3rd Paper Feed	Tray3 Vertical Conveyance Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC126-PF	4th Paper Feed	Tray4 Vertical Conveyance Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
-	Bypass Tray	Manual Bypass Tray Set signal	Not set	Set
PC18	Paper Empty	Bypass Paper Empty Sensor	Paper not present	Paper present
PC19	FD Size 1	Bypass FD Paper Size Sensor/1	Paper present	Paper not present
PC20	FD Size 2	Bypass FD Paper Size Sensor/2	Paper present	Paper not present
PC21	FD Size 3	Bypass FD Paper Size Sensor/3	Paper present	Paper not present
PC22	FD Size 4	Bypass FD Paper Size Sensor/4	Paper present	Paper not present
PC29	Bypass Tray Pick Up	Bypass Lift Sensor	Unblocked	Blocked
PC24	Duplex Paper Passage 1	Duplex Unit Upper Transport Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC25	Duplex Paper Passage 2	Duplex Unit Lower Transport Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC26	Reverse	Switch Back Unit Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
-	Duplex Set	Duplex Unit Set signal	Out of position	Set
PC23	Duplex Cover	Duplex Unit Door Sensor	Open	Close
VR1	Bypass Paper Width Detect	Bypass Paper Size Detection Unit	Analog value	

bizhub 200/250/350

Adjustment / Setting

Symbol	Panel Display	Part/Signal Name	Operation Characteristics/ Panel Display	
			1	0
PC7	Tray Set	Tray1 Set Sensor	Set	Out of position
PC8	Paper Near Empty	Tray1 Paper Near-Empty Sensor	Unblocked	Blocked
PC9	Paper Empty	Tray1 Paper Empty Sensor	Paper not present	Paper present
PC6	Upper Side Detect	Tray1 Paper Lift Sensor	At upper limit	Not at upper limit
PC11	CD Size 1	Tray1 CD Paper Size Sensor 1	Maximum value	Not at maximum value
PC10	CD Size 2	Tray1 CD Paper Size Sensor 2	Maximum value	Not at maximum value
PWB-I1	FD Size 1	FD Paper Size Board 1	Maximum value	Not at maximum value
	FD Size 2		Maximum value	Not at maximum value
	FD Size 3		Maximum value	Not at maximum value
	FD Size 4		Maximum value	Not at maximum value
PC13	Tray Set	Tray2 Set Sensor	Set	Out of position
PC14	Paper Near Empty	Tray2 Paper Near-Empty Sensor	Unblocked	Blocked
PC15	Paper Empty	Tray2 Paper Empty Sensor	Paper not present	Paper present
PC12	Upper Side Detect	Tray2 Paper Lift Sensor	At upper limit	Not at upper limit
PC17	CD Size 1	Tray2 CD Paper Size Sensor 1	Maximum value	Not at maximum value
PC16	CD Size 2	Tray2 CD Paper Size Sensor 2	Maximum value	Not at maximum value
PWB-I2	FD Size 1	FD Paper Size Board 2	Maximum value	Not at maximum value
	FD Size 2		Maximum value	Not at maximum value
	FD Size 3		Maximum value	Not at maximum value
	FD Size 4		Maximum value	Not at maximum value
PC3	2nd Take-up	Right Lower Door Sensor	Out of position	Set

bizhub 200/250/350

Adjustment / Setting

Symbol	Panel Display	Part/Signal Name	Operation Characteristics/ Panel Display	
			1	0
PC112-PF	Tray Set	Tray3 Set Sensor	Set	Out of position
PC113-PF	Paper Near Empty	Tray3 Paper Near-Empty Sensor	Unblocked	Blocked
PC115-PF	Paper Empty	Tray3 Paper Empty Sensor	Paper not present	Paper present
PC114-PF	Upper Side Detect	Tray3 Lift Sensor	At upper limit	Not at upper limit
PC118-PF	CD Size 1	Tray3 CD Paper Size Sensor 1	Maximum value	Not at maximum value
PC119-PF	CD Size 2	Tray3 CD Paper Size Sensor 2	Maximum value	Not at maximum value
PWB-I3 PF	FD Size 1	Tray3 FD Paper Size Detection Board	Maximum value	Not at maximum value
	FD Size 2		Maximum value	Not at maximum value
	FD Size 3		Maximum value	Not at maximum value
	FD Size 4		Maximum value	Not at maximum value
PC111-PF	Take-up Lower	Door Sensor	Open	Close
PC116-PF	Pickup	Tray3 Paper Take-Up Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC121-PF	Tray Set	Tray4 Set Sensor	Set	Out of position
PC122-PF	Paper Near Empty	Tray4 Paper Near-Empty Sensor	Unblocked	Blocked
PC124-PF	Paper Empty	Tray4 Paper Empty Sensor	Paper not present	Paper present
PC123-PF	Upper Side Detect	Tray4 Lift Sensor	At upper limit	Not at upper limit
PC127-PF	CD Size 1	Tray4 CD Paper Size Sensor 1	Maximum value	Not at maximum value
PC128-PF	CD Size 2	Tray4 CD Paper Size Sensor 2	Maximum value	Not at maximum value
PWB-I4 PF	FD Size 1	Tray4 FD Paper Size Detection Board	Maximum value	Not at maximum value
	FD Size 2		Maximum value	Not at maximum value
	FD Size 3		Maximum value	Not at maximum value
	FD Size 4		Maximum value	Not at maximum value
PC125-PF	Pickup	Tray4 Paper Take-Up Sensor	Maximum value	Not at maximum value

Symbol	Panel Display		Part/Signal Name	Operation Characteristics/ Panel Display	
				1	0
SW2	Toner/Side Cover	Side Cover	Right Side Door Interlock Switch 1	Out of position	Set
PC5		Front Cover	Front Door Sensor	Out of position	Set
SW4		Sub Hopper Empty	Sub Hopper Empty Switch	Toner not loaded: 1 and 0 alternately displayed. Toner loaded: 0 displayed	
M1	Drive Motor Detect	Main Motor	Main Motor	When turning	When stopped
M2		I/U Motor	IU Motor	When turning	When stopped
M9		Polygon Motor	Polygon Motor	When turning	When stopped
M4		Cooling Fan (Power Supply)	Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor	When turning	When stopped
M5		Cooling Fan	Cooling Fan Motor	When turning	When stopped
M6		IU Cooling Fan	IU Cooling Fan Motor	When turning	When stopped
M11		Toner Suction Fan (Ventilation)	Toner Suction Fan Motor	When turning	When stopped

bizhub 200/250/350

Adjustment / Setting

Symbol	Panel Display	Part/Signal Name	Operation Characteristics/ Panel Display	
			1	0
PC2-LCT	Vertical Transport	Vertical Conveyance Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC1-LCT	Feed	Paper Feed Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC9-LCT	Shift Tray Paper Empty	Shift Tray Paper Empty Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC3-LCT	Main Tray Paper Empty	Upper Paper Empty Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PWB-E LCT	Paper Empty	Paper Empty Board	Paper present	Paper not present
PC7-LCT	Lower Overrun	Lower Limit Sensor	Malfunction	Operational
UN1-LCT	Manual Button Down	Paper Descent Key	ON	OFF
PC6-LCT	Tray Open	Tray Set Sensor	Open	Close
PC4-LCT	Raised (Lift-Up)	Tray Upper Limit Sensor	At upper limit	Not at upper limit
PC13-LCT	Lowered (Lift up)	Tray Lower Position Sensor	At lower limit	Not at lower limit
PC12-LCT	Home (Shift)	Shifter Home Position Sensor	At home	Out of home
PC11-LCT	Shift Tray Stop Position	Shifter Return Position Sensor	At stop position	Not at stop position
PC10-LCT	Elev. Mtr Pulse	Elevator Motor Pulse Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC8-LCT	Shift Mtr Pulse	Shift Motor Pulse Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC14-LCT	Dividing Position	Shift Gate Home Position Sensor	At home	Out of home
PC5-LCT	Right Door Open	Right Lower Door Sensor	Open	Close
TH1	Fusing Thermistor 1	Fusing Roller Thermistor	Analog value	
TH2	Fusing Thermistor 2	Fusing Roller Sub Thermistor	Analog value	
UN2	ATDC Sensor	ATDC Sensor	Analog value	
TH4	Drum Thermistor	Drum Thermistor	Analog value	
TH3	Temperature	Temperature/humidity Sensor	Analog value	
	Humidity		Analog value	
—	I/C Discrimination	I/C Type Detection signal	Analog value	

**B. Scanner**

Symbol	Panel Display	Part/Signal Name	Operation Characteristics/ Panel Display		
			1	0	
PC208	Scanner	Scanner (HP)	Scanner Home Sensor	At home	Out of home
SW201		Size reset S	Size Reset Switch	Lowered	Raised
PC209		Orig. cover detecting S	Original Cover Angle Sensor	Less than 15°	15° or more

**C. Job Tray**

Symbol	Panel Display	Part/Signal Name	Operation Characteristics/ Panel Display		
			1	0	
PC1-JOB	Job Tray	Upper Tray Full	Paper Full Detection Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
—		Turn Over Unit	Switch Back Unit Set signal	Set	Not set
—		Job Tray	Job Tray Set signal	Set	Not set

**D. Sheet-through-ADF (2-sided)**

Symbol	Panel Display	Part/Signal Name	Operation Characteristics/ Panel Display		
			1	0	
PC5-ADF	Sheet-through-ADF (2-sided)	Empty	Empty Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC9-ADF		Registration	Registration Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC8-ADF		Before Scanning	Original Detection Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC10-ADF		Exit and Turn Over	Exit/Turnover Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC1-ADF		Orig. Length 1	FD Paper Size Detection Sensor 1	Paper present	Paper not present
PC2-ADF		Orig. Length 2	FD Paper Size Detection Sensor 2	Blocked	Unblocked
PC3-ADF		Orig. Length 3	FD Paper Size Detection Sensor 3	Paper present	Paper not present
PC4-ADF		Orig. Length 4	FD Paper Size Detection Sensor 4	Paper present	Paper not present
PC6-ADF		Behind Separator	Separator Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PWB-SIZE		Org. Width Detect 0	Mix Document Size Detection Board	Paper present	Paper not present
		Org. Width Detect 1		Paper present	Paper not present
		Org. Width Detect 2		Paper present	Paper not present
PC7-ADF		Side Cover	Upper Door Open/Close Sensor	Open	Close
PBA-VR	Orig. Width Vol.	Variable Resistor	Analog value		

## E. Finisher

Symbol	Panel Display	Part/Signal Name	Operation Characteristics/ Panel Display		
			1	0	
PC5-FN	Paper Passage (Middle)	Transport Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present	
PC4-FN	Paper Passage (Feed in)	Entrance Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present	
PC3-FN	Elevate Tray Upper/Lowered	Elevator Tray Home Position Sensor	At upper limit	Not at upper limit	
S2-FN	Shutter Status	Shutter Detection Switch	Close	Open	
S1-FN	Front Door Set	Front Cover Detection Switch	Close	Open	
PC2-PK	Punch Pulse	Punch Motor Pulse Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked	
PC14-FN	Lower (Elev.)	Elevator Tray Lower Limit Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked	
PC15-FN	Surface (Elev.)	Top Face Detection Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked	
—	Optional Tray (Elevate)	—	Set	Not set	
PC3-FN	Elevate Tray position	Elevator Tray Home Position Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked	
PC6-FN	Finisher	Align Home 1	Alignment Home Position Sensor 1	At home	Out of home
PC7-FN		Align Home 2	Alignment Home Position Sensor 2	At home	Out of home
PC16-FN		Home (Shutter)	Shutter Home Position Sensor	At home	Out of home
PC11-FN		Paddle home (Exit)	Exit Paddle Home Position Sensor	At home	Out of home
PC12-FN		Exit R Home	Exit Roller Home Position Sensor	At home	Out of home
PC8-FN		Empty (Finisher)	Storage Tray Detecting Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC10-FN		Staple Home (CD)	Staple Home Position Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
—		Self Priming	Self-Priming Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
—		Staple Empty	Staple Empty Detection Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
—		Staple Home	Staple Home Position Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC3-PK	Punch Pos. 1	Punch Positioning Sensor 1	Unblocked	Blocked	
PC4-PK	Punch Pos. 2	Punch Positioning Sensor 2	Unblocked	Blocked	

Symbol	Panel Display	Part/Signal Name	Operation Characteristics/ Panel Display	
			1	0
PC1-PK	Punch Scraps Full Detect	Punch Trash Full	Blocked	Unblocked
PC22-SK	Home (Paper Hold R)	Crease Roller Home Position Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
S4-FN	Middle Guide	Transport Jam Detection Switch	Close	Open
PC20-SK	Exit (Saddle)	Saddle Exit Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC21-SK	Saddle Empty	Saddle Tray Empty Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
S4-SK	Saddle Reset	Saddle Interlock Switch	Open	Close
—	Staple Home 1 (Saddle)	Staple Home Position Sensor 1	Blocked	Unblocked
—	Self Priming 1 (Saddle)	Self-Priming Sensor 1	Blocked	Unblocked
—	Staple Empty 1 (Saddle)	Staple Empty Detection Sensor 1	Blocked	Unblocked
—	Staple Home 2 (Saddle)	Staple Home Position Sensor 2	Blocked	Unblocked
—	Self Priming 2 (Saddle)	Self-Priming Sensor 2	Blocked	Unblocked
—	Staple Empty 2 (Saddle)	Staple Empty Detection Sensor 2	Blocked	Unblocked
PC23-SK	Home (Saddle In & Out Guide)	In & Out Guide Home Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC26-SK	Layable Guide Home (Saddle)	Layable Guide Home Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC10-MK	Paper Passage 1 (Mail Bins)	Lower Transport Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC9-MK	Paper Passage 2 (Mail Bins)	Upper Transport Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC11-MK	Mail Bin Door	Cover Open/Close Sensor	Open	Close
PC1-MK	1st Mail Bin Empty	Paper Detection Sensor 1	Paper not present	Paper present
PC5-MK	1st Mail Bin Full	Paper Full Detection Sensor 1	Blocked	Unblocked
PC2-MK	2nd Mail Bin Empty	Paper Detection Sensor 2	Paper not present	Paper present
PC6-MK	2nd Mail Bin Full	Paper Full Detection Sensor 2	Blocked	Unblocked
PC3-MK	3rd Mail Bin Empty	Paper Detection Sensor 3	Paper not present	Paper present
PC7-MK	3rd Mail Bin Full	Paper Full Detection Sensor 3	Blocked	Unblocked
PC4-MK	4th Mail Bin Empty	Paper Detection Sensor 4	Paper not present	Paper present
PC8-MK	4th Mail Bin Full	Paper Full Detection Sensor 4	Blocked	Unblocked

Finisher

bizhub 200/250/350

Adjustment / Setting

## 11.10 Settings in the Operation Check

### 11.10.1 ADF

#### A. Paper Passage

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To let the document loaded in the ADF be fed through under the specified mode.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1-sided No Detect</li> <li>Double-Sided</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, touch [Operation Check] → [ADF] → [Paper Passage] in that order.</li> <li>Select the mode.</li> <li>Load the document in the ADF and press the Start key.</li> <li>When the Start key is then pressed, the paper passage operation is temporarily halted. Pressing the Stop key brings the paper passage operation to an immediate stop. The operation is stopped as soon as all pages of the document have been fed through.</li> </ol>

#### B. ADF Sensor Adjust

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To carry out automatic adjustments of the ADF sensor.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, touch [Operation Check] → [ADF] → [ADF Sensor Adjust] in that order.</li> <li>Press the Start key to begins the automatic adjustment of the sensors.</li> </ol>

#### C. Backup Data Initialization

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Resets the settings specified with Sensor Auto Adjust.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, touch [Operation Check] → [ADF] → [Backup Data Initialization] in that order.</li> <li>Select [Yes] and touch [Enter] to initialize the backup data.</li> </ol>

### 11.10.2 Exp. Lamp Check

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To check the intensity of the Exposure Lamp in the Image Reading Section.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, touch [Operation Check] → [Exp. Lamp Check] in that order.</li> </ol>

### 11.10.3 Scanner

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To check the operation of the Scanner.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turns on the Exposure Lamp.</li> <li>Moves the Scanner.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, touch [Operation Check] → [Scanner] in that order.</li> <li>Use the Keypad to type in the amount to move, and then touch [Set].</li> </ol>

## 11.11 CS Remote Care

### 11.11.1 Outlines

- CS Remote Care enables the machine and the computer at CS Remote Care center to exchange data through telephone line or E-Mail in order to control the machine.
- CS Remote Care enables the machine to call the computer at the center when trouble occurs. It also enables the computer at the center to contact the machine for the necessary data.
- Data which CS Remote Care handles can be divided into the following groups.
  - a. Data which show the status of use of the machine such as Total count, PM count.
  - b. Data which show the abnormal situation on the machine such as where and how often errors occur.
  - c. Data on adjustment
  - d. Data on setting

### 11.11.2 Setting Up the CS Remote Care

#### NOTE

- **For resetting up the machine which CS Remote Care has already been set up, clear the RAM for CS Remote Care before resetting.**  
 For clearing the RAM, see 187 Page.
- **When using the telephone line for connection, use the recommended modem. (For recommended modem, contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.)**

Step	Procedure	
	Using the telephone line modem	Using E-mail
0	Register the device ID to the application at CS Remote Care Center. The initial connection is not available unless the device ID is registered.	
1	Connecting the modem Turn the power for the modem OFF. Connect the machine and the modem with a modem cable. Connect the modem and the wall jack with a modular cable. * For connecting the modular cable, see the manual for the modem.	Be sure to remove the telephone line modem when e-mail is used.
2	Clearing the RAM 1. Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [CS Remove Care], and touch [Detail Setting]. 2. Touch [RAM Clear]. 3. Select [Yes], and touch [END].  187	
3	Selecting the CS Remote Care function Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [CS Remove Care] → [System Input], and touch [Modem].	Selecting the CS Remote Care function Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [CS Remove Care] → [System Input], and touch [E-Mail].
4	Inputting the ID Code 1. Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [CS Remote Care] → [ID Code]. 2. Input the seven digits ID of the service person, and touch [ID Code] again.  186	
5	Setting the date and time for CS Remote Care 1. Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Detail Setting]. 2. Touch [Date & Time Setting]. 3. Input the date, time and the time zone using the 10-Key Pad, and touch [Job Start].  187	

Step	Procedure	
	Using the telephone line modem	Using E-mail
6	Setting the Center ID and telephone number of the Center 1. Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Detail Setting]. 2. Touch [Basic] → [Center ID], and input the Center ID (five digits).  186 3. Touch [Center Phone No]. 4. Input the telephone number of the Center using the 10-Keys Pad and [P], [T], [W], [-] keys.  186	Setting the Center ID 1. Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Detail Setting]. 2. Touch [Basic] → [Center ID], and input the Center ID (five digits).  186
7	Setting the Device ID 3. Touch [[Fwd] → [Device ID], and input Device ID (nine digits).  186	Setting the Device ID 4. Touch [Device ID], and input Device ID (nine digits).  186
8	Inputting the Device telephone number 5. Touch [Device Phone No]. 6. Input the Device telephone number using the 10-Key Pad and [P], [T], [W], [-] keys.  186	Setting the Respond Timeout 1. Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Detail Setting]. 2. Touch [Respond Timeout] and enter the response timeout using the 10-Key Pad. <b>NOTE</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Under normal conditions, there is no need to change the default setting.</b></li> </ul>  187
9	Inputting the AT command for initializing the modem 1. Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [CS Remote Care] → and touch [Detail Setting]. 2. Touch [AT Command]. 3. Input AT Command. <b>NOTE</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Change this Command only when it is necessary. (They do not need to be changed in normal condition.)</b></li> <li>• <b>For details on AT Command, see the manual for the modem.</b></li> </ul>  188	Setting the E-mail address 1. Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [CS Remote Care] → and touch [Server Setting]. 2. Touch [Initial data]. 3. Select [Yes] and touch [Enter] to perform initialization. 4. Touch [Server for RX] and set POP3 Server Address, POP3 User Name, POP3 Password, and POP3 Port Number.  188 5. Touch [RX Settings] and set E-Mail Address, Auto-RX Check, Connection Timeout, and APOP Authentication.  188 6. Touch [TX Settings] and set SMTP Server Address, SMTP Port Number, Connection Timeout, and Authentication Setting.  189 7. Touch [TX/RX Test] and press the Start key to carry out the transmission/reception test. Make sure that data is correctly transmitted and received and then proceed to the next step. If the test fails, make checks again by following the instructions given as the error message; then, carry out the transmission/reception test once again.  190

Step	Procedure	
	Using the telephone line modem	Using E-mail
10	Setting the DIPSW for CS Remote Care <b>NOTE</b> • <b>This setting is not normally necessary. Take this step only when necessary in a specific connecting condition.</b>	To step 11
11	Executing the initial transmission 1. Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Detail Setting]. 2. Touch [initial transmission] on the right bottom of the screen to start initial transmission. 3. When the machine is properly connected with the Center, CS Remote Care setting screen will be displayed. <b>NOTE</b> • <b>The initial transmission key at the right bottom of the screen will be displayed only when the Center ID, the Device ID, Telephone number of the Center and the Device telephone number have been input.</b>  186	Executing initial connection mail reception The initial connection mail reception is performed from the Center side to the e-mail address of the local machine. <b>NOTE</b> • <b>If a CS Remote Care-related screen is open during reception of the initial connection mail from the center, the data being set up is discarded and the CS Remote Care setting screen appears.</b> • <b>For the initial connection mail transmission procedure, see the CS Remote Care center manual.</b> • <b>Transmission and reception of e-mail is possible only between the center and the machine which are initially connected.</b> • <b>The initial connection is made from the center, at which time the center mail address is stored in the machine.</b> • <b>After the initial registration has been completed, the center mail address is displayed in E-Mail address which is accessed as follows: Tech. Rep. Mode → [CS Remote Care] → [Detail Setting] → [Basic] → E-Mail address.</b>

bizhub 200/250/350

Adjustment / Setting

### 11.11.3 Software SW setting for CS Remote Care

#### NOTE

- In case you changed bit data by accident, be sure to restore the previous state.

#### A. Input procedure

1. Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [CS Remote Care] → [Detail Setting], and touch [Software Switch Setting].
2. Touch [Mode Selection], and input the SW number (two digits) using the 10-Key Pad.
3. Touch [Bit Selection], and select SW bit number using the arrow keys, and input 0 or 1 using the 10-Key Pad.  
(For setting by hexadecimal numbers, touch [HEX Selection], and input using the 10-Key Pad or A to F keys.)
4. Touch [Enter].

#### NOTE

- About functions of each switch, see to “B. List of software SW for CS Remote Care.”

#### B. List of software SW for CS Remote Care

#### NOTE

- Do not change any bit not described on this table.

SW No.	Bit	Functions	0	1	Default
SW 01	0	Dial Mode	Pulse	Tone	1
	1	Reservation	—	—	0
	2	Reservation	—	—	0
	3	Reservation	—	—	0
	4	Baud rate	*1	*1	0
	5		*1	*1	0
	6		*1	*1	0
7	*1		*1	1	
SW 02	0	Emergency transmission	Do not call	Call	1
	1	Date specified transmission	Do not call	Call	1
	2	Reservation	—	—	0
	3	Reservation	—	—	0
	4	Reservation	—	—	0
	5	Auto call on the IC Life	Do not call	Call	1
	6	Reservation	Do not call	Call	1
7	Reservation	—	—	0	
SW 03	0	Reservation	—	—	0
	1	Auto call on the toner empty	Do not call	Call	1
	2	Reservation	—	—	0
	3	Reservation	Do not call	Call	1
4 to 7	Reservation	—	—	0	
SW 04	0 to 7	Reservation	—	—	0

SW No.	Bit	Functions	0	1	Default
SW 05	0	Modem redial interval	*2	*2	1
	1		*2	*2	1
	2		*2	*2	0
	3		*2	*2	0
	4 to 7	Reservation	—	—	0
SW 06	0	Modem redial times	*3	*3	0
	1		*3	*3	1
	2		*3	*3	0
	3		*3	*3	1
	4		*3	*3	0
	5		*3	*3	0
	6		*3	*3	0
	7	Reservation	—	—	0
SW 07	0	Redial for response time out	Do not redial	Redial	1
	1 to 7	Reserved	—	—	0
SW 08	0	Retransmission interval on E-Mail delivery error	*4	*4	0
	1		*4	*4	1
	2		*4	*4	1
	3		*4	*4	0
	4 to 7	Reservation	—	—	0
SW 09	0	Retransmission times on E-Mail delivery error	*5	*5	0
	1		*5	*5	1
	2		*5	*5	0
	3		*5	*5	1
	4		*5	*5	0
	5		*5	*5	0
	6		*5	*5	0
	7	Reservation	—	—	0
SW 10	0 to 7	Reservation	—	—	0
SW 11	0	Timer 1	*6	*6	0
	1	RING reception → CONNECT reception	*6	*6	0
	2		*6	*6	0
	3		*6	*6	0
	4		*6	*6	0
	5		*6	*6	1
	6		*6	*6	0
	7		*6	*6	0

bizhub 200/250/350

Adjustment / Setting

SW No.	Bit	Functions	0	1	Default
SW 12	0	Timer 2 Dial request completed → CONNECT reception	*7	*7	0
	1		*7	*7	0
	2		*7	*7	0
	3		*7	*7	0
	4		*7	*7	0
	5		*7	*7	0
	6		*7	*7	1
	7		*7	*7	0
SW 13	0 to 7	Reservation	—	—	0
SW 14	0	Timer 4 Line connection → Start request telegram delivery	*8	*8	0
	1		*8	*8	0
	2		*8	*8	0
	3		*8	*8	0
	4		*8	*8	0
	5		*8	*8	1
	6		*8	*8	0
	7		*8	*8	0
SW 15	0	Timer 5 Wait time for other side's response	*9	*9	0
	1		*9	*9	1
	2		*9	*9	1
	3		*9	*9	1
	4		*9	*9	1
	5		*9	*9	0
	6		*9	*9	0
	7		*9	*9	0
SW 16	0 to 7	Reservation	—	—	0
SW 17	0 to 7	Reservation	—	—	0
SW 18	0	Attention display To set weather to give the alarm display when using the modem but the power for the modem is OFF.	Do not call	Call	1
	1 to 7	Reservation	—	—	0
SW 19 to SW 40	0 to 7	Reservation	—	—	0

\*1: Baud rate

Mode	01-7	01-6	01-5	01-4
"9600 bps"	0	1	1	0
19200 bps	0	1	1	1
38400 bps	1	0	0	0

\*2: Modem redial interval

Mode	05-3	05-2	05-1	05-0
1 minute	0	0	0	1
2 minutes	0	0	1	0
"3 minutes"	0	0	1	1
4 minutes	0	1	0	0
5 minutes	0	1	0	1
6 minutes	0	1	1	0
7 minutes	0	1	1	1
8 minutes	1	0	0	0
9 minutes	1	0	0	1
10 minutes	1	0	1	0

\*3: Modem redial times

Mode	06-6	06-5	06-4	06-3	06-2	06-1	06-0
0 to 9 times	000 0000 to 000 1001						
"10 times"	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
11 to 99 times	000 1011 to 110 0011						

\*4: Retransmission interval on E-Mail delivery error

Mode	08-3	08-2	08-1	08-0
0 minute	0	0	0	0
10 minutes	0	0	0	1
20 minutes	0	0	1	0
30 minutes	0	0	1	1
40 minutes	0	1	0	0
50 minutes	0	1	0	1
"60 minutes"	0	1	1	0
70 minutes	0	1	1	1
80 minutes	1	0	0	0
90 minutes	1	0	0	1
100 minutes	1	0	1	0
110 minutes	1	0	1	1
120 minutes	1	1	0	0

## \*5: Retransmission times on E-Mail delivery error

Mode	09-6	09-5	09-4	09-3	09-2	09-1	09-0
0 to 9 times	000 0000 to 000 1001						
"10 times"	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
11 to 99 times	000 1011 to 110 0011						

## \*6: Timer 1 (RING reception → CONNECT reception)

Mode	11-7	11-6	11-5	11-4	11-3	11-2	11-1	11-0
0 to 31 sec	0000 0000 to 0001 1111							
"32 sec"	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
33 to 255 sec	0010 0001 to 1111 1111							

## \*7: Timer 2 (Dial request completed → CONNECT reception)

Mode	12-7	12-6	12-5	12-4	12-3	12-2	12-1	12-0
0 to 63 sec	0000 0000 to 0011 1111							
"64 sec"	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
65 to 255 sec	0100 0001 to 1111 1111							

## \*8: Timer 4 (Line connection → Start request telegram delivery)

Mode	14-7	14-6	14-5	14-4	14-3	14-2	14-1	14-0
0 to 31 (x 100 msec)	0000 0000 to 0001 1111							
"32 (x 100 msec)"	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
33 to 255 (x 100 msec)	0010 0001 to 1111 1111							

## \*9: Timer 5 (Wait time for other side's response)

Mode	15-7	15-6	15-5	15-4	15-3	15-2	15-1	15-0
0 to 29 sec	0000 0000 to 0001 1101							
"30 sec"	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0
31 to 255 sec	0001 1111 to 1111 1111							

#### 11.11.4 Setup confirmation

- **Follow the steps below to make sure that CS Remote Care has been properly set up.**
  1. Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.
  2. Touch [CS Remote Care].
  3. Make sure that either [E-Mail] or [Modem], whichever has been selected, is displayed on the screen.

#### 11.11.5 Calling the Maintenance

- When CE starts maintenance, inputting the ID code of CE (seven digits: numbers which CE can identify. They are controlled by the distributor.) will transmit the information to the Center side and tells that the maintenance has started. When the maintenance is finished, touching [Maintenance is completed.] key will transmit the information to the Center and tells that it is finished.

##### A. When starting the Maintenance

1. Select Tech. Rep. Mode and touch [CS Remote Care].
2. Touch [ID Code], and input ID Code.
3. Touch [ID Code].

\* The Start key blinks while maintenance is being carried out.

##### B. When finishing the Maintenance

1. Select Tech. Rep. Mode and touch [CS Remote Care].
2. Touch [Maintenance is completed.]

#### 11.11.6 Calling the Center from the Administrator

- When the CS Remote Care setup is complete, the administrator can call the CS Remote Care center.
  1. From the setting menu, touch the keys in this order: [Admin. Management] → [Admin. 1] → [Call Remote Center].
  2. Touch [Call Remote Center].
  3. Press the Start key.

When the setup is not complete or another transmission is being carried out, the Admin. transmission key will not be displayed, and the transmission is not available.

#### NOTE

- **For transmitting data of the machine by calling the center on the specified date and time, refer to the manual for CS Remote Care Center.**

#### 11.11.7 Checking the transmission log

- The transmission log list will be output to be checked.
  1. Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and touch [Detail setting].
  2. Touch [Communication Log Print].
  3. Load Tray 1 or Bypass tray with A4R paper.
  4. When the Basic screen reappears after the Tech. Rep. mode has been exited, an output of the communication log is produced.

### 11.11.8 Detail on settings

#### A. System Input

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select the system type for remote diagnosis.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use to newly build or change the system.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select E-Mail or Modem.</li> <li>The default setting is "E-Mail".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"E-Mail"                      Modem</p>

#### B. ID Code

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To register the Service ID.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use when registering and changing Service ID.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter a 7-digit code from the 10-Key Pad. (0000001 to 9999999)</li> </ul> <p>Registration</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch [ID Code] and enter the Service ID.</li> <li>Touch [ID code] to register the ID.</li> <li>The [Detail Setting] will appear when the ID has been registered.</li> </ul>

#### C. Detail Setting

##### (1) Basic

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Execute the primary setting.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use to change the set contents.</li> <li>Use to register the machine to the CS Remote Care Center.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.</li> <li>Touch [CS Remote Care].</li> <li>Touching the [Detail Setting] will display the primary setting.</li> </ol> <p>Primary Setting</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set the Center ID, Device ID, and the phone No.</li> <li>When e-mail is selected for system and all setup procedures are completed, E-mail address of the Center is displayed.</li> </ul> <p>* When entering the phone No, 10-Keys and keys on the screen have following meanings.</p> <p>[ - ] Pose       : Waits to start transmitting after dialing  [W] Wait       : Detects the dial tone of the other end  [T] Tone dial : Carry out tone dialing  [P] Pulse dial : Carry out pulse dialing  [*],[#]       : To be used as necessary</p> <p>Initial Transmission</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touching the Initial Transmission key will sent the information to the CS Remote Care Center to register the machine. (Only when the Modem is selected on the system Input.)</li> </ul>

### (2) Date & Time Setting

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the data and time-of-day</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use to set or change the date and time-of-day.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.</li> <li>Touch [CS Remote Care].</li> <li>Touch [Detail Setting] to access Date &amp; Time Setting.</li> <li>Enter the date (month, day and year), time-of-day, and the time zone from the 10-Key Pad.</li> <li>Touch [Job Start] to start the clock.</li> </ol>

### (3) RAM Clear

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To clear the following data at the Center ID Code, Primary Setting, Date/Time Input (Time Zone), Software SW Setting and AT Command.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To be used for setting CS Remote Care.</li> <li>To be used for reset the every data of the Center to default.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>If RAM Clear is selected during transmission, RAM clear processing will be implemented at the time the transmission is completed regardless of whether it is done properly or not.</b></li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "NO"</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">YES <span style="float: right;">"NO"</span></p>

### (4) Communication Log Print

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To print out the Communication Log.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use to output and use the Communication Log.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.</li> <li>Touch [CS Remote Care].</li> <li>Touch [Detail Setting] to access Communication Log Print.</li> <li>Load Tray 1 or Bypass Tray with A4R or 81/2 x 11 paper.</li> <li>When the Basic screen reappears after the Tech. Rep. mode has been exited, an output of the communication log is produced.</li> </ol>

### (5) Software Switch Setting

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the CS Remote Care settings.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the settings for CS Remote Care as necessary.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p> For procedures on settings, see 180.</p>

### (6) Respond Timeout

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set retry intervals for an e-mail transmission error.</li> <li>This setting can be made only when [E-Mail] is selected in System Input.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the retry intervals for an e-mail transmission error.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "30 min."</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">10 to 1440 min.</p>

**(7) AT Command**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the command to be issued at the time of Modem Initialization.</li> <li>This setting is available only when [Modem] is selected for the system setting.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the command to be issued at the time of Modem Initialization.</li> </ul>
Setting/Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter the command and touch [Enter] to register.</li> </ul>

**D. Server Setting**

- Server Setting can be set only when [E-Mail] is selected in System Input.

**(1) Server for RX**

&lt;POP3 Server Address&gt;

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the POP3 server address used for CS Remote Care.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the address of the POP3 server.</li> <li>The POP3 server address can be set as an IP address or domain name.</li> </ul>
Setting/Procedure	<p>&lt;IP Address&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IP address Version 4 format [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255]</li> </ul> <p>&lt;FQDN&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter the domain name.</li> </ul>

&lt;POP3 User Name&gt;

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the logon name for the POP3 server used for CS Remote Care.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the logon name for the POP3 server.</li> </ul>
Setting/Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Up to 63 characters (alphanumeric characters and symbols) can be used.</li> </ul>

&lt;POP3 Password&gt;

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the logon password for the POP3 server used for CS Remote Care.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the logon password for the POP3 server.</li> </ul>
Setting/Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Up to 15 characters (alphanumeric characters and symbols) can be used.</li> </ul>

&lt;POP3 Port Number&gt;

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the POP3 port number used for CS Remote Care.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the port number for the POP3 server.</li> </ul>
Setting/Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "110"</li> <li>"110" (1 to 65535)</li> </ul>

**(2) RX Settings**

&lt;E-Mail Address&gt;

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the e-mail address used for CS Remote Care.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the e-mail address.</li> </ul>
Setting/Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Up to 129 characters (alphanumeric characters and symbols) can be used.</li> </ul>

<Auto-RX Check>

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set whether or not to use Auto-RX Check and the time interval for the POP3 server used for CS Remote Care.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select not to use Auto-RX Check.</li> <li>To change the time interval for Auto-RX Check.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "OFF"</li> </ul> <p>"OFF" (1 to 120)</p>

<Connection Timeout>

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the timeout period for connection during reception.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the timeout period for connection during reception.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "60 sec"</li> </ul> <p>"60 sec" (30 to 300)</p>

<APOP Authentication>

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set whether or not to enable APOP authentication during reception.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To enable APOP authentication during reception.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "OFF"</li> </ul> <p>ON "OFF"</p>

**(3) TX Settings**

<SMTP Server Address>

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the SMTP server address for transmission used for CS Remote Care.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the address of the SMTP Server.</li> <li>The SMTP server address can be set as an IP address or domain name.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p>&lt;IP Address&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IP address Version 4 format</li> </ul> <p>[0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255]</p> <p>&lt;FQDN&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter the domain name.</li> </ul>

<SMTP Port Number>

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the SMTP port number for transmission used for CS Remote Care.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the port number of the SMTP Server.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "25"</li> </ul> <p>"25" (1 to 65535)</p>

<Connection Timeout>

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the timeout period for transmission.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the timeout period for connection during transmission.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "60 sec"</li> </ul> <p>"60 sec" (30 to 300)</p>

## &lt;Authentication Setting&gt;

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set whether or not to enable authentication during transmission via the SMTP server.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use to enable authentication during transmission.</li> <li>Types of authentication to be set: POP Before SMTP, SMTP authentication</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "OFF" ON                      "OFF"</li> <li>* If POP Before SMTP is set, make the setting for POP Before SMTP.</li> <li>The default setting is "60 sec" "60 sec" (0 to 60)</li> <li>* If SMTP authentication is set, make the following settings. User ID: Enter the user ID for SMTP authentication. Password: Enter the password for SMTP authentication.</li> </ul>

**(4) TX/RX Test**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To carry out the transmission/reception tests for CS Remote Care.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To carry out the transmission/reception tests for CS Remote Care.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the Start key to start transmission.</li> <li>The test progress and results are displayed on the screen.</li> </ul>

**(5) Initial data**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To initialize server settings.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To initialize server settings.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "NO" YES                      "NO"</li> </ul>

**11.11.9 List of the CS Remote Care error code****A. For telephone line modem**

Error code	Error	Solution
0001	The line is busy (Busy detection)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Transmit again manually.</li> </ul>
0002	Failure of the Modem default setting at transmitting (When the transmission completes with modem initial setting failed)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the power of the modem is ON.</li> <li>• Check the connecting condition between the modem and the main unit.</li> </ul>
0003	Timeout of CONNECT at transmitting (No response to ATD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Transmit again manually</li> <li>• Check if the power of the modem is ON.</li> <li>• Check the connecting condition between the modem and the main unit.</li> </ul>
0004	Timeout of Incoming request response (No response to incoming (starting) request MSG)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.</li> </ul>
0005	Timeout of CONNECT at receiving (No response to ATA)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the power of the modem is ON.</li> <li>• Check the connecting condition between the modem and the main unit.</li> </ul>
0006	Shut down of the data modem line (Host) (Carrier OFF is detected)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No solution, because the line is shut down at the host side.</li> </ul>
0007	Shut down of the data modem line (Main unit) (Line is shut down forcibly due to event)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.</li> </ul>
0008	Timeout of start request telegram delivery (Start request telegram is not delivered after line connection)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Transmit again manually.</li> </ul>
0009	Timeout of finish request telegram delivery (Finish request telegram is not delivered (Start of shut down).)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Transmit again manually.</li> </ul>
000A	Receiving rejection (Receiving is made when the main unit is set to reject receiving.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the setting condition of the host side.</li> <li>• Check the setting condition of the main unit side.</li> </ul>
000B	RS232C Driver Over Run (When the modem detects Over Run.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the same error is detected several times, turn the modem power OFF and ON.</li> </ul>
000C	If the same error is detected several times, turn the modem power OFF and ON.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the same error is detected several times, turn the modem power OFF and ON.</li> </ul>
000D	Break Interrupt (BI) Indicator (When the modem detects Break Interrupt (BI) Indicator.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the same error is detected several times, turn the modem power OFF and ON.</li> </ul>
000E	Receiving RING Buffer Full (When the Receiving RING Buffer is full.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.</li> </ul>
000F	Transmitting RING Buffer Full (When the Transmitting RING Buffer is full.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.</li> </ul>

Error code	Error	Solution
0010	RX FIFO ERROR (when Read / Write error occurs at RX FIFO)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.</li> </ul>
0011	Baud Rate ERROR (When selected Baud Rate is out of the specification (9600 bps to 38400 bps).)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the Baud rate of the software DipSW.</li> </ul>
0012	TX FIFO Level Error (When the threshold of the selected TX FIFO is not error value (1, 3, 9, 13).)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.</li> </ul>
0013	RX FIFO Level Error (When the threshold of the selected RX FIFO is not error value (0, 4, 8, 14).)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.</li> </ul>
0014	Receiving Data Over Error (When the data whose size exceeds the transmitting RING buffer is requested.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.</li> </ul>
0015	Status Error (During modem operation is being confirmed)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.</li> </ul>
0016	Status Error (During receiving)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.</li> </ul>
0017	Status Error (During line is being shut down)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.</li> </ul>
0018	Machine ID has already been registered (Request telegram 2 (SET-UP) comes from the main unit that has already registered Machine ID.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set the initial registrations again for all including the host side.</li> </ul>
0019	Center ID Error (Center ID of the host is not identical with the one of start request telegram.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check Center ID setting of the main unit side.</li> <li>Check Center ID setting of the main unit side.</li> </ul>
001A	Device ID inconsistency (Device ID of the host is not identical with the one of start request telegram.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check Device ID setting of the main unit side.</li> <li>Check the setting of the host side.</li> </ul>
001B	Device ID Unregistered (Request telegram 2 (Constant data transmitting, Emergency call) comes from the main unit that has not registered Machine ID yet.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check Device ID setting of the main unit side.</li> <li>Check the setting of the host side.</li> </ul>
001C	Grammar Error (Received response telegram is unregulated format.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.</li> </ul>
001D	Impossible to change (Unchangeable items) (Host requests to change the setting of items which are not allowed to change.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.</li> </ul>
001E	Impossible to change (During printing) (Setting cannot be changed because the setting change is made during the machine is printing or starts printing.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Try again when the machine is not printing.</li> </ul>
001F	Impossible to change (Unread items) (The host tries to make writing on the items the current value has not been read.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.</li> </ul>

Error code	Error	Solution
0020	Timeout of Telegram Delivery (At waiting mode of telegram delivery the machine fails to receive the telegram in a given time.)	• Try communication again.
0021	Telegram Size Over (The machine receives the telegram whose size exceeds the specification.)	• Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
0022	Transmitting Phase Response NG (Transmitting phase response MSG is not appropriate.)	• Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
0023	Timeout of Transmitting Phase Response MSG (Transmitting phase response MSG is timeout.)	• Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
0024	Event Data Acquisition Function Error (Although the transmitting phase response MSG is OK, the function for Data acquisition shows "No event;".)	• Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
0025	Timeout of Driver transmitting check MSG (Transmitting check MSG from the driver task is timeout.)	• Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
0026	Detection of Internal Contradiction (Unknown event is detected. Condition value is not correct or so on.)	• Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
0027	Transmission / Receiving collision (Receiving is detecting during transmitting processing)	• Try communication again.

## B. For e-mail

Error code	Error	Solution
0001	Connection timeout during transmission	• Check SMTP server on the user side.
0***	Failure in transmission ***: SMTP response code (hexadecimal form)	• Check SMTP server on the user side.
0003	Connection timeout during reception	• Check POP3 server on the user side.
0005	Failure in reception	• Check POP3 server on the user side.
1030	Machine ID mismatch (Mail with a machine ID different from that of the local machine has been received.)	• Check machine ID setting. • Check machine ID setting on the host side.
1050	Grammatical error (Mail with undefined CS Remote Care command portion (2 digits) has been received.)	—
1061	Rewrite disabled (Mail requesting rewriting for data item that is disabled for setting change has been received from the host.)	—
1062	Rewrite disabled during copy cycle (To return rewrite disabled during copy cycle to the host)	• Have the host send another rewrite request mail.

Error code	Error	Solution
1080	Data length error (LEN value of TEXT data does not coincide with actual data length.)	—
1081	Frame number error (Last frame not received) (Some digits of frame number missing)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the host side for machine registration status.</li> </ul>
1082	Subject Type error (Code with Subject Type undefined has been received.)	—
1084	Validity period exceeded (Validity period of data rewrite command is exceeded.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Have the host send another rewrite request mail.</li> </ul>
1091	Command size over (Attached file that exceeds the size of the reception buffer the copier is equipped with has been received.)	—
1092	Faulty mail has been received when the machine is yet to be registered.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the host side for machine registration status.</li> </ul>
2039	Socket is not connected (LAN cable on the server side is loose.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the SMTP server and POP3 server on the user side.</li> </ul>
203C	Connection timeout	—
203E	Network is down (LAN cable on the copier side is loose.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the network connector for connection to the copier on the user side.</li> <li>• Check the network environment on the user side.</li> </ul>
3000	POP3_AUTHORIZATION_ERR	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the POP3 server environment on the user side.</li> </ul>
3001	POP3_TRANSACTION_ERR	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the POP3 server environment on the user side.</li> </ul>
3002	POP3_CONNECT_ERR	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the POP3 server environment on the user side.</li> </ul>
3003	POP3_TIMEOUT_ERR	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the POP3 server environment on the user side.</li> </ul>
3004	POP3_FORMAT_ERR	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the POP3 server environment on the user side.</li> </ul>
3005	POP3_MEMORY_ERR	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the POP3 server environment on the user side.</li> </ul>
3006	POP3_JOBID_ERR	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the POP3 server environment on the user side.</li> </ul>
3007	POP3_NO_DATA_ERR	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the POP3 server environment on the user side.</li> </ul>
3008	POP3_DELETE_FAIL_ERR	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the POP3 server environment on the user side.</li> </ul>
3009	POP3_MAILBOX_FULL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the POP3 server environment on the user side.</li> </ul>
4103	Not ready (MIO) (An attempt is made to send or receive mail when e-mail reception is not ready yet after power has been turned ON.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wait for some while and then retry.</li> </ul>

Error code	Error	Solution
4104	SMTP channel not ready	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wait for some while and then retry.</li> </ul>
4105	POP3 channel not ready	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wait for some while and then retry.</li> </ul>
4106	Not ready in conditions other than above	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wait for some while and then retry.</li> </ul>
5***	MIO has detected an error while transmission of attached file is being processed. ***: Error code detected by MIO	—
6***	MIO has detected an error during main transmission sequence. ***: Error code detected by MIO	—

### 11.11.10 Troubleshooting for CS Remote Care

If communication is not done properly during use of the modem, check the condition by following the procedures shown below.

1. Shift the screen in the order of [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [CS Remote Care] → [Detail Setting].

At this time, in the cases of initial transmission / Call Remote Center / Maintenance Start transmitting / Maintenance is completed., the communication result will be displayed at the top of the screen.

\* For the communication result, the following message will be displayed based on its success or failure.

Display of Communication result	Cause	Solution
Communicating	—	—
Communication trouble with the Center	Although the machine tries to communicate with the Center, there is any trouble and the communication completes unsuccessfully.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See the list of error message and confirm the corresponding point. ☞ 261</li> </ul>
Complete successfully	—	—
Modem trouble	Although the machine tries to communicate with the Center, there is any trouble in the modem.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the Power of modem in ON.</li> <li>• Check if there is any problem in connection between the modem and the main unit.</li> </ul>
Busy line	Although the machine tries to communicate with the Center, the line to the Center is busy.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Communicate with the Center again.</li> </ul>
No response	Although the machine tries to communicate with the Center, there is no response from the Center.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Communicate with the Center again.</li> <li>• Check the communication environment of the Center side.</li> </ul>

## 11.12 ROM Version

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To check the ROM version.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To check the ROM version when firmware is upgraded.</li> <li>To check the ROM version when the board is replaced with a new one.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p>1. Touch [ROM Version] from the Tech. Rep. mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>MSC: MFBS</li> <li>Printer: PWB-A</li> <li>ADF: PWB-A AF</li> <li>LCT: PWB-C1 LCT</li> <li>Finisher: PWB-A FN</li> </ul> <p>* If the option is not installed, [None] appears.</p>

## 11.13 Level History

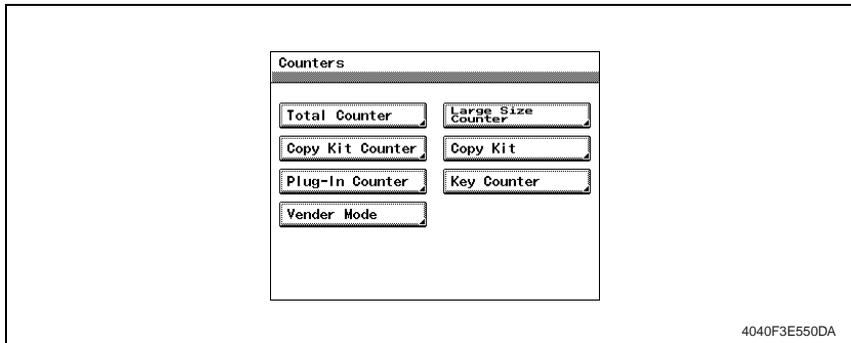
Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To display the various level histories.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Used for troubleshooting of image problems.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p>1. Touch [Level History] from the Tech. Rep. mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ATDC Set: Displays the voltage set with the automatic ATDC sensor adjustment.</li> <li>ATDC Current: Displays the T/C ratio for the ATDC sensor.</li> <li>Vg Current: Displays the current value of the grid voltage.</li> <li>Vb Current: Displays the current value of the developing bias voltage.</li> </ul>

## 12. Counters

### 12.1 Counters Function Setting Procedure

#### 12.1.1 Procedure

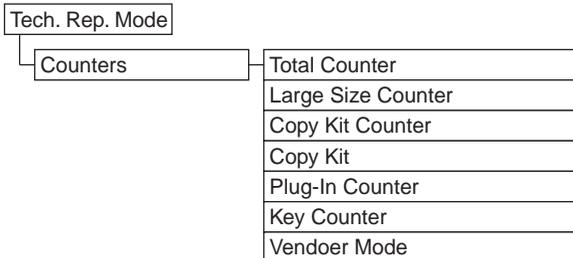
1. Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.
2. Press the following keys in this order.  
Stop → 9
3. Select a function.



#### 12.1.2 Exiting

- Press the Reset Key.

### 12.2 Counters Function Tree



4040F3E551DA

## 12.3 Settings in the Counters

### 12.3.1 Total Counter

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the counting method for the Total Counter.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Mode 1".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"Mode 1"          Mode 2          Mode 3</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mode 1: 1 count per copy cycle</li> <li>Mode 2, Mode 3: 2 counts according to the paper size and copy mode</li> </ul>

### 12.3.2 Large Size Counter

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the counting method for the Size Counter.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "A3/11x17".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">No Count                  A3/11x17</p> <p style="text-align: center;">A3/B4/11x17/Legal      A3/11x17/B4/11x14/Foolscape/Legal</p>

#### <Count Table for the Total Counter and Size Counter>

Copy Mode		For 1-sided copies						For 2-sided copies					
Setting	Large Size Counter	Non-standard size			Standard size			Non-standard size			Standard size		
	Total Counter	Mode			Mode			Mode			Mode		
		1	2	3	1	2	3	1	2	3	1	2	3
Count	Total Counter	1			1	2	2	2			2	4	4
	Large Size Counter	0			1	1	2	0			2	2	0
	2-Sided Total Counter	0			0			1	1	2	1	1	4
	Total by Account	1			1	2	2	2			2	4	4
	Large Size by Account	0			1	1	2	0			2	2	0

### 12.3.3 Copy Kit Counter

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select whether to enable or disable the Copy Kit Counter.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Mode 1".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"Mode 1"          Mode 2          Mode 3</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mode 1: The Copy Kit Counter is disabled.</li> <li>Mode 2: Copying continues even after the set value is reached.</li> <li>Mode 3: Copying is prohibited after the set value is reached.</li> </ul>

### 12.3.4 Copy Kit

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To enter a value for the Copy Kit Counter.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the current value reaches the set value, the following appears.</li> <li>Mode 2: The icon  appears in the Additional Message Display.</li> <li>Mode 3: The maintenance call reminder "M4" appears and copying is prohibited.</li> <li>Press the Clear key to clear the set value.</li> <li>Use the Keypad to type in the set value.</li> </ul>

### 12.3.5 Plug-In Counter

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select the counting method.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "No. of Prints".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"No. of Prints"      Copy Cycle</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No. of Prints: The count increments according to the number of pages that is outputted.</li> <li>Copy Cycle: The count increments according to the number of copies.</li> </ul>

#### <Count Table for the Plug-In Counter>

Copy Mode		For 1-sided copies						For 2-sided copies					
Setting	Large Size Counter	Non-standard size			Standard size			Non-standard size			Standard size		
	Total Counter	Mode			Mode			Mode			Mode		
		1	2	3	1	2	3	1	2	3	1	2	3
Count	With "No. of Prints" selected	1			1	2	2	1	2	2	1	4	4
	With "Copy Cycle" selected	1			1	2	2	2			2	4	4

### 12.3.6 Key Counter

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select whether to enable or disable the Key Counter.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "OFF".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">Yes                      "OFF"</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the Key Counter is installed, select "Yes".</li> </ul>

### 12.3.7 Vendor Mode

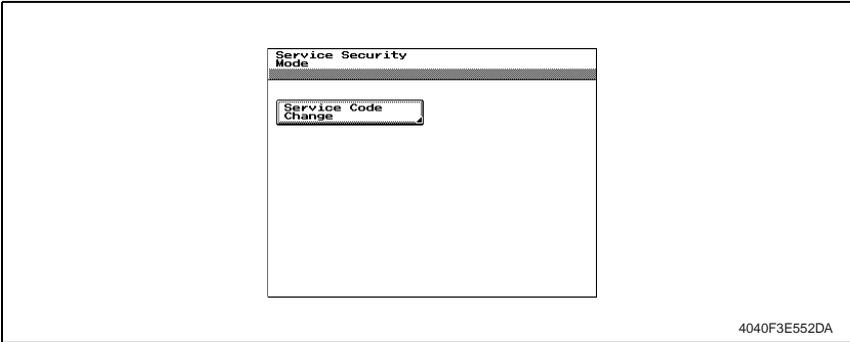
Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the Key Counter, Coin Vendor or Data Controller is installed, select the appropriate option.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select the mounted option.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "OFF".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"OFF"                      Coin                      Card</p>

# 13. Service Security Mode

## 13.1 Service Security Mode Function Setting Procedure

### 13.1.1 Procedure

1. Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.
2. Press the following keys in this order.  
Stop → 0 → Clear Key
3. Select a function.

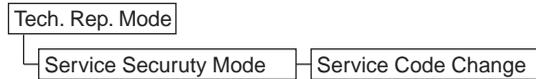


4040F3E552DA

### 13.1.2 Exiting

- Press the Reset Key.

## 13.2 Service Security Mode Function Tree



4040F3E553DA

## 13.3 Settings in the Service Security Mode

### 13.3.1 Service Code Change

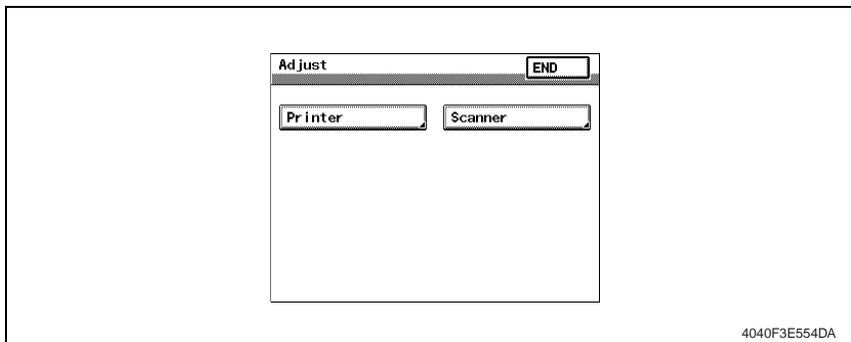
Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To change the service code used to access the Tech. Rep. mode, Initial mode, and Maintenance mode.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Call the Service Security mode from the Tech. Rep. mode and then touch [Service Code Change].</li> <li>2. Touch [Current Code] and enter the currently set 8-digit service code.</li> <li>3. Touch [New Code] and enter a new 8-digit service code.</li> <li>4. Touch [Retype New Code] and enter the new 8-digit service code once again.</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The “#” and “*” keys may be used in combination with the 10-Key Pad for entry of the service code.</li> </ul>

## 14. Adjust Mode

### 14.1 Adjust Mode Function Setting Procedure

#### 14.1.1 Procedure

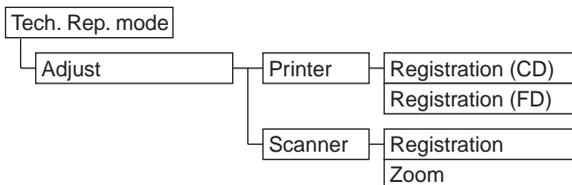
1. Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.
2. Press the following keys in this order.  
Stop → Start Key
3. Select a function.



#### 14.1.2 Exiting

- Press the Reset Key.

### 14.2 Adjust Mode Function Tree

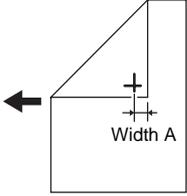


4040F3E555DA

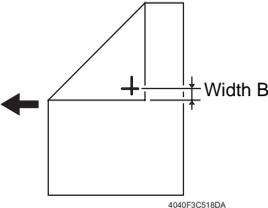
## 14.3 Settings in the Adjust Mode

### 14.3.1 Printer

#### A. Registration (CD)

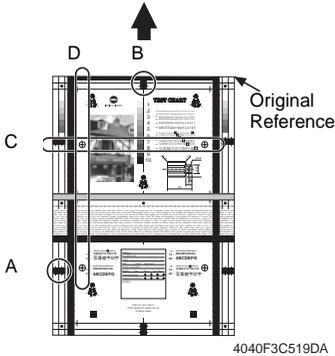
Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To vary and adjust the image start position in the main scanning direction for each paper source.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The PH Unit has been replaced.</li> <li>The image on the copy deviates in the main scan direction.</li> <li>A faint image occurs on the leading edge of the image.</li> </ul>
Adjustment Specification	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <div style="margin-left: 20px;"> <p>Width A on the test pattern produced should fall within the following range.</p> <p>Specifications: 10 mm <math>\pm</math> 2.0 mm            Setting Range: -4.0 mm to +4.0 mm            (in 0.1 mm increments)</p> </div> </div>
Adjustment Instructions	<p>If width A on the test pattern is wider than specifications.          Longer than the actual scale: decrease the setting value.          Shorter than the actual scale: increase the setting value.</p>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the Adjust Mode.</li> <li>2. Touch [Printer] and [Registration (CD)] in that order.</li> <li>3. Touch the [Test Print].</li> <li>4. Select the paper source and press the Start key.</li> <li>5. Check the dimension of width A on the test pattern.</li> <li>6. If it fails to meet the specifications, change the setting and redo the check.</li> <li>7. If it meets the specifications, touch [END].</li> <li>8. Following the same procedure, adjust for all other paper sources.</li> </ol>

**B. Registration (FD)**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To vary and adjust the image start position in the sub scanning direction for each paper source.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The PH Unit has been replaced.</li> <li>The image on the copy deviates in the sub scan direction.</li> </ul>
Adjustment Specification	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <div style="margin-left: 20px;"> <p>Width B on the test pattern produced should fall within the following range.</p> <p>Specifications: 11.3 mm ± 1.5 mm</p> <p>Setting Range:</p> <p>&lt;bizhub 350&gt;</p> <p>-19 (-6.08 mm) to +19 (+6.08 mm) (in 0.32 mm increments)</p> <p>&lt;bizhub 250/bizhub 200&gt;</p> <p>-21 (-5.88 mm) to +21 (+5.88 mm) (in 0.28 mm increments)</p> </div> </div>
Adjustment Instructions	<p>If width B on the test pattern is wider than specifications. Longer than the actual scale: decrease the setting value. Shorter than the actual scale: increase the setting value.</p>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the Adjust Mode.</li> <li>2. Touch [Printer] and [Registration (FD)] in that order.</li> <li>3. Touch the [Test Print].</li> <li>4. Select the paper source and press the Start key.</li> <li>5. Check the dimension of width B on the test pattern.</li> <li>6. If it fails to meet the specifications, change the setting and redo the check.</li> <li>7. If it meets the specifications, touch [END].</li> <li>8. Following the same procedure, adjust for all other paper sources.</li> </ol>

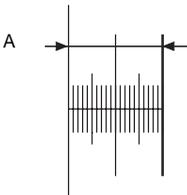
**14.3.2 Scanner**

- Use the following Test Chart for the adjustment of the Scanner Section.
- If the Test Chart is not available, a scale may be used instead.

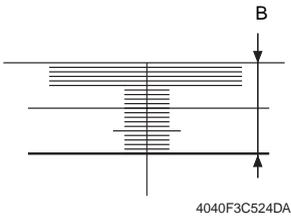


- A: Scan image position: CD adjustment
- B: Scan image position: FD adjustment
- C: Scanner CD zoom ratio adjustment
- D: Scanner FD zoom ratio adjustment

**A. Registration (CD)**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To adjust for variations in the accuracy of IR parts and their mounting accuracy by varying the scan start position in the main scanning direction.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When the Original Glass is replaced.</li> <li>• When the CCD Unit is with a new one.</li> </ul>
Adjustment Specification	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adjust so that width A on the sample copy made falls within the following range.</li> <li>• It is required that Registration (CD) of Printer be adjusted so as to meet the specifications.</li> </ul> <p>Specifications: 20 mm ± 1.0 mm Setting Range: -72 to +72 (1 mm = 24 dot)</p>
Adjustment Instructions	<p>If width A of the output copy falls outside the specified range and if width A is 19 mm or less: increase the setting value. if width A is 21 mm or greater: decrease the setting value.</p>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Position the Test Chart correctly so that the original reference point is aligned with the scale.</li> <li>2. Press the Start key to make a copy.</li> <li>3. Check point A on the image of the copy.</li> <li>4. If width A on the copy falls outside the specified range, enter the Adjust mode.</li> <li>5. Touch [Scanner] → [Registration] → [CD] in that order.</li> <li>6. Press the Clear key and enter the value from the 10-Key Pad.</li> <li>7. Make adjustments until the specifications are met.</li> </ol>

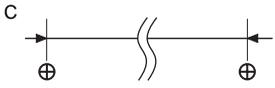
**B. Registration (FD)**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To adjust for variations in the accuracy of IR parts and their mounting accuracy by varying the scan start position in the sub scanning direction.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the Original Glass is replaced.</li> <li>When the CCD Unit is with a new one.</li> </ul>
Adjustment Specification	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <div style="margin-left: 20px;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Adjust so that width B on the sample copy made falls within the following range.</li> <li>It is required that Registration (FD) of Printer be adjusted so as to meet the specifications.</li> </ul> <p>Specifications: 20 mm ± 1.0 mm Setting Range: -24 to +72 (1 mm = 24 dot)</p> </div> </div>
Adjustment Instructions	<p>If width B of the output copy falls outside the specified range and</p> <p>if width B is 19 mm or less: decrease the setting value.</p> <p>if width B is 21 mm or greater: increase the setting value.</p>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Position the Test Chart correctly so that the original reference point is aligned with the scale.</li> <li>Press the Start key to make a copy.</li> <li>Check point B on the image of the copy.</li> <li>If width B on the copy falls outside the specified range, enter the Adjust mode.</li> <li>Touch [Scanner] → [Registration] → [FD] in that order.</li> <li>Press the Clear key and enter the value from the 10-Key Pad.</li> <li>Make adjustments until the specifications are met.</li> </ol>

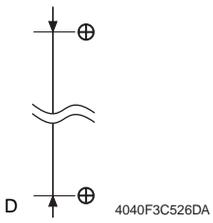
bizhub 200/250/350

Adjustment / Setting

### C. Zoom (CD)

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To adjust the zoom ratio in the main scan direction for the Scanner Section</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the CCD Unit is with a new one.</li> </ul>
Adjustment Specification	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="margin-right: 20px;"> <p>C</p>  </div> <div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Measure C width on the test chart and on the sample copy, and adjust the gap to be within the following specification.</li> <li>It is required that Registration (CD) of Printer be adjusted so as to meet the specifications.</li> </ul> <p>Specifications: <math>\pm 2.0</math> mm            Setting Range: 0.990 to 1.010            (in 0.001 mm increments)</p> </div> </div> <p style="text-align: center; font-size: small;">4040F3C525DA</p>
Adjustment Instructions	<p>If width C on the sample copy made is wider than that on the test chart, decrease the setting value.</p> <p>If width C on the sample copy made is narrower than that on the test chart, increase the setting value.</p>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Call the Adjust Mode to the screen.</li> <li>Touch [Scanner] → [Zoom] in that order.</li> <li>Position the test Chart correctly so that the original reference point is aligned with the scale.</li> <li>Touch [Test Print] to make a copy.</li> <li>Check the C width on the image of the copy.</li> <li>If width C on the sample copy made falls outside the specified range, touch CD: [Copy].</li> <li>Press the Clear key and enter the value from the 10-Key Pad.</li> <li>Touch [Test Print] again to make a copy.</li> <li>Make adjustments until the specifications are met.</li> </ol>

**D. Zoom (FD)**

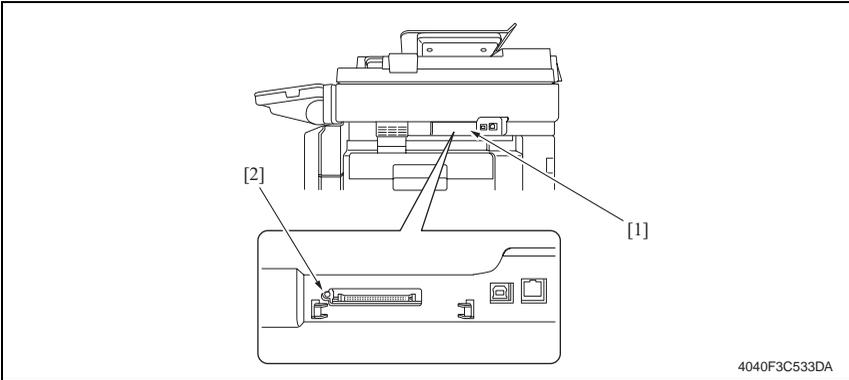
Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To adjust the zoom ratio in the sub scan direction for the Scanner Section</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the CCD Unit is with a new one.</li> </ul>
Adjustment Specification	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Measure D width on the test chart and on the sample copy, and adjust the gap to be within the following specification.</li> <li>It is required that Registration (FD) of Printer be adjusted so as to meet the specifications.</li> </ul> <p>Specifications: <math>\pm 2.0</math> mm                  Setting Range: 0.990 to 1.010                  (in 0.001 mm increments)</p>
Adjustment Instructions	<p>If width D on the sample copy made is wider than that on the test chart, decrease the setting value.</p> <p>If width D on the sample copy made is narrower than that on the test chart, increase the setting value.</p>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Call the Adjust Mode to the screen.</li> <li>2. Touch [Scanner] → [Zoom] in that order.</li> <li>3. Position the test Chart correctly so that the original reference point is aligned with the scale.</li> <li>4. Touch [Test Print] to make a copy.</li> <li>5. Check the D width on the image of the copy.</li> <li>6. If width D on the sample copy made falls outside the specified range, touch FD: [Copy].</li> <li>7. Press the Clear key and enter the value from the 10-Key Pad.</li> <li>8. Touch [Test Print] again to make a copy.</li> <li>9. Make adjustments until the specifications are met.</li> </ol>

bizhub 200/250/350

Adjustment / Setting

## 15. Initial Mode

### 15.1 Initial Mode Function Setting Procedure



1. Remove the Compact Flash Cover [1].
2. Press the Warm Restart switch [2].



3. When "●" appears at the center on the left-hand side of the screen, enter "3" from the 10-Key Pad.
4. Enter the 8-digit service code and touch [END]. (Default value: 00000000)

#### NOTE

- When [END] is touched after a wrong service code has been entered, the Basic screen reappears.
- At the fourth access after entries of three wrong access codes, [END] is not available on the screen. It is therefore necessary to turn OFF and ON the Main Power Switch.
- If you forget the service code, it becomes necessary to replace the RAMS Board with a new one. Take necessary steps not to forget the service code.
- The RAMS Board is not available as a replacement part. If it requires replacement, contact Office Printing Support Division by way of CSES.

5. Select a function.

#### 15.1.1 Exiting

- Touch [Exit].

## 15.2 Initial Mode Function Tree

Initial Mode	Total Clear
	Touch Panel Adjustment
	Marketing Area
	Image Data Clear
	Clear FAX Setting
	Date/Time Setting *1
	Trouble Reset

4040F3E556DA

\*1: For details, see FK-503 Service Manual.

## 15.3 Settings in the Initial Mode

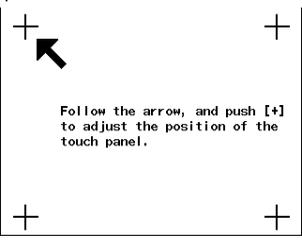
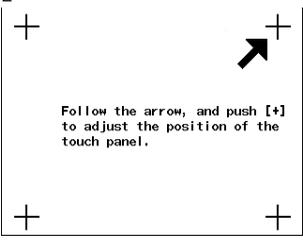
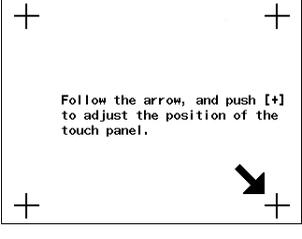
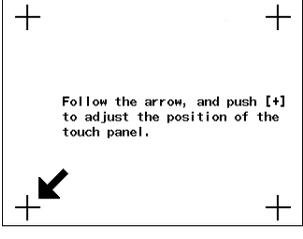
### NOTE

- Be sure to turn the main power switch OFF and ON after the Initial mode has been completed.

### 15.3.1 Total Clear

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To clear all data.</li> </ul>
Use	<p>The following settings are cleared.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fax-related setting information</li> <li>• Bulletin board setting information</li> <li>• Transmission/reception log information</li> <li>• Image data</li> <li>• Network setting information</li> <li>• Destination information</li> <li>• Soft switch information</li> <li>• Management-by-account setting information</li> <li>• User authentication setting information</li> <li>• Account/user counter</li> <li>• Remote maintenance setting information</li> <li>• FW download setting information</li> <li>• Copy setting information (zoom ratio, paper size, erase width, paper source detailed information, copy job program, bypass free size registration, etc.)</li> <li>• CSRC setting information</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Touch [Total Clear] from the Initial mode screen.</li> <li>2. Select [Yes] and touch [Enter] to start the clearing sequence.</li> <li>3. When the message indicating completion of the clearing sequence appears, touch [OK].</li> </ol>

**15.3.2 Touch Panel Adjustment**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To adjust the position of the Touch Panel display</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make this adjustment if the Touch Panel is slow to respond to a pressing action.</li> <li>When the control panel is replaced.</li> </ul>
Adjustment Procedure	<p>1. Touch [Touch Panel Adjustment] from the Initial mode screen.                  2. Following the arrow mark, touch the four points (+) sequentially on the screen using a pen.</p> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Be sure to touch the very center of each point.</li> <li>Use care not to damage the screen surface with the tip of the pen.</li> </ul> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>1</p>  <p>Follow the arrow, and push [+] to adjust the position of the touch panel.</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>2</p>  <p>Follow the arrow, and push [+] to adjust the position of the touch panel.</p> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>3</p>  <p>Follow the arrow, and push [+] to adjust the position of the touch panel.</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>4</p>  <p>Follow the arrow, and push [+] to adjust the position of the touch panel.</p> </div> </div> <p style="text-align: right; font-size: small;">4040F3E557DA</p>

**15.3.3 Marketing Area**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To specify the marketing region.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the marketing area is changed.</li> <li>Fixed zoom ratios shown on the screen, the default values for Total Clear, and related items are changed according to the setting.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p>1. Touch [Marketing Area] from the Initial mode screen.                  2. Select the appropriate marketing area and touch [END].</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Japan                      U.S.                      Europe                      Others</p>

**15.3.4 Image Data Clear**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To clear all image data stored on the memory of the MFBS Board.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<p>1. Touch [Image Data Clear] from the Initial mode screen.                  2. Select [Yes] and touch [Enter].</p>

**15.3.5 Clear FAX Setting**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To clear all fax settings.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To clear all settings of the local machine, remote machine, communication control, and soft switches.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	 For details, see FK-503 Service Manual.

**15.3.6 Date/Time Setting**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To specify the date and time.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch [Date/Time Setting] from the Initial mode screen.</li> <li>Enter the data from the 10-Key Pad and touch [END].</li> </ul>

**15.3.7 Trouble Reset**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To clear all malfunctions, including fusing errors (C3XXX).</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To reset fusing-related malfunctions.</li> <li>Malfunctions relating to units other than fusing can be reset by turning OFF and ON the Main Power Switch and opening and closing the side cover.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touching [Trouble Reset] on the Initial mode screen will reset the malfunctions.</li> </ul>

## 16. Mechanical adjustment

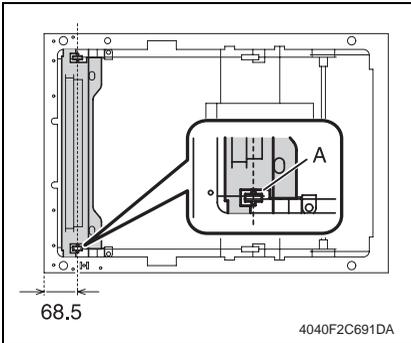
### 16.1 Mechanical adjustment of the scanner section

#### 16.1.1 Scanner Position Adjustment

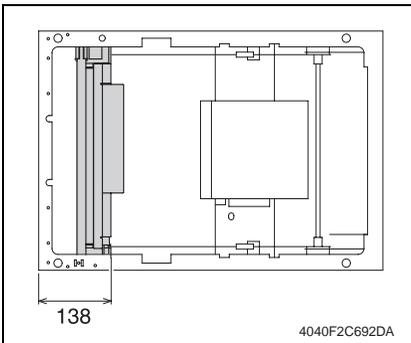
**Make this adjustment after any of the following procedures has been performed:**

- After the Scanner Drive Cables have been replaced.
- When the Scanner has been removed.

1. Remove the IR Upper Left Cover.  
☞ 49
2. Remove the Front Holding Bracket.  
☞ 49
3. Remove the Original Glass.  
☞ 49
4. Remove the Exposure Unit.  
☞ 78



5. Move the Mirror Unit to the position shown on the left.
  - Distance of part A from the IR left side surface: 68.5 mm



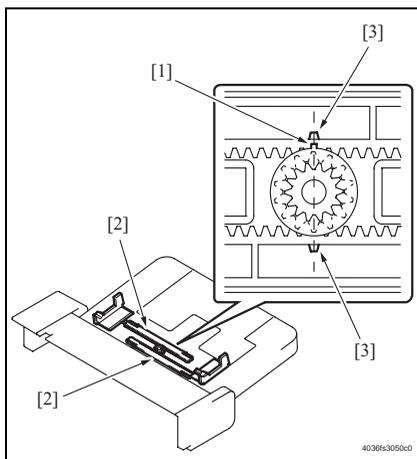
6. Wind the cables on the Exposure Unit.
7. 7. Mount the Exposure Unit at the location shown on the left.
  - Distance of the right side surface of the Exposure Unit from the IR left side surface: 138 mm

## 16.2 Mechanical adjustment of the bypass tray section

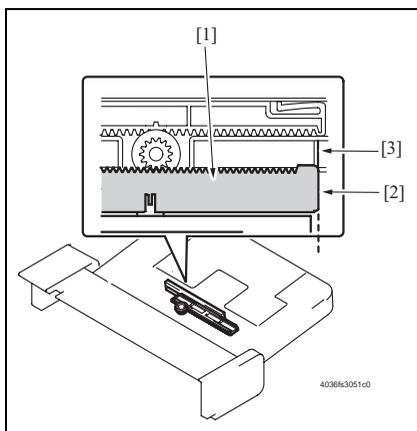
### 16.2.1 Adjustment of the Bypass Paper Size Unit

This adjustment must be made in the following case:

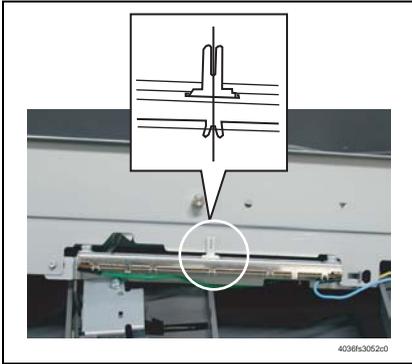
- The Bypass Paper Size Unit has been removed.



1. Install the gear so that the protrusion of the gear [1] and the mark [3] on the Bypass Guide Rack Gear [2] are aligned in a straight line.



2. Install the Bypass Unit Cover so that part A (edge) [2] of the Rack Gear [1] for the Bypass Paper Size Unit and part B [3] of the Bypass Unit Cover are aligned in a straight line.

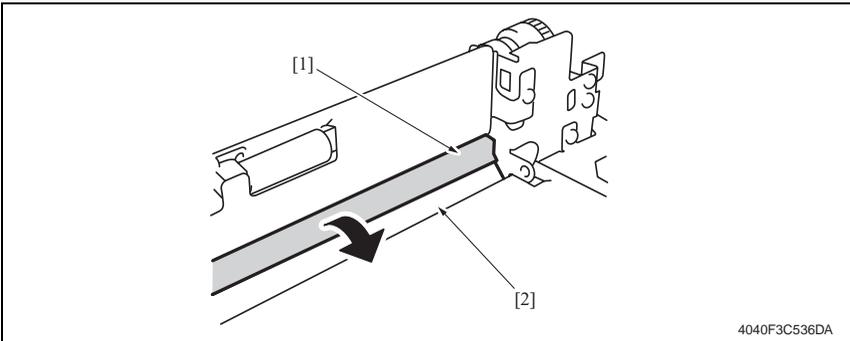


- When the Bypass Paper Size Unit base is mounted, align the lever position of the Bypass Paper Size Unit with the tab at the center in a straight line.

- After the Bypass Paper Size Unit base has been mounted, check that the lever of the Bypass Paper Size Unit moves smoothly in a manner operatively connected to the Bypass Guide.
- Select [Function] from the Tech. Rep. mode and run [FD].  
☞ 164

### 16.2.2 Manual Bypass Unit Installation Check

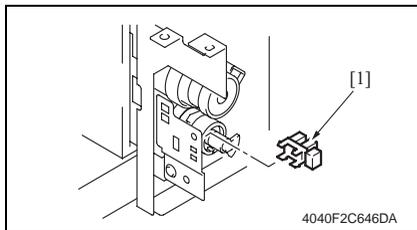
- Remove the Rear Right Cover.  
☞ 50
- Remove the Lower Right Rear Cover.  
☞ 49
- Remove the Front Manual Bypass Cover.  
☞ 55
- Remove the Rear Manual Bypass Cover.  
☞ 55
- Check the Tray 2 Paper Feed Guide [1] and Manual Bypass Guide [2] for correct operation.



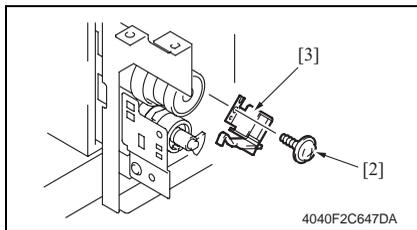
#### NOTE

- Pull open the Tray 2 Paper Fed Door in the direction of the arrow and check that it opens smoothly without binding.
- If the door binds, perform the installation procedures again for the Tray 2 Feed Roll Assy and Manual Bypass Unit.

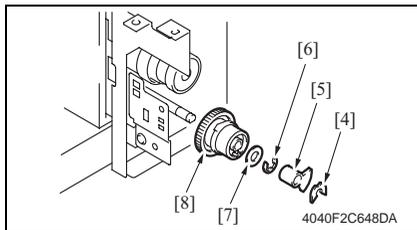
### 16.2.3 Adjustment of the Manual Bypass Take-up Mechanical Clutch



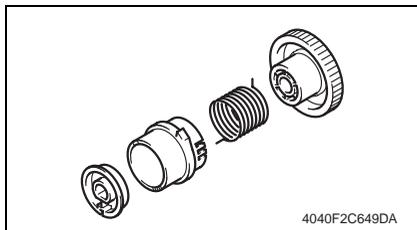
1. Remove the Manual Bypass Unit.  
☞ 71
2. Remove the Manual Feed Tray Lift-up Sensor (PC29) [1].



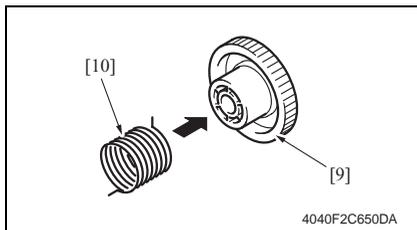
3. Remove the screw [2] and the Manual Paper Feed Pick-up Solenoid (SL3) [3].



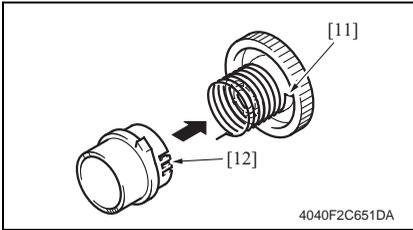
4. Remove the C-clip [4], actuator [5], C-ring [6], and washer [7]. Then, remove the manual bypass take-up mechanical clutch [8].



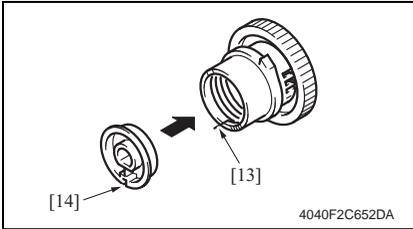
5. Disassemble the Manual Bypass Take-up Mechanical Clutch.



6. Mount the torque limiter [10] to the gear [9].

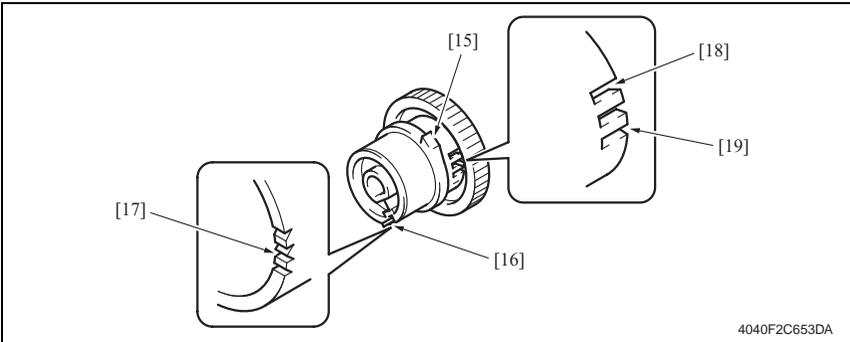


7. Fit hook 1 of the torque limiter [11] into stopper B of the coupling [12].



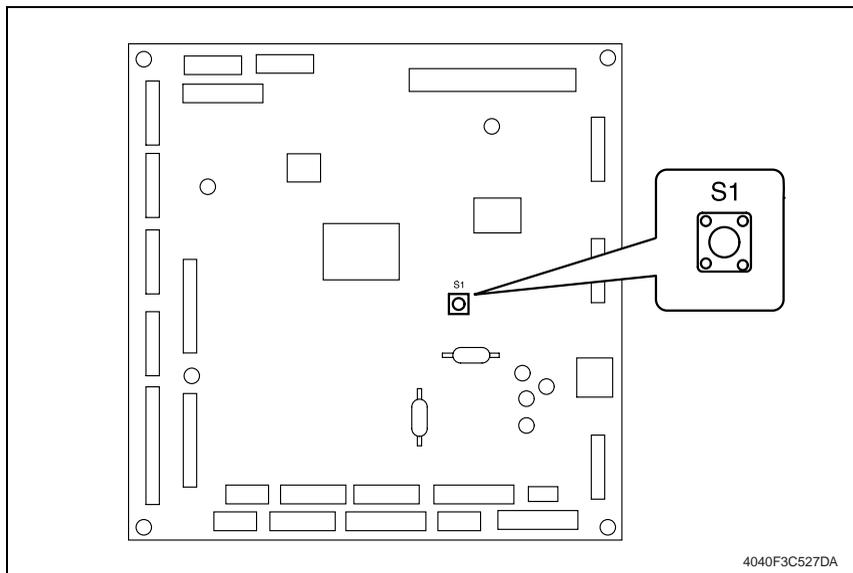
8. Fit hook 2 of the torque limiter [13] in a slit in the collar [14].

9. Holding the tab [15] of the coupling, rotate the gear several turns in the direction of the arrow so that hook 2 is located at the center of portion P [17] of the coupling. If hook 2 [16] cannot be brought to the center, fit hook 1 of the torque limiter in stopper A [18] or stopper C [19] of the coupling; then turn the gear again as necessary. Bring hook 2 [16] into a point nearest the center of portion P [17].



## 17. Functions of switches and parts on PWBs

### 17.1 Test Print Switch (S1)



Symbol	Name	Description
S1	Test Print Switch	Produces the test pattern for Function F12.

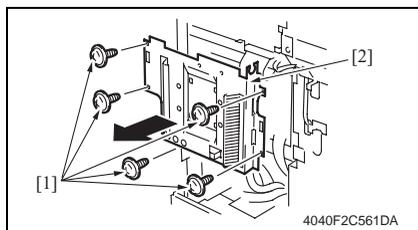
#### 17.1.1 Procedure

1. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.

☞ 50

2. Remove the Rear Cover.

☞ 51



3. Remove the five [1] and the Mechanical Control Board Cover [2].

4. Press S1 to start the feed operation.

5. Press S1 a second time to stop the feed operation.

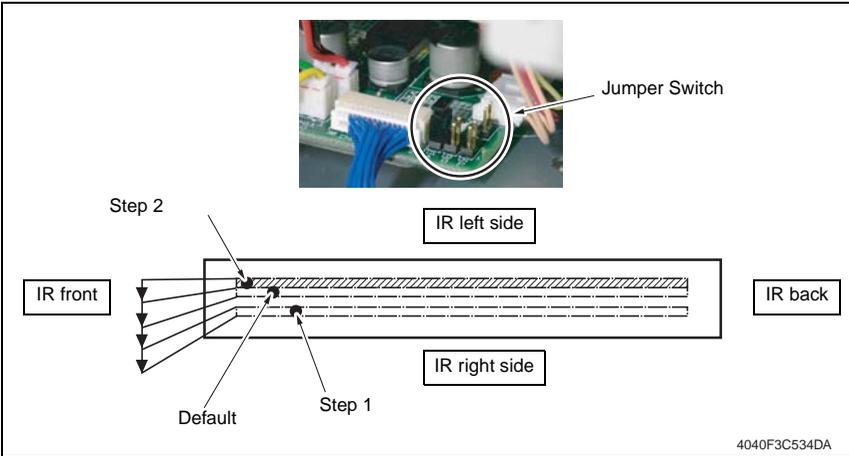
## 17.2 Read white reference position adjustment

### 17.2.1 Jumper switch setting

- If fine black lines occur on the copy, adjust the position of the read white reference position of the Shading Sheet by using jumper switches.

**NOTE**

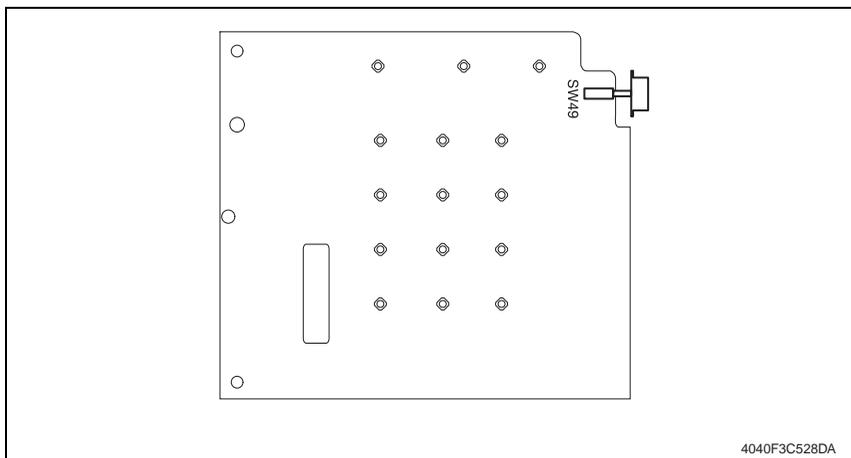
- **NEVER** make any settings other than the following for the jumper switch.



1. Turn OFF the Main Power Switch.
2. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.  
🔧 50
3. Make the appropriate settings of the jumper switches on the BCRS Board.

Scanning Position	Jumper Switch Setting
Default scan position	<p style="text-align: right;">4040F3C537DA</p>
Step 1 scan position	<p style="text-align: right;">4040F3C538DA</p>
Step 2 scan position	<p style="text-align: right;">4040F3C539DA</p>

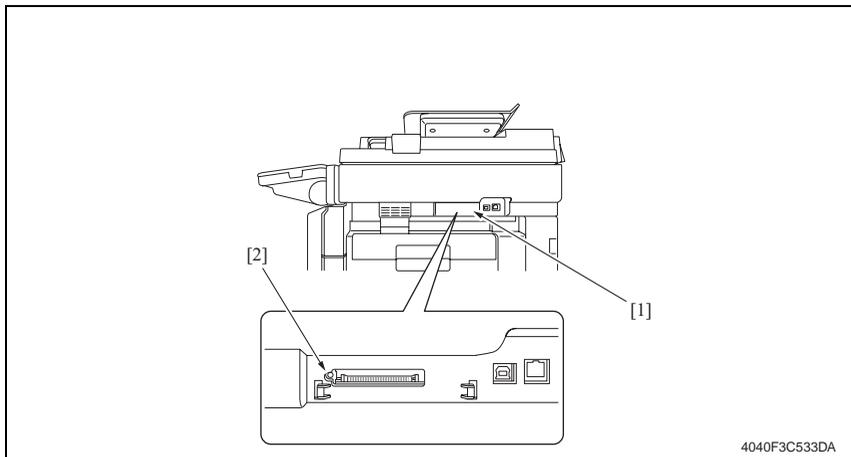
### 17.3 Sub Power Switch (SW49)



Symbol	Name	Description
SW49	Sub Power Switch	Turning OFF the Sub Power switch sets the machine in the same state as in the Sleep mode, in which the control panel gives no indication. No copy can be made with the Sub Power switch turned OFF.

### 17.4 Warm Restart Switch

- Used to enter the initial mode.



#### 17.4.1 Procedure

1. Remove the Compact Flash Cover [1].
2. Press the Warm Restart switch [2].

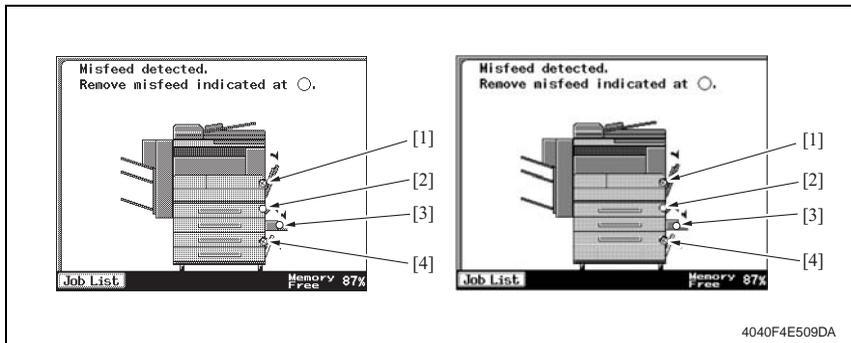
Blank Page

# Troubleshooting

## 18. Jam Display

### 18.1 Misfeed Display

- When a paper misfeed occurs, the misfeed message, misfeed location, and paper location are displayed on the Touch Panel of the machine.



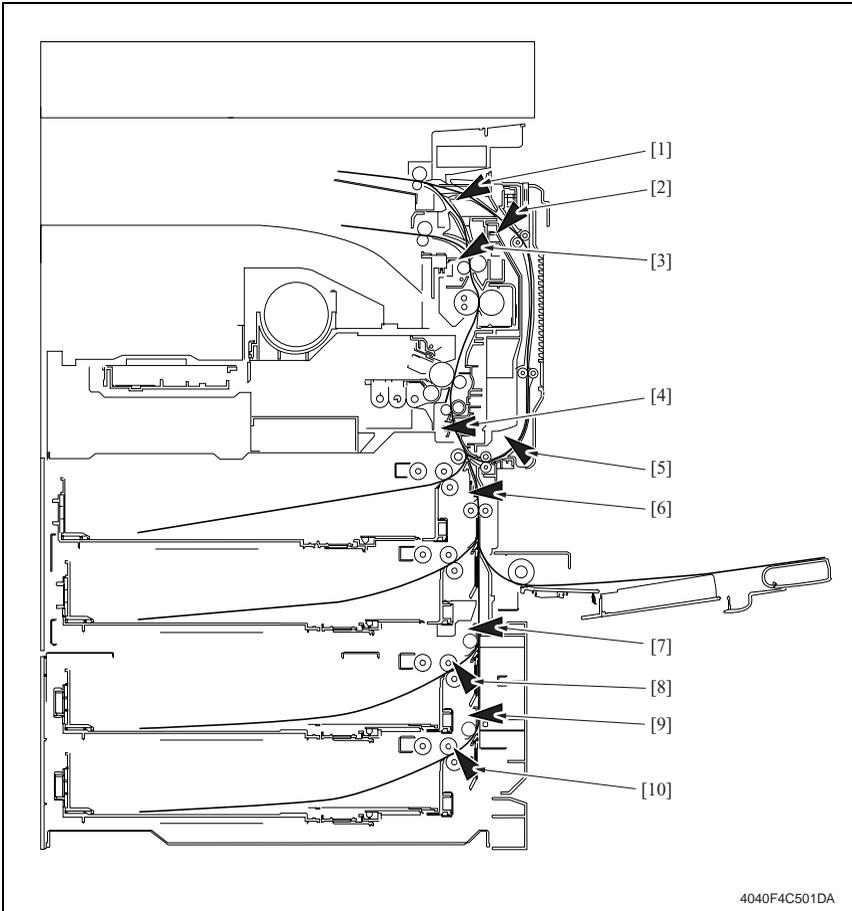
Display	Misfeed Location	Misfeed Processing Location	Action
[1]	Tray 1 take-up section	Right Lower Door	☞ 225
	Image Transfer section	Right Door	☞ 226
	Fusing/Paper Exit section	Right Door	☞ 227
	Duplex Unit transport section	Duplex Unit Right Door	☞ 228
	Duplex Unit take-up section	Duplex Unit Right Door	☞ 229
[2]	Tray 2 take-up/Vertical Transport section	Right Lower Door	☞ 230
[3]	Manual Bypass take-up section	Manual Bypass Slide Board	☞ 231
[4]	Tray 3 take-up section	Paper Feed Unit Right Door	☞ 232
	Tray 4 take-up section	Paper Feed Unit Right Door	☞ 233
	LCT take-up section	LCT Right Door	☞ 234

#### 18.1.1 Misfeed Display Resetting Procedure

- Open the corresponding door, clear the sheet of paper misfeed, and close the door.

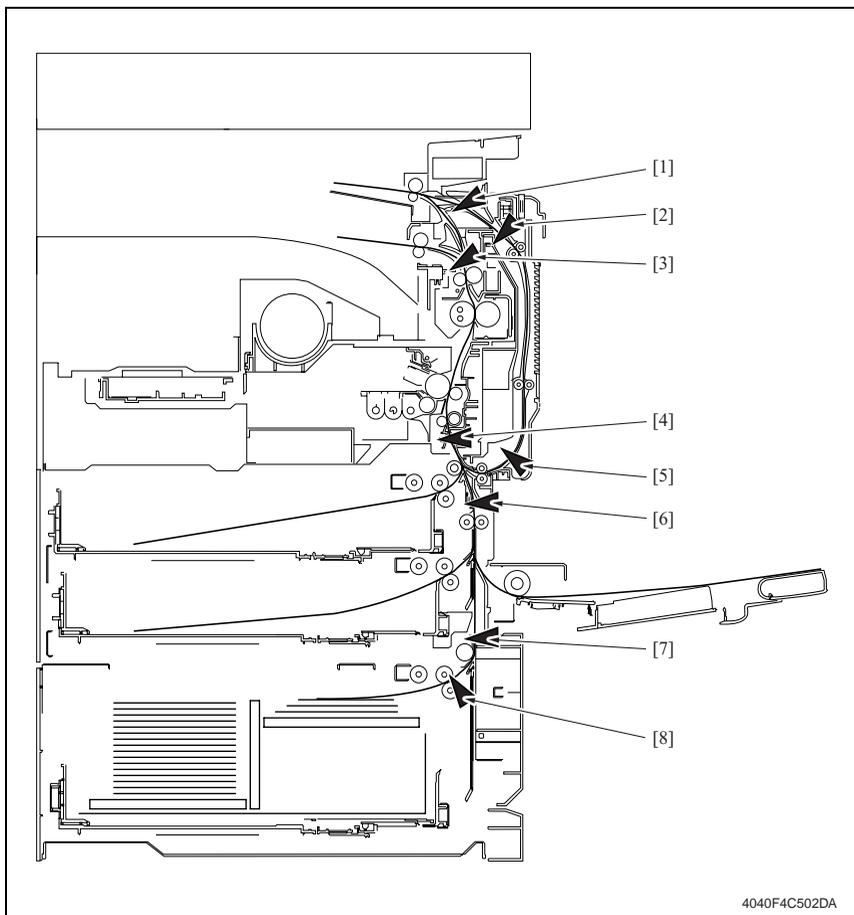
## 18.2 Sensor layout

### 18.2.1 System Mounted with PC-102/PC-202



[1] Switch Back Unit Sensor	PC26	[6] Vertical Conveyance Sensor	PC2
[2] Duplex Unit Upper Transport Sensor	PC24	[7] Tray3 Vertical Conveyance Sensor	PC117-PF
[3] Paper Exit Sensor	PC4	[8] Tray3 Paper Take-Up Sensor	PC116-PF
[4] Synchronizing Roller Sensor	PC1	[9] Tray4 Vertical Conveyance Sensor	PC126-PF
[5] Duplex Unit Lower Transport Sensor	PC25	[10] Tray4 Paper Take-Up Sensor	PC125-PF

18.2.2 System Mounted with PC-402



4040F4C502DA

- |  |      |  |         |
|--|------|--|---------|
| [1] Switch Back Unit Sensor            | PC26 | [5] Duplex Unit Lower Transport Sensor | PC25    |
| [2] Duplex Unit Upper Transport Sensor | PC24 | [6] Vertical Conveyance Sensor         | PC2     |
| [3] Paper Exit Sensor                  | PC4  | [7] Vertical Conveyance Sensor         | PC2-LCT |
| [4] Synchronizing Roller Sensor        | PC1  | [8] Paper Feed Sensor                  | PC1-LCT |

## 18.3 Solution

### 18.3.1 Initial Check Items

- When a paper misfeed occurs, first make checks of the following initial check items.

Check Item	Action
Does paper meet product specifications?	Change paper.
Is paper curled, wavy, or damp.	Change paper. Instruct user in correct paper storage.
Is a foreign object present along the paper path, or is the paper path deformed or worn?	Clean or change the paper path.
Are the Paper Separator Fingers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or change the defective Paper Separator Finger.
Are rolls/rollers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or change the defective roll/roller.
Are the Edge Guide and Trailing Edge Stop at correct position to accommodate paper?	Set as necessary.
Are actuators found operational as checked for correct operation?	Correct or change the defective actuator.

**18.3.2 Misfeed at Tray 1 take-up section**

**A. Detection Timing**

Type	Description
Detection of misfeed at Tray 1 take-up section	The leading edge of the paper does not block the Synchronizing Roller Sensor (PC1) even after the set period of time has elapsed after the 1st Drawer Paper Feed Clutch (CL3) has been energized.
Size error detection	The Synchronizing Roller Sensor (PC1) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the sensor has been blocked by the paper. The Synchronizing Roller Sensor (PC1) is unblocked before the set period of time.

**B. Action**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Synchronizing Roller Sensor (PC1) 1st Drawer Paper Feed Clutch (CL3)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	PC1 I/O check	PWB-A PJ11A-5 (ON)	M-8
3	CL3 operation check	PWB-A PJ22A-14 (ON)	D-7
4	Change PWB-A	-	-

**18.3.3 Misfeed at Image Transfer section****A. Detection Timing**

Type	Description
Detection of misfeed at Image Transfer section	The Paper Exit Sensor (PC4) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Synchronizing Roller Clutch (CL1) is set to OFF.
	The Synchronizing Roller Sensor (PC1) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the sensor has been unblocked by the paper.
Detection of paper left in Image Transfer section	The Synchronizing Roller Sensor (PC1) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

**B. Action**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Synchronizing Roller Sensor (PC1) Paper Exit Sensor (PC4) Synchronizing Roller Clutch (CL1)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	PC1 I/O check	PWB-A PJ11A-5 (ON)	M-8
3	PC4 I/O check	PWB-A PJ18A-11 (ON)	M-12
4	CL1 operation check	PWB-A PJ11A-2 (ON)	M-9
5	Change PWB-A	-	-

**18.3.4 Misfeed at Fusing/Paper Exit section**

**A. Detection Timing**

Type	Description
Detection of misfeed at Fusing/Paper Exit section	The Paper Exit Sensor (PC4) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Synchronizing Roller Sensor (PC1) has been blocked by the paper.
	The Switch Back Unit Sensor (PC26) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Paper Exit Sensor (PC4) has been unblocked by the paper.
Detection of paper left in Fusing/Paper Exit section	The Paper Exit Sensor (PC4) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

**B. Action**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Synchronizing Roller Sensor (PC1) Paper Exit Sensor (PC4) Switch Back Unit Sensor (PC26)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	PC1 I/O check	PWB-A PJ11A-5 (ON)	M-8
3	PC4 I/O check	PWB-A PJ18A-11 (ON)	M-12
4	PC26 I/O check	PWB-A PJ19A-9 (ON)	M-5
5	Change PWB-A	-	-

**18.3.5 Misfeed at Switch Back Unit/Duplex Unit transport section****A. Detection Timing**

Type	Description
Detection of misfeed at Switch Back Unit/Duplex Unit transport section	The Switch Back Unit Sensor (PC26) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Paper Exit Sensor (PC4) has been unblocked by the paper.
	The Duplex Unit Upper Transport Sensor (PC24) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Switch Back Unit Sensor (PC26) is blocked by the paper.
	The Switch Back Unit Sensor (PC26) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Duplex Unit Upper Transport Sensor (PC24) is blocked by the paper.
Detection of paper left in Switch Back Unit/Duplex Unit transport section	The Switch Back Unit Sensor (PC26) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.
	The Duplex Unit Upper Transport Sensor (PC24) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

**B. Action**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Paper Exit Sensor (PC4) Switch Back Unit Sensor (PC26) Duplex Unit Upper Transport Sensor (PC24)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	PC4 I/O check	PWB-A PJ18A-11 (ON)	M-12
3	PC26 I/O check	PWB-A PJ19A-9 (ON)	M-5
4	PC24 I/O check	PWB-A PJ20A-5 (ON)	M-16
5	PC25 I/O check	PWB-A PJ20A-8 (ON)	M-16
6	Change PWB-A	-	-

**18.3.6 Misfeed at Duplex Unit take-up section**

**A. Detection Timing**

Type	Description
Detection of misfeed at Duplex Unit take-up section	The Synchronizing Roller Sensor (PC1) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Duplex Unit Lower Transport Sensor (PC25) has been blocked by the paper.
Detection of paper left in Duplex Unit take-up section	The Duplex Unit Lower Transport Sensor (PC25) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

**B. Action**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Synchronizing Roller Sensor (PC1) Duplex Unit Lower Transport Sensor (PC25)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	PC1 I/O check	PWB-A PJ11A-5 (ON)	M-8
3	PC25 I/O check	PWB-A PJ20A-8 (ON)	M-16
4	Change PWB-A	-	-

**18.3.7 Misfeed at Tray 2 take-up/Vertical Transport section****A. Detection Timing**

Type	Description
Detection of misfeed at Tray 2 take-up/Vertical Transport section	The leading edge of the paper does not block the Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2) even after the set period of time has elapsed after the 2nd Drawer Paper Feed Clutch (CL4) has been energized.
	The Synchronizing Roller Sensor (PC1) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the leading edge of the paper has blocked the Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2).
Detection of paper left in Tray 2 take-up/Vertical Transport section	The Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

**B. Action**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Synchronizing Roller Sensor (PC1) Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2) 2nd Drawer Paper Feed Clutch (CL4)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	PC1 I/O check	PWB-A PJ11A-5 (ON)	M-8
3	PC2 I/O check	PWB-A PJ22A-9 (ON)	D-7
4	CL4 operation check	PWB-A PJ21A-10 (ON)	D-10
5	Change PWB-A	-	-

**18.3.8 Misfeed at Manual Bypass take-up section**

**A. Detection Timing**

Type	Description
Detection of misfeed at Manual Bypass take-up section	The leading edge of the paper does not block the Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2) even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Bypass Paper Feed Clutch (CL5) has been energized.
Detection of paper left in Manual Bypass take-up section	The Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

**B. Action**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2) Bypass Paper Feed Clutch (CL5)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	PC2 I/O check	PWB-A PJ22A-9 (ON)	D-7
3	CL5 operation check	PWB-A PJ13A-14 (ON)	M-11
4	Change PWB-A	-	-

**18.3.9 Misfeed at Tray 3 take-up/Vertical Transport section (PC-202)****A. Detection Timing**

Type	Description
Detection of misfeed at Tray 3 take-up/Vertical Transport section	The leading edge of the paper does not block the Tray3 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC117-PF) even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Tray3 Paper Feed Motor (M122-PF) has been energized.
	The Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Tray3 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC117-PF) is blocked by the paper.
	The Tray3 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC117-PF) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Tray3 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC117-PF) has been blocked by the paper.
Detection of paper left in Tray 3 take-up/Vertical Transport section	The Tray3 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC117-PF) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.
	The Tray3 Paper Take-Up Sensor (PC116-PF) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

**B. Action**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Tray3 Paper Take-Up Sensor (PC116-PF) Tray3 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC117-PF) Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2) Tray3 Paper Feed Motor (M122-PF)	Main Control Board (PWB-C2 PF)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	PC116-PF I/O check	 See PC-102/PC-202 Service Manual.	
3	PC117-PF I/O check		
4	PC2 I/O check		
5	M122-PF operation check		
6	Change PWB-C2 PF		

**18.3.10 Misfeed at Tray 4 take-up/Vertical Transport section (PC-202)**

**A. Detection Timing**

Type	Description
Detection of misfeed at Tray 4 take-up/Vertical Transport section	The leading edge of the paper does not block the Tray4 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC126-PF) even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Tray4 Paper Feed Motor (M123-PF) has been energized.
	The Tray3 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC117-PF) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Tray4 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC126-PF) is blocked by the paper.
	The Tray4 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC126-PF) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Tray4 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC126-PF) has been blocked by the paper.
Detection of paper left in Tray 4 take-up/Vertical Transport section	The Tray4 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC126-PF) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.
	The Tray4 Paper Take-Up Sensor (PC125-PF) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

**B. Action**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Tray4 Paper Take-Up Sensor (PC125-PF) Tray4 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC126-PF) Tray3 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC117-PF) Tray4 Paper Feed Motor (M123-PF)	Main Control Board (PWB-C2 PF)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	PC125-PF I/O check	 See PC-102/PC-202 Service Manual.	
3	PC126-PF I/O check		
4	PC117-PF I/O check		
5	M123-PF operation check		
6	Change PWB-C2 PF	-	-

**18.3.11 Misfeed at LCT take-up/Vertical Transport section (PC-402)****A. Detection Timing**

Type	Description
Detection of misfeed at LCT take-up/Vertical Transport section	The leading edge of the paper does not block the Paper Feed Sensor (PC1-LCT) or Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2-LCT) even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Paper Feed Motor (M1-LCT) has been energized.
	The Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2-LCT) is blocked by the paper.
	The Paper Feed Sensor (PC1-LCT) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Paper Feed Sensor (PC1-LCT) has been blocked by the paper.
	The Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2-LCT) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2-LCT) has been blocked by the paper.
Detection of paper left in LCT take-up/Vertical Transport section	The Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2-LCT) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.
	The Paper Feed Sensor (PC1-LCT) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

**B. Action**

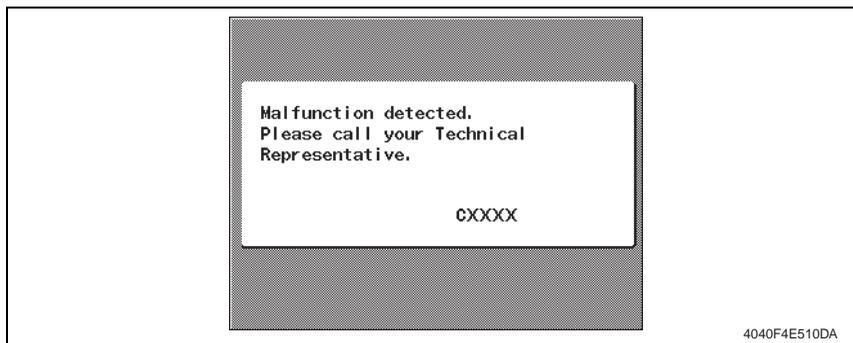
Relevant Electrical Parts	
Paper Feed Sensor (PC1-LCT) Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2-LCT) Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2) Paper Feed Motor (M1-LCT)	Main Control Board (PWB-C1 LCT)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	PC1-LCT I/O check	☞ See PC-402 Service Manual.	
3	PC2-LCT I/O check		
4	PC2 I/O check		
5	M1-LCT operation check		
6	Change PWB-C1 LCT	-	-

## 19. Malfunction code

### 19.1 Trouble code

- The machine's CPU performs a self-diagnostics function that, on detecting a malfunction, gives the corresponding malfunction code and maintenance call mark on the Touch Panel.



#### 19.1.1 Trouble code list

- For the details of the malfunction codes of the options, see the Service Manual for the corresponding option.

Code	Item	Description	Rank
C0001	LCT Communication Failure	☞ See PC-402 Service Manual.	B
C0202	Tray 1 Elevator Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Lift-Up Sensor is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the paper lift up operation for the drawer has begun.</li> </ul>	B
C0204	Tray 2 Elevator Failure		B
C0206	Tray 3 Elevator Failure		B
C0208	Tray 4 Elevator Failure		B
C0209	LCT Elevator Motor Failure		☞ See PC-402 Service Manual.
C0210	LCT Lift Failure	B	
C0211	Bypass Lifting Motion Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Bypass Lift Sensor (PC29) is not blocked or unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Bypass Pick-Up Solenoid (SL3) is energized after the manual feed paper take-up operation has begun.</li> </ul>	B
C0212	LCT Ejection Failure	☞ See PC-402 Service Manual.	B
C0213	LCT Shift Gate Malfunction		B
C0214	LCT Shifting Failure		B
C0215	LCT Shift Motor Malfunction		B
C0701	Manual Paper Size Detection Adjustment Failure		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The control value of the Manual Paper Size Detection Unit does not fall within the specified range when an adjustment is made of manual paper size detection.</li> </ul>
C1080	Exit Option Communication Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The connection status of a finishing option is changed after the copier has been turned on.</li> </ul>	B

Code	Item	Description	Rank
C1183	Elevator Motor Ascent/Descent Drive Failure	☞ See FS-508 or SD-502 Service Manual.	B
C1190	Aligning Plate 1 Drive Failure		B
C1191	Aligning Plate 2 Drive Failure		B
C11A0	Paper-Lifter Drive Failure		B
C11A1	Exit Roller Pressure/Retraction Failure		B
C11A2	Saddle Exit Roller Pressure/Retraction Failure		B
C11A3	Shutter Drive Failure		B
C11A4	Saddle Exit Motor Failure		B
C11A5	Saddle In & Out Guide Motor Failure		B
C11A6	Saddle Layable Guide Motor Drive Failure		B
C11B0	Staple Unit CD Drive Failure		B
C11B2	Staple Drive Failure		B
C11B5	Saddle Staple 1 Drive Failure		B
C11B6	Saddle Staple 2 Drive Failure		B
C11C0	Punch Cam Motor Unit Failure		B
C11D0	Crease Motor Drive Failure	B	
C2211	IU Motor Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The IU Motor Lock signal remains set to H for a set period of time while the IU Motor is turning.</li> <li>The IU Motor Lock signal remains set to L for a set period of time while the IU Motor remains stopped.</li> </ul>	B
C2351	Toner Suction Fan Motor Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Toner Suction Fan Motor Lock signal remains set to H for a set period of time while the Toner Suction Fan Motor is turning.</li> <li>The Toner Suction Fan Motor Lock signal remains set to L for a set period of time while the Toner Suction Fan Motor remains stopped.</li> </ul>	C
C2431	IU Fuse Blowing Failure (*1)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The fuse is not blown even after the lapse of a predetermined period of time.</li> </ul>	B
C2557	ATDC Sensor Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The scanning value of the ATDC Sensor is less than 7 % while the IU Motor is turning.</li> <li>The scanning value of the ATDC Sensor is more than 19 % while the IU Motor is turning.</li> </ul>	B
C255C	ATDC Adjustment Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The adjustment of the ATDC control voltage could not be completed in the set period of time when function F8 is run.</li> <li>The ATDC control voltage was not within the range of 5.39 V to 8.15 V when function F8 is run.</li> </ul>	B
C2654	EEPROM Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An EEPROM where no initial data is written is detected.</li> </ul>	B
C2702	Abnormal Image Transfer Voltage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The image transfer voltage exceeds 100 V for the set period of time while the IU Motor remains stopped.</li> </ul>	B

Code	Item	Description	Rank
C3451	Fusing Warm-Up Failure (Main)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Fusing Roller Thermistor does not detect the required temperature within 30 sec. after a warmup cycle has begun; therefore, the copier does not complete the warm-up cycle.</li> <li>The temperature of the Fusing Rollers does not reach the required level even after the set period of time has elapsed during a warm-up cycle.</li> </ul>	A
C3452	Fusing Warm-Up Failure (Sub)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Fusing Roller Sub Thermistor does not detect the required temperature within 30 sec. after a warm-up cycle has begun; therefore, the copier does not complete the warm-up cycle.</li> <li>The temperature of the Fusing Rollers does not reach the required level even after the set period of time has elapsed during a warm-up cycle.</li> </ul>	A
C3751	High Fuser Temperature Failure (Main)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Fusing Roller Thermistor and Fusing Roller Sub Thermistor are detected to be at a temperature above 240 °C when the Main Power Switch is set to ON.</li> </ul>	A
C3752	High Fuser Temperature Failure (Sub)		A
C3851	Low Fuser Temperature Failure (Main)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Fusing Roller Thermistor and Fusing Roller Sub Thermistor are detected to be at a temperature below 105 °C during standby.</li> <li>The Fusing Roller Thermistor and Fusing Roller Sub Thermistor are detected to be at a temperature below 105 °C during printing.</li> </ul>	A
C3852	Low Fuser Temperature Failure (Sub)		A
C4001	Main Unit Communication Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Communications with the Mechanical Control Board and the MFBS Board fail.</li> </ul>	B
C4002	HSYNC Detection Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No SOS falling edges are detected within the set period of time after laser emission began while the Polygon Motor is turning.</li> <li>No SOS falling edges are detected while VIA remains ON.</li> </ul>	B
C4101	Polygon Motor Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Polygon Motor Lock signal could not be detected within the set period of time after the Polygon Motor is energized. (Faulty start detection)</li> <li>No First Lock signals are detected during the 1-second period that starts 1 second after a First Lock signal. (Faulty lock signal detection)</li> <li>The Polygon Motor Lock signal could not be detected after the set period of time has elapsed while the Polygon Motor is turning. (Out-of-timing lock detection)</li> <li>The Polygon Motor Lock signal is set to ON for longer than the set period of time while the Polygon Motor remains stopped. (Abnormal lock detection)</li> </ul>	B
C4721	Main Unit G/A Communication Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Communications with the gate array for expansion I/O (the IC mounted on the Mechanical Control Board) fail.</li> </ul>	B
C5102	Main Motor Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Transport Motor Lock signal remains set to H for a set period of time while the Transport Motor is turning.</li> </ul>	B

bizhub 200/250/350

Troubleshooting

Code	Item	Description	Rank
C5351	Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor Lock signal remains set to H for a set period of time while the Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor is turning.</li> <li>The Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor Lock signal remains set to L for a set period of time while the Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor remains stopped.</li> </ul>	B
C5352	Cooling Fan Motor Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Cooling Fan Motor Lock signal remains set to H for a set period of time while the Cooling Fan Motor is turning.</li> <li>The Cooling Fan Motor Lock signal remains set to L for a set period of time while the Cooling Fan Motor remains stopped.</li> </ul>	B
C5353	IU Cooling Fan Motor Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The IU Cooling Fan Motor Lock signal remains set to H for a set period of time while the IU Cooling Fan Motor is turning.</li> <li>The IU Cooling Fan Motor Lock signal remains set to L for a set period of time while the IU Cooling Fan Motor remains stopped.</li> </ul>	B
C8301	EDH Fan Motor Failure	☞ See DF-605 Service Manual.	C
CA052	MIO Device Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The MIO device does not operate properly.</li> </ul>	C
CC153	Flash ROM Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Flash ROM data was determined to be faulty when the unit was turned on.</li> </ul>	B
CC155	Exit Option Flash ROM Failure	☞ See FS-508 Service Manual.	B

\*1: Not supported by this machine

## 19.2 How to reset

- Different malfunction resetting procedures apply depending on the rank of the trouble code.

\* List of Malfunction Resetting Procedures

Trouble Code Rank	Resetting Procedures
Rank A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Trouble Reset</li> <li>☞ For details, see Adjustment/Setting.</li> </ul>
Rank B	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Opening/Closing the front door</li> </ul>
Rank C	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn OFF the Main Power Switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the Main Power Switch.</li> </ul>

### 19.3 Solution

**19.3.1 C0202: Tray 1 Elevator Failure**

**19.3.2 C0204: Tray 2 Elevator Failure**

**19.3.3 C0206: Tray 3 Elevator Failure**

**19.3.4 C0208: Tray 4 Elevator Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Tray1 Paper Lift Motor (M7) Tray2 Paper Lift Motor (M8) Tray3 Lift Motor (M124-PF) Tray4 Lift Motor (M125-PF) Tray1 Paper Lift Sensor (PC6) Tray2 Paper Lift Sensor (PC12) Tray3 Lift Sensor (PC114-PF) Tray4 Lift Sensor (PC123-PF)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A) Power Supply Unit (PU1) Main Control Board (PWB-C2 PF)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the motor and sensor connectors for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check the connector of each motor for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	Check the PU1 connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
4	PC6 I/O check	PWB-A PJ15A-11 (ON)	D-17
5	PC12 I/O check	PWB-A PJ22A-6 (ON)	D-6
6	PC114-PF I/O check	☞ See PC-102/PC-202 Service Manual.	
7	PC123-PF I/O check		
8	M7 operation check	-	D-23
9	M8 operation check	-	D-19
10	M124-PF operation check	☞ See PC-102/PC-202 Service Manual.	
11	M125-PF operation check		
12	Change PWB-A	-	-
13	Change PWB-C2 PF	-	-
14	Change PU1	-	-

**19.3.5 C0211: Bypass Lifting Motion Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Bypass Pick-Up Solenoid (SL3) Bypass Lift Sensor (PC29)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A) Power Supply Unit (PU1)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the SL3 connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check cam position.	-	-
3	PC29 I/O check	PWB-A PJ12A-11 (ON)	M-14
4	SL3 operation check	PWB-A PJ12A-5 (ON)	M-13
5	Change PWB-A	-	-

**19.3.6 C0701: Manual Paper Size Detection Adjustment Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Bypass Paper Size Detection Unit (VR1)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the VR1 connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Readjust the VR1.	-	-
3	Replace VR1	-	-
4	Change PWB-A	-	-

**19.3.7 C1080: Exit Option Communication Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Main Control Board (PWB-A FN)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Turn OFF the Main Power Switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the Main Power Switch.	-	-
2	Check the PWB-A FN and the PWB-A for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	Change PWB-A FN	-	-
4	Change PWB-A	-	-

**19.3.8 C2211: IU Motor Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
IU Motor (M2)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A) Power Supply Unit (PU1)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the M2 connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check the M2 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	Check the PWB-A connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
4	M2 operation check	PWB-A PJ28A-11 (REM)	M-4
5	Change PWB-A	-	-
6	Change PU1	-	-

**19.3.9 C2351: Toner Suction Fan Motor Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Toner Suction Fan Motor (M11)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A) Power Supply Unit (PU1)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the M11 connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check the fan for possible overload, and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	Check the PWB-A connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
4	M11 operation check	PWB-A PJ5A-13 (REM)	D-14
5	Change PWB-A	-	-
6	Change PU1	-	-

**19.3.10 C2557: ATDC Sensor Failure**

**19.3.11 C255C: ATDC Adjustment Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
ATDC Sensor (UN2)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A) Power Supply Unit (PU1)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the UN2 connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Remove the Developing Unit from the IU, and then replace UN2.	-	-
3	Run F8.	-	-
4	Change PWB-A	-	-
5	Change PU1	-	-

**19.3.12 C2654: EEPROM Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Disconnect and then connect the power cord. Turn OFF the Main Power Switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the Main Power Switch.	-	-
2	Check the EEPROM on the Mechanical Control Board for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	Change PWB-A	-	-
4	Change EEPROM	-	-

**19.3.13 C2702: Abnormal Image Transfer Voltage**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Transfer Roller	High Voltage Unit (HV1)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the installation of the Transfer Roller.	-	-
2	Change HV1	-	-

- 19.3.14 C3451: Fusing Warm-Up Failure (Main)**
- 19.3.15 C3452: Fusing Warm-Up Failure (Sub)**
- 19.3.16 C3751: High Fuser Temperature Failure (Main)**
- 19.3.17 C3752: High Fuser Temperature Failure (Sub)**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Fusing Roller Heater Lamp (H1) Fusing Roller Sub Heater Lamp (H2) Fusing Roller Thermistor (TH1) Fusing Roller Sub Thermistor (TH2)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A) Power Supply Unit (PU1)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check that the H1 comes on when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, and correct or replace as necessary.	-	-
2	Check that the H2 comes on when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, and correct or replace as necessary.	-	-
3	Check the installation of the TH1 and the TH2, and correct or clean as necessary.	-	-
4	Check the operation of the TH1. Remove CN80 (4P), and then check that the resistance across CN80-2 and -3 on the Thermistor is infinity.	-	-
5	Check the operation of the TH2. Remove CN81 (4P), and then check that the resistance across CN81-2 and -3 on the Thermistor is infinity.	-	-
6	Check the continuity of the H1. Correct or replace as necessary.	-	-
7	Check the continuity of the H2. Correct or replace as necessary.	-	-
8	Change PU1	-	-
9	Change PWB-A	-	-

bizhub 200/250/350

Troubleshooting

**19.3.18 C3851: Low Fuser Temperature Failure (Main)****19.3.19 C3852: Low Fuser Temperature Failure (Sub)**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Fusing Roller Heater Lamp (H1) Fusing Roller Sub Heater Lamp (H2) Fusing Roller Thermistor (TH1) Fusing Roller Sub Thermistor (TH2)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A) Power Supply Unit (PU1)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check that the H1 comes on when the Right-Side Door is opened, then closed, and correct or replace as necessary.	-	-
2	Check that the H2 comes on when the Right-Side Door is opened, then closed, and correct or replace as necessary.	-	-
3	Check the installation of the TH1 and the TH2, and correct or clean as necessary.	-	-
4	Check the operation of the TH1. Remove CN80 (4P), and then check that the resistance across CN80-2 and -3 on the Thermistor is infinity.	-	-
5	Check the operation of the TH2. Remove CN81 (4P), and then check that the resistance across CN81-2 and -3 on the Thermistor is infinity.	-	-
6	Check the continuity of the H1. Correct or replace as necessary.	-	-
7	Check the continuity of the H2. Correct or replace as necessary.	-	-
8	Change PU1	-	-
9	Change PWB-A	-	-

**19.3.20 C4001: Main Unit Communication Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
MFBS Board (MFBS)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the MFBS connector for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check the PWB-A connector for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	Check the flat cable between MFBS and PWB-A for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
4	Turn OFF the Main Power Switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the Main Power Switch.	-	-
5	Change MFBS	-	-
6	Change PWB-A	-	-

**19.3.21 C4002: HSYNC Detection Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
PH Unit (PH)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Turn OFF the Main Power Switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the Main Power Switch.	-	-
2	Check the PH and the PWB-A connectors for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	Change PH	-	-
4	Change PWB-A	-	-

**19.3.22 C4101: Polygon Motor Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
PH Unit (PH)	MFBS Board (MFBS)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the PH connector for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Change PH	-	-
3	Change PWB-A	-	-

**19.3.23 C4721: Main Unit G/A Communication Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Turn OFF the Main Power Switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the Main Power Switch.	-	-
2	Check each control board and the PWB-A for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	Change PWB-A	-	-

**19.3.24 C5102: Main Motor Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Main Motor (M1)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A) Power Supply Unit (PU1)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the M1 connector for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check the M1 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	Check the PWB-A connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
4	M1 operation check	PWB-A PJ28A-4 (REM)	M-4
5	Change PWB-A	-	-
6	Change PU1	-	-

**19.3.25 C5351: Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor (M4)	Power Supply Unit (PU1)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the M4 connectors for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check the fan for possible overload, and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	M4 operation check	PWB-A PJ33A-1 (REM)	D-5
4	Change PU1	-	-

**19.3.26 C5352: Cooling Fan Motor Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Cooling Fan Motor (M5)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the M5 connectors for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check the fan for possible overload, and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	M5 operation check	PWB-A PJ11A-6 (REM)	M-8
4	Change PWB-A	-	-

**19.3.27 C5353: IU Cooling Fan Motor Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
IU Cooling Fan Motor (M6)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the M6 connectors for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check the fan for possible overload, and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	M6 operation check	PWB-A PJ15A-1 (REM)	D-16
4	Change PWB-A	-	-

**19.3.28 CA052: MIO Device Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
BCRS Board (BCRS)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Turn OFF the Main Power Switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the Main Power Switch.	-	-
2	Check the BCRS connectors for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	Change BCRS	-	-

**19.3.29 CC153: Flash ROM Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Disconnect and then connect the power cord. Turn OFF the Main Power Switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the Main Power Switch.	-	-
2	The firmware data is overwritten.	-	-
3	Change PWB-A	-	-

## 20. Power supply trouble

### 20.1 Machine is not Energized at All (PU1 Operation Check)

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Main Power Switch (S1) Power Supply Unit (PU1)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A) MFBS Board (MFBS)

Step	Check Item	Location (Electrical Component)	Result	Action
1	Is a voltage being applied to the electrical outlet?	-	NO	Provide a power supply.
2	Is the wiring to terminal S1 correct?	W-22	NO	Rewire
3	Is there continuity across the fuse (F101) on PU1?	-	NO	Change the fuse.
4	Is there continuity across the fuse (F103) on PU1?	-	NO	Change the fuse.
5	Is the wiring between the MFBS Board and Mechanical Control Board correct?	-	NO	Rewire
6	Is the wiring between the Mechanical Control Board and Power Supply Unit correct?	-	NO	Rewire
7	Is DC 5 V being output from PJ8A-2 on the PWB-A?	-	NO	Change PWB-A
			YES	Change PU1

### 20.2 Only the Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor turns

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Power Supply Unit (PU1) Control Panel (UN1)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A)

Step	Check Item	Location (Electrical Component)	Result	Action
1	Is DC 4.5 V being output from PJ8A-3 on the PWB-A?	-	NO	Change PWB-A
2	Is DC 5 V being output from PJ9PU1-1 on PU1?	-	NO	Change PU1
			YES	Change UN1

### 20.3 The Start key (LED) on the control panel blinks green

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Total Counter	Control Panel (UN1)

Step	Check Item	Location (Electrical Component)	Result	Action
1	Is the Total Counter connector connected?	-	NO	Connect
2	Is the machine in the Initial mode?	-	YES	Turn OFF the Main Power Switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the Main Power Switch.

## 21. Image quality problem

### 21.1 How to identify problematic part

- This chapter is divided into two parts: “Initial Check Items” and “Troubleshooting Procedure by a Particular Image Quality Problem.”
- When an image quality problem occurs, first go through the “Initial Check Items” and, if the cause is yet to be identified, go to “Troubleshooting Procedure by a Particular Image Quality Problem.”

### 21.2 Initial Check Items

#### 21.2.1 Initial Check Items 1

- Determine if the failure is attributable to a basic cause or causes.

Section	Step	Check Item	Result	Action
Paper	1	Recommended paper is used.	NO	Instruct user.
	2	Paper is damp.	YES	Replace paper. Instruct user on proper paper storage.
Original	3	Original not flat.	YES	Correct
	4	Faint original (light pencil, etc.)	YES	Instruct user.
	5	Highly transparent original (OHP transparencies, etc.)	YES	Instruct user.
	6	Dirty or scratched Original Glass.	YES	Clean or Replace.
PM parts	7	PM parts relating to image formation have reached the end of cleaning/replacement cycles.	YES	Clean or Replace.
Adjustment items	8	There are settings that can be readjusted to remedy the image failure.	YES	Readjust.

**21.2.2 Initial Check Items 2**

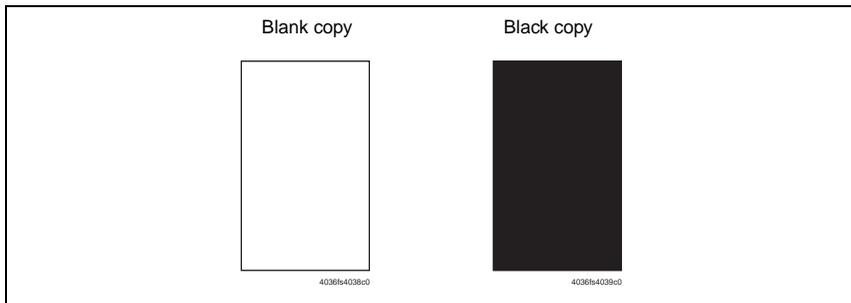
- Determine if the failure is attributable to the Scanner system or the Printer system.

Check Item	Result		Cause
<p>Make copies at different zoom ratios.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; text-align: center; width: 100px; height: 100px; margin: 20px auto;"> <span style="font-size: 48px; font-weight: bold;">A</span> </div>	<p style="text-align: center;">Full size</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; text-align: center; width: 100px; height: 100px; margin: 10px auto;"> <span style="font-size: 48px; font-weight: bold;">A</span> </div>	<p style="text-align: center;">Reduction</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; text-align: center; width: 100px; height: 100px; margin: 10px auto;"> <span style="font-size: 24px; font-weight: bold;">A</span> </div>	<p>Scanner system</p>
	<p style="text-align: center;">Full size</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; text-align: center; width: 100px; height: 100px; margin: 10px auto;"> <span style="font-size: 48px; font-weight: bold;">A</span> </div>	<p style="text-align: center;">Reduction</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; text-align: center; width: 100px; height: 100px; margin: 10px auto;"> <span style="font-size: 24px; font-weight: bold;">A</span> </div>	<p>Printer system</p>

## 21.3 Solution

### 21.3.1 Scanner System: Blank copy or black copy

#### A. Typical Faulty Images

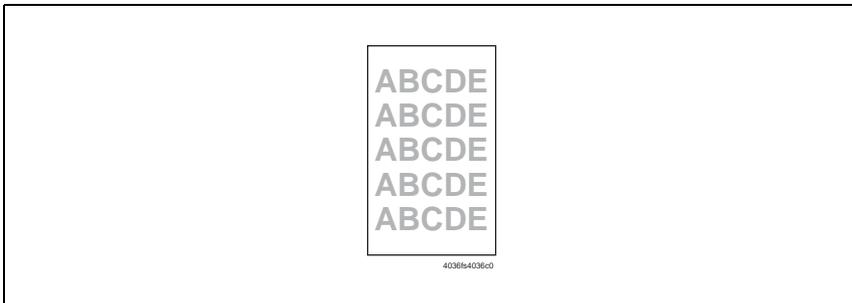


#### B. Troubleshooting Procedure

Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	PWBs and Connection Cables	Connectors are securely connected with no bent pins and no breaks in the connection cables.	NO	Reconnect. Replace the connection cable.
2	Exposure Unit	The Exposure Lamp comes on.	NO	Change Exposure Lamp. Change Exposure Unit.
3	Inverter Board	Connectors on the Inverter Board are connected properly.	NO	Reconnect.
4		The problem has been eliminated after performing step 3.	NO	Change Inverter Board.
5	BCRS Board	Connectors on the BCRS Board are connected properly.	NO	Reconnect.
6		The problem has been eliminated after performing step 5.	NO	Change BCRS Board.
7	MFBS Board	Connectors on the MFBS Board are connected properly.	NO	Reconnect.
8		The problem has been eliminated after performing step 7.	NO	Change MFBS Board.
9	CCD Unit	Connectors on the CCD Unit Board are connected properly.	NO	Reconnect.
10		The problem has been eliminated after performing step 9.	NO	Change CCD Unit.

**21.3.2 Scanner System: Low image density or rough image**

**A. Typical Faulty Images**



**B. Troubleshooting Procedure**

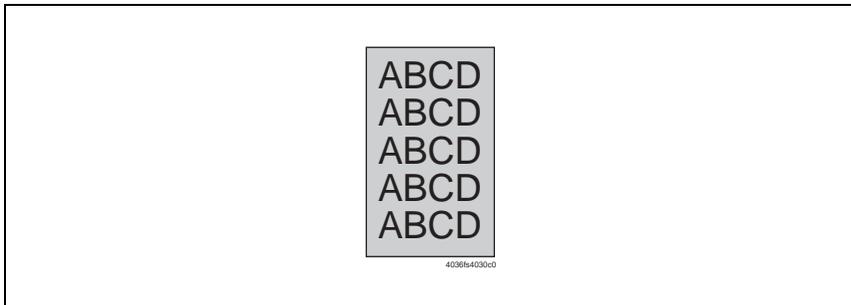
Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Shading Sheet	Shading sheet is dirty.	YES	Clean.
2	Mirrors/Lens/ Original Glass	Mirrors, lens and/or Original Glass are dirty.	YES	Clean.
3	Exposure Lamp	Exposure Lamp is dirty.	YES	Clean. Change Exposure Lamp.
4	PWBs and Connection Cables	Connectors are securely connected with no bent pins and no breaks in the connection cables.	NO	Reconnect. Replace the connection cable.
5	MFBS Board	Connectors on the MFBS Board are connected properly.	NO	Reconnect.
6		The problem has been eliminated after performing step 5.	NO	Change MFBS Board.
7	CCD Unit	Connectors on the CCD Unit Board are connected properly.	NO	Reconnect.
8		The problem has been eliminated after performing step 7.	NO	Change CCD Unit.

bizhub 200/250/350

Troubleshooting

**21.3.3 Scanner System: Foggy background**

**A. Typical Faulty Images**

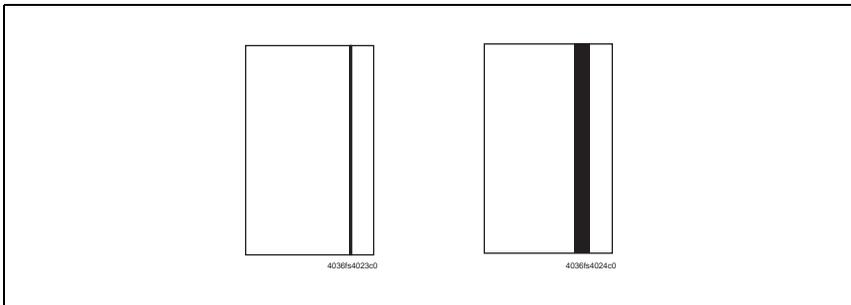


**B. Troubleshooting Procedure**

Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	-	Sunlight or any other extraneous light enters the machine.	YES	Protect the copier from extraneous light.
2	Original	Original is damaged or dirty.	YES	Change original.
3	Original Cover	Original Pad is dirty.	YES	Clean.
4		Original Cover does not lie flat.	YES	Replace Original Cover if it is deformed or the hinges are broken.
5	Shading Sheet	Shading sheet is dirty.	YES	Clean.
6	Mirrors/Lens/ Original Glass/ Reflectors	Mirrors, lens, Original Glass and/or reflectors are dirty.	YES	Clean.
7	Exposure Lamp	Exposure Lamp is dirty.	YES	Clean. Change Exposure Lamp.
8	PWBs and Connection Cables	Connectors are securely connected with no bent pins and no breaks in the connection cables.	NO	Reconnect. Replace the connection cable.
9	MFBS Board	Connectors on the MFBS Board are connected properly.	NO	Reconnect.
10		The problem has been eliminated after performing step 9.	NO	Change MFBS Board.
11	CCD Unit	Connectors on the CCD Unit Board are connected properly.	NO	Reconnect.
12		The problem has been eliminated after performing step 11.	NO	Change CCD Unit.

**21.3.4 Scanner System: Black streaks or bands**

**A. Typical Faulty Images**

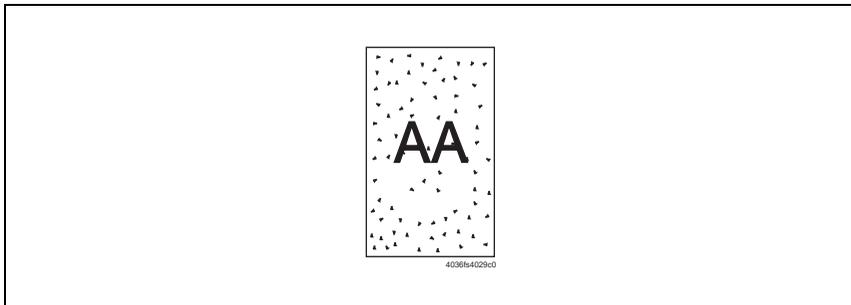


**B. Troubleshooting Procedure**

Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Original	Original is damaged or dirty.	YES	Change original.
2	Original Cover	Original Pad is dirty.	YES	Clean.
3		Original Cover does not lie flat.	YES	Replace Original Cover if it is deformed or the hinges are broken.
4	Shading Sheet	Shading sheet is dirty.	YES	Clean.
5	Mirrors/Lens/ Original Glass/ Reflectors	Mirrors, lens, Original Glass and/or reflectors are dirty.	YES	Clean.
6	Exposure Lamp	Exposure Lamp is dirty.	YES	Clean. Change Exposure Lamp.
7	BCRS Board	The problem has been eliminated after performing step 6.	NO	Change the Jumper Switch Setting on the BCRS Board. 218
8	PWBs and Connection Cables	Connectors are securely connected with no bent pins and no breaks in the connection cables.	NO	Reconnect. Replace the connection cable.
9	MFBS Board	Connectors on the MFBS Board are connected properly.	NO	Reconnect.
10		The problem has been eliminated after performing step 9.	NO	Change MFBS Board.
11	CCD Unit	Connectors on the CCD Unit Board are connected properly.	NO	Reconnect.
12		The problem has been eliminated after performing step 11.	NO	Change CCD Unit.

**21.3.5 Scanner System: Black spots**

**A. Typical Faulty Images**



**B. Troubleshooting Procedure**

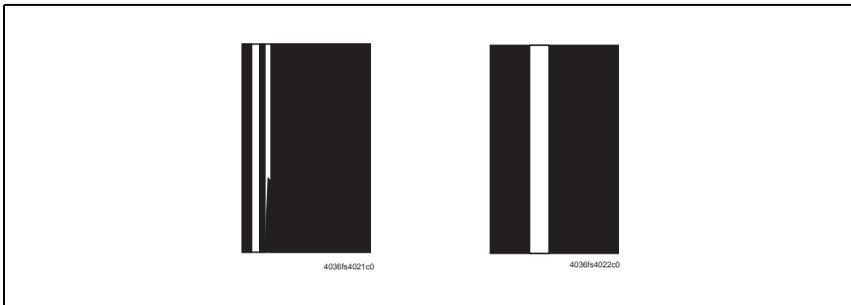
Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Original	Original is damaged or dirty.	YES	Change original.
2	Original Cover	Original Pad is dirty.	YES	Clean.
3	Original Glass	Original Glass is dirty.	YES	Clean.
4	-	The problem has been eliminated after performing step 3.	NO	Change Exposure Unit. Change CCD Unit.

bizhub 200/250/350

Troubleshooting

**21.3.6 Scanner System: White streaks or bands**

**A. Typical Faulty Images**

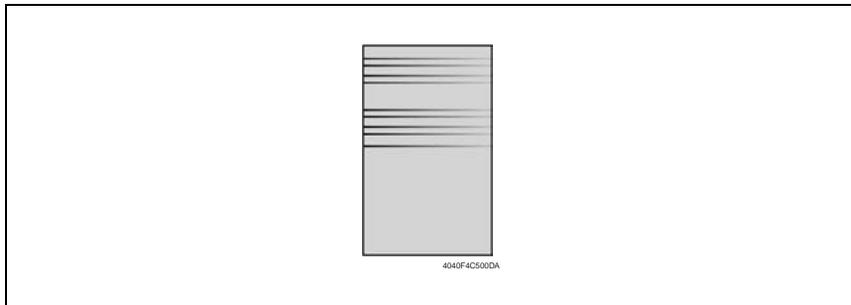


**B. Troubleshooting Procedure**

Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Original	Original is damaged or dirty.	YES	Change original.
2	Original Cover	Original Pad is dirty.	YES	Clean.
3		Original Cover does not lie flat.	YES	Replace Original Cover if it is deformed or the hinges are broken.
4	Shading Sheet	Shading sheet is dirty.	YES	Clean.
5	Mirrors/Lens/ Original Glass/ Reflectors	Mirrors, lens, Original Glass and/or reflectors are dirty.	YES	Clean.
6	Exposure Lamp	Exposure Lamp is dirty.	YES	Clean. Change Exposure Lamp.
7	BCRS Board	The problem has been eliminated after performing step 6.	NO	Change the Jumper Switch Setting on the BCRS Board. 218
8		The white lines or bands are blurry or opaque.	YES	Change Exposure Unit. Change CCD Unit.

**21.3.7 Scanner System: Uneven pitch**

**A. Typical Faulty Images**

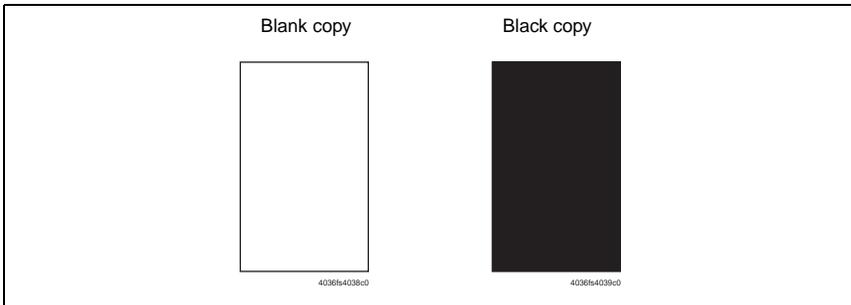


**B. Troubleshooting Procedure**

Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Scanner Motor	Scanner Motor drive is being transmitted.	NO	Correct or change drive coupling mechanism.
2	Exposure Lamp	Exposure Lamp harness is not hooked.	NO	Correct.
3	Scanner Drive Cable	Scanner Drive Cable is taut.	NO	Correct the wiring or replace the cable.
4	Scanner Rails	Scanner Rails are scratched or dirty.	NO	Clean or Change.
5	PWBs and Connection Cables	Connectors are securely connected with no bent pins and no breaks in the connection cables.	NO	Reconnect. Replace the connection cable.
6	MFBS Board	Connectors on the MFBS Board are connected properly.	NO	Reconnect.
7		The problem has been eliminated after performing step 6.	NO	Change MFBS Board.
8	CCD Unit	Connectors on the CCD Unit Board are connected properly.	NO	Reconnect.
9		The problem has been eliminated after performing step 8.	NO	Change CCD Unit.

**21.3.8 Printer System: Blank copy or black copy**

**A. Typical Faulty Images**

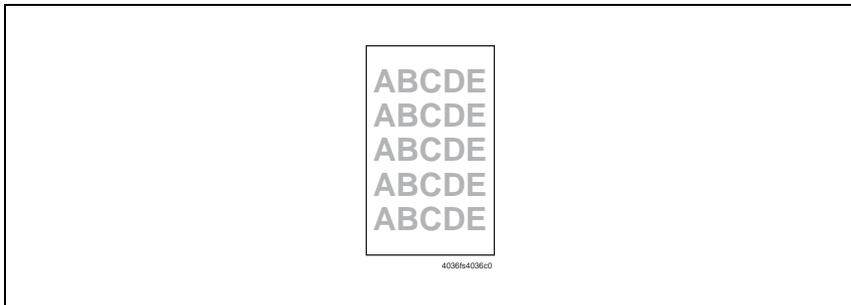


**B. Troubleshooting Procedure**

Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Imaging Unit	Developing Unit drive is being transmitted.	NO	Correct or change drive coupling mechanism.
2		Image transfer current contact terminal is dirty or deformed.	YES	Clean. Change Photo Conductor Unit.
3		Developing bias contact terminal is dirty or deformed.	YES	Clean. Change Photo Conductor Unit.
4	PH Unit	PH Shutter (shutter in the path of the laser beam from the PH Unit to the Photo Conductor) opens and closes properly.	NO	Correct.
5	PWBs	Connectors are securely connected with no bent pins on the Mechanical Control Board or PH Unit.	NO	Correct.
6	-	The problem has been eliminated after performing step 5.	NO	Change Photo Conductor Unit. Change PH Unit. Change High Voltage Unit. Change Mechanical Control Board.

**21.3.9 Printer System: Low image density or rough image**

**A. Typical Faulty Images**

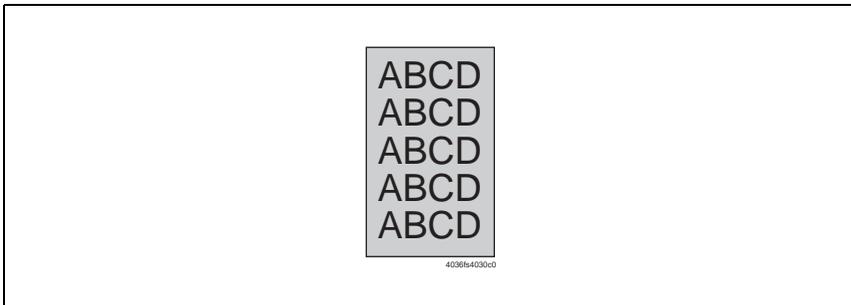


**B. Troubleshooting Procedure**

Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Imaging Unit	Image transfer current contact terminal is dirty or deformed.	YES	Clean. Change Photo Conductor Unit.
2		Developing bias contact terminal is dirty or deformed.	YES	Clean. Change Photo Conductor Unit.
3	Tech. Rep. Mode → Image Density	Select Tech. Rep. Mode → [Tech. Rep. Choice] → [Printer] → [Image Density]. The image problem can be corrected by selecting an Image Density setting toward the + end.	YES	Make setting again.
4	Tech. Rep. Mode → Grid Voltage Adjustment	Select Tech. Rep. Mode → [Tech. Rep. Choice] → [Printer] → [Grid Voltage Adjustment]. The image problem can be corrected by selecting an VG Adjust setting toward the + end.	YES	Make setting again.
5	-	The problem has been eliminated after performing step 4.	NO	Change Photo Conductor Unit. Change PH Unit. Change High Voltage Unit. Change Mechanical Control Board.

**21.3.10 Printer System: Foggy background**

**A. Typical Faulty Images**

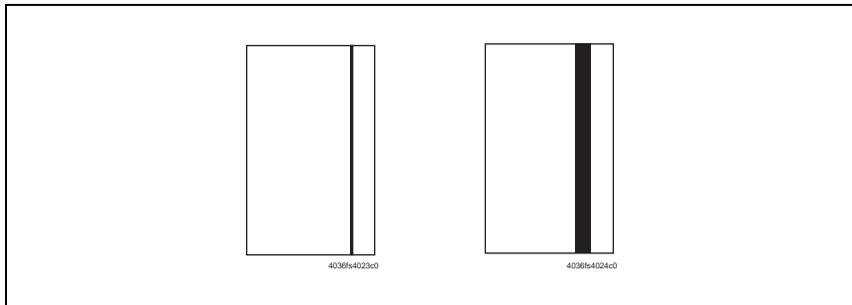


**B. Troubleshooting Procedure**

Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	-	Sunlight or any other extraneous light enters the machine.	YES	Protect the copier from extraneous light.
2	Imaging Unit	Photo Conductor is dirty.	YES	Change Photo Conductor Unit.
3		Comb Electrode contact terminal is dirty or deformed.	YES	Clean. Change Photo Conductor Unit.
4		Grid voltage contact terminal is dirty or deformed.	YES	Clean. Change Photo Conductor Unit.
5		Charge Neutralizing Sheet contact terminal is dirty or deformed.	YES	Clean. Change Photo Conductor Unit.
6	Erase Lamp	Erase Lamp is dirty.	YES	Clean.
7		Is there continuity across the Erase Lamp?	NO	Change Erase Lamp.
8	Tech. Rep. Mode → Image Density	Select Tech. Rep. Mode → [Tech. Rep. Choice] → [Printer] → [Image Density]. The image problem can be corrected by selecting an Image Density setting toward the - end.	YES	Make setting again.
9	Tech. Rep. Mode → Grid Voltage Adjustment	Select Tech. Rep. Mode → [Tech. Rep. Choice] → [Printer] → [Grid Voltage Adjustment]. The image problem can be corrected by selecting an VG Adjust setting toward the - end.	YES	Make setting again.
10	-	The problem has been eliminated after performing step 9.	NO	Change Photo Conductor Unit. Change Developing Unit. Change PH Unit. Change High Voltage Unit. Change Mechanical Control Board.

**21.3.11 Printer System: Black streaks or bands**

**A. Typical Faulty Images**



**B. Troubleshooting Procedure**

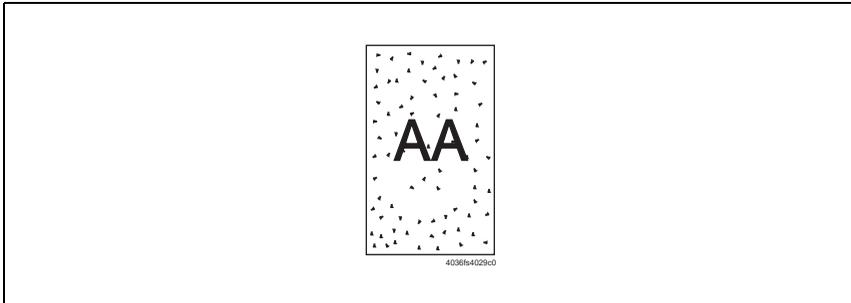
Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Paper Path	Toner is on the paper path.	YES	Clean.
2	Imaging Unit	Photo Conductor is dirty.	YES	Change Photo Conductor Unit.
3	Fusing Unit	Fusing Rollers are dirty or scratched.	YES	Change Photo Conductor Unit.
4	-	The problem has been eliminated after performing step 3.	NO	Change Photo Conductor Unit. Change Developing Unit. Change Mechanical Control Board.

bizhub 200/250/350

Troubleshooting

**21.3.12 Printer System: Black spots**

**A. Typical Faulty Images**

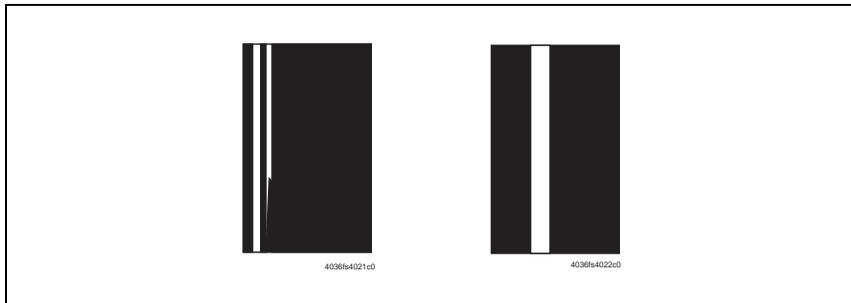


**B. Troubleshooting Procedure**

Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Paper Path	Toner is on the paper path.	YES	Clean.
2	Imaging Unit	Photo Conductor is dirty.	YES	Change Photo Conductor Unit.
3	Fusing Unit	Fusing Rollers are dirty or scratched.	YES	Change Fusing Unit.
4	Imaging Unit	Comb Electrode contact terminal is dirty or deformed.	YES	Clean. Change Photo Conductor Unit.
5		Grid voltage contact terminal is dirty or deformed.	YES	Clean. Change Photo Conductor Unit.
6		Charge Neutralizing Sheet contact terminal is dirty or deformed.	YES	Clean. Change Photo Conductor Unit.
7	Erase Lamp	Erase Lamp is dirty.	YES	Clean.
8		Is there continuity across the Erase Lamp?	NO	Change Erase Lamp.
9	-	The problem has been eliminated after performing step 8.	NO	Change Photo Conductor Unit. Change Developing Unit. Change High Voltage Unit. Change Mechanical Control Board.

**21.3.13 Printer System: White streaks or bands**

**A. Typical Faulty Images**



**B. Troubleshooting Procedure**

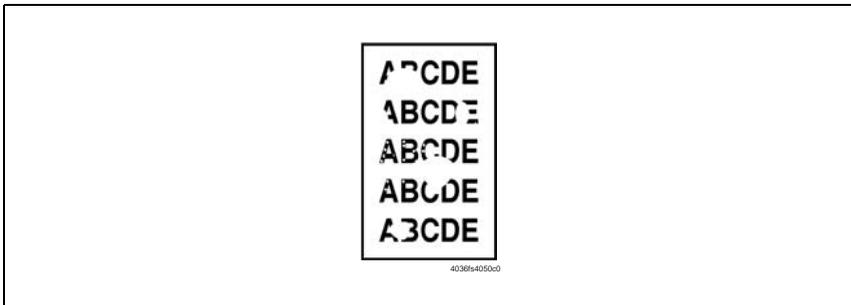
Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Transfer Roller	Transfer Roller is dented or scratched.	YES	Change Transfer Roller Unit.
2	Imaging Unit	Photo Conductor is dirty.	YES	Change Photo Conductor Unit.
3	Fusing Unit	Fusing Rollers are dirty or scratched.	YES	Change Fusing Unit.
4	PH Unit	Window glass of the PH Unit is dirty.	YES	Clean.
5	-	The problem has been eliminated after performing step 4.	NO	Change Photo Conductor Unit. Change Developing Unit. Change Mechanical Control Board.

bizhub 200/250/350

Troubleshooting

**21.3.14 Printer System: Void areas**

**A. Typical Faulty Images**

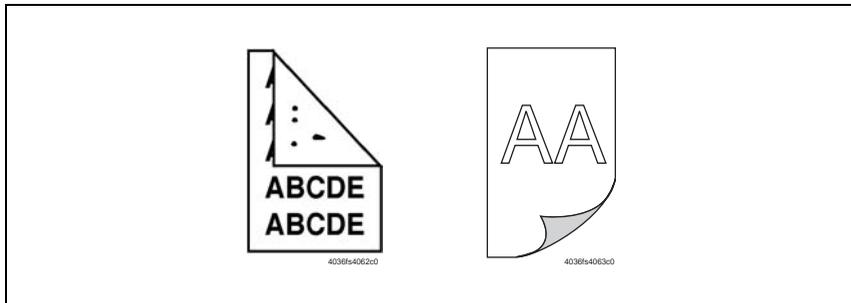


**B. Troubleshooting Procedure**

Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Imaging Unit	Photo Conductor is dirty.	YES	Change Photo Conductor Unit.
2	Transfer Roller	Transfer Roller is dented or scratched.	NO	Change Transfer Roller Unit.
3	Fusing Unit	Fusing Rollers are scratched or deformed.	YES	Change Fusing Unit.
4	-	The problem has been eliminated after performing step 3.	NO	Change Photo Conductor Unit. Change Developing Unit. Change Mechanical Control Board.

**21.3.15 Printer System: Smears on back of paper**

**A. Typical Faulty Images**



**B. Troubleshooting Procedure**

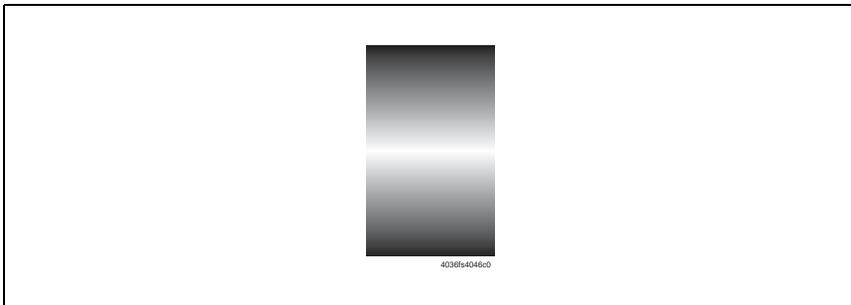
Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Paper Path	Toner is on the paper path.	YES	Clean.
2	Transfer Roller	Transfer Roller is dirty.	YES	Change Transfer Roller Unit.
3	Fusing Unit	Fusing Roller is dirty.	YES	Change Fusing Unit.

bizhub 200/250/350

Troubleshooting

**21.3.16 Printer System: Uneven image density**

**A. Typical Faulty Images**

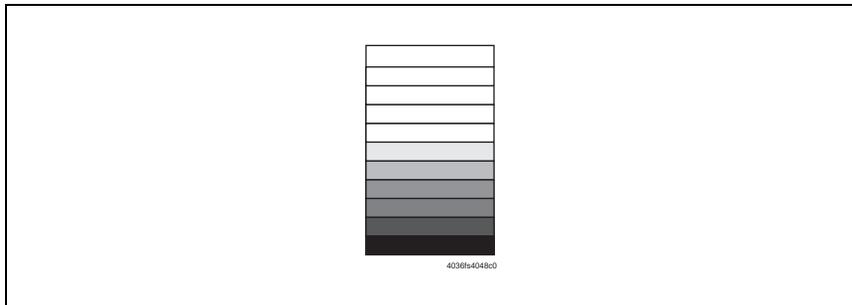


**B. Troubleshooting Procedure**

Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Transfer Roller	Transfer Roller is dirty or deformed.	YES	Change Transfer Roller Unit.
2	-	The problem has been eliminated after performing step 1.	NO	Change Photo Conductor Unit. Change Developing Unit. Change Mechanical Control Board.

**21.3.17 Printer System: Gradation reproduction failure**

**A. Typical Faulty Images**



**B. Troubleshooting Procedure**

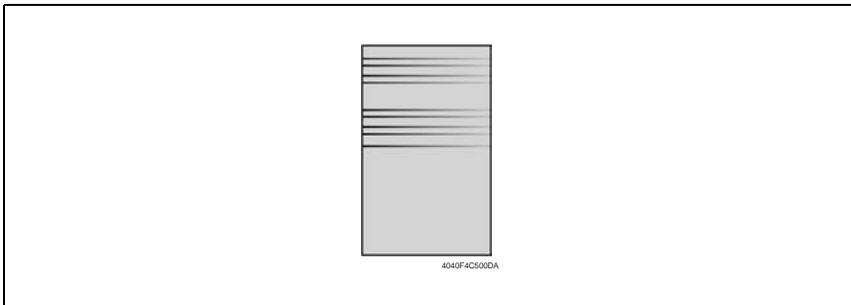
Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Transfer Roller	Transfer Roller is dirty or deformed.	YES	Change Transfer Roller Unit.
2	-	The problem has been eliminated after performing step 1.	NO	Change Photo Conductor Unit. Change Developing Unit. Change Mechanical Control Board.

bizhub 200/250/350

Troubleshooting

**21.3.18 Printer System: Uneven pitch**

**A. Typical Faulty Images**



**B. Troubleshooting Procedure**

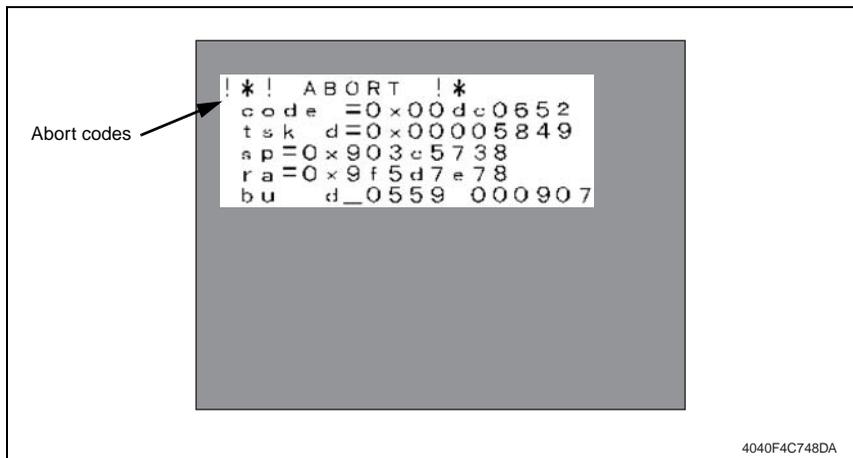
Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Imaging Unit	Developing Unit drive is being transmitted.	NO	Correct or change drive coupling mechanism.
2	Developing Section	Photo Conductor and Transfer Roller drive is being transmitted.	NO	Correct or change drive coupling mechanism.
3	Transport Section	Synchronizing Rollers Unit drive is being transmitted.	NO	Correct or change drive coupling mechanism.
4	Fusing Section	Fusing Unit drive is being transmitted.	NO	Correct or change drive coupling mechanism.
5	Imaging Unit	Ds Collar is dirty.	YES	Clean.
6	PH Unit	PH Unit is securely installed.	YES	Correct.
7	-	The problem has been eliminated after performing step 6.	NO	Change Photo Conductor Unit. Change Developing Unit. Change Mechanical Control Board.

bizhub 200/250/350

Troubleshooting

## 22. Abort codes

- The copier displays an abort code on the Touch Panel as it becomes unable to process tasks properly through its software control.



### 22.1 List of Abort Codes

- When the system program is aborted, the copier attempts to restart it automatically. If it fails to restart the program, check the electrical component, unit, option, and connection relating to the specific type of the abort condition.

Description	Code	Relevant Electrical Components, Units, and Options
OS processing system failure	0x00000000 to 0x000fffff	MFBS Board
Device control system failure	0x00100000 to 0x001fffff	MFBS Board, FAX Board, Memory Board*, FS-508, JS-502, MT-501, SD-502
Copy control system failure	0x00200000 to 0x002fffff	MFBS Board
Operation system failure	0x00300000 to 0x003fffff	MFBS Board, Touch Panel, Panel Board
Conversion processing system failure	0x00500000 to 0x005fffff	MFBS Board
Encoding processing system failure	0x00600000 to 0x006fffff	MFBS Board, Memory Board*
File control system failure	0x00700000 to 0x007fffff	MFBS Board, Memory Board*
G3 protocol processing system failure	0x00800000 to 0x008fffff	MFBS Board, FAX Board, Memory Board*
G3 device control system failure	0x00900000 to 0x009fffff	MFBS Board, FAX Board, Memory Board*
Scanner control system failure	0x00c00000 to 0x00c0ffff	MFBS Board, BCRS Board, Inverter Board, DF-605
Scanner control system failure	0x00c10000 to 0x00c2ffff	MFBS Board, BCRS Board, Inverter Board, DF-605

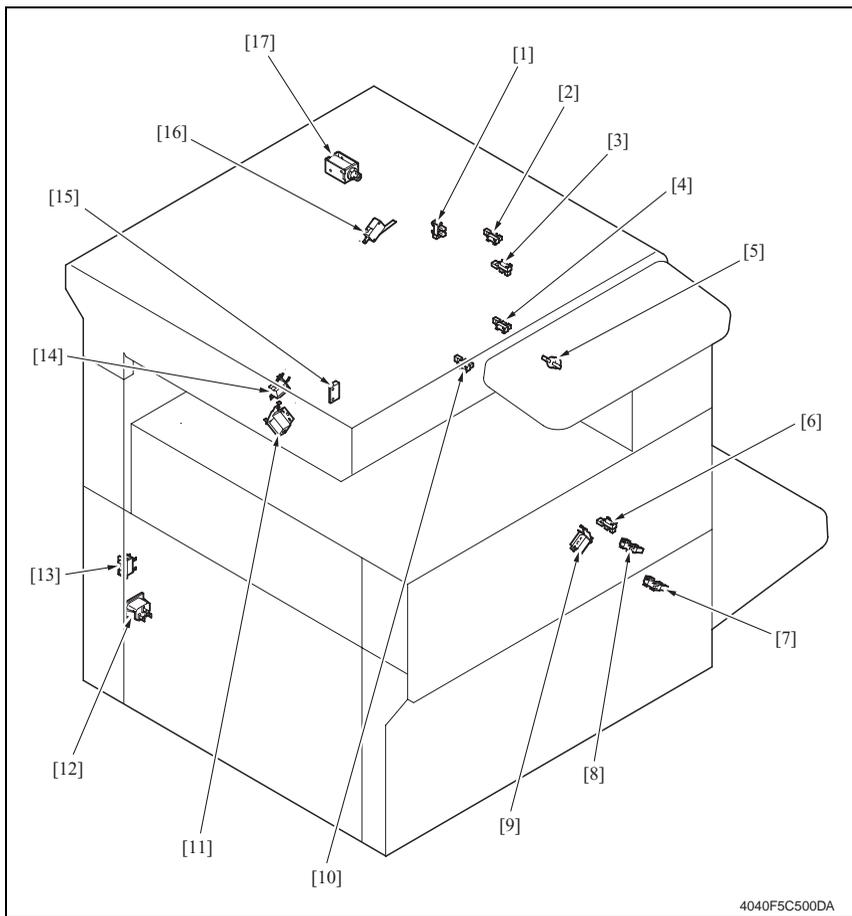
Description	Code	Relevant Electrical Components, Units, and Options
Scanner control system failure	0x00c30000 to 0x00c4ffff	MFBS Board, BCRS Board, Inverter Board, DF-605
Scanner control system failure	0x00c50000 to 0x00c5ffff	MFBS Board, BCRS Board, Inverter Board, DF-605
Scanner device control system failure	0x00d00000 to 0x00d3ffff	MFBS Board, BCRS Board, Inverter Board
Scanner device control system failure	0x00d80000 to 0x00dbffff	MFBS Board, BCRS Board, Inverter Board, DF-605
Scanner device control system failure	0x00dc0000 to 0x00dffff	MFBS Board, Scanner Home Sensor, Scanner drive system, BCRS Board
Printer sequence system failure	0x00e00000 to 0x00e000ff	MFBS Board, Memory Board*
Printer sequence system failure	0x00e00100 to 0x00e001ff	MFBS Board, Memory Board*
Printer sequence system failure	0x00e00200 to 0x00e002ff	MFBS Board, Memory Board*
Printer sequence system failure	0x00e00300 to 0x00e003ff	MFBS Board, Memory Board*
Printer sequence system failure	0x00e00400 to 0x00e004ff	MFBS Board, Memory Board*
Printer system failure	0x00f00000 to 0x00f0ffff	MFBS Board, Memory Board*
EP-NET sequence system failure (U.S.A. and Canada only)	0x00f10000 to 0x00f1ffff	MFBS Board
Counter sequence system failure	0x00f20000 to 0x00f2ffff	MFBS Board
Other failures	0x01100000 to 0x011000ff	MFBS Board
Copy sequence system failure	0x01100100 to 0x011001ff	MFBS Board
Function sequence system failure	0x01100400 to 0x011004ff	MFBS Board
OS message processing system failure	0x02000000 to 0x020ffff	MFBS Board, Memory Board*
Network processing system failure	0x03000000 to 0x030ffff	MFBS Board, Memory Board*

\*: Attached to Network Scan Kit, Internet Fax & Network Scan Kit and Printer Controller, Expansion Memory.

# Appendix

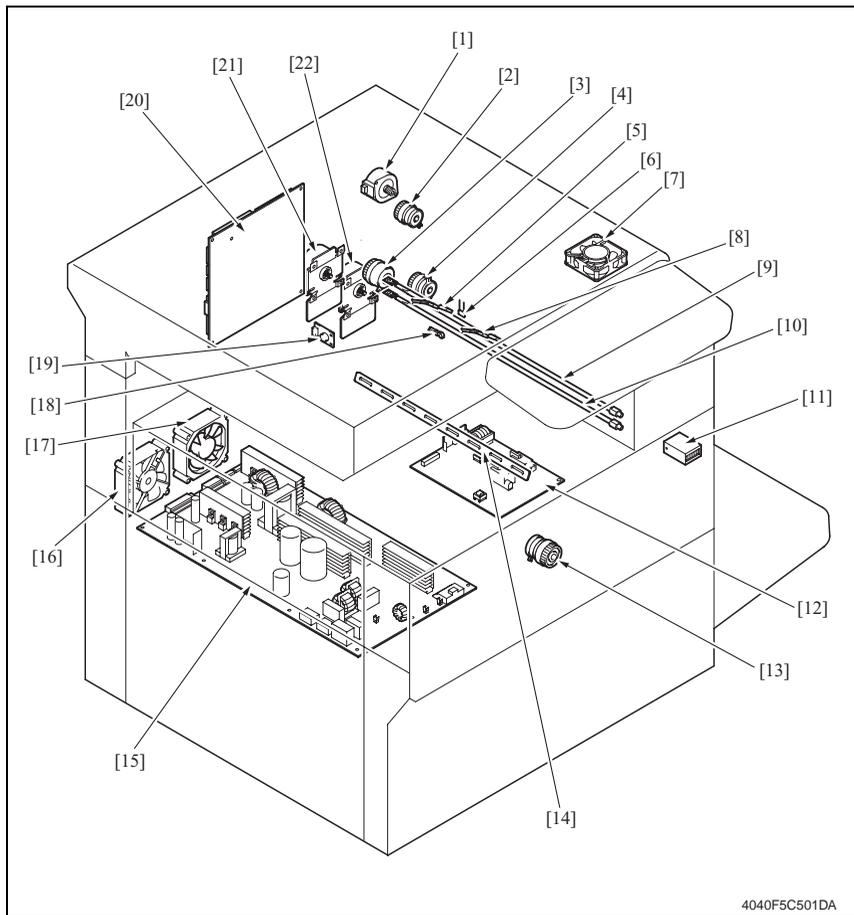
## 23. Parts layout drawing

### 23.1 Main unit



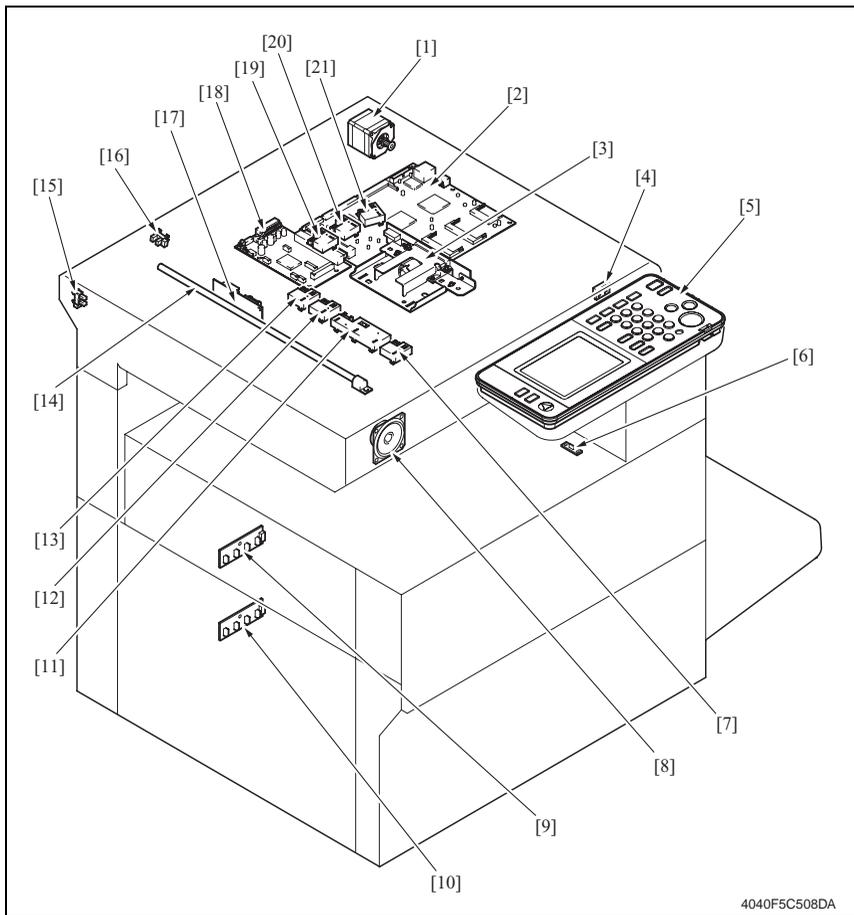
4040F5C500DA

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| [1] Duplex Unit Door Sensor (PC23)            | [10] Duplex Unit Lower Transport Sensor (PC25) |
| [2] Switch Back Unit Sensor (PC26)            | [11] Sub Hopper Solenoid (SL1)                 |
| [3] Duplex Unit Upper Transport Sensor (PC24) | [12] AC Power Source                           |
| [4] Paper Exit Sensor (PC4)                   | [13] Main Power Switch (S1)                    |
| [5] Fusing Roller Thermostat (TS1)            | [14] Main Hopper Solenoid (SL2)                |
| [6] Bypass Lift Sensor (PC29)                 | [15] Sub Hopper Empty Switch (S4)              |
| [7] Right Lower Door Sensor (PC3)             | [16] Right Side Door Interlock Switch 1 (S2)   |
| [8] Bypass Paper Empty Sensor (PC18)          | [17] Switchback Solenoid (SL4)                 |
| [9] Bypass Pick-Up Solenoid (SL3)             |  |



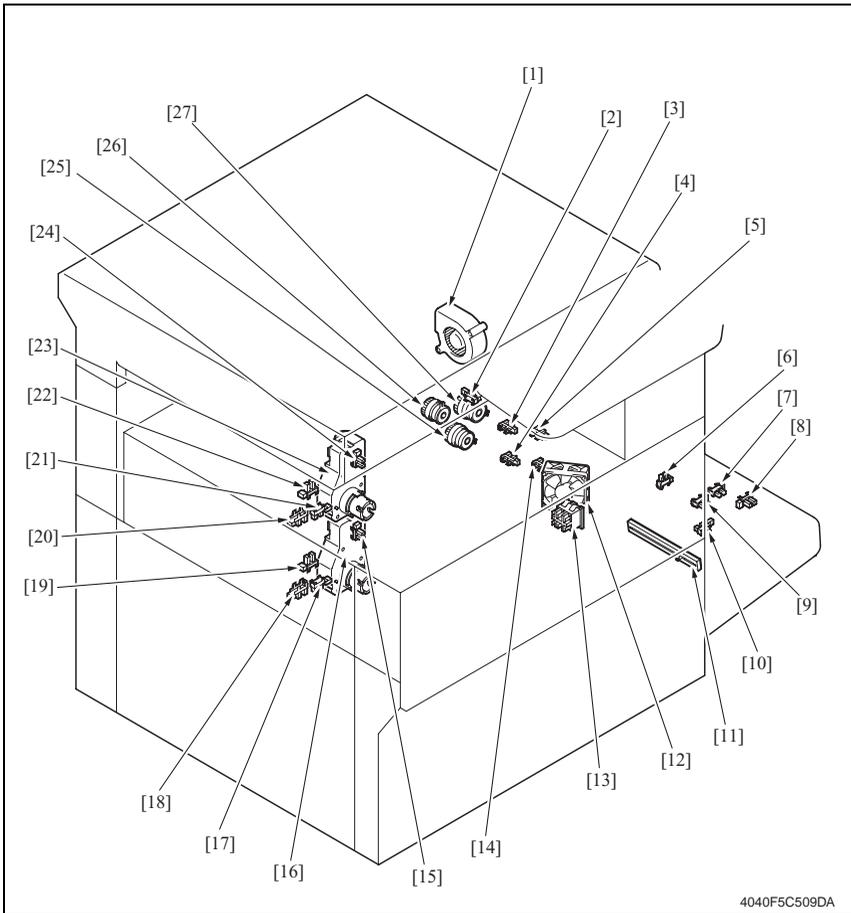
4040F5C501DA

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| [1] Switchback Motor (M3)                | [12] High Voltage Unit (HV1)             |
| [2] Duplex Unit Transport Clutch 1 (CL6) | [13] Bypass Paper Feed Clutch (CL5)      |
| [3] Synchronizing Roller Clutch (CL1)    | [14] Erase Lamp (LA1)                    |
| [4] Duplex Unit Transport Clutch 2 (CL7) | [15] Power Supply Unit (PU1)             |
| [5] Fusing Roller Sub Thermistor (TH2)   | [16] Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor (M4) |
| [6] High Voltage Register (R2)           | [17] Toner Suction Fan Motor (M11)       |
| [7] Fusing Unit Cooling Fan Motor (M10)  | [18] Drum Thermistor (TH4)               |
| [8] Fusing Roller Thermistor (TH1)       | [19] Temperature/humidity Sensor (TH3)   |
| [9] Fusing Roller Sub Heater Lamp (H2)   | [20] Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A)    |
| [10] Fusing Roller Heater Lamp (H1)      | [21] Main Motor (M1)                     |
| [11] Total Counter (CNT1)                | [22] IU Motor (M2)                       |



4040F5C508DA

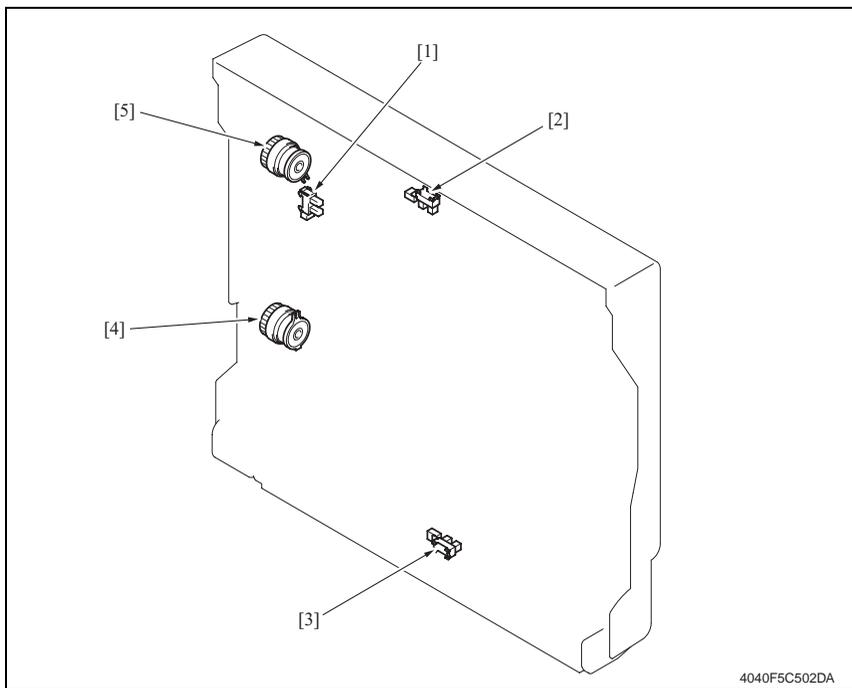
- |   |  |
|---|--|
| [1] Scanner Motor (M12)                     | [12] Original Size Sensor 1 (PC201)          |
| [2] MFBS Board (MFBS)                       | [13] Original Size Sensor 7 (PC207)          |
| [3] CCD Board (CCD)                         | [14] Exposure Lamp (LA2)                     |
| [4] Size Reset Switch (SW201)               | [15] Scanner Home Sensor (PC208)             |
| [5] Control Panel (UN1)                     | [16] Original Cover Angle Sensor (PC209)     |
| [6] Pre-Transfer Guide Plate Register (R3)  | [17] Inverter Board (INV)                    |
| [7] Original Size Sensor 3 (PC203) (Option) | [18] BCRS Board (BCRS)                       |
| [8] Speaker (SP1)                           | [19] Original Size Sensor 4 (PC204)          |
| [9] FD Paper Size Board 1 (PWB-I1)          | [20] Original Size Sensor 5 (PC205) (Option) |
| [10] FD Paper Size Board 2 (PWB-I2)         | [21] Original Size Sensor 6 (PC206) (Option) |
| [11] Original Size Sensor 2 (PC202)         |  |



4040F5C509DA

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| [1] Cooling Fan Motor (M5)                   | [15] Tray2 Paper Near-Empty Sensor (PC14) |
| [2] Synchronizing Roller Sensor (PC1)        | [16] Tray2 Paper Lift Motor (M8)          |
| [3] Tray1 Paper Lift Sensor (PC6)            | [17] Tray2 CD Paper Size Sensor 2 (PC16)  |
| [4] Tray2 Paper Lift Sensor (PC12)           | [18] Tray2 CD Paper Size Sensor 1 (PC17)  |
| [5] Tray1 Paper Empty Sensor (PC9)           | [19] Tray2 Set Sensor (PC13)              |
| [6] Front Door Sensor (PC5)                  | [20] Tray1 CD Paper Size Sensor 1 (PC11)  |
| [7] Bypass FD Paper Size Sensor/4 (PC22)     | [21] Tray1 CD Paper Size Sensor 2 (PC10)  |
| [8] Bypass FD Paper Size Sensor/2 (PC20)     | [22] Tray1 Set Sensor (PC7)               |
| [9] Bypass FD Paper Size Sensor/3 (PC21)     | [23] Tray1 Paper Lift Motor (M7)          |
| [10] Bypass FD Paper Size Sensor/1 (PC19)    | [24] Tray1 Paper Near-Empty Sensor (PC8)  |
| [11] Bypass Paper Size Detection Unit (VR1)  | [25] 2nd Drawer Paper Feed Clutch (CL4)   |
| [12] IU Cooling Fan Motor (M6)               | [26] 1st Drawer Paper Feed Clutch (CL3)   |
| [13] Right Side Door Interlock Switch 2 (S3) | [27] Vertical Conveyance Clutch (CL2)     |
| [14] Tray2 Paper Empty Sensor (PC15)         |   |

### 23.2 Duplex Unit

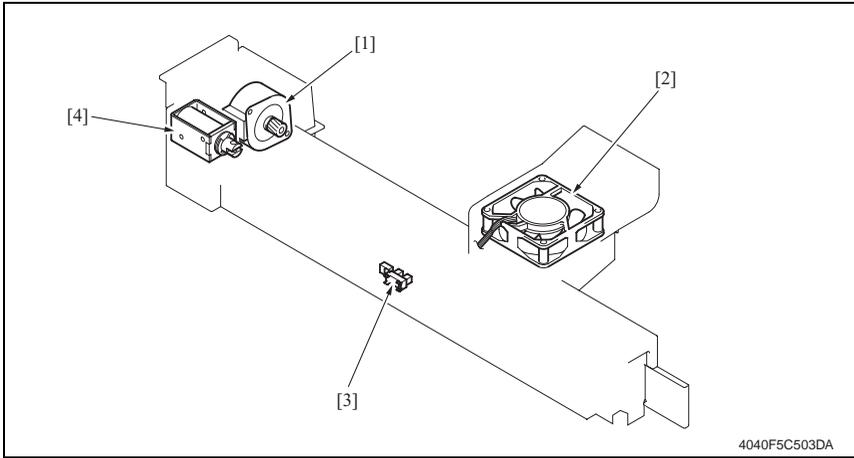


- [1] Duplex Unit Door Sensor (PC23)
- [2] Duplex Unit Upper Transport Sensor (PC24)
- [3] Duplex Unit Lower Transport Sensor (PC25)
- [4] Duplex Unit Transport Clutch 2 (CL7)
- [5] Duplex Unit Transport Clutch 1 (CL6)

bizhub 200/250/350

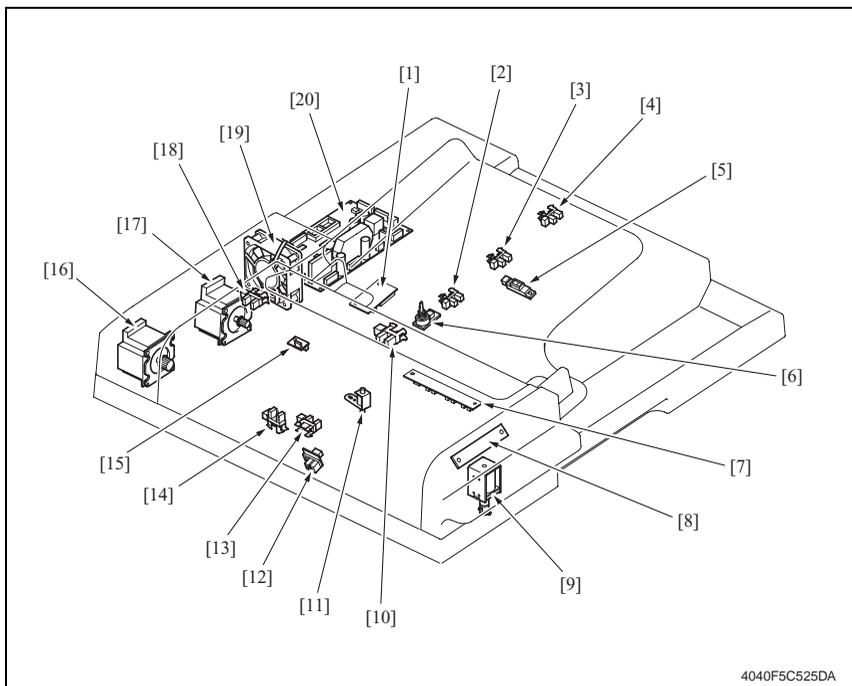
Appendix

### 23.3 Switch Back Unit



- [1] Switchback Motor (M3)
- [2] Fusing Unit Cooling Fan Motor (M10)
- [3] Switch Back Unit Sensor (PC26)
- [4] Switchback Solenoid (SL4)

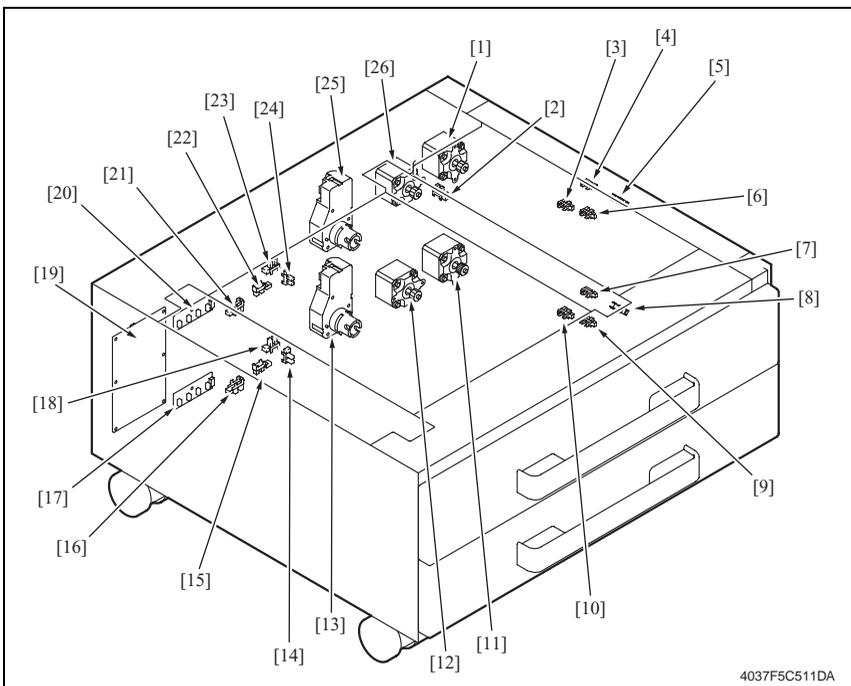
**23.4 DF-605**



4040F5C525DA

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| [1] Interface Board (PWA-TRAY)                   | [11] Stamp Solenoid (SL2-ADF)               |
| [2] FD Paper Size Detection Sensor 1 (PC1-ADF)   | [12] Original Detection Sensor (PC8-ADF)    |
| [3] FD Paper Size Detection Sensor 3 (PC3-ADF)   | [13] Exit/Turnover Sensor (PC10-ADF)        |
| [4] FD Paper Size Detection Sensor 4 (PC4-ADF)   | [14] Registration Sensor (PC9-ADF)          |
| [5] FD Paper Size Detection Sensor 2 (PC2-ADF)   | [15] Separator Sensor (PC6-ADF)             |
| [6] Variable Resistor (PBA-VR)                   | [16] Transport Motor (M2-ADF)               |
| [7] Mix Document Size Detection Board (PBA-SIZE) | [17] Paper Feed Motor (M1-ADF)              |
| [8] Print Lamp Board (PBA-LED)                   | [18] Upper Door Open/Close Sensor (PC7-ADF) |
| [9] Exit Roller Retraction Solenoid (SL1-ADF)    | [19] Cooling Fan Motor (M3-ADF)             |
| [10] Empty Sensor (PC5-ADF)                      | [20] Main Control Board (PBA-CONT)          |

**23.5 PC-102/PC-202 (Option)**



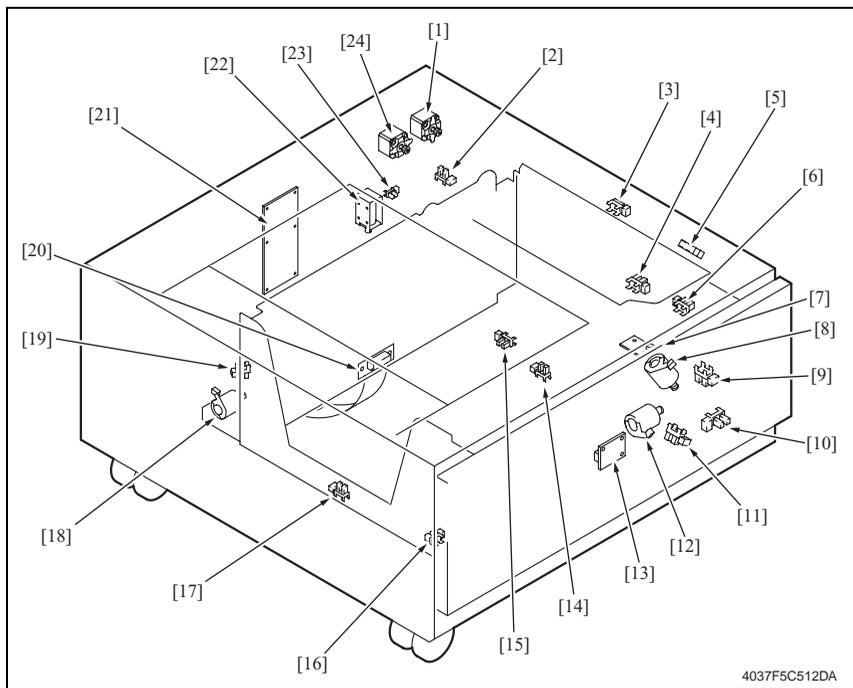
4037F5C511DA

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| [1] Tray3 Vertical Conveyance Motor (M120-PF)   | [14] Tray4 Paper Near-Empty Sensor (PC122-PF)        |
| [2] Door Sensor (PC111-PF)                      | [15] Tray4 CD Paper Size Sensor 2 (PC128-PF)         |
| [3] Tray3 Lift Sensor (PC114-PF)                | [16] Tray4 CD Paper Size Sensor 1 (PC127-PF)         |
| [4] Tray3 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC117-PF) | [17] Tray4 FD Paper Size Detection Board (PWB-I4 PF) |
| [5] Tray3 Paper Take-Up Sensor (PC116-PF)       | [18] Tray4 Set Sensor (PC121-PF)                     |
| [6] Tray3 Paper Empty Sensor (PC115-PF)         | [19] Main Control Board (PWB-C2 PF)                  |
| [7] Tray4 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC126-PF) | [20] Tray3 FD Paper Size Detection Board (PWB-I3 PF) |
| [8] Tray4 Paper Take-Up Sensor (PC125-PF)       | [21] Tray3 CD Paper Size Sensor 1 (PC118-PF)         |
| [9] Tray4 Paper Empty Sensor (PC124-PF)         | [22] Tray3 CD Paper Size Sensor 2 (PC119-PF)         |
| [10] Tray4 Lift Sensor (PC123-PF)               | [23] Tray3 Set Sensor (PC112-PF)                     |
| [11] Tray4 Vertical Conveyance Motor (M121-PF)  | [24] Tray3 Paper Near-Empty Sensor (PC113-PF)        |
| [12] Tray4 Paper Feed Motor (M123-PF)           | [25] Tray3 Lift Motor (M124-PF)                      |
| [13] Tray4 Lift Motor (M125-PF)                 | [26] Tray3 Paper Feed Motor (M122-PF)                |

bizhub 200/250/350

Appendix

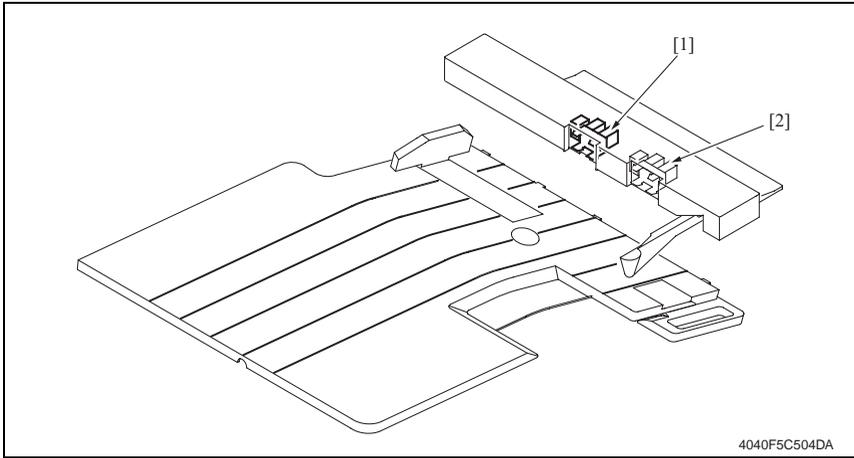
### 23.6 PC-402 (Option)



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| [1] Vertical Conveyance Motor (M2-LCT)     | [13] Paper Descent Key (UN1-LCT)                |
| [2] Right Lower Door Sensor (PC5-LCT)      | [14] Shifter Return Position Sensor (PC11-LCT)  |
| [3] Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2-LCT)   | [15] Tray Lower Position Sensor (PC13-LCT)      |
| [4] Tray Upper Limit Sensor (PC4-LCT)      | [16] Shifter Tray Paper Empty Sensor (PC9-LCT)  |
| [5] Paper Feed Sensor (PC1-LCT)            | [17] Shifter Home Position Sensor (PC12-LCT)    |
| [6] Upper Paper Empty Sensor (PC3-LCT)     | [18] Shift Gate Motor (M3-LCT)                  |
| [7] Paper Empty Board (PWB-E LCT)          | [19] Shift Gate Home Position Sensor (PC14-LCT) |
| [8] Elevator Motor (M5-LCT)                | [20] Interface Board (PWB-H LCT)                |
| [9] Elevator Motor Pulse Sensor (PC10-LCT) | [21] Main Control Board (PWB-C1 LCT)            |
| [10] Lower Limit Sensor (PC7-LCT)          | [22] Tray Lock Solenoid (SL1-LCT)               |
| [11] Shift Motor Pulse Sensor (PC8-LCT)    | [23] Tray Set Sensor (PC6-LCT)                  |
| [12] Shift Motor (M4-LCT)                  | [24] Paper Feed Motor (M1-LCT)                  |

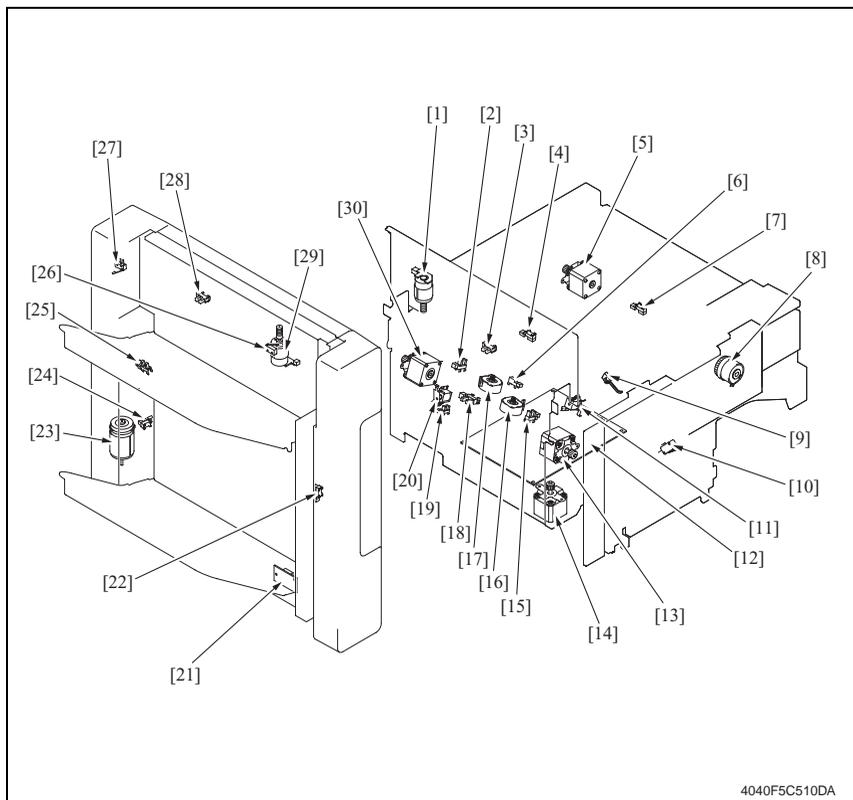
4037F5C512DA

### 23.7 JS-502 (Option)



- [1] Paper Full Detection Sensor (PC1-JOB)
- [2] —

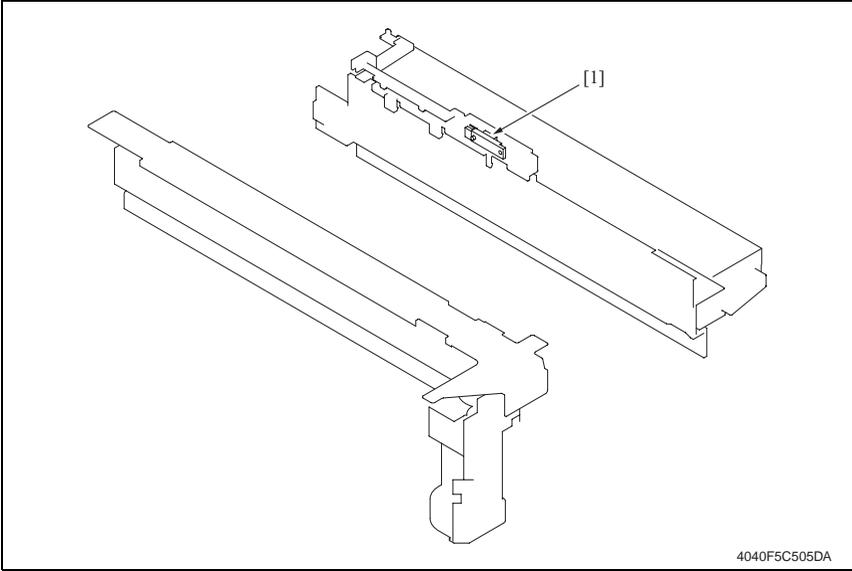
### 23.8 FS-508 (Option)



4040F5C510DA

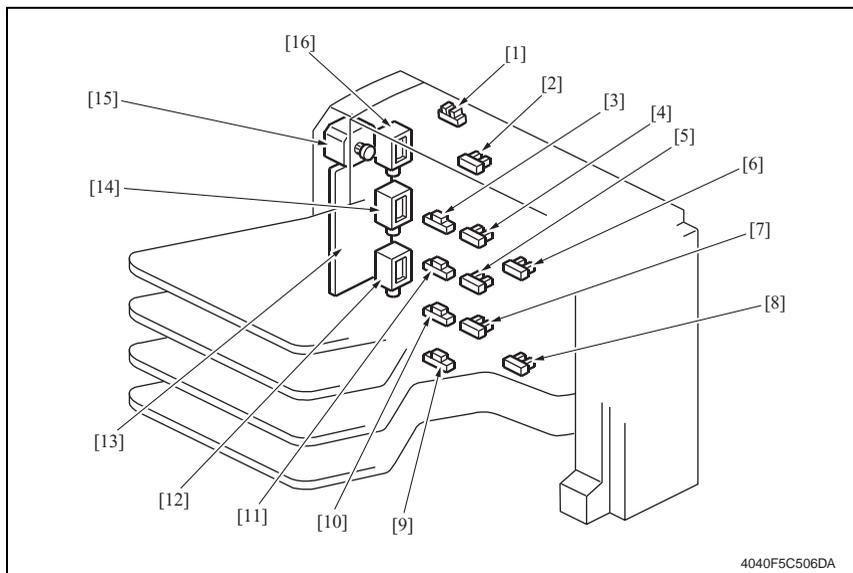
- |  |   |
|--|---|
| [1] Exit Open/Close Motor (M6-FN)              | [16] Alignment Motor 2 (M5-FN)                      |
| [2] Alignment Home Position Sensor 1 (PC6-FN)  | [17] Alignment Motor 1 (M4-FN)                      |
| [3] Exit Roller Home Position Sensor (PC12-FN) | [18] Exit Paddle Home Position Sensor (PC11-FN)     |
| [4] Transport Sensor (PC5-FN)                  | [19] Staple Home Position Sensor (PC10-FN)          |
| [5] Entrance Motor (M3-FN)                     | [20] Exit Paddle Solenoid (SL2-FN)                  |
| [6] Storage Tray Detecting Sensor (PC8-FN)     | [21] Elevator Board (PWB-B FN)                      |
| [7] Entrance Sensor (PC4-FN)                   | [22] Elevator Tray Home Position Sensor (PC3-FN)    |
| [8] Registration Clutch (CL1-FN)               | [23] Elevator Motor (M11-FN)                        |
| [9] Transport Jam Detection Switch (S4-FN)     | [24] Elevator Tray Lower Limit Sensor (PC14-FN)     |
| [10] Front Cover Detection Switch (S1-FN)      | [25] Top Face Detection Sensor (PC15-FN)            |
| [11] Storage Paddle Solenoid (SL1-FN)          | [26] Shutter Detection Switch (S2-FN)               |
| [12] Main Control Board (PWB-A FN)             | [27] Elevator Tray Upper/Lower Limit Switch (S3-FN) |
| [13] Exit Motor (M1-FN)                        | [28] Shutter Home Position Sensor (PC16-FN)         |
| [14] Stapling Unit Moving Motor (M7-FN)        | [29] Shutter Opening Motor (M12-FN)                 |
| [15] Alignment Home Position Sensor 2 (PC7-FN) | [30] Transport Motor (M2-FN)                        |

### 23.9 PU-501 (Option)



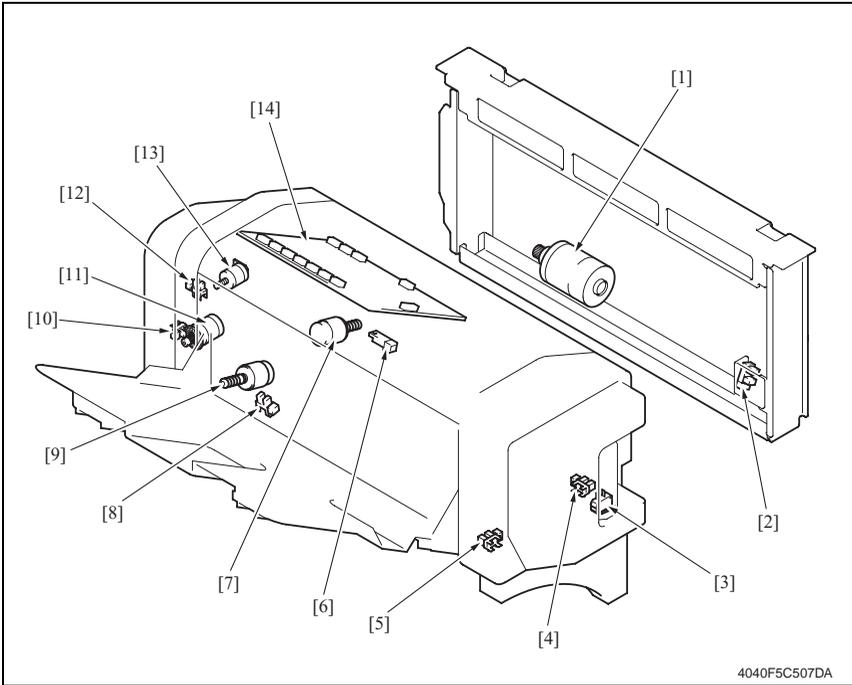
[1] Punch Trash Full (PC1-PK)

### 23.10 MT-501 (Option)



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| [1] Cover Open/Close Sensor (PC11-MK)      | [9] Paper Detection Sensor 1 (PC1-MK)           |
| [2] Paper Full Detection Sensor 4 (PC8-MK) | [10] Paper Detection Sensor 2 (PC2-MK)          |
| [3] Paper Detection Sensor 4 (PC4-MK)      | [11] Paper Detection Sensor 3 (PC3-MK)          |
| [4] Paper Full Detection Sensor 3 (PC7-MK) | [12] Bin Entrance Switching Solenoid 1 (SL1-MK) |
| [5] Paper Full Detection Sensor 2 (PC6-MK) | [13] Main Control Board (PWB-A MK)              |
| [6] Upper Transport Sensor (PC9-MK)        | [14] Bin Entrance Switching Solenoid 2 (SL2-MK) |
| [7] Paper Full Detection Sensor 1 (PC5-MK) | [15] Transport Motor (M1-MK)                    |
| [8] Lower Transport Sensor (PC10-MK)       | [16] Bin Entrance Switching Solenoid 3 (SL3-MK) |

**23.11 SD-502 (Option)**



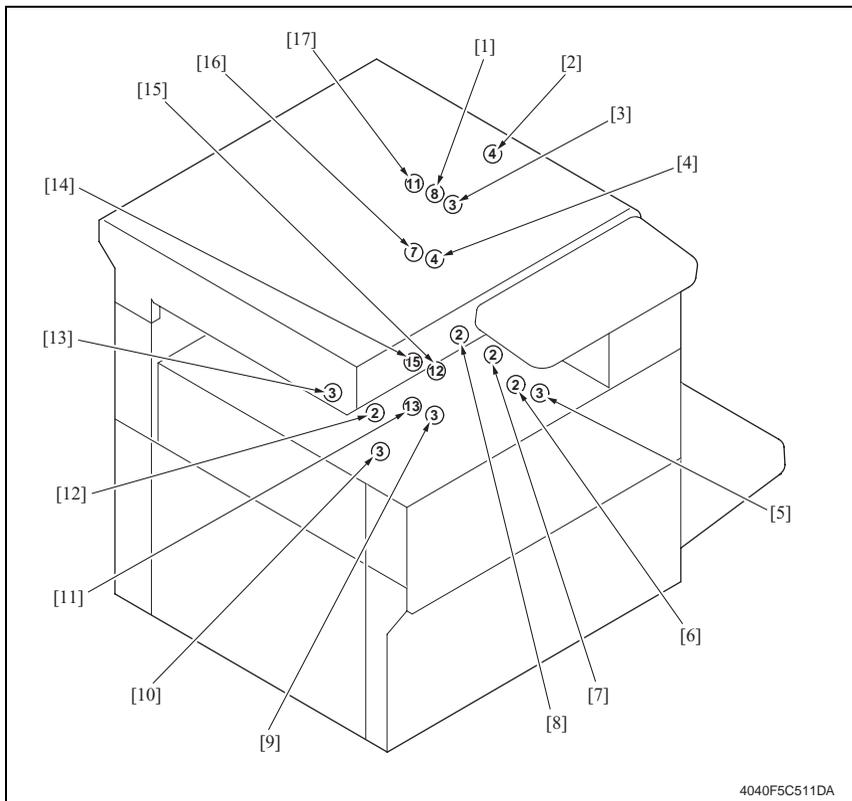
4040F5C507DA

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| [1] Crease Motor (M10-SK)                        | [8] Saddle Tray Empty Sensor (PC21-SK)                 |
| [2] Crease Roller Home Position Sensor (PC22-SK) | [9] In & Out Guide Motor (M13-SK)                      |
| [3] Saddle Interlock Switch (S4-SK)              | [10] Transport Pulse Sensor (PC25-SK)                  |
| [4] Layable Guide Home Sensor (PC26-SK)          | [11] Saddle Exit Motor (M8-SK)                         |
| [5] In & Out Guide Home Sensor (PC23-SK)         | [12] Saddle Exit Roller Home Position Sensor (PC18-SK) |
| [6] Saddle Exit Sensor (PC20-SK)                 | [13] Saddle Exit Open/Close Motor (M9-SK)              |
| [7] Layable Guide Motor (M14-SK)                 | [14] Main Control Board (PWB-C SK)                     |

# 24. Connector layout drawing

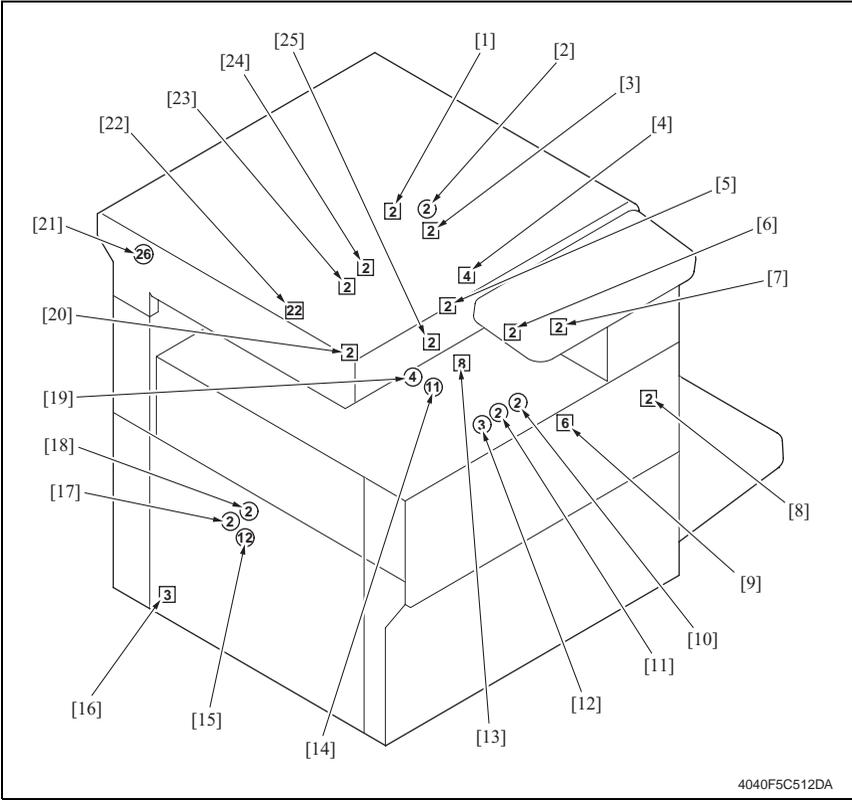
**Description**

Number of Pin → ① Possible to confirm by removing external cover.  
 → [1] Not possible to confirm by removing external cover.



4040F5C511DA

No.	CN No.	Location	No.	CN No.	Location
[1]	CN13	L-18 to 19	[10]	CN2	F-14
[2]	CN25	F-15	[11]	CN31	K-13
[3]	CN44	L-11	[12]	CN5	U-17
[4]	CN81	M-12	[13]	CN43	F-16
[5]	CN42	L-8	[14]	CN12	K-15 to 16
[6]	CN45	L-9	[15]	CN28	F-6
[7]	CN82	L-8	[16]	CN17	L-12
[8]	CN4	T-17	[17]	CN14	L-5 to 6
[9]	CN30	L-9			



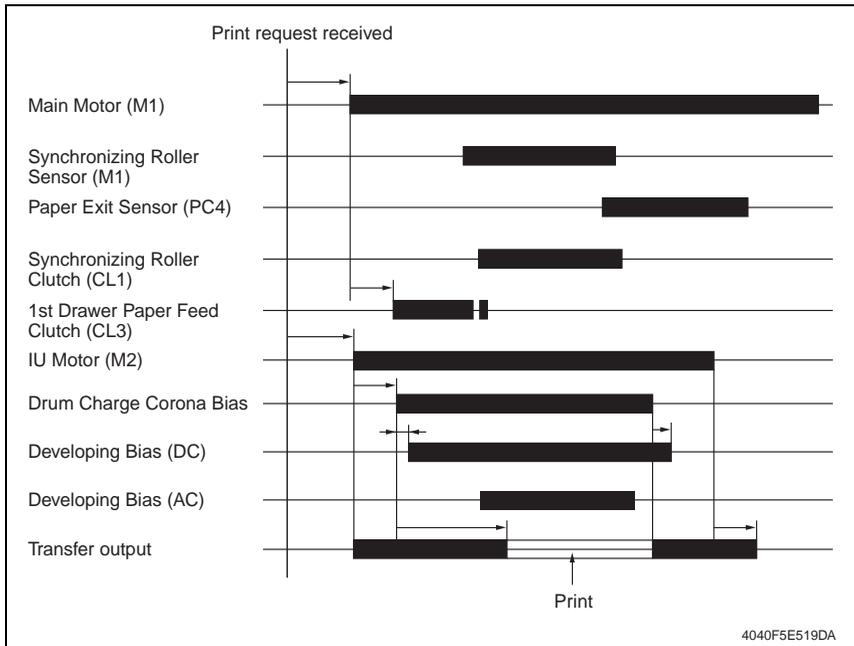
4040F5C512DA

No.	CN No.	Location	No.	CN No.	Location
[1]	CN53	F-15	[14]	CN32	L-10
[2]	CN55	M-5	[15]	CN18	L-7
[3]	CN50	L-15	[16]	CN1	V-22
[4]	CN80	M-12	[17]	CN20	F-8
[5]	CN51	L-14	[18]	CN19	L-6
[6]	CN46	E-10	[19]	CN27	F-10
[7]	CN48	E-10	[20]	CN52	E-11
[8]	CN24	F-15	[21]	CN10	D-2 to 3
[9]	CN26	F-16 to 17	[22]	CN11	D-12 to 13
[10]	CN49	M-11	[23]	CN70	E-11
[11]	CN54	M-13	[24]	CN23	E-11
[12]	CN71	M-13	[25]	CN47	F-7
[13]	CN15	F-14			

# 25. Timing chart

## 25.1 Main unit

A4 1-page printing, paper fed from Tray 1

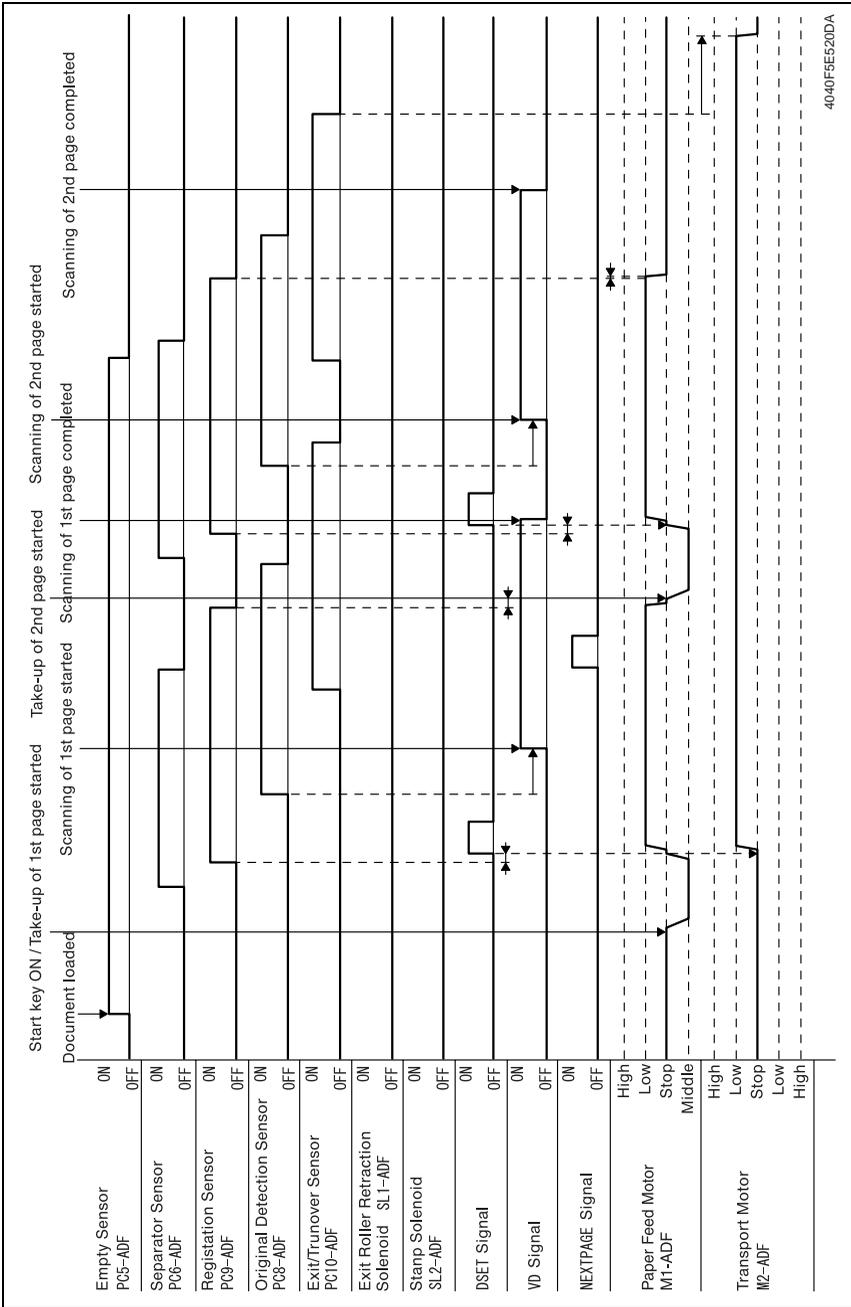


bizhub 200/250/350

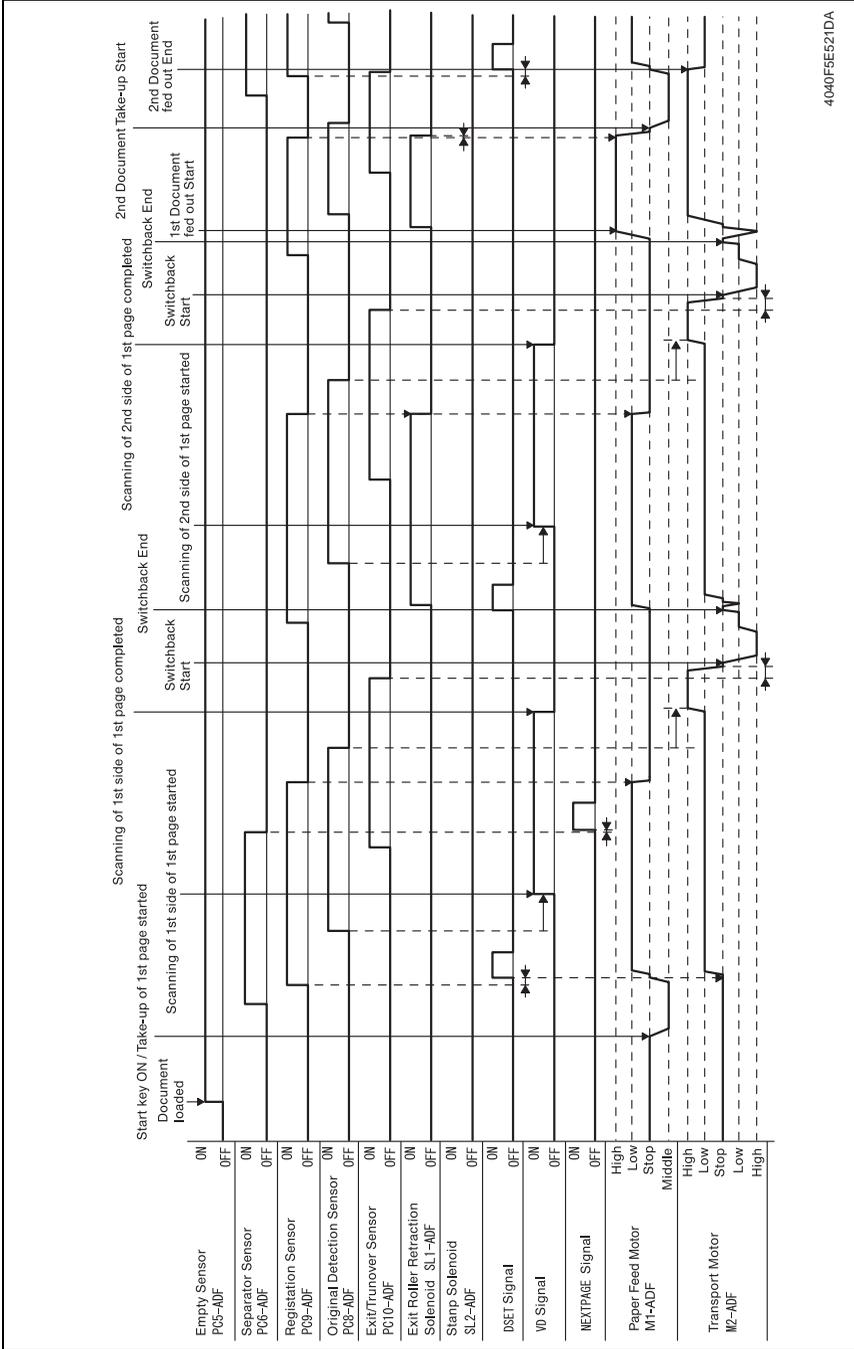
Appendix

## 25.2 DF-605

### 25.2.1 1-Sided Mode (A4 two sheets feeding)

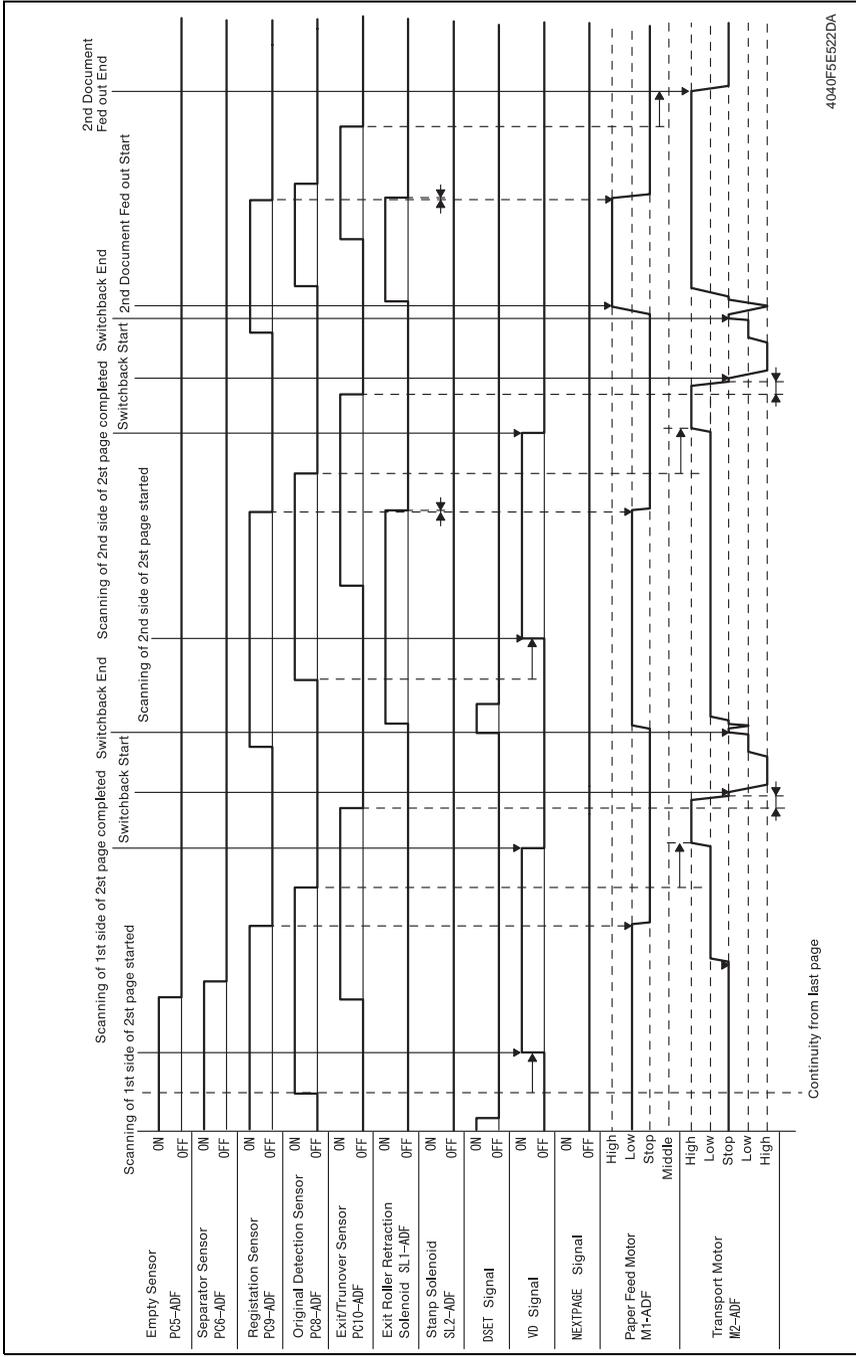


25.2.2 2-Sided Mode (A4 two sheets feeding)



bizhub 200/250/350

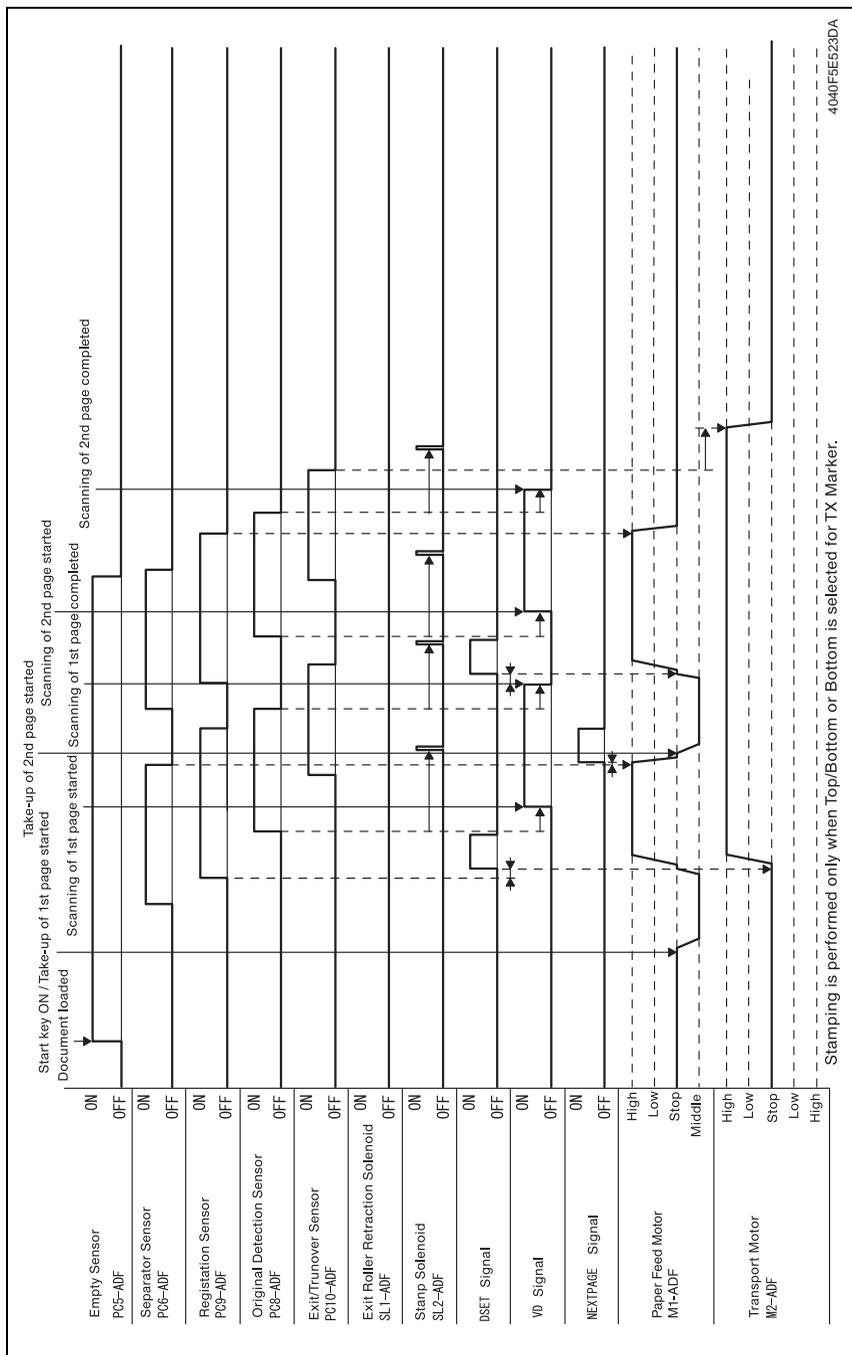
Appendix



Continuity from last page

4040F5E52DA

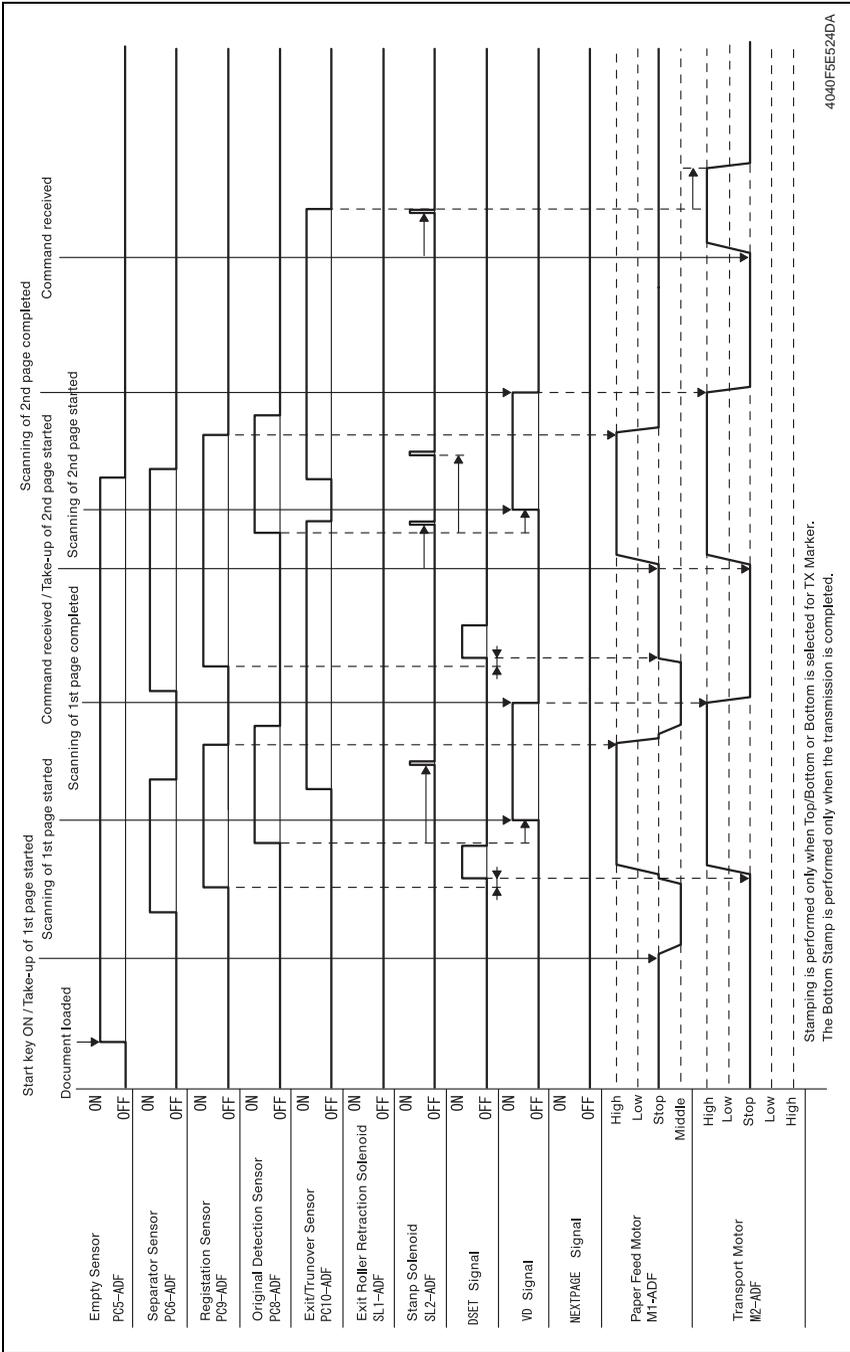
25.2.3 Fax Fine mode (A4 two sheets feeding)



bizhub 200/250/350

Appendix

25.2.4 Fax real-time transmission mode (A4 two sheets feeding)



Stamping is performed only when Top/Bottom or Bottom is selected for TX Marker.  
The Bottom Stamp is performed only when the transmission is completed.



KONICA MINOLTA

**SERVICE MANUAL**

**FIELD SERVICE**

---

# Duplex Unit/ Switchback Unit

# Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  to the left of the revised section.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.

## NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2005/08	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

# CONTENTS

## Duplex Unit/Switchback Unit

### General

1.	Product specifications .....	1
----	------------------------------	---

### Maintenance

2.	Other .....	3
2.1	Disassembly/Adjustment prohibited items .....	3
2.2	Disassembly/Assembly/Cleaning list .....	4
2.2.1	Disassembly/Assembly list .....	4
2.2.2	Cleaning parts list .....	4
2.3	Disassembly/Assembly procedure .....	4
2.3.1	Duplex Unit .....	4
2.3.2	Switch Back Unit .....	5
2.4	Cleaning procedure .....	5
2.4.1	Cleaning of the Duplex Unit Transport Roller/Roll 1 and 2 .....	5
2.4.2	Cleaning of the Duplex Unit Transport Roller/Roll 3 .....	5
2.4.3	Cleaning of the Duplex Unit Ventilation Section .....	6
2.4.4	Cleaning of the Switch Back Unit Transport Roller/Roll .....	6

### Adjustment/Setting

3.	How to use the adjustment section .....	7
4.	I/O Check .....	8
4.1	Check procedure .....	8
4.2	I/O check list .....	8
4.2.1	I/O check screen .....	8
4.2.2	I/O check list .....	8
5.	Adjustment .....	9
5.1	Adjusting the paper reference position .....	9

### Troubleshooting

6.	Jam Display .....	11
6.1	Misfeed display .....	11
6.1.1	Misfeed display resetting procedure .....	11
6.2	Sensor layout .....	12
6.3	Solution .....	13

6.3.1	Initial check items .....	13
6.3.2	Duplex Unit Take-Up Section Misfeed.....	13
6.3.3	Turnover Unit/Duplex Unit Transport Section Misfeed .....	14

Duplex Unit/  
Switchback Unit

General

Maintenance

Adjustment / Setting

Troubleshooting

# General

## 1. Product specifications

### A. Type

#### (1) Duplex Unit

Name	Duplex Unit
Type	Switchback and Circulating Duplex Unit
Installation	Mounted on the right side door of main unit
Document Alignment	Center

### B. Paper type

#### (1) Duplex Unit

Paper Type	Plain paper	56 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (15 to 24 lb)
Paper Size	A5R to A3, 5.5 x 8.5R to 12.25 x 18	

### C. Machine specifications

#### (1) Duplex Unit

Power Requirements	DC 24 V $\pm$ 10 % (supplied from the main unit)	
	DC 5 V $\pm$ 5 % (supplied from the main unit)	
Dimensions *1	89 mm (W) x 419 mm (D) x 358 mm (H) 3.5 inch (W) x 16.5 inch (D) x 14 inch (H)	
Weight *1	Approx. 2.2 kg (4.75 lb)	

\*1: Values given only for reference when the Duplex Unit is demounted from the machine, since it is standard on the machine

### D. Operating environment

- Conforms to the operating environment of the main unit.

### NOTE

- These specifications are subject to change without notice.

Duplex Unit/  
Switchback Unit

General

Blank Page

# Maintenance

## 2. Other

### 2.1 Disassembly/Adjustment prohibited items

#### A. Screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied

- Blue paint or green paint is applied to some screws to prevent them from coming loose.
- As a general rule, screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied should not be removed or loosened.

#### B. Red-painted screws

- Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.

#### C. Variable Resistors on Board

##### NOTE

- Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.

#### D. Removal of PWBs

##### CAUTION

- When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to “SAFETY AND IMPORTANT WARNING ITEMS” and follow the corresponding removal procedures.
- The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.
- Where it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.

## 2.2 Disassembly/Assembly/Cleaning list

### 2.2.1 Disassembly/Assembly list

No	Section	Part name	Ref. page
1	Exterior parts	Duplex Unit Right Cover	☞ 4
2		Switch Back Unit Fan Motor Cover	☞ 5
3		Switch Back Unit Right Cover	☞ 5

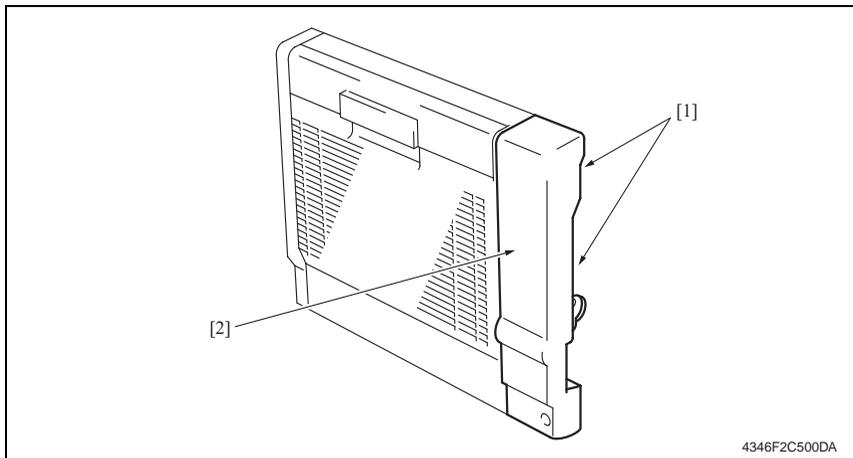
### 2.2.2 Cleaning parts list

No	Section	Part name	Ref. page
1	Transport section	Duplex Unit Transport Roller/Roll 1, 2	☞ 5
2		Duplex Unit Transport Roller/Roll 3	☞ 5
3		Switch Back Unit Transport Roller/Roll	☞ 6
4	Ventilation Section	Duplex Unit Ventilation Section	☞ 6

## 2.3 Disassembly/Assembly procedure

### 2.3.1 Duplex Unit

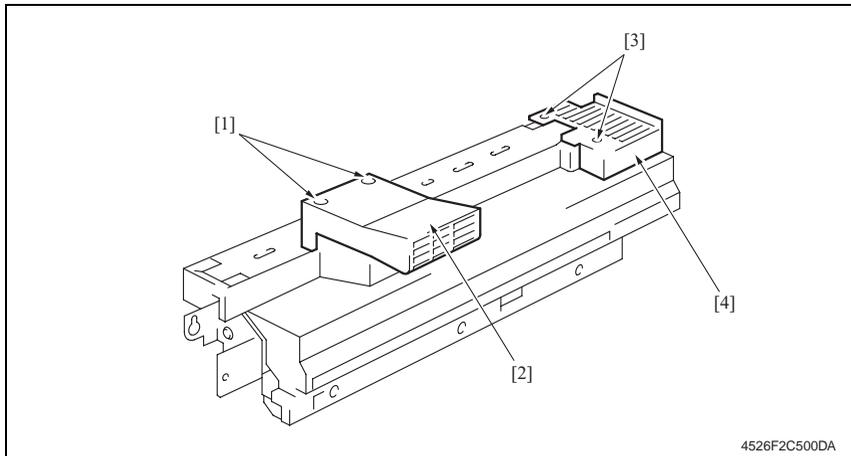
#### A. Right Cover



1. Remove two screws [1] and Right Cover [2].

### 2.3.2 Switch Back Unit

#### A. Fan Motor Cover/Right Cover



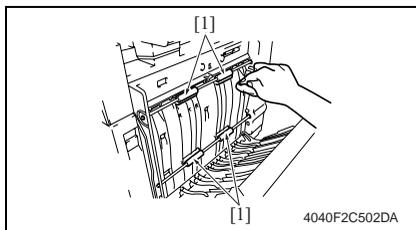
1. Remove two screws [1] and Fan Motor Cover [2].
2. Remove two screws [3] and Right Cover [4].

## 2.4 Cleaning procedure

### NOTE

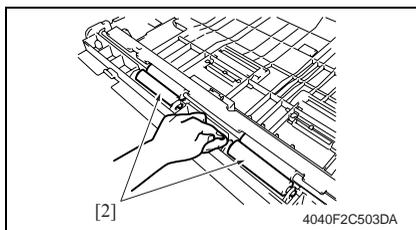
- The alcohol described in the cleaning procedure represents the isopropyl alcohol.

#### 2.4.1 Cleaning of the Duplex Unit Transport Roller/Roll 1 and 2



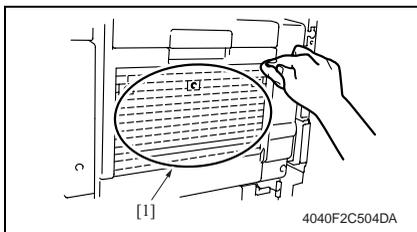
1. Open the Duplex Unit Door.
2. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Duplex Unit Transport Roller/Roll 1 and 2 [1] clean of dirt.

#### 2.4.2 Cleaning of the Duplex Unit Transport Roller/Roll 3

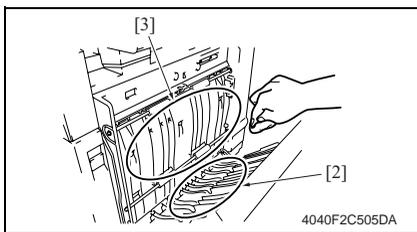


1. Remove the Duplex Unit.
2. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Duplex Unit Transport Roller/Roll 3 [2] clean of dirt.

### 2.4.3 Cleaning of the Duplex Unit Ventilation Section

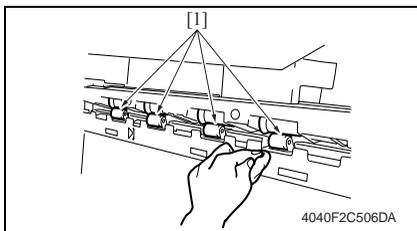


1. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the outside of the Duplex Unit Ventilation Section [1] clean of dirt.



2. Open the Duplex Unit Door [2].
3. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the inside of the Duplex Unit Ventilation Section [3] clean of dirt.

### 2.4.4 Cleaning of the Switch Back Unit Transport Roller/Roll



1. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Switch Back Unit Transport Roller/Roll [1] clean of dirt.

## Adjustment/Setting

### 3. How to use the adjustment section

- “Adjustment/Setting” contains detailed information on the adjustment items and procedures for this machine.
- Throughout this “Adjustment/Setting,” the default settings are indicated by “ ”.

#### Advance Checks

Before attempting to solve the customer problem, the following advance checks must be made. Check to see if:

- The power supply voltage meets the specifications.
- The power supply is properly grounded.
- The machine shares the power supply with any other machine that draws large current intermittently (e.g., elevator and air conditioner that generate electric noise).
- The installation site is environmentally appropriate: high temperature, high humidity, direct sunlight, ventilation, etc.; levelness of the installation site.
- The original has a problem that may cause a defective image.
- The density is properly selected.
- The Original Glass, slit glass, or related part is dirty.
- Correct paper is being used for printing.
- The units, parts, and supplies used for printing (developer, PC Drum, etc.) are properly replenished and replaced when they reach the end of their useful service life.
- Toner is not running out.

#### CAUTION

- **To unplug the power cord of the machine before starting the service job procedures.**
- **If it is unavoidably necessary to service the machine with its power turned ON, use utmost care not to be caught in the Scanner Cables or gears of the Exposure Unit.**
- **Special care should be used when handling the Fusing Unit which can be extremely hot.**
- **The Developing Unit has a strong magnetic field. Keep watches and measuring instruments away from it.**
- **Take care not to damage the PC Drum with a tool or similar device.**
- **Do not touch IC pins with bare hands.**

## 4. I/O Check

### 4.1 Check procedure

- To allow sensors to be checked for operation easily and safely, data applied to the IC on the board can be checked on the panel with the main unit in the standby state (including a misfeed, malfunction, and closure failure condition).

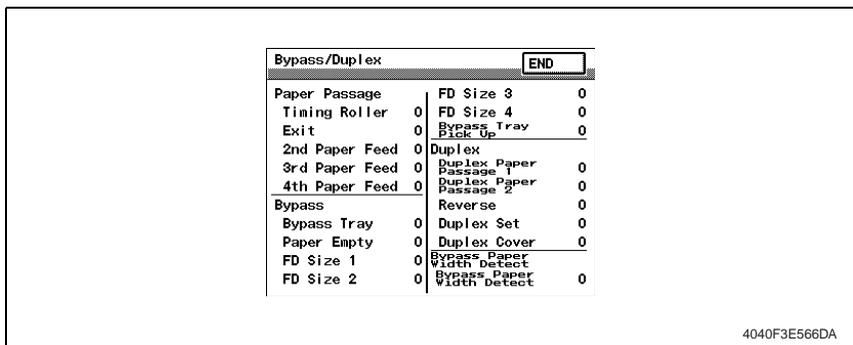
<Procedure>

- Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.  
 ☞ For details of how to display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.
- Touch the [I/O Check].
- Touch the [Printer].
- Touch the [Bypass/Duplex].

### 4.2 I/O check list

#### 4.2.1 I/O check screen

- This is only typical screen which may be different from what are shown on each individual main unit.

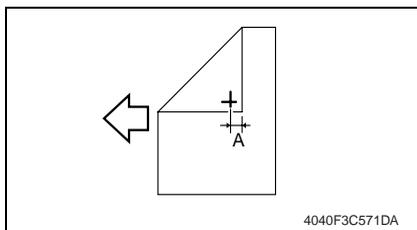
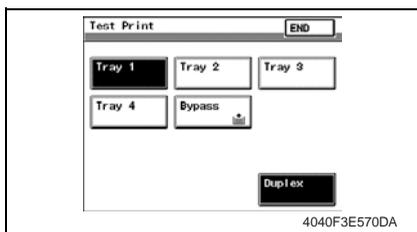
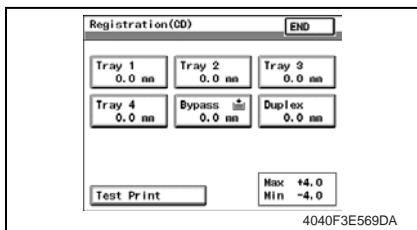
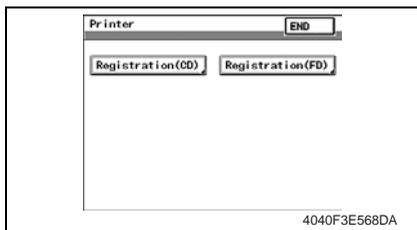
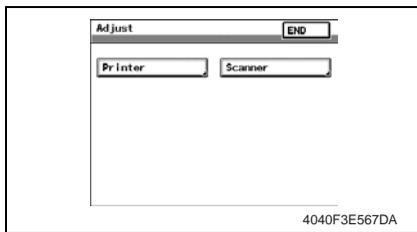


#### 4.2.2 I/O check list

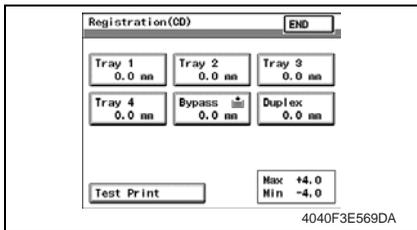
Symbol	Panel display	Part/Signal name	Operation characteristics/Panel display	
			1	0
PC24	Duplex Paper Passage 1	Duplex Unit Upper Transport Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC25	Duplex Paper Passage 2	Duplex Unit Lower Transport Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC26	Revers	Switch Back Unit Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
-	Duplex Set	Duplex Unit Set signal	Not set	Set
PC23	Duplex Cover	Duplex Unit Door Sensor	Open	Close

## 5. Adjustment

### 5.1 Adjusting the paper reference position



1. Display Adjust Mode.  
 ↳ For details of how to display the Adjust Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.
2. Touch the [Printer].
3. Touch the [Registration (CD)].
4. Touch the [Test Print].
5. Touch the [Duplex].
6. Press the Start key.
7. Measure the width of printed reference line A  
 Specification: 10 mm ± 3.0 mm
8. If width A falls within the specified range, finish the adjustment procedure.  
 If outside the specified range, perform the adjustment below.



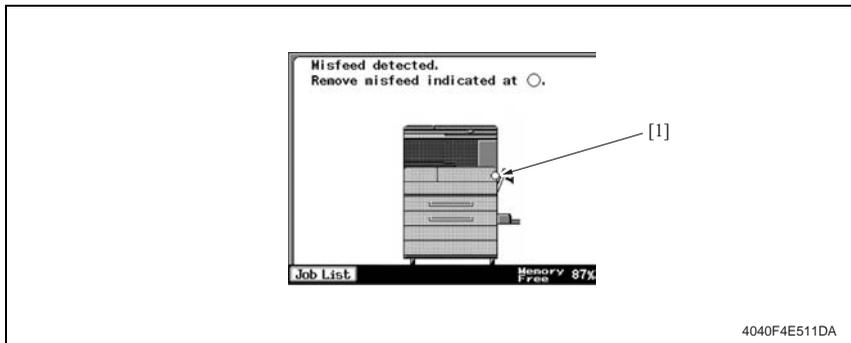
9. Touch [END] to display the Registration (CD) screen.
  10. Touch the [Duplex].
  11. Press the Clear key and use the 10-Key Pad to set the value.
    - If width A is wider than the specified range: Enter a negative value.
    - If width A is narrower than the specified range: Enter a positive value.
- Adjustment range: + 4.0 max. and -4.0 min.
- Use the \* key to switch between + and -.
12. Produce another test print and check for width A.

# Troubleshooting

## 6. Jam Display

### 6.1 Misfeed display

- When misfeed occurs, message, misfeed location “Blinking” and paper location “Lighting” are displayed on the Touch Panel of the main unit.

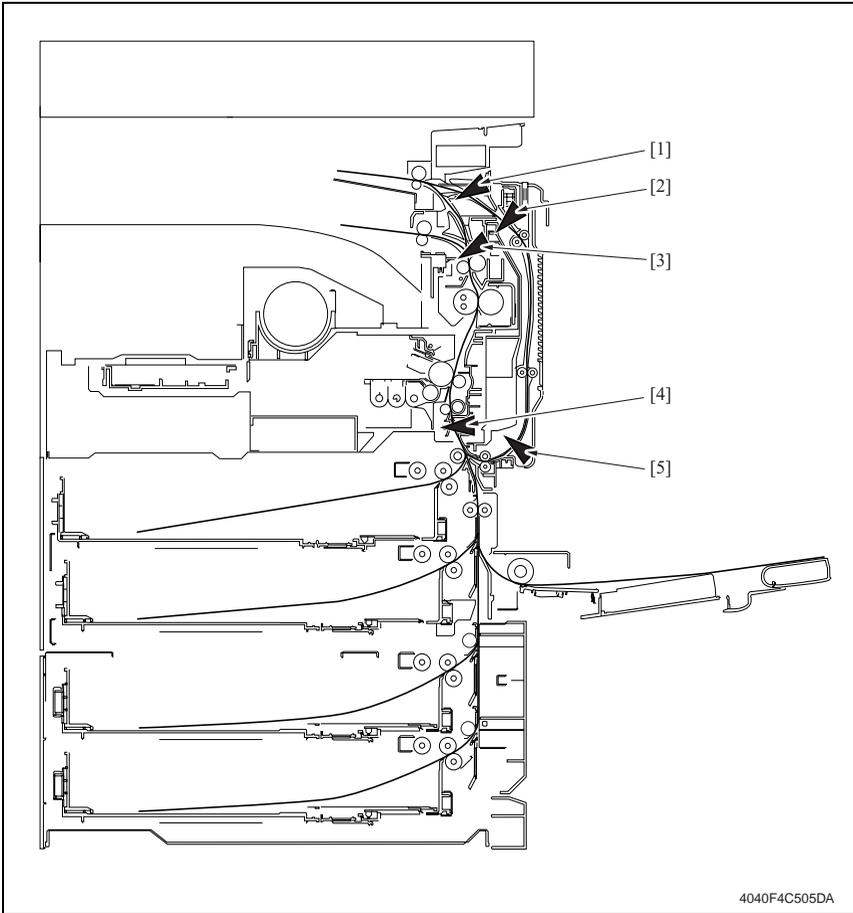


Display	Misfeed location	Misfeed access location	Action
[1]	Duplex Unit Take-Up Section Misfeed Turnover Unit/Duplex Unit Transport Section Misfeed	Duplex Unit Door	👉 13

#### 6.1.1 Misfeed display resetting procedure

- Open the corresponding door, clear the sheet of paper misfeed, and close the door.

### 6.2 Sensor layout



4040F4C505DA

- |  |      |  |      |
|--|------|--|------|
| [1] Switch Back Unit Sensor            | PC26 | [4] Synchronizing Roller Sensor        | PC1  |
| [2] Duplex Unit Upper Transport Sensor | PC24 | [5] Duplex Unit Lower Transport Sensor | PC25 |
| [3] Paper Exit Sensor                  | PC4  |  |      |

Duplex Unit/  
Switchback Unit

Troubleshooting

### 6.3 Solution

#### 6.3.1 Initial check items

- When a paper misfeed occurs, first perform the following initial check items.

Check item	Action
Does paper meet product specifications?	Replace paper.
Is the paper curled, wavy, or damp?	Replace paper. Instruct the user on the correct paper storage procedures.
Is a foreign object present along the paper path, or is the paper path deformed or worn?	Clean the paper path and replace if necessary.
Are the Paper Separator Fingers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or replace the defective Paper Separator Finger.
Are rolls/rollers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or replace the defective roll/roller.
Are the Edge Guide and Trailing Edge Stop at the correct position to accommodate the paper?	Set as necessary.
Are the actuators operating correctly?	Correct or replace the defective actuator.

#### 6.3.2 Duplex Unit Take-Up Section Misfeed

##### A. Detection Timing

Type	Description
Duplex Unit Take-Up Section misfeed detection	The Synchronizing Roller Sensor (PC1) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Duplex Unit Lower Transport Sensor (PC25) is blocked by the paper.
Detection of paper remaining in the Duplex Unit Take-Up Section	The Duplex Unit Lower Transport Sensor (PC25) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

##### B. Action

Relevant electrical parts	
Synchronizing Roller Sensor (PC1) Duplex Unit Lower Transport Sensor (PC25)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A)

Step	Operations	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical components)
1	Initial checks	-	-
2	PC1 sensor check	PWB-A PJ11A-5 (ON)	M-8
3	PC25 sensor check	PWB-A PJ22A-14 (ON)	D-7
4	Replace PWB-A.	-	-

### 6.3.3 Turnover Unit/Duplex Unit Transport Section Misfeed

#### A. Detection Timing

Type	Description
Turnover Unit/ Duplex Unit Transport Section misfeed detection	The Switch Back Unit Sensor (PC26) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Paper Exit Sensor (PC4) is unblocked by the paper.
	The Duplex Unit Upper Transport Sensor (PC24) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Switch Back Unit Sensor (PC26) is blocked by the paper.
	The Switch Back Unit Sensor (PC26) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Duplex Unit Upper Transport Sensor (PC24) is blocked by the paper.
Detection of paper remaining in the Turnover Unit/ Duplex Unit Transport Section	The Switch Back Unit Sensor (PC26) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.
	The Duplex Unit Upper Transport Sensor (PC24) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

#### B. Action

Relevant electrical parts	
Paper Exit Sensor (PC4) Switch Back Unit Sensor (PC26) Duplex Unit Upper Transport Sensor (PC24)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A)

Step	Operations	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical components)
1	Initial checks	-	-
2	PC4 sensor check	PWB-A PJ18A-11 (ON)	M-12
3	PC26 sensor check	PWB-A PJ19A-9 (ON)	M-5
4	PC24 sensor check	PWB-A PJ20A-5 (ON)	M-16
5	Replace PWB-A.	-	-



KONICA MINOLTA

**SERVICE MANUAL**

**FIELD SERVICE**

---

**bizhub**

**200 / 250 / 350**

**Standard Controller**

# Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  to the left of the revised section.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.

## NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2005/08	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

# CONTENTS

## Standard Controller

### General

1. Controller specifications .....	1
------------------------------------	---

### Maintenance

2. Firmware upgrade .....	3
2.1 Preparations for Firmware rewriting.....	3
2.1.1 Service environment .....	3
2.1.2 Writing into the Compact flash .....	3
2.1.3 Checking ROM version .....	3
2.2 Firmware rewriting .....	3
2.2.1 MSC .....	3

### Troubleshooting

3. Troubleshooting procedures .....	5
3.1 Unable to print .....	5
3.2 Unable to specify desired settings or unable to print as specified .....	6

Standard Controller

General

Maintenance

Troubleshooting

Blank Page

# General

## 1. Controller specifications

### A. Type

Type	Built-in type controller	
Power Requirements	Shared with main unit	
CPU	RM5231	
Program ROM	32 MB	
RAM	192 MB	
HDD	40 GB (Option)	
Host Interface	Standard: Ethernet (100BASE-TX/10BASE-T), USB 1.1/2.0 Option: IEEE1284	
Frame type	Ethernet 802.2 Ethernet 802.3 Ethernet II Ethernet SNAP	
Supported protocols	TCP/IP IPX/SPX NetBEUI AppleTalk (EtherTalk)	
Print speed	bizhub 350	35 pages/minute (Letter)
	bizhub 250	25 pages/minute (Letter)
	bizhub 200	20 pages/minute (Letter)
Fast print time	bizhub 350	4.8 seconds or less (Letter)
	bizhub 250	5.3 seconds or less (Letter)
	bizhub 200	
Printer language	PCL5e emulation PCL6 (XL 2.1) emulation PostScript 3 emulation	
Operating Environmental Requirements	Temperature 10 to 35 Humidity 15 to 85% RH	
Resolution	Data processing	600 x 600 dpi
	Printing	600 x 600 dpi
Compatible Paper Size	Max. standard paper size	
Fonts	PCL: Latin 80 fonts, Postscript 3 emulation: Latin 136 fonts	

**B. Supporting client specifications**

PC	IBM PC and its compatible
RAM	32 MB or more
OS	Windows 98 SE, Windows Me, Windows 2000 (Service Pack 4 or later), Windows XP (Service Pack 2 or later), or Windows NT 4.0 (Service Pack 6a) Mac OS 9.2 or later or Mac OS X 10.2 or Mac OS X 10.3
Browser	<p>PageScope Web Connection</p> <p>Web browser: Windows 98 SE, Windows Me, or Windows NT 4.0 Microsoft Internet Explorer 4 or later recommended Netscape Navigator 4.73 or 7.0</p> <p>Windows 2000 Microsoft Internet Explorer 5 or later recommended Netscape Navigator 7.0</p> <p>Windows XP Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 or later recommended Netscape Navigator 7.0</p> <p>* If using Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5, use Service Pack 1 or later.</p>

# Maintenance

## 2. Firmware upgrade

### 2.1 Preparations for Firmware rewriting

#### 2.1.1 Service environment

- Drive which enables writing/reading of Compact flash
- Compact flash (with 32 MB or more)

#### 2.1.2 Writing into the Compact flash

- Copy the firmware files using the computer.

#### NOTE

- **The copying operation should be performed on the files contained in the folder, instead of the folder.**
- **Copy only those files to be upgraded to the compact flash.**
- **If wrong firmware is copied, no screen display is given and thus no firmware can be downloaded.**

#### 2.1.3 Checking ROM version

- Before attempting to upgrade the firmware, check the current ROM version.
- ☞ For details of how to display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.

## 2.2 Firmware rewriting

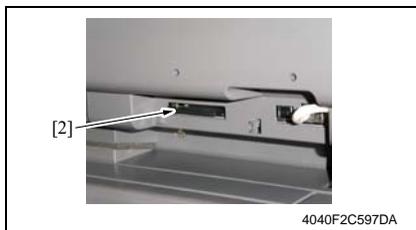
#### NOTE

- **NEVER attempt to remove or insert the compact flash with the machine power turned ON.**

#### 2.2.1 MSC



1. Turn OFF the main power switch.
2. Remove the Compact flash Cover [1].



3. Insert the compact flash card [2], in which only the MSC upgrading files have been written, into the slot.

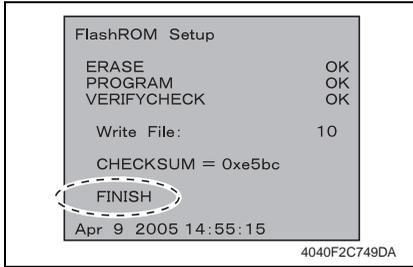
#### NOTE

- **Make sure that this compact flash card contains only the upgrading firmware of the MSC, and not that of the engine or Finisher.**

**NOTE**

- **Be sure to turn ON the sub power switch first before turning ON the main power switch.**

4. Turn ON the main power switch.

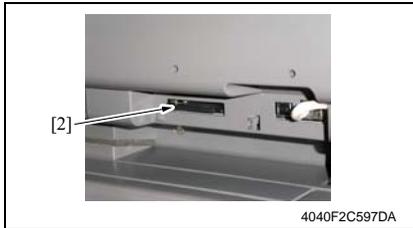


5. The firmware upgrading sequence will start.
6. When the upgrading sequence is completed, which is notified by the message "FINISH" appearing on the screen, turn OFF the main power switch.

**NOTE**

- **NEVER turn OFF the main power switch until the message "FINISH" appears on the screen.**

7. Remove the Compact Flash [2] card from the slot.



8. Turn ON the main power switch.
9. Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.
  - ☞ For details of how to display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.
10. Select [ROM Version].
11. Make sure if the version of Firmware is updated.

# Troubleshooting

## 3. Troubleshooting procedures

### 3.1 Unable to print

No.	Symptom	Probable cause	Action
1	The message "No printers are connected" or "Print error" appears.	The printer driver selected for printing is not compatible with the printer controller.	Check the printer name selected.
		The network cable or USB cable is disconnected.	Check that the cable is connected properly.
		An error has occurred in this machine.	Check this machine's control panel.
		Available memory space is not sufficient.	Perform a test print to check whether printing is possible.
2	A postscript error appears.	Available computer memory space is not sufficient.	Perform a test print to check whether printing is possible.
		There is an error in the application software settings.	Refer to the user's manual of the application software to check the settings.
		The file printing settings are incorrect.	Change the settings and try to print again.
3	The machine does not start printing although the print job was completed on the computer.	The printer driver selected for printing is not compatible with the printer controller.	Check the printer name selected.
		The network cable or USB cable is disconnected.	Check that the cable is connected properly.
		An error has occurred in this machine.	Check this machine's control panel.
		A print job is queued in this machine, delaying printing.	Check the job order on the Active Jobs list of the machine's control panel.
		"Save in User Box" was selected for the print job.	Check if the print job is stored on the Box screen of this machine's control panel.
		"Secure Print" was selected for the print job.	Check if the print job is held on the Secure Print screen of this machine's control panel.
		If the account track settings have been applied, an unregistered account name (or password) may have been entered.	Enter the correct account name (or password).
		If the authentication settings have been applied, an unregistered user name (or password) may have been entered.	Enter the correct user name (or password).
		Available computer memory space is not sufficient.	Perform a test print to check whether printing is possible.
The connection of this machine to the network is not yet established (while connecting to a network).	Consult with the network administrator.		

### 3.2 Unable to specify desired settings or unable to print as specified

No.	Symptom	Probable cause	Action
1	A printer driver setting cannot be selected.	Some functions cannot be combined.	Do not try to select settings that are not available.
2	The "Conflicts" message with "Unable to Select" or "Function Canceled" appears.	An incorrect combination of functions has been specified.	Check the settings and specify the functions correctly.
3	Printing is not performed as specified.	Incorrect settings are specified.	Check each setting in the printer driver.
		A combination of functions, although possible in the printer driver, is not possible with this machine.	
4	The watermark cannot be printed.	The watermark is not correctly set.	Check the watermark settings.
		The watermark density is set to a level that is too low.	Check the density settings.
		Watermarks cannot be printed in graphics applications.	No watermark can be printed in this case.
5	The staple function cannot be specified.	Stapling is not possible if "Paper Type" is set to "Thick" or "Transparency".	Check each setting in the printer driver.
		The staple function requires optional finisher.	Install the required optional finisher and enable it using the printer driver.
6	Stapling cannot be performed.	Number of pages that can be stapled: Up to 50 pages of Letter A4R or smaller plain paper.	Print by specify the number of pages per set for the number of pages that can be stapled.
		Number of pages that can be center-stapled: Up to 15 pages of plain paper.	
		Stapling is not possible if the document contains pages of different sizes.	Check the document.
7	The stapling position is not as expected.	The orientation setting is not correct.	Check the stapling position in the printer driver setup dialog box.
8	The hole punch function cannot be specified.	Hole punching cannot be specified if "Booklet", "Transparency", "Thick2", "Thick3", or "Envelope" is selected.	Check each setting in the printer driver.
		For the hole punch function, the punch unit must be installed on optional finisher.	Install the required optional finisher and enable it using the printer driver.

No.	Symptom	Probable cause	Action
9	The pages are not punched.	Printed pages may be fed out without being punched if the paper is loaded into the paper source with an incorrect orientation.	Check the orientation setting.
10	The hole punch position is not as expected.	The orientation setting is not correct.	Check the punch position on the Layout tab of the printer driver setup dialog box.
11	The form is not printed properly.	Available computer memory space is not sufficient.	Simplify the form to reduce the data size.
12	The image is not printed properly.	Available computer memory space is not sufficient.	Simplify the image to reduce the data size.
13	Paper is not fed from the specified paper source.	Paper will not be fed from the specified paper source if that paper source is loaded with paper of a different size or orientation.	Load the paper source with paper of the appropriate size and orientation.
14	The numbering function is not performed.	The "Collate" (for Windows) or "Collated" (for Mac OS X) check box is selected on the print setup dialog box.	Clear the "Collate" (for Windows) or "Collated" (for Mac OS X) check box.
15	Proof and Print is not performed.		

Blank Page



KONICA MINOLTA

**SERVICE MANUAL**

**FIELD SERVICE**

---

**FK-503**

# Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  to the left of the revised section.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.

## NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2005/08	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

# CONTENTS

## FK-503

### General

1. Product specifications ..... 1

### Maintenance

2. Other ..... 5

2.1 Disassembly/Adjustment prohibited items ..... 5

3. Connection ..... 6

4. Disassembly/Reassembly ..... 7

4.1 FAX Board (with G3 Multi Port option) ..... 7

4.2 Spare TX Marker Stamp 2 ..... 7

4.3 Ni-MH battery Replacement ..... 9

### Adjustment/Setting

5. How to use the adjustment section ..... 11

6. Utility/Counter Mode ..... 12

6.1 Utility/Counter Mode function tree ..... 12

6.2 Utility/Counter Mode function setting procedure ..... 14

6.2.1 Procedure ..... 14

6.2.2 Exiting ..... 14

6.2.3 Changing the setting value in Utility Mode functions ..... 14

6.3 Settings in the User Setting ..... 15

6.3.1 User's Choice 5/6 ..... 15

6.3.2 User's Choice 6/6 ..... 15

6.3.3 FAX ..... 16

6.4 Settings in the User Management ..... 17

6.4.1 Line Monitor Sound ..... 17

6.4.2 Memory RX ON/OFF ..... 17

6.4.3 POP3 RX ..... 17

6.5 Settings in the Admin. Management ..... 18

6.5.1 Initial Setting ..... 18

6.5.2 Admin. Set ..... 19

6.5.3 TX Settings ..... 19

6.5.4 RX Settings ..... 21

6.5.5 FAX Setting ..... 21

6.5.6	Print Lists .....	22
6.5.7	Report Settings .....	22
6.5.8	Document Management .....	23
6.6	Settings in the Repoerts .....	24
6.6.1	Program List .....	24
6.6.2	Bulletin List .....	24
6.6.3	Confidential List .....	24
7.	Initial Mode.....	25
7.1	Initial Mode Function Setting Procedure .....	25
7.1.1	Exiting .....	25
7.2	Initial Mode Function Tree .....	25
7.3	Settings in the Initial Mode .....	26
7.3.1	Clear FAX Setting .....	26
8.	Maintenance Mode .....	27
8.1	Maintenance Mode Function Setting Procedure .....	27
8.2	Maintenance Mode function tree .....	28
8.3	Settings in the Maintenance Mode .....	28
8.3.1	Mem. contents .....	28
8.3.2	Memory Dump .....	28
8.3.3	File Display .....	28
8.3.4	File Dump .....	29
8.3.5	Soft Switch Set .....	29
8.3.6	Touch Panel Adjustment .....	29
8.3.7	Protocol Trace .....	29
8.3.8	Service Call Report.....	29
9.	Tech. Rep. Mode.....	30
9.1	Tech. Rep. Mode function setting procedure .....	30
9.2	Tech. Rep. Mode function tree.....	31
9.3	Settings in the Tech. Rep. Choice .....	31
9.3.1	Country Set.....	31
9.4	Settings in the System Input.....	32
9.4.1	Machine Configuration .....	32
9.5	Settings in the Counter .....	32
9.5.1	Checking the counter reading .....	32
9.5.2	Clearing readings of all counters at once .....	32
9.5.3	Clearing the reading of a specific counter .....	32
9.5.4	Application Counter .....	32
9.5.5	Fax Connection Error.....	33

- 9.6 Settings in the Function ..... 33
  - 9.6.1 F7-2..... 33
- 9.7 Settings in the FAX Set..... 33
  - 9.7.1 Service Call Set ..... 33
  - 9.7.2 Terminal TX..... 35
  - 9.7.3 Stamp..... 35
- 10. Fax-related Adjustment Items ..... 36
  - 10.1 CD/FD Zoom Ratio Correction (Fax) ..... 36
- 11. Soft Switch List..... 37
  - 11.1 Soft Switches Disclosed to Users (Screen Setting)..... 37
  - 11.2 List of Defaults ..... 44
  - 11.3 List of Soft Switches ..... 51

## Troubleshooting

- 12. Troubleshooting..... 161
  - 12.1 Diagnosis by Alarm Code ..... 161
  - 12.2 Communication Error Codes ..... 162
    - 12.2.1 Errors in operations..... 162
    - 12.2.2 Terminal alarm ..... 163
    - 12.2.3 Communication errors (TX)..... 163
    - 12.2.4 Communication errors (RX) ..... 165
    - 12.2.5 Malfunction..... 167
  - 12.3 Diagnosis by Symptoms ..... 168

FK-503

General

Maintenance

Adjustment / Setting

Troubleshooting

Blank Page

# General

## 1. Product specifications

### A. Type

Memory Capacity	32MB	
Communication mode	G3/ECM	
Scanning resolution (main line x feed line)	8 x 3.85 line/mm 8 x 7.7 line/mm 8 x 15.4 line/mm 16 x 15.4 line/mm	
Data speed	G3 / ECM: 2.4 Kbps - 33.6 Kbps	
Transmission time	G3 / ECM: Image signal - 2 sec approx. (V.34 JBIG)	
Coding method	MH / MR / MMR / JBIG	
Applicable network	G3/ECM	Phone line, FAX communication network, dedicated line
Options	Stamp Unit SP-501 Fax Multi Line ML-502	

**B. Functions**

	Function	bizhub 350, 250, 200
Speed	High speed scanning	○ (0.55 sec/Letter fine)
	High speed printout	○ bizhub 350 35 ppm/A4 bizhub 250 25 ppm/A4 bizhub 200 20 ppm/A4
	ECM mode	○ (2 sec approx./Std document)
	High speed half tone	○
Resolution	Super fine mode	○
	Half tone transmission	○
	Auto retransmission after error	○ (ECM)
	Full automatic exposure control	○
	Manual brightness control	○ (Only for copy)
	Smoothing	○
	Mixed mode (Text + Photo)	○
Operability	One-touch dialing	○ (540 destinations)
	Abbreviated dialing	-
	One-touch program dialing	○ (30)
	Auto re-dialing	○
	Transmission Booking	○ (200)
	Broadcast Destination	○ (300)
	Origination Selecting	○ (8 types)
	LCD display	○ (320 x 240)
	Operation	○ (Analog touch panel)
	Disable copy function	-
	Select auto-mode screen	○ (Copy/Fax automatic switch)
Utility functions	Automatic selection of print paper size	○
	Password communication	○
	Multi polling	-
	Polling at regular times	-
	Nonstorage transmission	○
	Priority transmission	○
	Insert destination	○
	Message printing	-
	Automatic pause for PSTN number	○
	Display communication result	○
	Record TSI information	○
	ID display/record	○ (Received date and time record)
	Power Source saving mode	○
	Switch document reading length (1m/4m)	-
ADF 2 sided transmission	○	

	Function	bizhub 350, 250, 200
Report functions	Activity report (TX/RX)	○
	Transmission report	○ (with document merge)
	Incompleted transmission report	○ (with document merge)
	Serial broadcast report	○ (with document merge)
	Account list	-
	One-Touch list	○
	Fax program list	○
	Bulletin Board list	○
	Confidential list	-
	Forwarding list	○
	Setting list	○
Memory functions	Multi access	○
	Transmission Booking Document Number	○ (200)
	Retransmission	○ (Destination changeable)
	Document retransmission	○
	Reception by memory	○
	Transmission Management Document Number	○ (200)
	Batch Tx	○ (30 destinations)
	Memory polling transmission	○
	Confidential transmission Confidential print	○ (F code)
	Serial broadcast	○ (300 destinations)
	Relay broadcast	○ (F code)
	Memory full control	○ (Separate Tx)
	Quick memory transmission	○
	File backup	○ (12H)
	Rotated Rx	○
Selective polling	○	
System Configuration	Relay transmission	-
	Extra telephone	○ (PB forwarding reception possible)* *PSTN (Port 1 only)
	Account track mode	○ (100 sections)
	Chain dialing	○
	Multi-port	○ (G3 multi-option)
	Hard disk	-
	Inch/mm conversion	○
Memory	○ (32MB)	
Mutual Connectivity	ITU-T G4	-
	ITU-T G4/ECM	○
	Facsimile communication network	○ (G3)
Maintenance	Self diagnostics	○
	Counter per application	○
	Adjust touch panel resistation	○

FK-503

General

Blank Page

# Maintenance

## 2. Other

### 2.1 Disassembly/Adjustment prohibited items

#### A. Screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied

- Blue paint or green paint is applied to some screws to prevent them from coming loose.
- As a general rule, screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied should not be removed or loosened.

#### B. Red-painted screws

- Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.

#### C. Variable Resistors on Board

##### NOTE

- Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.

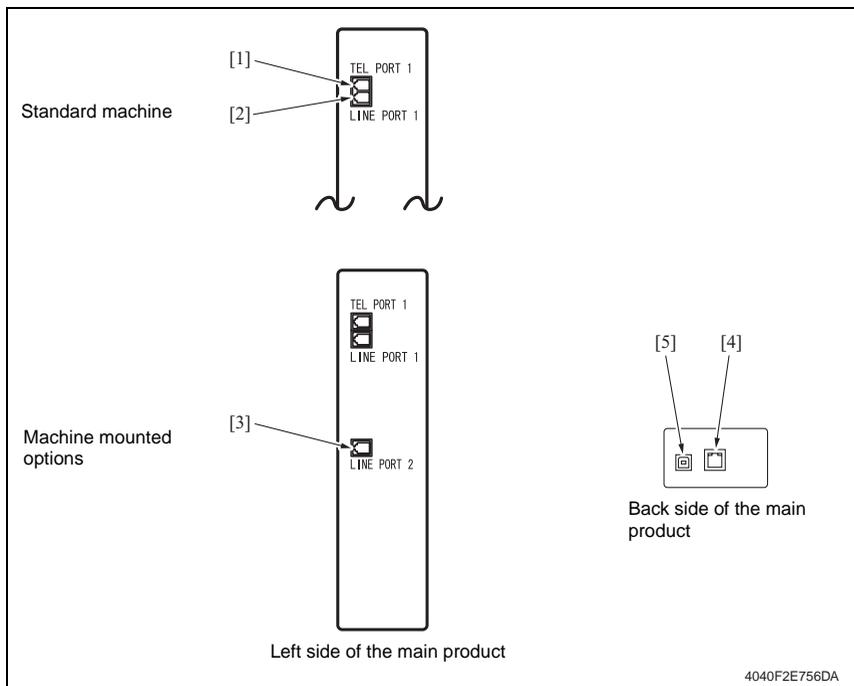
#### D. Removal of PWBs

##### CAUTION

- When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to “SAFETY AND IMPORTANT WARNING ITEMS” and follow the corresponding removal procedures.
- The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.
- Where it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.

### 3. Connection

- Connect cables from the phone line and other devices with the system as shown below.



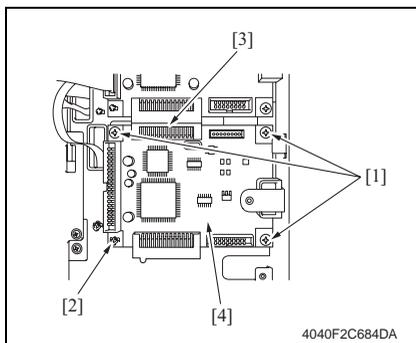
4040F2E756DA

No.	Name	Connect to		Remark
[1]	TEL PORT1	Extra telephone set	Standard	
[2]	LINE PORT1	Phone line (PORT1)	Standard	
[3]	LINE PORT2	Phone line (PORT2)	Option	Option (G3 Multi-port)
[4]	LAN	LAN (PC print option)	Standard	Used in the Scanner & iFAX function and printer function (printer function only for USB)
[5]	USB	Printer Controller	Standard	

## 4. Disassembly/Reassembly

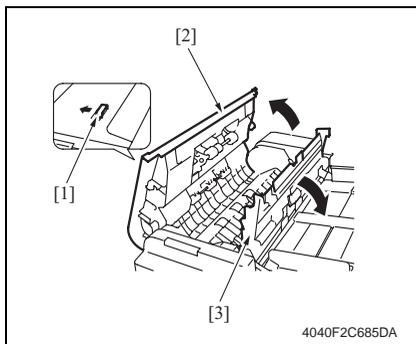
### 4.1 FAX Board (with G3 Multi Port option)

1. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.  
☞ For details, see Service Manual of the machine.
2. Remove the Rear Cover.  
☞ For details, see Service Manual of the machine.

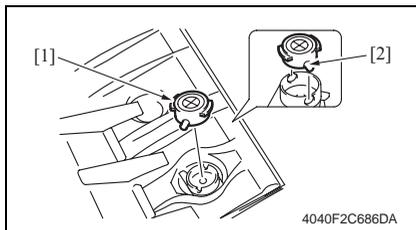


3. Remove three screws [1].
4. Unlock the card spacer [2].
5. Sliding the Fax Board [4] downward, disconnect the connector [3] and then remove the Fax Board [4].

### 4.2 Spare TX Marker Stamp 2



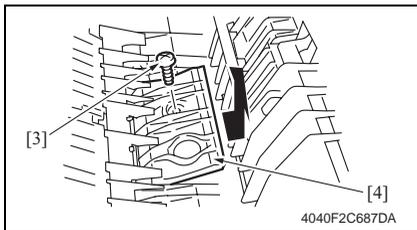
1. Unlock the Top Door of the Automatic Document Feeder [1].
2. Open the Top Door [2].
3. Open the Processing Guide [3].



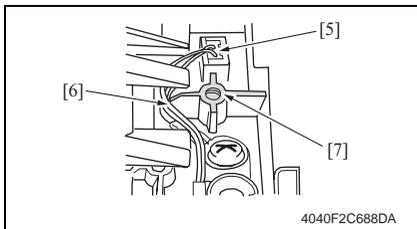
4. Using tweezers, pick up and remove the stamp (ink portion) [1].

#### NOTE

- At reinstallation, align the round protrusion [2] on the stamp with a slit in the TX Marker Stamp 2.



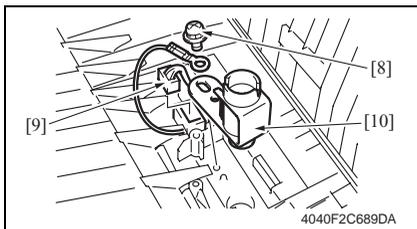
5. Remove the screw [3] and the Guide Plate [4].



6. Disconnect the connector [5] and remove the hookup harness [6].

**NOTE**

- At reinstallation, use care not to allow the hookup harness to ride over the rib [7].



7. Remove the screw [8], disconnect the connector [9], and remove TX Marker Stamp 2 [10].

**NOTE**

- Make sure that this step is performed only after the stamp (ink portion) has been removed.

### 4.3 Ni-MH battery Replacement

1. Check on the screen that the memory capacity still available for use reads 100%.

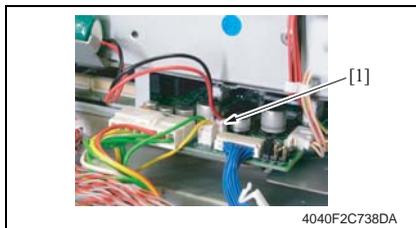
#### NOTE

- If the memory capacity does not read 100%, let the machine output contents of the memory or wait until the machine completes transmission.

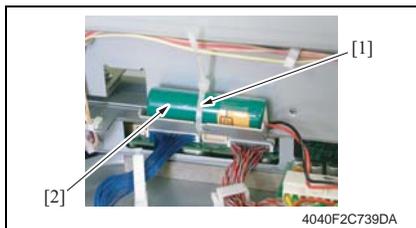
2. Turn OFF the Main Power Switch.

3. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.

☞ For details, see Service Manual of the machine.



4. Unplug one connectors (CN10) [1] of the MFB3 Board.



5. Tie band [2] is cut with nippers, and the Ni-MH battery [3] is replace.

6. Turn ON the Main Power Switch.

#### NOTE

- After the Ni-MH battery has been replaced with a new one, be sure to turn ON the Main Power Switch.
- Discard the used battery in accordance with the corresponding local regulations and NEVER discard it or let it discharge on the user's premises.

Blank Page

## Adjustment/Setting

### 5. How to use the adjustment section

- “Adjustment/Setting” contains detailed information on the adjustment items and procedures for this machine.
- Throughout this “Adjustment/Setting,” the default settings are indicated by “ ”.

#### Advance Checks

Before attempting to solve the customer problem, the following advance checks must be made. Check to see if:

- The power supply voltage meets the specifications.
- The power supply is properly grounded.
- The machine shares the power supply with any other machine that draws large current intermittently (e.g., elevator and air conditioner that generate electric noise).
- The installation site is environmentally appropriate: high temperature, high humidity, direct sunlight, ventilation, etc.; levelness of the installation site.
- The original has a problem that may cause a defective image.
- The density is properly selected.
- The Original Glass, slit glass, or related part is dirty.
- Correct paper is being used for printing.
- The units, parts, and supplies used for printing (developer, PC Drum, etc.) are properly replenished and replaced when they reach the end of their useful service life.
- Toner is not running out.

#### CAUTION

- **To unplug the power cord of the machine before starting the service job procedures.**
- **If it is unavoidably necessary to service the machine with its power turned ON, use utmost care not to be caught in the Scanner Cables or gears of the Exposure Unit.**
- **Special care should be used when handling the Fusing Unit which can be extremely hot.**
- **The Developing Unit has a strong magnetic field. Keep watches and measuring instruments away from it.**
- **Take care not to damage the PC Drum with a tool or similar device.**
- **Do not touch IC pins with bare hands.**

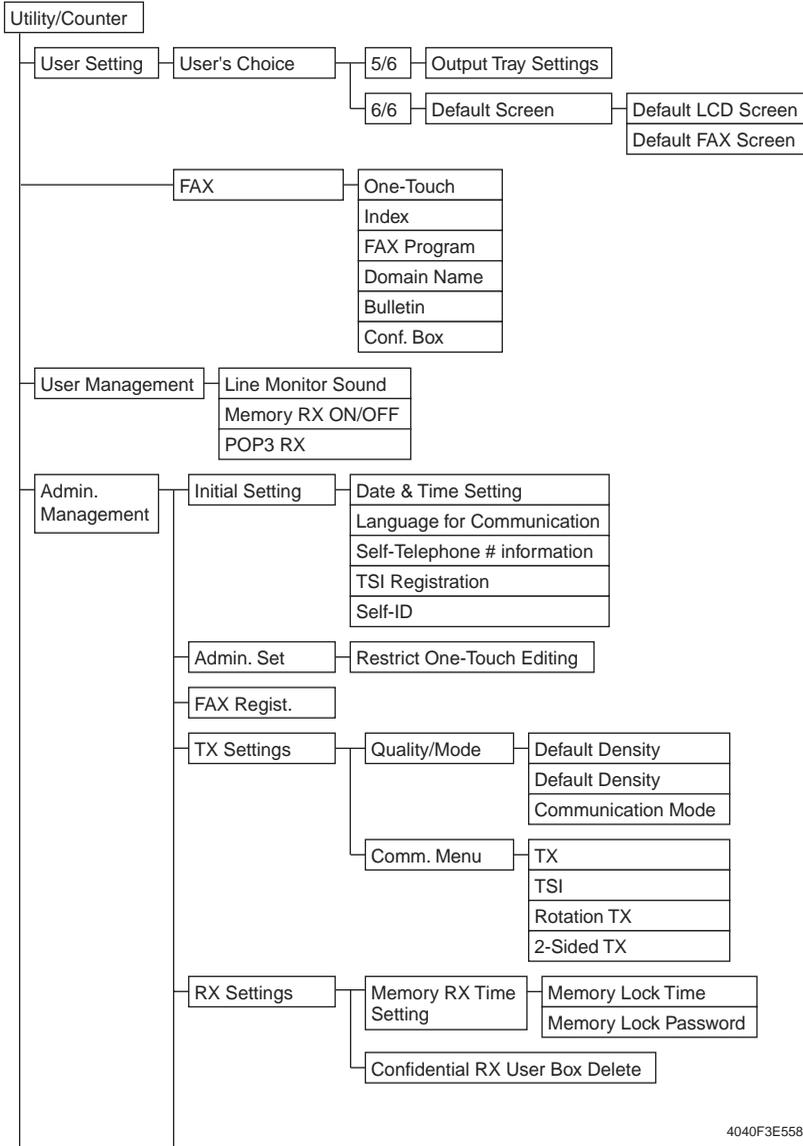
# 6. Utility/Counter Mode

## 6.1 Utility/Counter Mode function tree

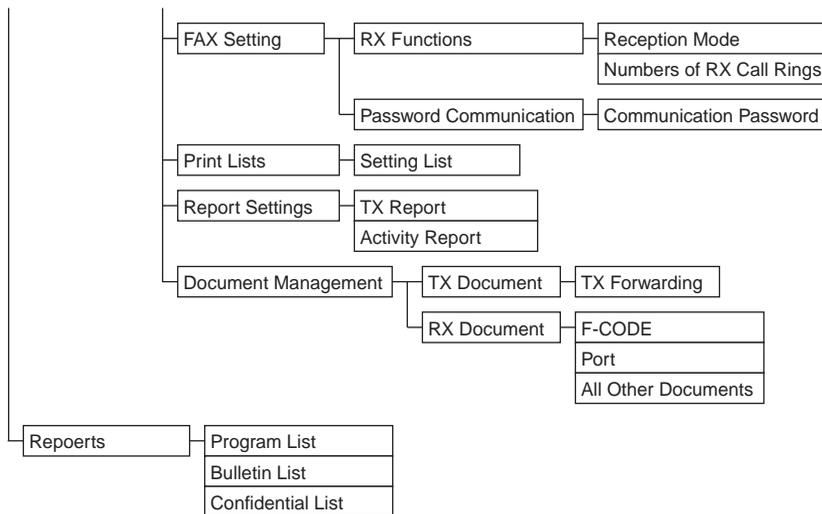
- The function tree is shown to comply with the format displayed on the screen.

### NOTE

- The following function tree shows only the fax-related functions.



4040F3E558DA



4040F3E559DA

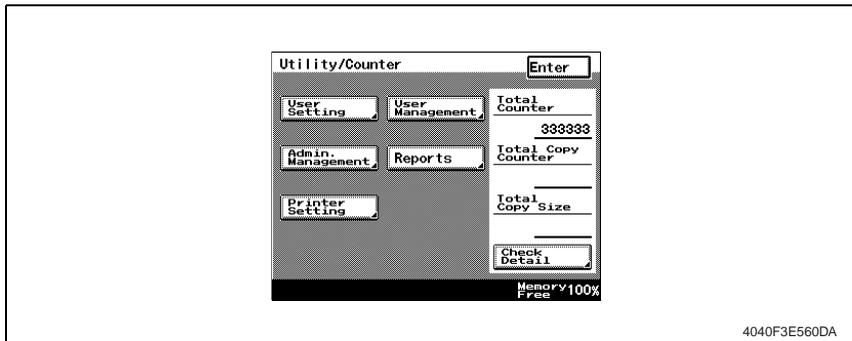
**NOTE**

- Keys displayed on screens are different depending on the setting.

## 6.2 Utility/Counter Mode function setting procedure

### 6.2.1 Procedure

1. Press the Utility/Counter key.
2. The Utility/Counter mode screen will appear.



### 6.2.2 Exiting

- Touch the [Enter] key.

### 6.2.3 Changing the setting value in Utility Mode functions

- Use the +/- key to enter or change the setting value.
- Use the 10-Key Pad to enter the setting value. (To change the setting value, first press the Clear key before making an entry.)

### 6.3 Settings in the User Setting

**NOTE**

- Only the fax-related functions will be described for User Setting.

#### 6.3.1 User's Choice 5/6

##### A. Output Tray Settings

###### (1) Faxes/Prints

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To set the output bin in each of different applications when a finishing option is mounted.</li> <li>• Different contents of display are given depending on the type of option mounted.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When changing the finishing tray during reception of fax or computer printouts.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p>&lt;Port 1&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The default setting is "1".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"1"                      2                      (3)</p> <p>&lt;Port 2&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The default setting is "1".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"1"                      2                      (3)</p> <p>&lt;Faxes/Prints&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The default setting is "1".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"1"                      2                      (3)</p>

#### 6.3.2 User's Choice 6/6

##### A. Default Screen

###### (1) Default LCD Screen

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To set the default screen that is preferentially selected upon auto clear or similar event.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When changing the default screen that is preferentially selected upon auto clear or similar event.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The default setting is "Copy".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"Copy"                      FAX                      Scanner                      FAX/Copy Auto</p>

###### (2) Default FAX Screen

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To set the default screen that is preferentially selected when the fax is selected.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When changing the default screen that is preferentially selected when the fax is selected.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The default setting is "One-Touch".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"One-Touch"                      Search                      Direct Input                      Index</p>

**6.3.3 FAX****A. One-Touch**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To store a destination in a one-touch dial key or change or delete one that has previously been stored as one-touch dial.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Up to a total of 540 different destinations can be stored, each screen containing 15.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [One-Touch].</li> <li>Select the specific key, in which a destination is to be stored or for which a previously stored destination is to be modified or deleted.</li> <li>Make the necessary settings.</li> </ol> </li> </ul>

**B. Index**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To group one-touch dials into different index keys.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There are a total of 36 index keys.</li> </ul>

**C. FAX Program**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To store functions to be used during communications together with the destination information.</li> <li>It is necessary to store in advance the one-touch dial or abbreviated dial before storing this function.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Up to 30 programs can be set.</li> </ul>

**D. Domain Name**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set part of the address in advance as address input support.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When it is required that address input be made swiftly</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Domain Name].</li> <li>Touch the key, for which Domain Name is to be stored or modified.</li> <li>Type the characters (up to 64 en-size characters) and touch [Enter].</li> </ol>

**E. Bulletin**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To make settings necessary for setting up a bulletin board.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Bulletin].</li> <li>Touch the number of the bulletin board to be stored, or modified or deleted.</li> <li>Make the necessary settings.</li> </ol>

**F. Conf. Box**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To register a private box, in which a fax message with an F-CODE is to be stored.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Conf. Box].</li> <li>Select the specific key, in which a private box is to be set or in which previously stored private box information is to be modified or the private box itself is to be deleted.</li> <li>Make the necessary settings.</li> </ol>

## 6.4 Settings in the User Management

### 6.4.1 Line Monitor Sound

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the volume of the line monitor sound that can be heard from the monitor speaker during fax transmission.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "3". 0 (mute) to 5</li> </ul>

### 6.4.2 Memory RX ON/OFF

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To allow the machine to produce a print temporarily even in the off mode.</li> <li>A print control password is necessary to print data.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Memory RX ON/OFF].</li> <li>Type the 4-digit password (default value: 1111) and touch [Enter].</li> <li>Touch the [Lock OFF].</li> <li>To halt the print cycle, touch [Lock ON] and then [Enter] while the print cycle is being run.</li> <li>Touch [Temporarily Print] to resume the print cycle.</li> </ol>

### 6.4.3 POP3 RX

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To check reception from the POP3 server.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [POP3 RX].</li> </ol>

## 6.5 Settings in the Admin. Management

- The Admin. Management will be available by entering the administrator password (8 digits) set by the Admin. Set . (The administrator password is initially set to "00000000")

### 6.5.1 Initial Setting

#### A. Date & Time Setting

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set time and date for the fax machine.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When setting or changing the time and date set for the fax machine.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter the day, month, and year, and time-of-day from the 10-Key Pad.</li> <li>Touch [Enter] to start the clock.</li> </ul>

#### B. Language for Communication

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the language used with the fax machine.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the language used with the fax machine.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "English". Japanese "English"</li> </ul>

#### C. Self-Telephone # information

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To register information required for fax communication, including the telephone number of the local fax machine, whether or not a PBX is available, and the type of line.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [PBX Connection Mode].</li> <li>Touch [Self-telephone #] and enter the telephone number.</li> <li>Touch the [PBX Connection Mode]. [Extension]: If a connection is made via the PBX to the ordinary fixed line [Outside]: If a connection is made directly to the ordinary fixed line * If [Extension] is selected, enter the Outside Line Access Code.</li> <li>Touch the [Dial Method]. [DP20]: 20 pps pulse dialing line [DP10]: 10 pps pulse dialing line [PB]: Tone dialing line</li> </ol>

#### D. TSI Registration

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the name (of the sending party) to be notified to the recipient.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When changing the name (of the sending party) to be notified to the recipient.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Up to eight different names can be registered.</li> <li>1. Touch the [TSI Registration].</li> <li>2. Select the number, for which the sending party is to be registered.</li> <li>3. Enter the name of the sending party and touch [Enter].</li> </ul>

#### E. Self-ID

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To register the name, telephone number, and other information of the local machine as an ID.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the ID is to be printed on journals and displayed on the panel of the fax machine on the receiving end.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Self-ID].</li> <li>Enter the local machine ID (up to 12 en-size characters) and touch [Enter].</li> </ol>

**6.5.2 Admin. Set**

**A. Restrict One-Touch Editing**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To restrict the user from registering or modifying one-touch dials.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "OFF".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">ON                      "OFF"</p>

**6.5.3 TX Settings**

**A. Quality/Mode**

**(1) Default Density**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the default image quality selected during transmission.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the default image quality selected during transmission.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Standard".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"Standard"      Fine                      SuperFine Text/Photo      GSR                      Super GSR</p>

**(2) Default Density**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the default image density selected during transmission.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the default image density selected during transmission.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Std."</li> <li>Setting range: 5 steps</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">Light to Std. to Dark</p>

**(3) Communication Mode**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the communication mode established during transmission.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the communication mode established during transmission.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p>&lt;FAX&gt;</p> <p style="text-align: center;">G3-1                      G3-2</p> <p>&lt;Internet FAX&gt;</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Internet FAX      IP-TX                      IP Relay</p> <p>&lt;PC&gt;</p> <p style="text-align: center;">E-Mail                      Scanner</p>

**B. Comm. Menu**

**(1) TX**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the type of transmission to be made.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change the type of transmission to be made.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Memory TX".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"Memory TX"      Quick Scan TX</p>

**(2) TSI**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set where the name of the sending party is to be printed on the transmitted text, and select the specific name to be printed.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When having the name of the sending party printed on the transmitted text.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p>&lt;TX Time Information&gt;                  Inside Body Text    Outside Body Text OFF</p> <p>&lt;TSI Selection&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select the specific name of the sending party to be printed.</li> </ul>

**(3) Rotation TX**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select whether to turn ON or OFF rotation transmission.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When rotation transmission is to be made</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "ON".</li> </ul> <p>"ON"                      OFF</p>

**(4) 2-Sided TX**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the file margin of the original for 2-sided transmission.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When changing the file margin of the original for 2-sided transmission.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "OFF".</li> </ul> <p>2-Sided TX:                      ON                      "OFF"</p> <p>Original Bind Direction:    Left Bind                      Top Bind                      "Auto"</p>

### 6.5.4 RX Settings

#### A. Memory RX Time Setting

##### (1) Memory Lock Time

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the time of day and the day of the week, at which printing of the received fax is to be started or stopped.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When a received fax is to be printed at a specific time specified without allowing it to be printed on the spot</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Memory RX Time Setting].</li> <li>Touch the [Memory Lock Time].</li> <li>Make the necessary settings and touch [Enter].</li> </ol> <p>* Touch [OFF] if no settings are to be made.</p>

##### (2) Memory Lock Password

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set a password used for printing a fax received at a time not specified.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "0000".</li> </ul> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Memory RX Time Setting].</li> <li>Touch the [Memory Lock Password].</li> <li>Touch [Password], then enter the password and touch [Enter].</li> <li>Touch [Confirm New Password], then enter the password a second time and touch [Enter].</li> </ol>

#### B. Confidential RX User Box Delete

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To delete a private box that has previously been registered.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When deleting a private box.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Confidential RX User Box Delete].</li> <li>Select the private box to be deleted.</li> <li>Touch the [Yes].</li> </ol>

### 6.5.5 FAX Setting

#### A. RX Functions

##### (1) Reception Mode

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the reception mode of faxes.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When changing the reception mode of faxes.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "Auto".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"Auto"                      Manual</p>

##### (2) Numbers of RX Call Rings

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the number of call rings heard before automatic reception is activated.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When changing the number of call rings heard before automatic reception is activated</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "1x".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">1 to 20</p> <p>* Setting range when the optional handset is mounted: 0 to 20 rings</p>

**B. Password Communication**

**(1) Communication Password**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To allow a fax to be received only when there is a match in the password that has previously been registered on the transmitter and receiver ends.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When using password reception</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "00". "00" (Disabled)    01 to 99 (Enabled)</li> </ul>

**6.5.6 Print Lists**

**A. Setting List**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To print information concerning the initial settings of the machine.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Print Lists].</li> <li>Touch the [Setting List].</li> <li>The setting list is printed.</li> </ol>

**6.5.7 Report Settings**

**A. TX Report**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the mode of output of the report used for confirming results of transmission.</li> </ul>								
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When changing the mode of output of the report used for confirming results of transmission</li> <li>Setting is made individually for a single destination and two or more destinations.</li> </ul>								
Setting/ Procedure	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>&lt;Single Dest&gt;</td> <td>ON</td> <td>"If TX Fails"</td> <td>OFF</td> </tr> <tr> <td>&lt;Broadcasting&gt;</td> <td>ON</td> <td>"If TX Fails"</td> <td>OFF</td> </tr> </table>	<Single Dest>	ON	"If TX Fails"	OFF	<Broadcasting>	ON	"If TX Fails"	OFF
<Single Dest>	ON	"If TX Fails"	OFF						
<Broadcasting>	ON	"If TX Fails"	OFF						

**B. Activity Report**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select whether or not to print the activity report for every 50 transactions automatically.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When printing the activity report for every 50 transactions automatically.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "ON". "ON"                      OFF</li> </ul>

## 6.5.8 Document Management

### A. TX Document

#### (1) TX Forwarding

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set to forward received text to a destination that has been set by the administrator.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When forwarding received text to a destination that has been set by the administrator</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Document Management].</li> <li>Touch the [TX Document].</li> <li>Touch the [TX Forwarding].</li> <li>Specify the destination to which the received fax is to be forwarded and touch [Enter]. [One-Touch]: To specify the destination by the one-touch dial [Search]: To search through one-touch dials</li> </ol>

### B. RX Document

#### (1) F-CODE

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set to receive text for every F-CODE</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When setting to receive text for every F-CODE</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [RX Document].</li> <li>Touch the [F-CODE].</li> <li>Select the specific key, in which the F-CODE is to be registered.</li> <li>Touch [F-CODE] and make the necessary settings.</li> <li>Touch [RX Doc. Settings], then select the desired processing type and touch [Enter]. * If [Forward] or [Print &amp; Forward] is selected, set the forwarding destination.</li> </ol>

#### (2) Port

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set how text received for each line is processed, whether it is to be printed, forwarded, etc.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When printing, forwarding, or otherwise processing text received for each line.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [RX Document].</li> <li>Touch the [Port].</li> <li>Select [G3-1] or [G3-2].</li> <li>If [Yes] is selected for [Document Management], set how the received document is to be handled.</li> <li>Touch [RX Doc. Settings], then select the desired processing type and touch [Enter]. * If [Forward] or [Print &amp; Forward] is selected, set the forwarding destination.</li> </ol>

#### (3) All Other Documents

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set how text received from a line other than the port is processed.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When setting how text received from a line other than the port is processed.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [RX Document].</li> <li>Touch the [All Other Documents].</li> <li>Touch [RX Doc. Settings], then select the desired processing type and touch [Enter]. * If [Forward] or [Print &amp; Forward] is selected, set the forwarding destination.</li> </ol>

## 6.6 Settings in the Repoerts

### 6.6.1 Program List

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To print the contents of programs stored in one-touch keys.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the Utility/Counter Key.</li> <li>Touch the [Repoerts].</li> <li>Touch the [Program List].</li> <li>A program list will be printed.</li> </ol>

### 6.6.2 Bulletin List

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To print a list of text stored in the bulletin board.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the Utility/Counter Key.</li> <li>Touch the [Repoerts].</li> <li>Touch the [Bulletin List].</li> <li>A bulletin list will be printed.</li> </ol>

### 6.6.3 Confidential List

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To print the contents of the private box.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the Utility/Counter Key.</li> <li>Touch the [Repoerts].</li> <li>Touch the [Confidential List].</li> <li>A confidential list will be printed.</li> </ol>

## 7. Initial Mode

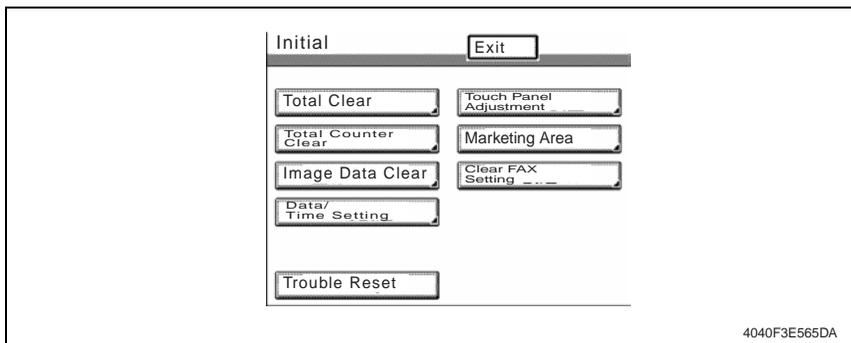
### 7.1 Initial Mode Function Setting Procedure

1. Press the Warm Restart switch, and “●” appears at the center on the left end of the screen.
2. Enter “3” from the 10-Key Pad.
3. Type the 8-digit service code and touch [Enter]. (Default value: 00000000)

#### NOTE

- When [END] is touched after a wrong service code has been entered, the Basic screen reappears.
- At the fourth access after entries of three wrong access codes, [END] is not available on the screen. It is therefore necessary to turn OFF and ON the Main Power Switch.
- If you forget the service code, it becomes necessary to replace the RAMS Board with a new one. Take necessary steps not to forget the service code.
- The RAMS Board is not available as a replacement part. If it requires replacement, contact Office Printing Support Division by way of CSES.

4. Select a function.



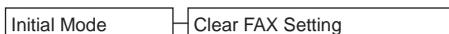
#### 7.1.1 Exiting

- Touch [Exit].

### 7.2 Initial Mode Function Tree

#### NOTE

- Of the Initial mode functions, only those related to the fax machine will be described in the following.



4040F3E561DA

## 7.3 Settings in the Initial Mode

### 7.3.1 Clear FAX Setting

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Clears the FAX-related settings.</li></ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Own Setting: To clear data relating to the local machine.</li><li>• Destination: To clear data relating to destinations, including the telephone directory and one-touch dials.</li><li>• Activity: To clear activity report information.</li><li>• Soft Switch: To clear settings made with soft switches.</li></ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Touch the [Clear FAX Setting].</li><li>2. Select the item, in which the settings are to be cleared, and touch [END]. (Two or more items can be selected.)</li><li>3. Select [Yes] and touch [Enter].</li></ol>

## 8. Maintenance Mode

### 8.1 Maintenance Mode Function Setting Procedure

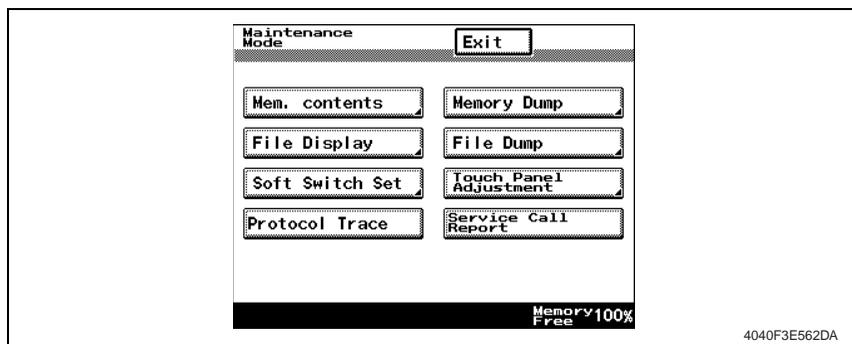
#### A. Procedure

1. Press the Utility/Counter key.
2. Touch [Check Detail].
3. Press the following keys in this order.  
Stop → 0 → 0 → Stop → 0 → 2
4. Touch [Maintenance Mode].
5. Type the 8-digit service code and touch [Enter]. (Default value: 00000000)

#### NOTE

- When [END] is touched after a wrong service code has been entered, the Basic screen reappears.
- At the fourth access after entries of three wrong access codes, [END] is not available on the screen. It is therefore necessary to turn OFF and ON the Main Power Switch.
- If you forget the service code, it becomes necessary to replace the RAMS Board with a new one. Take necessary steps not to forget the service code.
- The RAMS Board is not available as a replacement part. If it requires replacement, contact Office Printing Support Division by way of CSES.

6. The Maintenance Mode menu will appear.



#### NOTE

- To change the service code, see “Service Security Mode.”

#### B. Exiting

- Touch the [Exit] key.

#### NOTE

- The Maintenance mode is not disclosed to users. After the job is completed, therefore, be sure to exit the mode by turning OFF and ON the Main Power Switch.

## 8.2 Maintenance Mode function tree

### NOTE

- Of the Maintenance mode functions, only those related to the fax machine will be described in the following.

Maintenance Mode	Mem. contents
	Memory Dump
	File Display
	File Dump
	Soft Switch Set
	Touch Panel Adjustment
	Protocol Trace
	Service Call Report

4040F3E563DA

## 8.3 Settings in the Maintenance Mode

### 8.3.1 Mem. contents

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This displays the RAM data of MAIN-CPU on the LCD by specifying its absolute address which will be provided by our technical department.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Call the Maintenance Mode to the screen.</li> <li>2. Touch the [Mem. contents].</li> <li>3. Type the absolute address from the 10-Key Pad and [A] to [F] and touch [Enter].</li> <li>4. Touch [↑] or [↓] to change the address to be displayed.</li> <li>5. Touch [Enter] twice.</li> </ol>

### 8.3.2 Memory Dump

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This outputs a report on the RAM data of MAIN-CPU by specifying its absolute address which will be provided by our technical department.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Call the Maintenance Mode to the screen.</li> <li>2. Touch the [Memory Dump].</li> <li>3. Touch the [Address].</li> <li>4. Type the absolute address from the 10-Key Pad and [A] to [F] and touch [Enter].</li> <li>5. Touch the [Length].</li> <li>6. Type the absolute address from the 10-Key Pad and [A] to [F] and touch [Enter].</li> <li>7. Touch [Enter], and the memory dump sequence is started.</li> </ol>

### 8.3.3 File Display

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This displays the RAM data of MAIN-CPU on the LCD by specifying its file name.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Call the Maintenance Mode to the screen.</li> <li>2. Touch the [File Display].</li> <li>3. Type the file name from the 10-Key Pad or the keyboard on the screen and touch [Enter].</li> <li>4. Touch [↑] or [↓] to change the address to be displayed.</li> <li>5. Touch the [Enter].</li> </ol>

### 8.3.4 File Dump

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This outputs a report on the RAM data of MAIN-CPU by specifying its file name.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Call the Maintenance Mode to the screen.</li> <li>2. Touch the [File Dump].</li> <li>3. Type the file name from the 10-Key Pad or the keyboard on the screen and touch [Enter].</li> <li>4. Touch [↑] or [↓] to change the address to be displayed.</li> <li>5. Touch [Enter], and the file dump sequence is started.</li> </ol>

### 8.3.5 Soft Switch Set

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This sets up the soft switches for maintenance.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Call the Maintenance Mode to the screen.</li> <li>2. Touch the [Mode Select].</li> <li>3. Enter the mode number (a 3-digit numeral) from the 10-Key Pad.</li> <li>4. Touch the [Bit Select].</li> <li>5. Align the cursor using [←] or [→] and define the bit using 0 or 1 of the 10-Key Pad. (To set using hexadecimal numbers, touch [HEX Selection] and enter the data using the 10-Key Pad and A to F keys.)</li> <li>6. Touch [Enter] twice.</li> </ol>

### 8.3.6 Touch Panel Adjustment

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To adjust the position of the Touch Panel.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the Touch Panel is slow to respond when touched</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Call the Maintenance Mode to the screen.</li> <li>2. Touch the [Touch Panel Adjustment].</li> <li>3. Following the arrow, sequentially press four points (+) on the screen using a pen or similar object.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Press the very center of each point.</b></li> <li>• <b>Use care not to allow the tip of the pen to damage the surface of the screen.</b></li> </ul>

### 8.3.7 Protocol Trace

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To produce an output of a protocol trace.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Call the Maintenance Mode to the screen.</li> <li>2. Touch the [Protocol Trace].</li> </ol>

### 8.3.8 Service Call Report

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To produce an output of a service call report.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Call the Maintenance Mode to the screen.</li> <li>2. Touch the [Service Call Report].</li> </ol>

# 9. Tech. Rep. Mode

## 9.1 Tech. Rep. Mode function setting procedure

### NOTE

- Ensure appropriate security for Service mode function setting procedures. They should NEVER be shown to any unauthorized person not involved with service jobs.

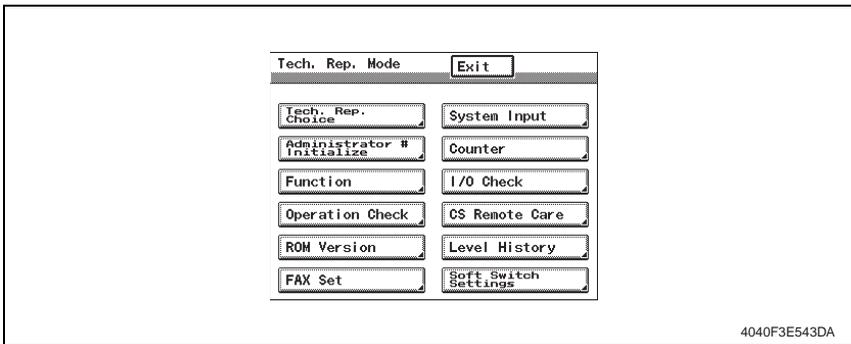
### A. Procedure

1. Press the Utility/Counter key.
2. Touch [Check Detail].
3. Press the following keys in this order.  
Stop → 0 → 0 → Stop → 0 → 1
4. Enter the 8-digit service code and touch [END]. (Default value: 00000000)

### NOTE

- When [END] is touched after a wrong service code has been entered, the Basic screen reappears.
- At the fourth access after entries of three wrong access codes, [END] is not available on the screen. It is therefore necessary to turn OFF and ON the Main Power Switch.
- If you forget the service code, it becomes necessary to replace the RAMS Board with a new one. Take necessary steps not to forget the service code.
- The RAMS Board is not available as a replacement part. If it requires replacement, contact Office Printing Support Division by way of CSES.

5. The Tech. Rep. Mode menu will appear.



4040F3E543DA

### NOTE

- To change the service code, see “Service Security Mode.”

### B. Exiting

- Touch the [Exit] key.

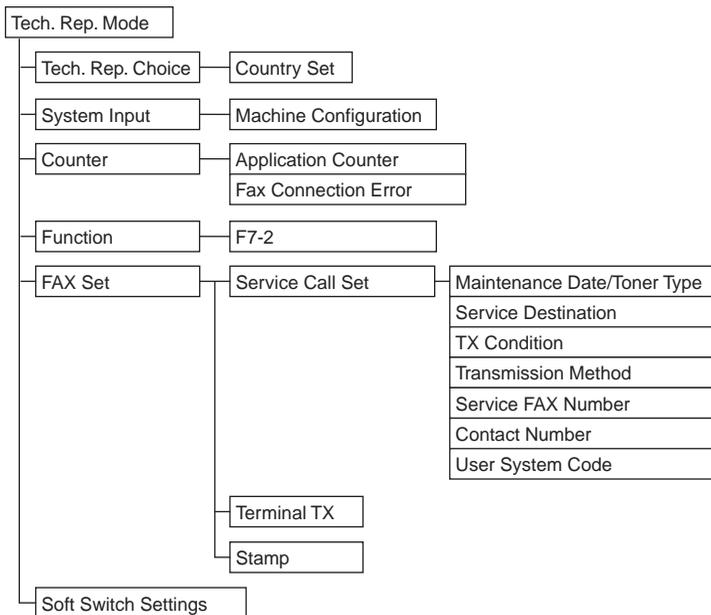
### C. Changing the Setting Value in Service Mode Functions

- Use the +/- key to enter or change the setting value.
- Use the 10-Key Pad to enter the setting value. (To change the setting value, first press the Clear key before making an entry.)

## 9.2 Tech. Rep. Mode function tree

### NOTE

- Of the Tech. rep. mode functions, only those related to the fax machine will be described in the following.



4040F3E564DA

## 9.3 Settings in the Tech. Rep. Choice

### 9.3.1 Country Set

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To set the default value for each country for communications-related choice functions.</li> </ul>																																						
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The function becomes available on the screen to choose only for the machine that is to be marketed in Europe or Others and that is equipped with the optional fax function.</li> </ul>																																						
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select the applicable country.</li> </ul> <p>&lt;For Europe&gt;</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>Germany</td> <td>France</td> <td>U.K.</td> <td>Italy</td> <td>Austria</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Swiss</td> <td>Belgium</td> <td>Holland</td> <td>Spain</td> <td>Portugal</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Denmark</td> <td>Norway</td> <td>Sweden</td> <td>Finland</td> <td>Czech</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Hungary</td> <td>Poland</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </table> <p>&lt;For Others&gt;</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>South Africa</td> <td>Australia</td> <td>Hong Kong</td> <td>Singapore</td> <td>New Zealand</td> <td>Malaysia</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Argentina</td> <td>Korea</td> <td>Taiwan</td> <td>other 1</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>other 2</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	Germany	France	U.K.	Italy	Austria	Swiss	Belgium	Holland	Spain	Portugal	Denmark	Norway	Sweden	Finland	Czech	Hungary	Poland				South Africa	Australia	Hong Kong	Singapore	New Zealand	Malaysia	Argentina	Korea	Taiwan	other 1			other 2					
Germany	France	U.K.	Italy	Austria																																			
Swiss	Belgium	Holland	Spain	Portugal																																			
Denmark	Norway	Sweden	Finland	Czech																																			
Hungary	Poland																																						
South Africa	Australia	Hong Kong	Singapore	New Zealand	Malaysia																																		
Argentina	Korea	Taiwan	other 1																																				
other 2																																							

## 9.4 Settings in the System Input

### 9.4.1 Machine Configuration

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Displays the machine configuration status.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The machine configuration status is displayed as Yes or No.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.</li> <li>Touch [System Input] and [Machine Configuration], in that order.</li> </ol>

## 9.5 Settings in the Counter

### 9.5.1 Checking the counter reading

- Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.
- Touch the [Counter].
- Touch [Check] and the specific counter key whose reading is to be checked.

### 9.5.2 Clearing readings of all counters at once

- Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.
- Touch the [Counter].
- Touch the [Counter Reset].
- Touch the counter keys to be cleared and then touch [OK].

### 9.5.3 Clearing the reading of a specific counter

- Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.
- Touch the [Counter].
- Touch the specific counter key to be cleared and press the Clear key.  
If the reading of a wrong counter key has been cleared, press the Interrupt key to undo the clearing operation.

### 9.5.4 Application Counter

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To display or clear the readings of application counters.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Copy: Number of copies made</li> <li>Printer: Number of printed pages produced via computer</li> <li>List Print: Number of printed pages of lists</li> <li>Fax Print: Number of printed pages received as fax and mail</li> <li>Fax Transmission: Number of pages of fax transmitted</li> <li>Mail Transmission: Number of pages transmitted by fax/scanner</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p>Checking the counter reading</p> <p>☞ 32</p> <p>Clearing the counter reading (all and a specific one)</p> <p>☞ 32</p>

### 9.5.5 Fax Connection Error

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To display or clear the count of the number of errors occurred during fax transmission.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Transmission Error: Counts fax transmission errors</li> <li>Receive Error: To count fax reception errors</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p>Checking the counter reading   32</p> <p>Clearing the counter reading (all and a specific one)   32</p>

## 9.6 Settings in the Function

### 9.6.1 F7-2

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To automatically adjust the Original Size Detecting Sensor. (only for a FAX)</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the Original Size Detecting Sensor is replaced</li> <li>When an optional sensor is mounted</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the Tech. Rep. mode menu, touch [Function] and [F7-2], in that order.</li> <li>Place five sheets of A3 paper, one on top of another, on the Original Glass and lower the Original Cover.</li> <li>Press the Start key to let the machine start the adjustment procedure.</li> <li>The adjustment procedure is automatically terminated as soon as the required adjustment has been made.</li> </ol>

## 9.7 Settings in the FAX Set

### 9.7.1 Service Call Set

- When a set condition takes place, the status of the machine is automatically notified to the call center.

#### A. Maintenance Date/Toner Type

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the maintenance date and type of toner.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<p>&lt;Toner Type&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "14k".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">5k                      "14k"</p> <p>&lt;Maintenance Date&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter [Year], [Month], and [Day].</li> </ul>

#### B. Service Destination

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the telephone number and communication mode.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch [Service Destination] and enter the telephone number of address (up to 64 digits can be entered).</li> <li>Touch [Change Comm. Mode] and select the communication mode.                      [FAX]: G3-1, G3-2                      [InternetFAX]: InternetFAX                      [PC]: E-Mail</li> </ol>

**C. TX Condition**

**(1) Prints**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Service call for exceeding specified number of papers.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The default setting is "ON".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"ON"                      OFF</p>

**(2) Toner Empty**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Service call for empty toner.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The default setting is "ON".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"ON"                      OFF</p>

**(3) Drum Life**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Service call for reaching life cycle of drum.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The default setting is "ON".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"ON"                      OFF</p>

**(4) Malfunction**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To set whether or not to make a service call when a machine failure occurs.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The default setting is "ON".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"ON"                      OFF</p>

**D. Transmission Method**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To set the transmission method.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When changing the transmission method</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The default setting is "Data".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">Report                      "Data"                      E-Mail</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select [Report] for fax transmission, [Data] for data transmission, and [E-Mail] for e-mail transmission.</li> </ul>

**E. Service FAX Number**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enters the Fax number on a report when a notification to the call center fails.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Touch [Service FAX Number] and enter the telephone number.</li> </ol>

**F. Contact Number**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enters the information call number on a report when a notification to the call center fails.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch [Contact Number] and enter the telephone number.</li> </ol>

**G. User System Code**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Memo screen, on which to record user system identification information</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Fwd].</li> <li>Touch [User System Code] and then enter the code.</li> </ol>

**9.7.2 Terminal TX**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can receive data on the one touch dial or send the data stored in the system to the call center.</li> </ul>
Use	
Setting/ Procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Touch the [Terminal TX].</li> <li>Set [Function ID Code] and [Extended ID Code] and touch [Execute].</li> </ol>

**9.7.3 Stamp**

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Used to indicate when the TX marker option is installed.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the TX marker option is mounted</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default setting is "YES".</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: center;">"YES"                      NO</p>

FK-503

Adjustment / Setting

## 10. Fax-related Adjustment Items

### 10.1 CD/FD Zoom Ratio Correction (Fax)

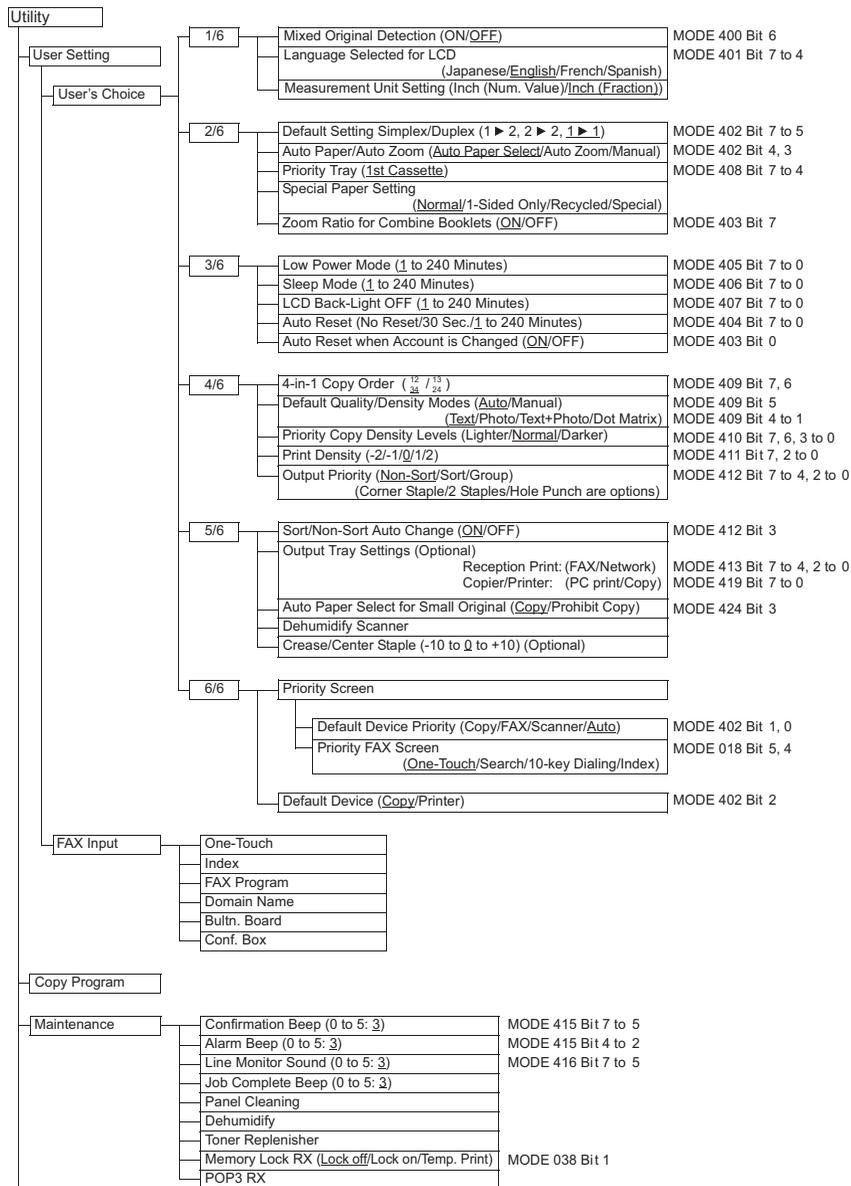
- Factory adjustment items

#### **NOTE**

- **This mode is for factory adjustment only and should NOT be used.**

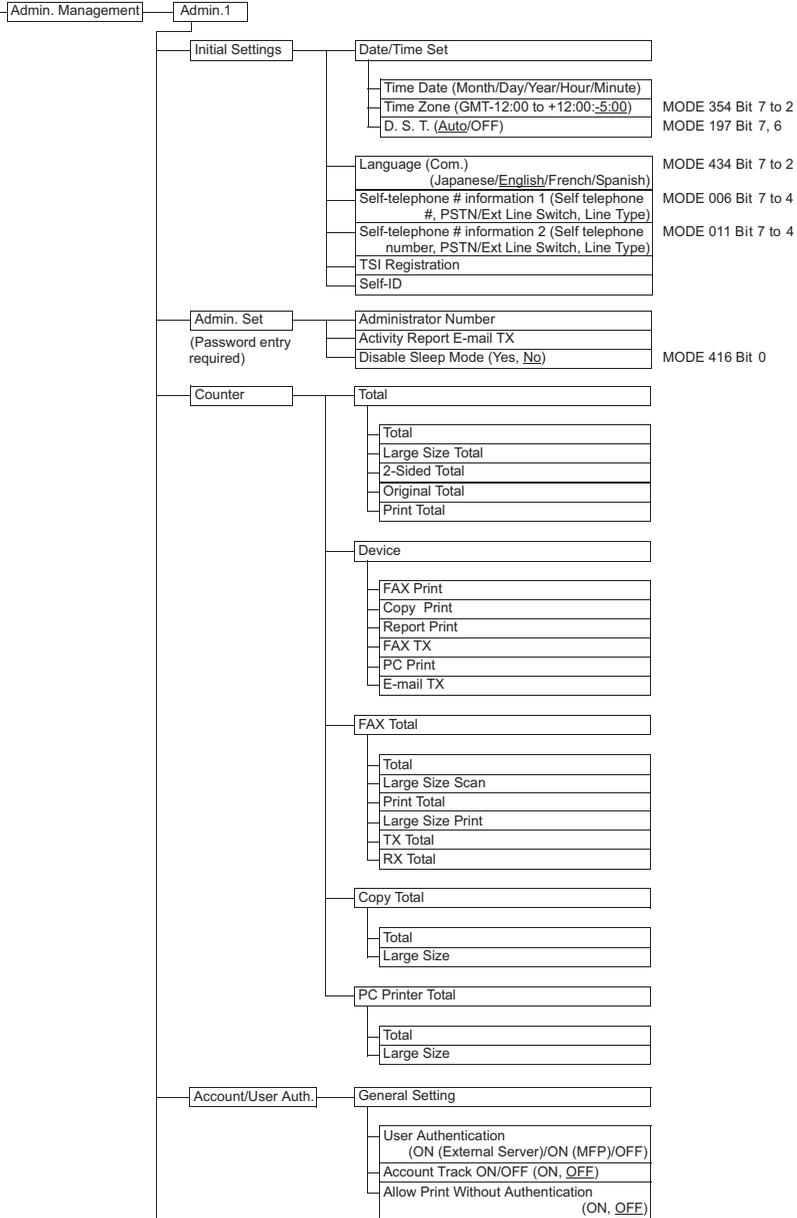
# 11. Soft Switch List

## 11.1 Soft Switches Disclosed to Users (Screen Setting)



Continued to next page

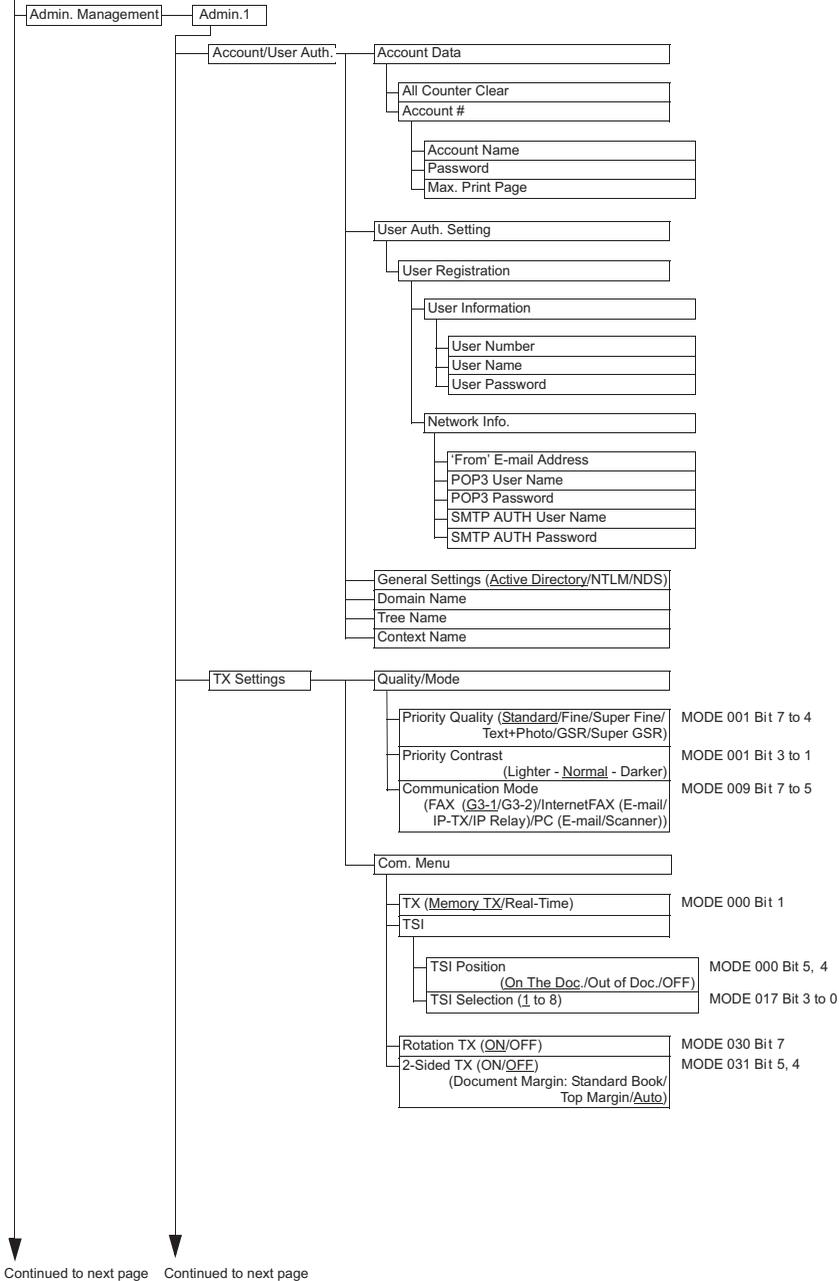
Continued from previous page



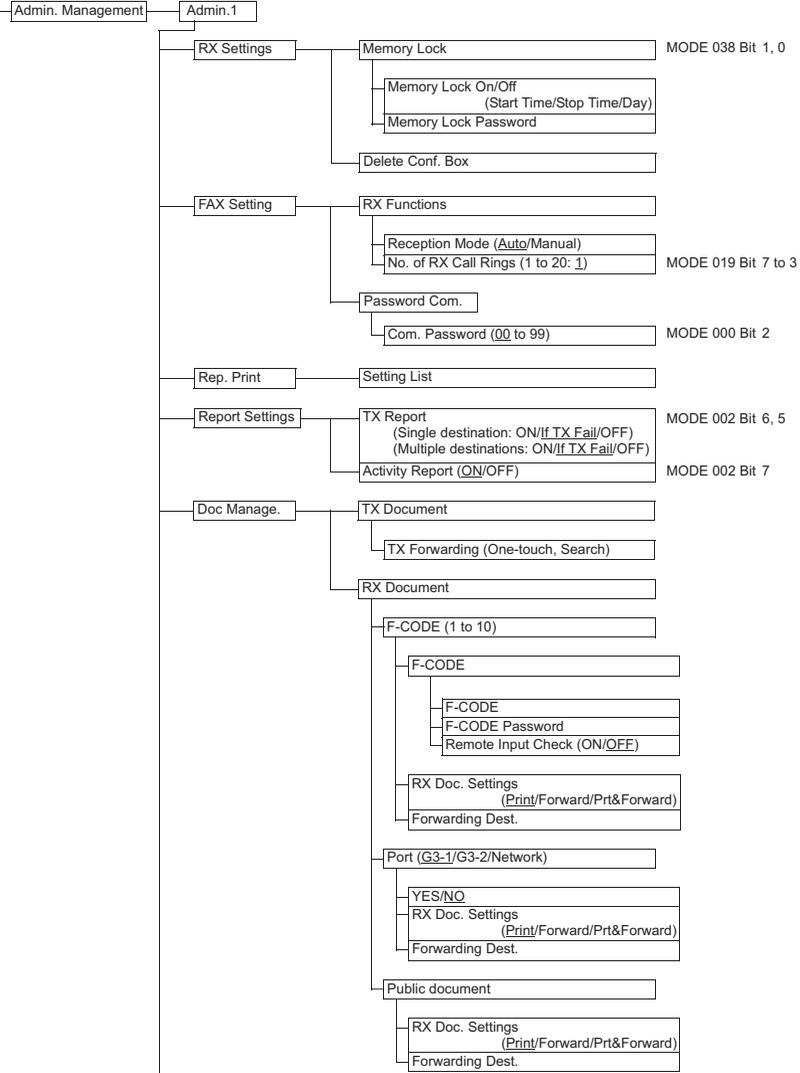
Continued to next page

Continued to next page

Continued from previous page



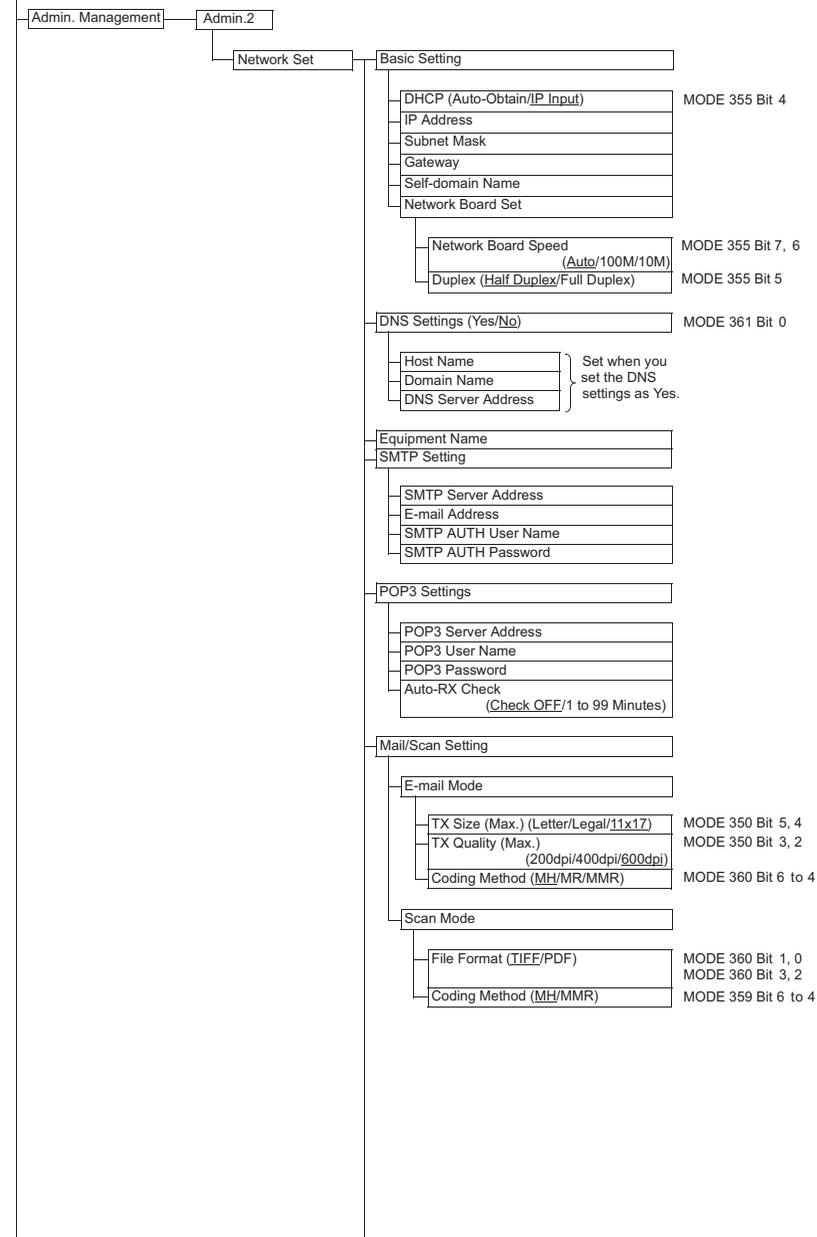
Continued from previous page



Continued to next page

Continued to next page

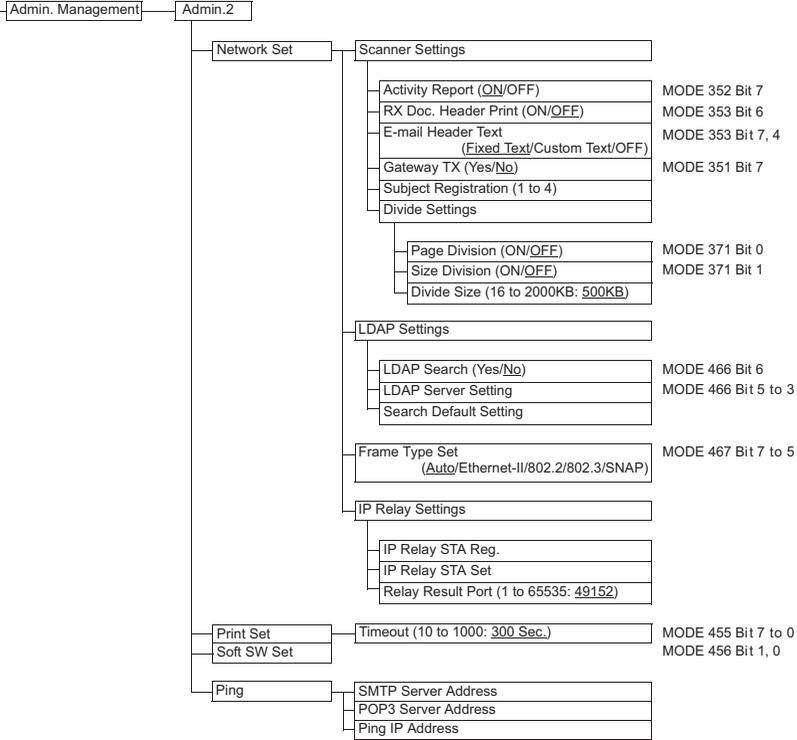
Continued from previous page



Continued to next page

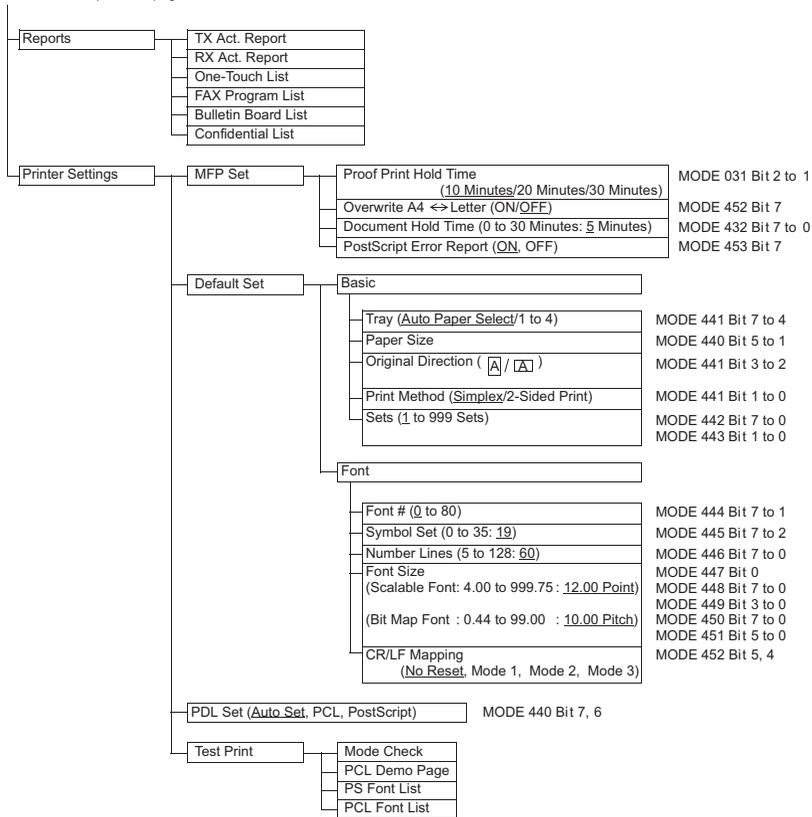
Continued to next page

Continued from previous page



Continued to next page

Continued from previous page



FK-503

Adjustment / Setting

## 11.2 List of Defaults

MODE	HEX (For U.S.)	HEX (For Europe)	Remark
000	30	30	TX Marker, TSI, Password, Memory TX *
001	14	14	FAX quality, Density, Dest. Insert *
002	A8	A8	Report *
003	63	63	Line monitor, Report of broadcast transmissions *
004	16	16	Memory time *
005	10	20	# of redialing *
006	32	32	DP speed, PB switch, PSTN Port auto selection
007	B9	B5	Print range *
008	00	00	Select print paper *
009	1A	1A	Communication mode *
010	20	20	(Undefined)
011	31	31	DP speed, PB switch *
012	40	40	# key on one-touch screen
013	35	35	Auto-mode screen, Operation when INBOX forward failed
014	01	01	Redialing interval *
015	00	00	(Undefined)
016	40	40	RX Time Stamp, Extra telephone
017	C0	C0	Select initial value of TSI *
018	01	01	Destination displaying screen *
019	08	08	Ringer detection counts (PSTN 1) *
020	40	40	Display report
021	08	08	Display symbol rate
022	02	02	FAX memory nearly full capacity
023	F8	F8	Set merge for report image, E-mail error retransmission
024	81	81	Display forward function button, Display caller ID, Receiving by other users
025	7F	7F	Various service calls
026	DE	DE	Service call, Remote maintenance
027	24	24	Display ID, Display button, Secured comm., F code
028	63	63	Remote print protocol, # of remote multi-copies
029	00	00	(Undefined)
030	B1	B0	Rotation TX, Rotate print, 2in1, print paper selection restriction *
031	A0	A0	Margins for multi-sheet report image, Margins for output format of report image *
032	35	21	FAX photo/txt mixed mode
033	14	14	Draft printing mode and level *
034	02	02	Cut print paper leading edge, Overlapped printing
035	03	03	RX by memory
036	01	01	Receiving (remote copy) printing order *
037	F8	F8	Select FAX print paper cassette

MODE	HEX (For U.S.)	HEX (For Europe)	Remark
038	0A	0A	Turn on print lamp for out-of print paper, Print stop/start *
039	00	00	(Undefined)
040	FA	FA	2-dim coding, T.6 coding, JBIG, V34JBIG
041	40	40	ECM mode
042	3F	3F	Redialing interval *
043	80	80	# of resending doc., Redialing non-answered call
044	80	80	RTN sending error, Action against abnormal overseas communications, T4 timer
045	D4	D4	(Undefined)
046	00	00	(Undefined)
047	88	88	V34 fallback tolerance
048	C6	C6	Set up MODEM standard
049	0D	0D	Transmission speed upper limit (TX)
050	0D	0D	Transmission speed upper limit (RX)
051	20	20	Declare RX print paper size
052	00	00	(Undefined)
053	C8	C8	Sender's character code size
054	7A	7A	History control of V.34 auto dialing, Demodulation method
055	02	02	(Undefined)
056	0C	0C	F code function
057	19	19	Time that ANSam TX starts after line is blocked
058   076	3C   14	3C   14	(Undefined)
077	60	60	Hook monitoring counts
078	00	00	(Undefined)
079	02	02	(Undefined)
080	23	6E	Estimated time of line connection (PSTN1)
081	00	00	(Undefined)
082	04	24	Detect busy tone, Detect line disconnection (inverted polarity) (PSTN1)
083	50	50	Hook monitoring cycle, Hook detection voltage (PSTN1)
084	14	28	PB sending lever (PSTN1)
085	90	C0	TX level (PSTN1)
086	40	40	RX attenuator (PSTN1)
087	90	90	Detect continuous ringer, Ringer detection frequency (PSTN1)
088	C0	C0	Process detection time out of 2nd dial tone, 1300 Hz detection (PSTN1)
089	00	00	TX method, Prefix # (PSTN1) *
090	00	00	(Undefined)
091	00	00	(Undefined)
092	70	70	Sending echo protection tone, switch carrier frequency (PSTN1)
093	48	40	CED, Receive command echo (PSTN1)

MODE	HEX (For U.S.)	HEX (For Europe)	Remark
094	0C	0C	AGC lock (PSTN1)
095	20	20	Digital TX/RX cable equalizer (PSTN1)
096	14	14	CI signal sending time (PSTN1)
097	14	14	TCF/NTCF sending level down, V.34 symbol rate (PSTN1)
098	46	46	CM signal sending start time, EQM threshold value (PSTN1)
099	88	88	Symbol speed threshold value (PSTN1)
110	23	23	Estimated time of line connection (PSTN2)
111	00	00	(Undefined)
112	28	28	Detect busy tone, Detect line disconnection (inverted polarity) (PSTN2)
113	59	59	(Undefined)
114	14	1C	PB sending lever (PSTN2)
115	90	90	TX level (PSTN2)
116	40	40	RX attenuator (PSTN2)
117	90	90	Detect continuous ringer, Ringer detection frequency (PSTN2)
118	C0	C0	Process detection time out of 2nd dial tone, 1300 Hz detection (PSTN2)
119	00	00	TX method, Prefix # (PSTN2) *
120	00	00	(Undefined)
121	00	00	(Undefined)
122	70	70	Sending echo protection tone, switch carrier frequency (PSTN2)
123	48	48	CED, Receive command echo (PSTN2)
124	0C	0C	AGC lock (PSTN2)
125	20	20	Digital TX/RX cable equalizer (PSTN2)
126	14	14	CI signal sending time (PSTN2)
127	14	14	TCF/NTCF sending level down, V33/V29 sending level down, V.34 symbol rate (PSTN2)
128	46	46	CM signal sending start time, EQM threshold value (PSTN2)
129	88	88	Symbol speed threshold value (PSTN1)
130	00	00	(Undefined)
189	00	00	
190	00	00	Restrict SF/SSF comm.
191	00	00	(Undefined)
192	C0	C0	Order of displaying year to date
193	33	33	(Undefined)
196	32	32	
197	C0	C1	Daylight saving time
198	D0	D0	TX forwarding *
199	00	00	(Undefined)
211	02	02	
212	40	00	DP make rate (PSTN1)

MODE	HEX (For U.S.)	HEX (For Europe)	Remark
213   231	42   05	42   02	(Undefined)
232	40	00	DP make rate (PSTN2)
233   248	42   51	42   51	(Undefined)
249	08	08	Ringer detection counts (PSTN2)
250   287	00   FF	00   FF	(Undefined)
288	FF	FF	Insert dummy data before PIX
289   299	FF   00	FF   00	(Undefined)
300	00	00	REV soft switch for maintenance
301	00	00	REV soft switch for maintenance
302	00	00	REV soft switch for maintenance
303	00	00	REV soft switch for maintenance
304	00	00	REV soft switch for maintenance
305	00	00	REV soft switch for maintenance
306   309	00   00	00   00	(Undefined)
310	00	00	Increase sound level *
311	00	00	Invert screen *
312	03	03	Key repeat start time *
313	01	01	Key repeat interval *
314	03	03	Display reservation completion screen *
315	4C	4C	Buzzer
316   319	00   00	00   00	(Undefined)
320	F0	F0	Cassette-specified printing (G3-1)
321	F0	F0	Cassette-specified printing (G3-2)
322	F0	F0	Cassette-specified printing (Network)
323	F0	F0	Cassette-specified printing (Reports)
324   349	00   00	00   00	(Undefined)
350	A8	A8	Network, Internet fax capability of receiver *
351	18	18	Network, Gateway transmission *
352	D0	D0	Network, Notification of result *
353	88	80	Network, Text insertion, Header printing

MODE	HEX (For U.S.)	HEX (For Europe)	Remark
354	38	60	Network, Time zone setting
355	20	20	Network, Switch 10M/100M, Switch Full-duplex/Half-duplex
356	40	40	Network, SMTP transmission timeout *
357	40	40	Network, SMTP receive timeout *
358	20	20	Network, POP3 receiving timeout *
359	00	00	Network, # of E-mail TX re-trials
360	80	80	Network, Coding method *
361	78	78	DNS function *
362	80	80	(Undefined)
363	20	20	Network, Image quality of text document
364	00	00	(Undefined)
365	04	04	Network, FTP timeout
366	08	08	Network, Network maintenance window display *
367	20	20	Network, Time of DNS inquiry timeout *
368	C2	C2	Network, Report CVS output *
369	00	00	Network, PING timeout
370	FF	FF	Network, Additional # of E-mail TX re-trials
371	40	40	Network, Interval of retrials to be set for additional # of E-mail TX re-trials *
372	0F	0F	Network, Transmission interval of size-divided E-mail file data *
373	08	08	Network, Full mode function *
374	40	40	Network, NOTIFY setting
375	00	00	(Undefined)
376	00	00	(Undefined)
377	00	00	(Undefined)
378	00	00	(Undefined)
379	10	10	Edit data when forwarding received documents
380	00	00	(N/W) APOP authentication, SMTP authentication *
381	80	80	(N/W) IP Relay function *
382	40	40	(N/W) IP Relay result timeout processing, default *
383	00	00	(Undefined)
399	C0	C0	
400	01	01	Copy, Set up memory recall, Priority doc. mixed mode, Language code *
401	00	00	(Undefined)
402	01	01	Priority doc. mode, Priority copy mode, Automatic function priority mode, Priority application *
403	01	01	Draft print zoom ratio, Auto-reset by user *
404	01	01	Auto-reset time *
405	0F	0F	Pre-heat time *
406	0F	0F	Auto-Power source off time *
407	01	01	LCD back light (Off time) *

MODE	HEX (For U.S.)	HEX (For Europe)	Remark
408	00	00	Default feeder (Print paper) *
409	08	08	4-in-1 print Order, Density Priority, Original Image Type *
410	54	54	AE density level, Priority manual density level *
411	00	00	Sign bit, Adjust print density *
412	08	08	Priority Sort Mode, Priority Stapling Mode, Priority Punch Mode, Intelligent Sorting, # of holes to punch *
413	04	04	Specify output bin *
414	A0	A0	Reserve memory copy
415	6C	6C	Beep Volume, Alarm Volume *
416	60	60	Set sound vol. (monitor), Orientation change, No auto-Power source off *
417	63	63	Set max # of copies *
418	58	58	Imaging unit life stop, near life stop
419	40	40	Specify output bin *
420	00	00	Auto panel reset confirmation time *
421	21	42	(Undefined)
422	08	08	Total Counter, Size Counter, Copy Kit Counter
423	4E	4C	Copy, key counter, vendor mode, Doc. size OP *
424	18	18	Metric/inch mix, Copy mode, Small doc. *
425	00	00	Copy, Adjust quality mode
426	50	00	Movement finisher bin *
427	00	00	(Undefined)
428	00	00	(Undefined)
429	00	04	Copy, Auto reset of panel for ADF *
430	00	00	(Undefined)
431	00	00	(Undefined)
432	05	05	PC printer, Over-memory wait time *
433	04	04	Specify language code (Display-use) *
434	04	04	Specify language code (Machine-use) *
435	04	04	Specify language code (Network-use) *
440	12	04	PC printer, PDL set, paper size *
441	80	80	PC printer, paper tray, paper orientation, print method *
442	01	01	PC printer, # of copies (Scalable) (Least significant 8 bits) *
443	00	00	PC printer, # of copies (Scalable) (Most significant 2 bits) *
444	00	00	PC printer, font # *
445	74	4C	PC printer, symbol set *
446	3C	40	PC printer, # of lines *
447	00	00	PC printer, Unit of font size
448	30	30	PC printer, Font size (Scalable) (Least significant 8 bits) *
449	00	00	PC printer, Font size (Scalable) (Most significant 8 bits) *
450	E8	E8	PC printer, Font size (Bitmap) (Least significant 8 bits) *

MODE	HEX (For U.S.)	HEX (For Europe)	Remark
451	03	03	PC printer, Font size (Bitmap) (Most significant 6 bits) *
452	00	00	PC printer, Switch A4/letter, Map CR/LF *
453	00	00	Set PostScript error print *
455	2C	2C	PC printer, Timeout set (Least significant 8 bits) *
456	01	01	PC printer, Timeout set (Least significant 2 bits)
457   463	00   00	00   00	(Undefined)
464	8C	8C	PC printer, RAW port number set (Least significant 8 bits)
465	23	23	PC printer, RAW port number set (Most significant 8 bits)
466	00	00	Set LDAP, SSL/TLS with HTTP
467	00	00	PC printer, frame type set *
468	0F	0F	(Undefined)
469	00	00	(Undefined)
470	00	00	Set export extension, simple format, IT Series Agent *
471	00	00	Set user's list screen display, default *
472	00	00	(Undefined)
473	00	00	Set priority Job List screen *
474	00	00	(Undefined)
475	00	00	(Undefined)
476	00	00	(Undefined)
477	00	00	Set fax registration restriction, destination display *
478   511	00   00	00   00	(Undefined)
512	80	80	Detect dial tone (PSTN1)
768	0D	0D	DCS-TCF interval in V.17 and V.27tar (PSTN1)
769	09	09	DCS-TCF interval in V.29 (PSTN1)
770	22	C8	CFR-PIX interval (PSTN1)
771	23	23	T1 timer for auto-TX (PSTN1)
772	23	23	T1 timer for auto-RX (PSTN1)
773	23	23	T1 timer for manual TX (PSTN1)
774	23	23	T1 timer for manual RX (PSTN1)
775	23	23	T1 timer for auto-TX of polling (PSTN1)
776	23	23	T1 timer for manual TX of polling (PSTN1)
777	07	08	PIX-Post command interval (PSTN1)

### 11.3 List of Soft Switches

**NOTE**

- If no bit settings are given in the soft switch list that follows, the factory settings for those particular bits are fixed and should never be changed.

 : Default settings of U.S.

 : Default settings of Europe

 : Default settings are common

MODE	Factory setting bit									
000	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:30
		0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Specifies whether TX markers are return to ON or OFF after completing operations. <*>	OFF	Yes		
6	Select position of TX markers. <*>	Top & bottom of doc.	bottom of doc.		
5	Specifies whether printing TSI on transmitted document is returned to ON or OFF after completing operations. *	No	Yes		
4	Select position of TSI. *	Outside doc.	Outside doc.		
3	Specifies whether confirming communication password at TX is returned to ON or OFF after completing operations. <*>	No	Yes		
2	Confirm communication password at RX. <*>	No	Yes		
1	Specifies which TX method is returned to ON, memory-stored TX or nonstorage TX, after completing operations. *	Memory-stored	Non-stored	Memory-stored TX includes quick memory TX.	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
001	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:14
		0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Specify which image quality is returned to be assigned after completing operations. *	Bit 7-4:	0000	Not available
6			0001	<b>Standard</b>
5			0010	Fine
4			0011	Not available
			0100	Superfine
			0101	GSR
			0110	Not available
			0111	Super GSR
			1000	Text + photo
			Others	Not available
3	Specify which density is returned to be assigned after FAX communication. *	Bit 3-1:	000	Much lighter
2			001	Lighter
1			010	<b>Normal</b>
			011	Darker
			100	Much darker
	Others	Not available		
0	Specify whether to insert a destination name on document to send. <*>	No	Yes	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
002	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:A8
		1	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Print communication activity report automatically for every 50 activities. *	No	Yes	"No" means manual print.
6	Select when a result report should be printed. *	Bit 6-5: 00		No print
5		01		Print for incomplete TX
		10		Always print
		11		Not available
3	Print memory clear report.	No	Yes	Specifies result reports for TX, incomplete TX, or broadcasting TX.
2	Log management of broadcast transmissions. <*>	All together	Individual	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
003	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:63
		0	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Result report of broadcast transmissions *	Bit 7 to 6: 00		No print
6		01		Output for incomplete TX
		10		Always print
		11		Not available
5	Monitor line. (PSTN1)	No	Yes	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
004	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:16
		0	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
3	Selects holding time of incompleted TX document in memory. <*>	Bit 3-0:	0000	IC memory device Delete file from memory immediately (No redialing function).	
2			0001		10 min
1			0010		20 min
0			0011		30 min
			0100		40 min
			0101		50 min
			0110		1 hr
			0111		2 hr
			1000		4 hr
			1001		8 hr
			1010		12 hr
1011			24 hr		
1100			72 hr		
	Others	Not available			

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
005	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:10
		0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select number of redialing 1. (Number of auto redialing at 1st stage) *	Bit 7-4:	0000	0	Specifies the number of redialing with the interval specified by "Select redialing interval 1 (MODE 042 Bit 7-4)."
6			0001	1	
5			0010	2	
4			0011	3	
			0100	4	
			0101	5	
			0110	6	
			0111	7	
			1000	8	
			1001	9	
			1010	10	
			1011	11	
			1100	12	
			1101	13	
1110			14		
1111	15				
3	Select number of redialing 2. (Number of auto redialing at the 2nd stage) *	Bit 3-0:	0000	0	Once redialing set by "Select number of redialing 1 (MODE 005 Bit 7-4)", the system redials the number of times specified by this soft switch. Redialing interval follows "Select redialing interval 2 (MODE 042 Bit 3-0)" at the first time and then follows "Select redialing interval 1 (MODE 042 Bit 7-4)" from the second time.
2			0001	1	
1			0010	2	
0			0011	3	
			0100	4	
			0101	5	
			0110	6	
			0111	7	
			1000	8	
			1001	9	
			1010	10	
			1011	11	
			1100	12	
			1101	13	
1110			14		
1111	15				

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting <\*>: Soft switch setting
- If the first stage has been set [0000], the system proceeds to the second stage after 10 minutes without carrying out the first stage.
- If the first and the second stages have been set [0000], the auto redialing process will not be is carried out.

MODE	Factory setting bit									
006	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:32
		0	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select dial line speed (DP speed). (PSTN1) *	Bit 7-6:	00	10 pps	This is valid only when "Switch PB/DP (MODE 006 Bit5)" sets DP. 16 pps is unavailable to users.
6			01	20 pps	
			10	16 pps	
			11	Not available	
5	Select a line type (tone or pulse) for calling (Switch PB/DP). (PSTN1) *	DP	PB	DP : pulse PB : tone	
4	Select standard phone line connected with the system (Extension / External line connection). (PSTN1) *	Extension connection	External line connection		
1	Select PSTN port automatically: Specify how to dial standard phone lines. <*>	No	Yes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the system has 2 PSTN lines and one of them is used, you can use the other line by selecting "Yes."</li> <li>If you have only 1 PSTN line or wish to use 2 lines for the extension and the external lines separately, select "No."</li> </ul>	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting <\*>: Soft switch setting
- The feature with [\*\*] (Bit 1) is available only in a system with a multi-port option.
- For PSTN2, see mode 011.

MODE	Factory setting bit									
007	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:B9 (For U.S.) HEX:B5 (For Europe)
		1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description		
		0	1			
7	Select upper limit of cut-off length after printing: When a received document is longer than the print paper and if the excess length is shorter than that specified here, it is cut off. If it is longer than that value specified with these bits, it is split into multiple pages. This feature is enabled when the following 2 conditions are satisfied: • When printing a received document • When bit 1 of this mode is 1 <*>	Bit 7-5:	000	0 mm		
6			001	8 mm		
5				010		12 mm
				011		14 mm
				100		18 mm
				101		20 mm
				110		24 mm
				111		Not available
4	Select upper limit of reduction ratio of received document: When a received document is longer than the print paper, it will be reduced to fit the paper with the upper limit specified with these bits. This feature is enabled when the following 2 conditions are satisfied: • When printing a received document • When bit 1 of this mode is 0 Example: The reduction is 100 to 90% when "90%" is specified. <*>	Bit 4-2:	000	100 %	Reduction will not be done if a received document is still longer than the paper for a specified reduction.	
3			001	95 %		
2				010		90 %
				011		85 %
				100		80 %
				101		65 %
				110		60 %
				111		Not available
1	Select cut off/reduction of received document: This bit specifies cutting off or reducing a received document that is longer than the print paper. (This feature is enabled when printing a received document.) <*>	Reduction	Cut off	This bit determines that the received document will be cut off with "Select upper limit of cut off length after printing (MODE 007 Bit 7 to 5)" or reduced with "Select upper limit of reduction ratio of received document (MODE 007 Bit 4 to 2)."		
0	Printing specification of received document.	First page.	All pages.			

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
008	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Where to detect print papers. (Valid only when printing a received document) <*>	From print paper	From cassette	“From print paper” detects print papers from actual print papers while “From cassette” indicates print papers with a cassette size or the last information on print papers regardless of actual print papers.	
6	Select size of print paper for received document. (Valid only when printing a received document) <*>	Bit 6-3:	0000	Std method 1	“Std method” determines an appropriate print paper for the length and the width of a print image. Method 1: Same width and no reduction. Method 2: Same width and minimum margin. Method 3: No reduction without considering width of paper. Method 4: Minimum margin without considering width of paper. “No wider width” will not take printer paper wider than the print image. No Wider Width 1: Same width and no reduction. Width 2: Same width and minimum margin. Width 3: No reduction without considering width of paper. Width 4: Minimum margin without considering width of paper. “Same width only” selects paper with the same width as the print image. Note. • Margin means the non-printed area. • Methods 2 to 4 are unavailable to users.
0001			Std method 2		
0010			Std method 3		
0011			Std method 4		
0100			No wider width 1		
0101			No wider width 2		
0110			No wider width 3		
0111			No wider width 4		
1000			Same width only		
	Others	Not available			

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
009	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:1A
		0	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select default display of communication mode: Specifies what to display at first as communication mode. *	Bit 7-5:	000	G3-1	Returns "Communication mode" to its default after each operation. This soft switch is unavailable in some systems: This soft switch is unavailable in some systems: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• With single port (including pseudo-multi port) G3 type: all are unavailable</li> <li>• With multi port PSTN+PSTN: G3-1, G3-2 available</li> <li>• "Mail" can be used when the FAX is equipped with Network Application Option.</li> </ul>
6			010	PC Scanner	
			011	G3-2	
5			100	Mail (I-FAX)	
			101	Scan to E-mail	
			110	IP Address FAX	
			111	IP Relay	
			Others	Not available	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. This applies only to systems with multi port. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
011	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:31
		0	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select dial line speed (DP speed). (PSTN2) *	Bit 7-6:	00	10 pps	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This is valid only when "Switch PB/DP (MODE 011 Bit5)" sets DP.</li> <li>16 pps is unavailable to users.</li> </ul>
6			01	20pps	
			10	16 pps	
			11	Not available	
5	Select a line type (tone or pulse) for calling. (Switch PB/DP). (PSTN2) *	DP	PB	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DP : pulse</li> <li>PB : tone</li> </ul>	
4	Select standard phone line connected with the system (Extension / External line connection). (PSTN2) *	Extension connection	External line connection		
1	Display illustrations.	Bit 1-0:	00	Not display	
0			01	Display (Animation)	
			10	Display (Still picture)	
			11	Not available	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. This applies only to system with multi-port option. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
012	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:40
		0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
6	Select function of # key on one-touch screen.	Full dialing number	One-touch number	
0	Accumulated sheets: Change the number of accumulated sheets.	Can be changed.	Changes not allowed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change items "Facsimile Print", "Copy Print", "Report Print", "Send Facsimile", "PC Print", and "Send E-mail" on the "Number of sheets" tab.</li> <li>The accumulated sheets can be changed in the maintenance mode even if this bit is set to "Changes not allowed".</li> </ul>

MODE	Factory setting bit									
013	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:35
		0	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description		
		0	1			
7	Select numbers of fax one-touches and of copy programs on auto-mode screen.	Bit 7-5: 000			One-touch	Print program
6						
5				5	0	
				4	1	
				3	2	
				2	3	
				1	4	
				0	5	
		Others	Not available			
4	Determine the input of numbers of copies or of FAX destinations on auto-mode screen.	Bit 4-3: 00		1 digit	Regards these digits as an input of number of copies.	
3		01		2 digit		
		10		3 digit		
		Others		Not available		
2	Automatically switch destinations	No	Yes	You can register main addresses and 2ndary addresses with onetouch. You can send to 2ndary addresses when communication with main addresses is abnormal. (Optional Network Application Kit must be installed.)		
0	Select operation when INBOX forward failed.	Destroy document immediately	Destroy document after printing	Specify the action to be taken when INBOX forwarding has failed. (Failed means communications cannot be delivered. Communications means communication via FAX and E-mail.)		

FK-503

Adjustment / Setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
014	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:01
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select redialing interval for resending document.	Bit 7-5:	000	10 <b>0</b> ib	
6			001	30 sec	
5				010	60 sec
				011	120 sec
				100	180 sec
				Others	Not available
1	Broadcast transmission setting confirmation window. <*>	Bit 1-0:	00	Not display	
0			01	<b>Confirms settings at broadcast transmission</b>	
			10	Confirms settings (single destination/all destinations)	
			11	Not available	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
016	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:40
		0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
6	Use of extra telephone. <*>	No	<b>Yes</b>	
5	Mail mode: Print date & time received <*>	<b>No</b>	Yes	
4	Mail mode: Position of print date & time received <*>	<b>Inside doc.</b>	Outside doc.	This is valid only when "(MODE 016 Bit5)" sets Yes.
1	RX Time Stamp: Print date & time received <*>	<b>No</b>	Yes	
0	RX Time Stamp: Position of print date & time received <*>	<b>Inside doc.</b>	Outside doc.	This is valid only when "(MODE 016 Bit1)" sets Yes.

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
017	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:C0
		1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
3	Select initial value of TSI name *	Bit 3-0:	0000	TSI 1
2			0001	TSI 2
1			0010	TSI 3
0			0011	TSI 4
			0100	TSI 5
			0101	TSI 6
			0110	TSI 7
			0111	TSI 8
			Others	Not available

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
018	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:01
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
5	Select destination screen: Displays screen of destination when document is loaded in FAX mode. *	Bit 5-4:	00	One-touch 1st screen
4			01	Name screen
			10	Dial number screen
			11	Index screen
3	Specify full-dial sending	Allowed	Not allowed	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
019	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:08
		0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Specify the ringing count of auto receiving call (PSTN1) *	Bit 7-3:	00000	0	Specify the ringing count till the main product starts receiving a call.
6			00001	1	
5					
4			10100	20	
3			Others	Not available	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting
- Some machines cannot receive calls.  
Care must be taken when you set the ringing count to 10 or more.
- For PSTN2, refer to MODE 249.

MODE	Factory setting bit									
020	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:40
		0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Displays # of reports.	No	Yes	"Yes" displays # of pages on phone line in addition to ordinary # of papers.
6	Trace protocol.	No	Yes	"Yes" prints result of protocol trace after completing communication. If next communication is proceeded before this printing, information on previous communication protocol will be deleted.
5	Display number of error lines/transmission speed.	No	Yes	"Yes" displays # of error lines/transmission speed on panel and outputs port for auto checking.
4	Select monitor interval for line.	Phase A	All phases	Specifies interval for monitoring phone lines for G3 communication.
3	Display error codes. (Panel, report)	No	Yes	"Yes" displays error codes (6 digit) on panel and in report.

MODE	Factory setting bit									
021	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:08
		0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
4	Call hold guard timer	Bit 4-3:	00	1 hr	
3		01	10 hr		
		10	24 hr		
		11	72 hr		
2	Display symbol rate.	No	Yes	Symbol rates are 2400/2743/2800/3000/3200/3429. Rate of 2743 is not actually used.	
1	Observe EQM: Check modem & line statuses	No	Yes	Do not change the set value.	
0	Observe probing information: Check modem & line statuses	No	Yes	Do not change the set value.	

MODE	Factory setting bit									
022	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:02
		0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
2	FAX memory nearly full to its capacity.	256 KB	512 KB	"Memory nearly full" means that unused memory becomes less than a specified capacity. This soft switch specifies threshold capacity.	
1	Restrict parameters of memory stored TX.	No	Yes	If "Yes" is selected, then all relay transmissions will proceed with A4 size when function of remote side is unknown (not learned/full dialing). For learned destination without size of 16x15.4, TX will be done with 8x7.7.	

MODE	Factory setting bit									
023	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:F8
		1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Select number of errors in redialing terminal of data type.	Bit 7-4: 0000		0
6		0001		1
5		0010		2
4		0011		3
		0100		4
		0101		5
		0110		6
		0111		7
		1000		8
		1001		9
		1010		10
		1011		11
		1100		12
1101		13		
1110		14		
1111		15		
3	Set margins for report image. <*>	No	Yes	Specifies whether to carry out merge process for report of image with merge.
0	Select memory over transmission mode.	Transmission continued	Transmission disconnected	Specifies whether stored pages will be transmitted if memory is full while scanning documents.

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
024	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:81
		1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
5	Display Administrator/ User passwords.	Yes	No	
4	Display forwarding function button.	No	Yes	
3	Select alarm buzzer pattern.	Pattern 0	Pattern 1	Pattern 0: Peep Poop Peep Poop Peep Poop Pattern 1: Peep Peep Peep
2	Select ID display order when receiving.	Bit 2-1:	00	Expansion IDT → TSI
1			01	TSI
			Others	Not available
0	Receive by other user.	No	Yes	

MODE	Factory setting bit									
025	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:7F
		0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
6	Service call for printer option failure.	No	Yes	Specifies whether to make a service call for PC printer unit option failure. <Note>
5	Service call for printer failure.	No	Yes	Specifies whether to make a service call for printer failure. <Note>
4	Service call for scanner failure.	No	Yes	Specifies whether to make a service call for exceeding specified # of papers. <Note>
1	Service call for reaching near empty cycles of toner.	No	Yes	Set whether to make a service call for reaching near empty or empty cycles of toner. <NOTE>
0	Service call for reaching life times of drum.	No	Yes	Set whether to make a service call for reaching near life time or life times of drum. <NOTE>

**NOTE**

- This is valid only when “Allow service call? (MODE 026 Bit 6)” is set to “Yes.”

MODE	Factory setting bit								HEX:DE	
026	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
		1	1	0	1	1	1	1	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Allow remote maintenance.	No	Yes	
6	Allow service calls. (E-mail maintenance) (Network function)	No	Yes	Unused.
4	Print incomplete TX of service call for notifying consumables.	No	Yes	
3	Service call for empty toner.	No	Yes	
2	Service call for reaching life times of drum.	No	Yes	
1	Notify out-of-consumables.	No	Yes	

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>027</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:24
		0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Select ID display order: Specifies priority order of destination ID for printing report/ displaying on screen.	Bit 7-6:	<b>00</b>	<b>Pattern 1:</b> 1→2→3→4→5→6
6			01	<b>Pattern 2:</b> 4→5→6→1→2→3
			01	<b>Pattern 3:</b> 4→5→1→2→3→6
			11	
				1: Name registered in one-touch button 2: Destination # registered in one-touch button 3: Phone # of destination dialed 4: Destination phone # by TSI 5: Extended ID 6: Standard ID (# of TSI/CIG)
5	Display anti-dew button.	No	<b>Yes</b>	
4	Process drum dry button.	<b>No</b>	Yes	
3	Secure comm. with N-method.	<b>No</b>	Yes	
2	F code function.	No	<b>Yes</b>	Need for G3 communications.
1	Assign non-reduction TX for 2in1 scan.	<b>No</b>	Yes	Specifies whether 2in1 TX will be sent by A4 always or by appropriate size to receiver's capability.

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>028</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:63
		0	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Select remote print protocol.	<b>F CODE</b>	N method	Fixed to "0", valid at TX
6	Select restricted number of prints of remote multi copy.	Bit 6-0:	0000000	Not available (Same as 1 copy)
5				
4			0000001	1 copy
3				
2			<b>1100011</b>	<b>99 copies</b>
1				Not available (Same as 99 copies)
0				

MODE	Factory setting bit									
030	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:B1 (For U.S.)
		1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	HEX:B0 (For Europe)

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Rotation TX *	No	Yes		
6	Rotate print of FAX RX. <*>	Bit 6-5:	00	No rotate print	"Sort" means "alternate sort" here.
5			01	Rotate print (without sort)	
			10	Rotate print (with sort)	
			11	Not available	
4	Receive 2in1 page. (Valid for RX print) <*>	No	Yes		
3	Restrict print paper selection: Specifies unselectable print paper (including orientation) for FAX.	Bit 3-2:	00	No B5R, A5R, and postcard	
2			01	No A5R and postcard	
			10	No postcard	
			11	Not available	
1	Assign mixed mm/inch papers. (Priority Set) (Valid for RX print)	Bit 1-0:	00	Select mm only	
0			01	Select inch only	
			10	Select both	
			11	Not available	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
031	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:A0
		1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Margin process for multiple copies of report with image merge.	No	Yes	Valid when "Set margins for report image? (MODE 23 Bit 3)" is set to "Yes."
6	Assign output format for image margin report.	Same as regular report	Always A5 forma	1: Always output with A5 format regardless of the set status of paper. This is valid when a cassette has A4 C papers.
5	Margin layout for 2-sided TX *	Bit 5-4: 00		Top margin
4		01		Standard book
		10		Automatic
		11		Not available
2	Proof Print document hold time of PC print *	Bit 2-1: 00		No
1		01		20 min
		10		30 min
		11		Not available

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
032	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:35 (For U.S.) HEX:21 (For Europe)
		0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
4	Select metric/inch for FAX TX	mm	inch	
3	Set zoom ratio for reducing ledger/letter.	64.7 %	77.2 %	
2	Toggle metric and inch when specifying reading area.	mm	inch	

MODE	Factory setting bit									
033	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:14
		0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
6	Initial setting of 2-sided TX	No 2-sided-TX mode	2-sided TX mode	
5	Select draft printing mode.	Bit 5-4: 00	No draft mode	"Toner saving mode" follows # of skipped pixels (Bit Nos. 3 to 2). "High resolution saving mode" in which each pixel's size will be reduced, follows # of skipped pixels (Bit Nos. 3 to 2) for only at points of transition between white-black along the direction of main scanning.
4		01	Toner saving mode	
		10	High resolution saving mode	
		11	Not available	
3	Select draft printing level.	Bit 3-2: 00	No skipping	Specifies skipped printing level for copy, RX, and report printing.
2		01	Skip 1/4 pixel	
		10	Skip 2/4 pixel	
		11	Skip 3/4 pixel	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>034</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:02
		0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description					
		0	1						
7	Select cut-off length at leading edge of printing paper.	Bit 7-4:	<b>0000</b>	<b>0 mm</b>	Valid only at RX printing.				
6			0001	2 mm					
5			0010	4 mm					
4			0011	6 mm					
			0100	8 mm					
			0101	10 mm					
			0110	12 mm					
			0111	14 mm					
			1000	16 mm					
			1001	18 mm					
			1010	20 mm					
3			Set special density.	No		Yes			
				1		Overlap printing.	No	Yes	Valid only at RX printing. Overlapped print is fixed to 4 mm regardless of line density.

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>035</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:03
		0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
1	RX by memory when reaching I/C lifetime.	No	Yes	
0	RX by memory when reaching toner empty.	No	Yes	

MODE	Factory setting bit									
036	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:01
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Secure Print document hold time <*>	Bit 7-3:	00000	Not delete	
6			00001	1 hr	
5			00010	2 hr	
4			00011	3 hr	
3					
				11000	24 hr
		Others	Not available		
0	Specify RX (remote copy) print order.	Start printing after receiving first page.	Start printing after receiving all pages.		

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
037	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:F8
		1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Select FAX paper cassette (1st cassette). <*>	No	Yes	
6	Select FAX paper cassette (2nd cassette). <*>	No	Yes	
5	Select FAX paper cassette (3rd cassette). <*>	No	Yes	
4	Select FAX paper cassette (4th cassette). <*>	No	Yes	
2	Select FAX paper cassette (Bypath). <*>	No	Yes	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
038	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:0A
		0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description		
		0	1			
7	Turn on print lamp when out-of-paper.	On when all cassettes are out of paper	On when at least one cassette is out of paper			
3	Print restart timer after stopping.	Bit 3-2: 00		3 min		
2				01	5 min	
				10	10 min	
				11	20 min	
1	Manual setting of print stop/start. *	Stop	Start			
0	Print stop/start timer. *	Does not function	Function			

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
040	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:FA
		1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	2-dim coding at TX. (Valid for G3 communication)	No	Yes	"No": MH "Yes": MH + MR	
6	T.6 coding. (Valid for G3 communication)	No	Yes	"Yes": MH + MR + MMR Valid only when "2-dim coding? (MODE 040 Bit 7)" is set to "Yes."	
5	JBIG communication. (Valid for ECM communication)	No	Yes		
4	Third party's JBIG (ITU-T) communication. (Valid for ECM communication)	No	Yes	Valid only when "JBIG communication? (MODE 040 Bit 5)" is set to "Yes."	
3	Proprietary JBIG (ITU-T) communication. (Valid for ECM communication)	No	Yes	Valid only when "JBIG communication? (MODE 040 Bit 5)" is set to "Yes."	
1	JBIG capability at V.34 communication. (G3)	No	Yes	Valid only when "JBIG communication? (MODE 040 Bit 5)" is set to "Yes."	

MODE	Factory setting bit									
041	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:40
		0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
6	ECM mode	No	Yes	"No": G3 "Yes": G3 + ECM

MODE	Factory setting bit									
042	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:3F
		0	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	* Select redialing interval 1.	Bit 7-4:	0000	Not available
6			0001	1 min
5			0010	2 min
4			0011	3 min
			0100	4 min
			0101	5 min
			0110	6 min
			0111	7 min
			1000	8 min
			1001	9 min
			1010	10 min
			1011	11 min
			1100	12 min
			1101	13 min
1110			14 min	
1111	15 min			
3	Select redialing interval 2.	Bit 3-0:	0000	Not available
2			0001	1 min
1			0010	2 min
0			0011	3 min
			0100	4 min
			0101	5 min
			0110	6 min
			0111	7 min
			1000	8 min
			1001	9 min
			1010	10 min
			1011	11 min
			1100	12 min
			1101	13 min
1110			14i min	
1111	15 min			

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
043	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:80
		1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	# of resending document.	Bit 7-6:	00	0	
6			01	1	
			10	2	
			11	3	
4	Redialing when line is connected but no answer.	No	Yes		
3	Auto-answering call frequency.	Not limitation (1 to 9)	limitation (2 to 4)	Number of times for automatic reception calls.	
2	TCI/CSI registration screen.	User	Service mode	telephone number setting.	

MODE	Factory setting bit								
<b>044</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
		1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
									HEX:80

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Select threshold value for RTN sending error trace.	32 lines or more	64 lines or more	Specifies # of error lines as reference of sending RTN: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "32 lines or more": MCF if error lines are 0 - 31, RTN if error lines are 32 or more</li> <li>• "64 lines or more": MCF if error lines are 0 - 31, RTP if error lines are 32 to 63, RTN if error lines are 64 or more</li> </ul>
6	Process TCF sending specially.	No	Yes	
4	Select T4 timer (Action against line delay).	3 sec	4.5 sec	
3	Take an action for communication error from overseas (Action against LMCD-OFF).	Yes	No	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select "No" unless bad line is experienced.</li> </ul>
2	Take an action for communication error from overseas (Action for fall back).	Yes	No	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select "No" unless bad line is experienced.</li> </ul>
1	Process RTN RX failure.	discard as error	not as error	
0	Retrain V. 34 control channel.	Yes (discard as error)	No (not as error)	

FK-503

Adjustment / Setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>047</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:88
		1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select V. 34 fall back tolerance. (TX)	Bit 7-5:	000	0	
6			001	1	
5				010	2
				011	3
				<b>100</b>	<b>4</b>
				Others	Not available
4	Select V. 34 fall back tolerance. (RX)	Bit 4-2:	000	0	
3			001	1	
2				<b>010</b>	<b>2</b>
				011	3
				100	4
				Others	Not available

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>048</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:C6
		1	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select V.34/V.33/V.17 capabilities.	Bit 7-6:	00	No capability above 9600 bps	Sets MODEM's function
6			01	V.33	
			10	V.17 & V.33	
			<b>11</b>	<b>V.17 &amp; V.33 &amp; V.34</b>	
2	Allow V.34.	No	<b>Yes</b>	Should be same as "V.8 (MODE 48 Bit 1)"	
1	Allow V. 8.	No	<b>Yes</b>	Should be same as "V.8 (MODE 48 Bit 2)"	
0	Allow V.34 communication for extensions.	<b>V.34</b>	V.17		

FK-503

Adjustment / Setting

MODE	Factory setting bit							HEX:0D	
<b>049</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
		0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description		
		0	1			
4	Select upper limit of transmission speed. (TX)	Bit 4-0:	00000	2400 bps	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Need to disable "V.34 capability (MODE 048 Bit 2)" by setting "No" for 2400 bps.</li> <li>• 16.8 kbps or faster are valid only when "Allow V.34. (MODE 048 Bit 2)" is enabled (Yes).</li> </ul>	
3			00001	4800 bps		
2			00010	7200 bps		
1			00011	9600 bps		
0				00100		12.0 kbps
				00101		14.4 kbps
				00110		16.8 kbps
				00111		19.2 kbps
				01000		21.6 kbps
				01001		24.0 kbps
				01010		26.4 kbps
				01011		28.8 kbps
				01100		31.2 kbps
			<b>01101</b>	<b>33.6 kbps</b>		
			Others	Not available		

MODE	Factory setting bit							HEX:0D	
<b>050</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
		0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description		
		0	1			
4	Select upper limit of transmission speed. (RX)	Bit 4-0:	00000	2400 bps	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Need to disable "V.34 capability (MODE 048 Bit 2)" by setting "No" for 2400 bps.</li> <li>• 16.8 kbps or faster is valid only when "Allow V.34 (MODE 048 Bit 2)" is enabled (Yes).</li> </ul>	
3			00001	4800 bps		
2			00010	7200 bps		
1			00011	9600 bps		
0				00100		12.0 kbps
				00101		14.4 kbps
				00110		16.8 kbps
				00111		19.2 kbps
				01000		21.6 kbps
				01001		24.0 kbps
				01010		26.4 kbps
				01011		28.8 kbps
				01100		31.2 kbps
			<b>01101</b>	<b>33.6 kbps</b>		
			Others	Not available		

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>051</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:20
		0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description		
		0	1			
7	Declare size of print paper for received document.	Bit 7-5:	000	Not available	Specifies declaration value of printing function for RX. "Auto" selects max size of paper, max size of loaded cassette, or max size of the last paper. "Auto including rotation" is equivalent to A4R (Letter R) set even A4 (Letter) is selected by MODE 008 Bit 7.	
6			<b>001</b>	<b>Auto</b>		
5				010		A4/Letter
				011		B4/Legal
				100		A3/11×17
				101		Auto including rotation
				Others		Not available

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>053</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:C8
		0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
6	Select received document operation when F code receiving has failed.	Do not destroy	<b>Destroy</b>	

FK-503

Adjustment / Setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>054</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:7A
		0	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Time to be detected as no sound.	Bit 7-4: 0000		Not available	
6		0001		1 sec	
5					
4		1111		7 sec	
		1010		10 sec	
		Others		Not available	
3	Control history of V.34 auto dialing.	No	Yes	Valid only when a receiver system has V.34 modulation.	
2	Modulation method for V.34 manual, nonstorage TX.	V.17	V.34		
1	Modulation method for V.34 polling TX document.	V.17	V.34		
0	Modulation method for V.34 manual RX.	V.17	V.34		

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>056</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:0C
		0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
3	Modem power-saving mode (sleep)	No power-saving mode	Power-saving mode		
2	Select sending time of ANSam.	Bit 2-0: 000		2.0 sec	
1		001		2.5 sec	
0		010		3.0 sec	
		011		3.5 sec	
		100		4.0 sec	
		101		5.0 sec	
		110		6.0 sec	
	111		Not available		

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>057</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:19
		0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Select the time from when line is blocked to when ANSam TX starts.	Bit 7-0:		Specify the time from when line is blocked to when ANSam TX starts.
6		00000000	Not available	
5		00000001	100 msec	
4				
3		00011001	2500 msec	
2				
1		11111111	25500 msec	
0				

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>077</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:60
		0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
4	# of times of hooking monitoring during ringing	Bit 4-3:		
3		00	3	
		01	5	
		10	8	
		11	12	

FK-503

Adjustment / Setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
080 (PSTN1)	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:23 (For U.S.) HEX:6E (For Europe)
110 (PSTN2)		0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	HEX:23 (For U.S.) HEX:23 (For Europe)

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Select time expected for line connection	Bit 7-0:		
6		00000000	0 sec	
5		00000001	0.5 sec	
4				
3		00100011	17.5 sec	
2				
1		01111000	60 sec	
0		Others	Not available	

MODE	Factory setting bit									
082 (PSTN1)	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:04
112 (PSTN2)		0	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	HEX:28

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
5	Detect busy tone.	No	Yes	
3	Detect line disconnection. (inverted polarity)	No	Yes	

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>083 (PSTN1)</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:50
		0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Monitoring cycle of hooking	Bit 7-6:	00	12 msec
6			01	24 msec
			10	36 msec
			11	48 msec
5	Select upper limit of detecting as hooking (Adjustment of voltage detected as hooking)	Bit 5-3:	000	8 V
4			001	11 V
3			010	14 V
			011	19 V
			100	25 V
			101	31 V
			110	36 V
			111	42 V
2	Select lower limit of detecting as hooking (Adjustment of voltage detected as hooking)	Bit 2-0:	000	3 V
1			001	5 V
0			010	8 V
			011	11 V
			100	14 V
			101	17 V
			110	19 V
			111	22 V

**NOTE**

- The upper limit (Bit 5 to 3) must be higher than the lower limit (Bit 2 to 0).

MODE	Factory setting bit									
084 (PSTN1)	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:14 (For U.S.) HEX:28 (For Europe)
114 (PSTN2)		0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	HEX:14 (For U.S.) HEX:1C (For Europe)

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
5	Select PB sending level.	Bit 5-2:	0000	-1 dBm
4		0001	-2 dBm	
3		0010	-3 dBm	
2		0011	-4 dBm	
		0100	-5 dBm	
		0101	-6 dBm	
		0110	-7 dBm	
		0111	-8 dBm	
		1000	-9 dBm	
		1001	-10 dBm	
		1010	-11 dBm	
		1011	-12 dBm	
		1100	-13 dBm	
1101		-14 dBm		
1110	-15 dBm			
1111	-16 dBm			

MODE	Factory setting bit									
085 (PSTN1)	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:90 (For U.S.) HEX:C0 (For Europe)
115 (PSTN2)		1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	HEX:90 (For U.S.) HEX:90 (For Europe)

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Select TX level.	Bit 7-4:	1000	-9 dBm
6		1001	-10 dBm	
5		1010	-11 dBm	
		1011	-12 dBm	
		1100	-13 dBm	
		1101	-14 dBm	
		1110	-15 dBm	
		1110	-16 dBm	
		Others	Not available	

MODE		Factory setting bit								
<b>086 (PSTN1)</b> <b>116 (PSTN2)</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:40
		0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select RX attenuator.	Bit 7-6:	00	0 dB (-48 dBm)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Signals controlled by this soft switch are 1300 Hz detection, PB tone detection, V29 &amp; V27ter, V21 signal detection, and all tonal signal.</li> <li>Numbers within parentheses represent the minimum receiving sensitivity.</li> </ul>
6			01	5 dB (-43 dBm)	
			10	10 dB (-38 dBm)	
			11	15 dB (-33 dBm)	

MODE		Factory setting bit								
<b>087 (PSTN1)</b> <b>117 (PSTN2)</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:90
		1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select detection time of continuous ringer.	Bit 7-6:	00	No detection	
6			01	1.8 sec	
			10	3.0 sec	
			11	10 sec	
5	Select frequency for ringer detection.	Bit 5-3:	000	10 to 27.5 Hz	
4			001	10 to 75 Hz	
3			010	10 to 90 Hz	
			011	10 to 200 Hz	
		Others	Not available		

FK-503

Adjustment / Setting

MODE		Factory setting bit								
<b>088 (PSTN1)</b> <b>118 (PSTN2)</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:C0
		1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
6	Select process mode at detection time out of 2nd dial tone.	Keeps same operation as before detection even after time out	Generates TX error at time out	
3	1300 Hz detection.	-28 dBm	-36 dBm	

MODE		Factory setting bit								
<b>089 (PSTN1)</b> <b>119 (PSTN2)</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select TX method.	Insert pause after prefix for external lines	Insert pause after 1st dial		
6	Select method of detecting dial prefix for external lines.	Dial # search method	Pause search method		
5	Select prefix # for external lines. *	Bit 5-2:	0000	0	Valid only when "Select method of detecting dial prefix for external lines (MODE 089 Bit6)" is set to "Dial # search method."
4			0001	1	
3			0010	2	
2			0011	3	
			0100	4	
			0101	5	
			0110	6	
			0111	7	
			1000	8	
			1001	9	
	Others	Not available			

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE		Factory setting bit								
092 (PSTN1) 122 (PSTN2)	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:70
		0	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Send V.29 echo protection tone.	No	Yes	
6	Send V.17 echo protection tone.	No	Yes	
5	Send V.33 echo protection tone.	No	Yes	
4	Select V.17 and V.33 carrier frequency.	Bit 4-3:	00	1800 Hz
3			01	1700 Hz
			10	1800 + 1700 Hz
			11	Not available

MODE	Factory setting bit									
093 (PSTN1)	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:48 (For U.S.)
		0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	HEX:40 (For Europe)
123 (PSTN2)									HEX:48 (For U.S.)	
									HEX:48 (For Europe)	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select timing for starting CED sending.	Bit 7-6:	00	0 msec	Specifies time interval from line connection to starting sending CED. (7-sec is provided for the second dial.)
6			01	2000 msec	
			10	2500 msec	
			11	7 sec	
5	Select CED frequency.	Bit 5-4:	00	2100 Hz	Specifies frequency to carry CED or N/A selection.
4			01	1080 Hz	
			10	1300 Hz	
			11	Not available	
3	Process CED echo.	No	Yes	Specifies whether to process CED echo at the intervals of 500 ms between CED and initial identification.	
2	Process incoming command echo.	No	Yes	Specifies whether to process incoming echo at the intervals of 500 ms between when receiving an initial identification and when sending the incoming command.	
1	Control channel data rate.	Bit 1-0:	00	1200 bps	
0			01	Non 1200 bps	
			10	2400 bps	
			11	Non 2400 bps	

MODE	Factory setting bit									
094 (PSTN1)	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:0C
		0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	
124 (PSTN2)										

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
3	Lock AGC in V.33 mode.	No	Yes	
2	Lock AGC in V.17 mode.	No	Yes	
1	Lock AGC in V.29 mode.	No	Yes	
0	Lock AGC in V.27ter mode.	No	Yes	

MODE		Factory setting bit									
<b>095 (PSTN1)</b>		Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:20
<b>125 (PSTN2)</b>			0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Adjust digital TX cable equalizer.	Bit 7-6:	00	0 dB	
6			01	4 dB	
			10	8 dB	
			11	12 dB	
5	Adjust digital RX cable equalizer.	Bit 5-4:	00	0 dB	For V.29, actual value will be the sum of 4 dB and the specified value.
4			01	4 dB	
			10	8 dB	
			11	12 dB	

MODE		Factory setting bit									
<b>096 (PSTN1)</b>		Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:14
<b>126 (PSTN2)</b>			0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
5	Select time for CI signal sending ON.	Bit 5-4:	00	0.5 sec	Use this soft switch for error in V8 sequence.
4			01	1.0 sec	
			10	1.5 sec	
			11	2.0 sec	
3	Select time for CI signal sending OFF.	Bit 3-1:	000	0.4 sec	Use this soft switch for error in V8 sequence.
2			001	0.8 sec	
1			010	1.0 sec	
			011	1.2 sec	
			100	1.6 sec	
			101	2.0 sec	
			Others	Not available	

MODE	Factory setting bit								
097 (PSTN1) 127 (PSTN2)	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
		0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0
									HEX:14

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Attenuate TCF/NTCF sending level.	No	Yes 3 dB drops.	Specifies whether to attenuate sending level of TCF and NTCF. For V33/V29, level of attenuation is determined by MODE 085 Bit 7 to 4 and MODE 097 Bit 6. Otherwise, level of attenuation is determined by MODE 085 Bit 7 to 4.	
6	Attenuate V33/V29 sending level.	No	Yes 3 dB drops.	Specifies whether to attenuate sending level of V17/V33/V29. Level of attenuation is determined by MODE 085 Bit 7 to 4 and MODE 097 Bit 6.	
4	Select V.34 symbol rate.	Bit 4-2: 000		2400 Sym/S	
3				001	Not available
2				010	2800 Sym/S
				011	3000 Sym/S
				100	3200 Sym/S
			101	3429 Sym/S	
			Others	Not available	

MODE	Factory setting bit	
<b>098 (PSTN1)</b>	Bit:	7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0
<b>128 (PSTN2)</b>		0 1 0 0 0 1 1 0
		HEX:46

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Select starting time of sending CM signal.	Bit 3-6: 00	0 sec	Use this soft switch for error in V8 sequence.
6		01	1 sec	
		10	2 sec	
		11	3 sec	
3	Select EQM threshold value.	Bit 3-0: 0000	-6	
2		0001	-5	
1		0010	-4	
0		0011	-3	
		0100	-2	
		0101	-1	
		0110	0	
		0111	1	
		1000	2	
		1001	3	
		1010	4	
		1011	5	
		1100	6	
		Others	Not available	

FK-503

Adjustment / Setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
099 (PSTN1) 129 (PSTN2)	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:88
		1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic			Description
		0	1		
7	Select threshold value 1 for symbol speed.	Bit 7-4:	0000	-8	Specifies range of tolerance for V. 34 line characteristic distortion.
6			0001	-7	
5			0010	-6	
4			0011	-5	
			0100	-4	
			0101	-3	
			0110	-2	
			0111	-1	
			<b>1000</b>	<b>0</b>	
			1001	1	
		1010	2		
		1011	3		
		1100	4		
	1101	5			
	1110	6			
	1111	7			
3	Select threshold value 2 for symbol speed.	Bit 3-0:	0000	-8	Specifies minimum tolerance level of S/N ratio in V.34.
2			0001	-7	
1			0010	-6	
0			0011	-5	
			0100	-4	
			0101	-3	
			0110	-2	
			0111	-1	
			<b>1000</b>	<b>0</b>	
			1001	1	
		1010	2		
		1011	3		
		1100	4		
	1101	5			
	1110	6			
	1111	7			

FK-503

Adjustment / Setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>114 (PSTN2)</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:14 (For U.S.)
		0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	HEX:1C (For Europe)

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
5	Select PB sending level.	Bit 5-2:	0000	-1 dBm
4			0001	-2 dBm
3		0010	-3 dBm	
2		0011	-4 dBm	
		0100	-5 dBm	
		0101	-6 dBm	
		0110	-7 dBm	
		0111	-8 dBm	
		1000	-9 dBm	
		1001	-10 dBm	
		1010	-11 dBm	
		1011	-12 dBm	
		1100	-13 dBm	
		1101	-14 dBm	
		1110	-15 dBm	
		1111	-16 dBm	

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>190</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Restrict SF/SSF communication (TX).	No	Yes	For risk management according to new recommendation of G3 high resolution transmission
6	Restrict SF/SSF communication (RX from other company's system).	No	Yes	For risk management according to new recommendation of G3 high resolution transmission

MODE	Factory setting bit									
192	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:C0
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select order of displaying year to date. (Corresponding to each region)	Bit 7-6:	00	Year-Month-Date	Order of displaying date in OPE display
6			01	Not available	
			10	Date-month-year	
			11	Month-date-year	

MODE	Factory setting bit									
197	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:C0 (For U.S.) HEX:C1 (For Europe)
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Daylight saving function	Not available	Available		
6	Display ON/OFF switch of Daylight saving	OFF	ON		
3	Daylight saving pattern	Bit 3-0:	0000	Pattern 1	For the details of patterns 1 to 6, see NOTE below.
2			0001	Pattern 2	
1			0010	Pattern 3	
0			0011	Pattern 4	
			0100	Pattern 5	
		0101	Pattern 6		
		Others	Not available		

**NOTE**

	Start Time	End Time
Pattern 1	2:00 am on 1st Sunday, April	2:00 am on last Sunday, October
Pattern 2	2:00 am on last Sunday, March	2:00 am on last Sunday, October
Pattern 3	2:00 am on last Friday, April	2:00 am on last Thursday, September
Pattern 4	2:00 am on last Sunday, March	2:00 am on last Sunday, September
Pattern 5	2:00 am on 1st Sunday, September	2:00 am on last Sunday, April
Pattern 6	2:00 am on last Sunday, October	2:00 am on last Sunday, March

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>198</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:D0
		1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	TX forwarding to administrator <*>	No	Yes	
6	TX forwarding of scanner function to administrator <*>	No	Yes	
5	Result report TX forwarding to administrator	Bit 5-4: 00		Not output
4		01		Output for incomplete TX
		10		Always output
		11		Not available

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>212 (PSTN1)</b> <b>232 (PSTN2)</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:40 (For U.S.) HEX:00 (For Europe)
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Select DP make rate.	Bit 7-6: 00		33 %
6		01		40 %
		Others		Not available

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>249</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:08
		0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Specify the ringing count of auto receiving call (PSTN2) <*>	Bit 7-3: 00000		0
6		00001		1
5				
4		10100		20
3		Others		Not available

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. <\*>: Soft switch setting
- Some machines cannot receive calls.  
Care must be taken when you set the ringing count to 10 or more.
- For PSTN1, refer to MODE 019.

MODE	Factory setting bit									
288	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:FF
		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Insert dummy data before PIX.	Bit 7-0:	00H	Add 200 ms	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changes not allowed.</li> <li>Specify period to transmit dummy data before transmitting PIX.</li> <li>Add the period specified here to the first flag (EMC) and FILL (G3) of the image signal.</li> </ul>
6			01H	Add 300 ms (200 ms + 100 ms)	
5		07H	Add 900 ms (200 ms +700 ms)		
4					
3					
2		FFH	Add 200 ms		
1					
0		Others	Not available		

MODE	Factory setting bit									
310	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Increase of sound level *	Normal sound level mode	Increased sound level mode	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
311	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Invert screen *	Normal	Inverted	
6	Displaying next screen when using Enlarge Display <*>	Wait for specification	Display upper-left screen	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
312	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:03
		0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Key repeat start time *	Bit 7-0:	00000000	Not available
6			00000001	1×100 ms
5				
4			00000011	3×100 ms
3				
2			11111111	255×100 ms
1				
0				

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
313	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:01
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Key repeat interval *	Bit 7-0:	00000000	Not available
6			00000001	1×100 ms
5				
4			11111111	255×100 ms
3				
2				
1				
0				

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>314</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:03
		0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Display time of reservation completion screen *	Bit 7-0:	00000000	Not closed	
6			00000001	1 sec	
5					
4			<b>00000011</b>	<b>3 sec</b>	
3					
2			11111111	255 sec	
1					
0					

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>315</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:4C
		0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select buzzer ring pattern (JBMS). *	<b>Normal</b>	JBMS-corresponding	Specify whether to set the buzzer ring pattern to normal pattern or JBMS-corresponding pattern	
6	Sound level of buzzer *	Bit 6-5:	00	Low	
5			<b>01</b>	<b>Normal</b>	
			10	High	
			11	Not available	
4	Normal completion sound (JBMS-correspondin) *	Bit 4-2:	00000	0	Set the sound volume.
3					
2			<b>01100</b>	<b>3</b>	
1					
0			10100	5	
		Others	Not available		

MODE	Factory setting bit									
320	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:F0
		1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Cassette-specified printing (G3-1: Tray 1)	Cannot print	Can print	When Mode 320 Bit 0 "Cassette selection per reception port" is enabled, specify the paper tray (including Bypass Tray) for printing if receiving by G3-1.
6	Cassette-specified printing (G3-1: Tray 2)	Cannot print	Can print	
5	Cassette-specified printing (G3-1: Tray 3)	Cannot print	Can print	
4	Cassette-specified printing (G3-1: Tray 4)	Cannot print	Can print	
3	Cassette-specified printing (G3-1: Bypass Tray)	Cannot print	Can print	
0	Cassette selection per reception port	Disable	Enable	

FK-503

Adjustment / Setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>321</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:F0
		1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Cassette-specified printing (G3-2: Tray 1)	Cannot print	Can print	When Mode 320 Bit 0 "Cassette selection per reception port" is enabled, specify the paper tray (including Bypass Tray) for printing if receiving by G3-2.
6	Cassette-specified printing (G3-2: Tray 2)	Cannot print	Can print	
5	Cassette-specified printing (G3-2: Tray 3)	Cannot print	Can print	
4	Cassette-specified printing (G3-2: Tray 4)	Cannot print	Can print	
3	Cassette-specified printing (G3-2: Bypass Tray)	Cannot print	Can print	

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>322</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:F0
		1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Cassette-specified printing (Network: Tray 1)	Cannot print	Can print	When Mode 320 Bit 0 "Cassette selection per reception port" is enabled, specify the paper tray (including Bypass Tray) for printing if receiving by Network.
6	Cassette-specified printing (Network: Tray 2)	Cannot print	Can print	
5	Cassette-specified printing (Network: Tray 3)	Cannot print	Can print	
4	Cassette-specified printing (Network: Tray 4)	Cannot print	Can print	
3	Cassette-specified printing (Network: Bypass Tray)	Cannot print	Can print	

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>323</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:F0
		1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Cassette-specified printing (Reports: Tray 1)	Cannot print	Can print	When Mode 320 Bit 0 "Cassette selection per reception port" is enabled, specify the paper tray (including Bypass Tray) for printing if receiving by Reports.
6	Cassette-specified printing (Reports: Tray 2)	Cannot print	Can print	
5	Cassette-specified printing (Reports: Tray 3)	Cannot print	Can print	
4	Cassette-specified printing (Reports: Tray 4)	Cannot print	Can print	
3	Cassette-specified printing (Reports: Bypass Tray)	Cannot print	Can print	

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>350</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:A8
		1	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
6	POP3 before SMTP <*>	No	Yes		
5	Maximum width of document to be transmitted when the fax capability of the receiver is set to [Advanced] (Network function) *	Bit 5-4: 00		A4/Letter	Default value of maximum width of document to be transmitted when the fax capability of the receiver is set to [Advanced]
4		01		B4/Legal	
		10		A3/11×17	
		11		Not available	
3	Maximum resolution to be used when the fax capability of the receiver is set to [Advanced] (Network function) *	Bit 3-2: 00		200×200 dpi	Default value of maximum resolution to be used when the fax capability of the receiver is set to [Advanced]
2		01		400×400 dpi	
		10		600×600 dpi	
		11		Not available	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
351	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:18
		0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Gateway transmission (Network function) *	Not allowed	Allowed	Specify allowed or not allowed for sending E-mail using gateway communications. SMTP cannot be received when the gateway transmission is not allowed.
6	Outgoing port for gateway transmission (Network function) **	Bit 6-5:	00	G3-1
5			11	G3-2
			Others	Not available
				Specify an outgoing port for FAX transfer (FAX transfer of received E-mail file) through gateway transmission. (valid for G3 multi-port only) [See note.]
3	Gateway TSI <*>	Normally not add	Normally add	Direct FAX, IP Relay
2	Internet FAX (IP) reception	Enable	Disable	
1	TSI information for SMTP reception <*>	Machine name priority	IP address priority	Specify whether to describe the machine name (or IP address if none) of the TSI in Subject or prioritize the IP address when forwarding documents received by IP address FAX. This setting is applied also for the priority order of display of destination name information of the RX Activity Report for IP address fax reception and IP Relay reception.

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting <\*>: Soft switch setting
- The feature with [\*\*] is available only in a system with a multi-port option.
- For G3-1 and G3-2, see ÅgSelect PSTN port automatically (MODE 006 Bit 1)Åh.

MODE	Factory setting bit									
352	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:D0
		1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Notification of result (Network function) *	No	Yes	Specify whether a communication error message is returned to the sender when a communication error occurs with code E6xxxx when E-mail is received.
6	Position for adding Gateway TSI <*>	Outside of document	Inside of document	Specify where to add the TSI when forwarding through Gateway transmission (Direct FAX, IP Relay).
5	Specify whether to add TSI when forwarding <*>	Not add	Add	Specify whether to add TSI when forwarding received documents.
4	Position for adding TSI when forwarding <*>	Outside of document	Inside of document	Select where to add the TSI when forwarding received documents.

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
353	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:88 (For U.S.)
		1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	HEX:80 (For Europe)

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Text insertion into document to send (Network function) *	No	Yes	Specify whether to insert a preset text message at the head of a stored document image to be transmitted by E-mail.
6	Header printing on received document (Network function) *	No	Yes	Specify whether to print a header on documents received via E-mail.
4	Insert arbitrary text message *	No	Yes	
3	Display arbitrary text message screen	No	Yes	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting
- Predetermined text: Image data (TIFF-F format) has been attached to the E-mail.

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>354</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:38 (For U.S.)
		1	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	HEX:60 (For Europe)

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Time zone settings: Set time zone for the date field of transmitted E-mail header (Network function) *	Bit 7-2:	000000	GMT-12:00	
6			000001	GMT-11:30	
			<b>001110</b>	<b>GMT-5:00</b>	
5					
4			<b>011000</b>	<b>GMT</b>	
3					
2			101010	GMT+09:00	
			101111	GMT+11:30	
		Others	Not available		

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
355	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:20
		0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Switch 10M and 100M: Select communication rate of LAN adapter (Network function) *	Bit7-6:	00	Auto-negotiation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Auto-negotiation: Determine the communication rate by identifying 10BASE-T or 100BASE-TX.</li> <li>Set to 100M: Connection is set to 100BASE-TX.</li> <li>Set to 10M: Connection is set to 10BASE-T.</li> </ul> Valid after the power is turned off and on. (Will not communicate when "Set to 100M" or "Set to 10M" is chosen and the communication rate is not correct for the communication line. Check and specify the correct communication rate for the line.)
6			01	Set to 100M	
			10	Set to 10M	
			11	Not available	
5	Switch full-duplex and half-duplex: Select packet transmit/receive when connecting to switching hub. (Network function) *	Full Duplex	Half Duplex	This switch is valid when MODE 355 Bit 7 to 6 is set to "Set to 100M" or "Set to 10M". <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Full-duplex: Packets can be sent and received simultaneously.</li> <li>Half-duplex: Packets can be sent or received separately.</li> </ul> Valid after the main power switch is turned off and on.	
4	Automatically obtain IP address (DHCP) *	No	Yes		

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
356	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:F40
		0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	SMTP transmission time-out (Network function) <*>	Bit 7-4: 0000		Not available	Set time waiting for a response to mail commands from the destination scanner or the SMTP server in scanner transmission or E-mail transmission. Effective after the main power switch is turned off and on.
6		0001		30 sec	
5		0010		60 sec	
4		0011		90 sec	
		0100		120 sec	
		0101		150 sec	
		0110		180 sec	
		0111		210 sec	
		1000		240 sec	
		1001		270 sec	
		1010		300 sec	
		Others		Not available	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
357	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:40
		0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	SMTP transmission time-out (Network function) <*>	Bit 7-4: 0000		Not available	Specify time waiting for command from SMTP client. Valid after the main power switch is turned off and on.
6		0001		30 sec	
5		0010		60 sec	
4		0011		90 sec	
		0100		120 sec	
		0101		150 sec	
		0110		180 sec	
		0111		210 sec	
		1000		240 sec	
		1001		270 sec	
		1010		300 sec	
		Others		Not available	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>358</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:20
		0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description		
		0	1			
7	POP3 receive timeout (Network function) <*>	Bit 7-4:	0000	Not available	Set time waiting for a response to mail commands from the POP3 server in E-mail transmission. Effective after the power is turned off and on.	
6			0001	30 sec		
5			<b>0010</b>	<b>60 sec</b>		
4				0011		90 sec
				0100		120 sec
				0101		150 sec
				0110		180 sec
				0111		210 sec
				1000		240 sec
				1001		270 sec
			1010	300 sec		
			Others	Not available		

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>359</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Number of times to retry E-mail transmission (Network function)	<b>Normal</b>	Additional retry	When this switch is set to "Additional retry", retry E-mail transmission according to MODE 370, 371 after retrying the number of times specified by the user.	
6	Scanner mode: Coding method (TIFF) when [Advanced] is specified.	Bit 6-4:	<b>000</b>	<b>MH</b>	
5			001	MR	
4				010	MMR
				011	JBIG
			Others	Not available	
0	Forced priority transmission (Network function)	<b>OFF</b>	ON	Specify whether to forcibly perform priority transmission for awaiting documents.	

MODE	Factory setting bit									
360	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:80
		1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	E-mail reception (Network function)	Prohibited	Permitted	Select either [Prohibited] or [Permitted] for E-mail reception (SMTP/POP3).
6	Coding method for the receiver Internet fax capability (Network function, Mail mode) *	Bit 6-4:	000	MH
5			001	MR
4			010	MMR
			011	JBIG
		Others	Not available	
3	Coding method for PDF *	Bit 3-2:	00	MH
2			01	Not available (MR)
			10	MMR
			11	Not available (JBIG)
1	Image data file format *	Bit 1-0:	00	TIFF
0			01	PDF
			Others	Not available

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
361	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:78
		0	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
0	DNS function *	Not available	Available	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>363</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:20
		0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
6	SMTP expansion prohibited (Network function)	Permitted	Prohibited	Select either "Permitted" or "Prohibited" for SMTP expansion protocol. • Valid after the power is turned off and on.
5	Specify From address for DSN report transmission (Network function)	Address specified	Address not specified	Chain mail can be prevented by specifying an address for DSN report on some systems.

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>365</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:04
		0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	FTP timeout (Network function)	Bit 7-0:	00000001	30 sec	Specify the period until timeout during no request by FTP command after FTP login is established. Timeout results in FTP logout forcibly.
6			00000010	60 sec	
5			00000011	90 sec	
4			<b>00000100</b>	<b>120 sec</b>	
3			00000101	150 sec	
2			00000110	180 sec	
1			00000111	210 sec	
0			00001000	240 sec	
			00001001	270 sec	
		00001010	300 sec		
		Others	Not available		

FK-503

Adjustment / Setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
366	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:08
		0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Display network maintenance screen (Network function)	Not display	Display		
6	Priority address input screen for preset scan <*>	IP address input screen	Domain name input screen		
4	Limit the number of characters to be used for E-mail file name	No	Yes		
3	Number of digits of the year of a file name	Last 2 digits	4 digits		

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
367	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:20
		0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description		
		0	1			
7	DNS inquiry timeout <*>	Bit7-3:	00001	20 sec		
6			00010	40 sec		
5			00011	80 sec		
4			00100	160 sec		
3				00101		320 sec
				00110		640 sec
				Others		Not available

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>368</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:C2
		1	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Communication management report CVS output *	Not output	<b>Output</b>	
6	Use a password for both administrator and network *	No	<b>Yes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No: Password is used for network only.</li> <li>Yes: Password is used for both network and administrator (machine)</li> </ul>
1	Communication log (TX) for scanner transmission	Not print	<b>Print</b>	
0	Result of communication sent from a network fax	<b>Not print</b>	Print	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>369</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
2	PING timeout	Bit2-0:	<b>000</b>	<b>5 sec</b>	
1			001	10 sec	
0				010	15 sec
				011	20 sec
				100	25 sec
				101	30 sec
				Others	Not available

MODE	Factory setting bit									
370	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:FF
		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Additional number of times to retry E-mail transmission (Network function)	Bit 7-0:	00000000	0	Specify additional retrieval times after retrying the number of times specified by the user. "0" indicates no additional retrieval. Retrial operations will end after retrying E-mail transmissions the current number of times specified by the user.
6			00000001	1	
5					
4			11111111	255	
3					
2					
1					
0					

MODE	Factory setting bit									
371	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:40
		0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Retry interval for "number of times to retry additional E-mail transmission" (Network function)	Bit 7-5:	000	10 min
6			001	15 min
5			010	20 min
			011	25 min
			100	30 min
			Others	Not available
1	Binary Division *	OFF	ON	
0	Page Division *	OFF	ON	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
372	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:0F
		0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Specify transmission interval of sizedivided E-mail file data <*>	Bit 7-0:	00000101	5 sec
6		00001010	10 sec	
5		00001111	15 sec	
4		00011110	30 sec	
3		00111100	60 sec	
2		01011010	90 sec	
1		01111000	120 sec	
0		10010110	150 sec	
		10110100	180 sec	
	11010010	210 sec		
		11110000	240 sec	
		00000000	Not available	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>373</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:08
		0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Full-mode function <*>	Not available	Available		
6	Output of MDN/DSN text	No	Yes		
3	Wait time for MDN response	Bit3-0:	0000	0 min	
2			0001	5 min	
1			0010	10 min	
0				0011	15 min
				0100	20 min
				0101	30 min
				0110	40 min
				0111	50 min
				1000	1 hr
				1001	2 hr
				1010	3 hr
			1011	4 hr	
		1100	5 hr		
		1101	6 hr		
		1110	7 hr		
		1111	8 hr		

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>374</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:40
		0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	NOTIFY (SUCCESS)	Not send	Send	Used when the mail server processed normally.
6	NOTIFY (FAILURE)	Not send	Send	Used when the mail server detected an error.
5	NOTIFY (DELAY)	Not send	Send	Used when the mail server cannot process immediately after receiving mail file.
4	Response to MDN request when receiving SMTP data	Response	No response	

MODE	Factory setting bit								
<b>379</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
		0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0
									HEX:10

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
3	Specify position for cutting off data when forwarding received documents	Bit3-2:	00	<b>Center</b>	Specify position for cutting off data for the main scan size from the original size to sending size when forwarding received documents.
2			01	Left side	
			10	Not available	
			11	Right side	
1	Specify image editing when forwarding	Bit1-0:	00	<b>Edit to regular size and forward</b>	Specify whether to set the main scan width of received data to regular width or leave the stored data width as is when forwarding received documents.
0			01	Forward stored data as is	
			Others	Not available	

MODE	Factory setting bit									
380	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Enable APOP authentication function <*>	Not enable	Enable	Specify whether to enable the APOP function.
6	Enable SMTP authentication function <*>	Not enable	Enable	Specify whether to enable the SMTP authentication function. (*1)
5	SMTP authentication: Allow CRAMMD5 authentication function <*>	Allowed	Not allowed	Specify whether to enable the CRAM-MD5 authentication function for SMTP authentication. (*2)
4	SMTP authentication: Allow LOGIN authentication function <*>	Allowed	Not allowed	Specify whether to enable the LOGIN authentication function for SMTP authentication. (*2)
3	SMTP authentication: Allow PLAIN authentication function <*>	Allowed	Not allowed	Specify whether to enable the PLAIN authentication function for SMTP authentication. (*2)
2	Separate SMTP authentication ID/password and POP3 information <*>	Not separate	Separate	Specify whether to share the SMTP authentication ID/password with POP3 information.

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting <\*>: Soft switch setting
- (\*1) The SMTP authentication function is valid under the following conditions.
  - **MODE 380 Bit 6 is set to “1”.**
  - **When the SMTP authentication user name and SMTP authentication password share the POP3 user name and POP3 password, MODE 380 Bit 2 is set to “0”.** When the SMTP authentication user name and SMTP authentication password do not share the POP3 user name and POP3 password, **MODE 380 Bit 2 is set to “1”,** and “SMTP AUTH User Name” and “SMTP AUTH Password” are set in Network Settings.
  - **MODE 380 Bit 5, 4, or 3 is set to “0”.**
- (\*2) When all mail authentication functions are validated (MODE 380 Bits 5, 4, and 3 all are set to “0”), they are prioritized in the order “DRAM-MD5 authentication (Bit 5)” → “LOGIN authentication (Bit 4)” → “PLAIN authentication (Bit 3)” .

MODE	Factory setting bit								HEX:80	
381	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
		1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description		
		0	1			
7	Use IP Relay function	Disable	<b>Enable</b>	Select whether to enable the IP Relay function.		
2	Set transmission coding method for IP Relay transmission <*>	Bit2-0:	<b>000</b>	<b>MH</b>	Specify default coding method for capability of other party when sending by IP Relay (instructing machine)	
1			001	MR		
0				010		MMR
				011		JBIG
			Others	Not available		

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
382	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:40
		0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	IP Relay Process result timeout <*>	Communication error	Communication completed	Specify the communication result when a timeout occurs by IP Relay result waiting (instruction machine).	
6	IP Relay Set result timeout <*>	Bit 6-3:	0000	0 min	Specify the period of a timeout of IP Relay result waiting (instruction machine).
5			0001	5 min	
4			0010	10 min	
3			0011	15 min	
			0100	20 min	
			0101	30 min	
			0110	40 min	
			0111	50 min	
			1000	1 hr	
			1001	2 hr	
			1010	3 hr	
1011			4 hr		
1100	5 hr				
1101	6 hr				
1110	7 hr				
1111	8 hr				
2	Set default relay station for IP Relay *	Bit 2-0:	000	Relay station 1	Set the default relay instruction machine for IP Relay (instruction machine).
1			001	Relay station 2	
0			010	Relay station 3	
			011	Relay station 4	
			100	Relay station 5	
			101	Relay station 6	
			110	Relay station 7	
			111	Relay station 8	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
400	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
6	Set priority doc mixed mode. (Copy) *	No	Yes	Selects priority doc mixed mode when Power source is ON and panel reset key is ON.
5		Bit 5-0:	000000	apanese
4			000001	English
3			Others	Not available
2				
1				
0				

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
402	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:01
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Select priority doc mode. (Copy) *	1 sided	2 sided	
6	Select priority print mode. (Copy) *	Bit 6-5:	00	1 sided
5			01	2 sided
			Others	Not available
4	Select automatic function priority mode (Copy) *	Bit 4-3:	00	APS
3			01	AMS
			10	Not available
			11	Manual
2	Select priority order of device *	Copy	Printer	
1	Select priority application. (after auto clear and panel reset) *	Bit 1-0:	00	FAX
0			01	Copy
			10	Auto
			11	Scanner

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
403	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:01
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Select draft print zoom ratio. (Copy) *	Recommended magnification	Same magnification	Set ratios for 2-in-1 page, 4-in-1 page, Booklet creation, or image repeat.
0	Auto-clear by user. (Copy) *	No	Yes	Selects whether to reset the touch panel when pressing ID key.

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
404	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:01
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Select auto-clear time. *	Bit 7-0: 00000000	No reset	For every 1 min  Select whether to carry out auto-clear if there is no operation for a certain time, after copy or operation.
6		00000001	1 min	
5				
4		11110000	240 min	
3		11111111	30 sec	
2		Others	Not available	
1				
0				

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
405	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:0F
		0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select pre-heating time. *	Bit 7-0:	00000001	1 min	For every 1 min Select whether to carry out auto-clear if there is no operation for certain time, after copy or operation.
6					
5			00000101	5 min	
4			00001111	15 min	
3			11110000	240 min	
			Others	Not available	
2					
1					
0					

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
406	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:0F
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select sleep off time. *	Bit 7-0:	00000000	OFF	For every 1 min Select whether to carry out "auto power-source off" if there is no operation for certain time, after copy or operation. Also, select its time. "Auto Power source off" is not carried out if "Select auto Power source off (MODE 416 Bit 0)" is set to "No."
6			00000001	1 min	
			00001111	15 min	
5					
4			00011110	30 min	
3					
2			00111100	60 min	
1					
0		11110000	240 min		
		Others	Not available		

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
407	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:01
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select touch panel off time. *	Bit 7-0:	00000000	OFF	For every 1 min  Select whether to carry out "auto panel off" if no operation is executed for certain time after operation.
6			00000001	1 min	
5					
4			11110000	240 min	
3			Others	Not available	
2					
1					
0					

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
408	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select feeder tray. (Paper) (Copy) *	Bit 7-4:	0000	1 tray	Selects the priority feeder tray used when APS (auto paper select mode) or manual mode is selected.
6			0001	2 tray	
5			0010	3 tray	
4			0011	4 tray	
			1010	Bypass	
			1100	LCT	
			Others	Not available	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
409	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:08
		0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description													
		0	1														
7	Select priority order of 4-in-1 page (Copy) *	Bit 7-6:	00	Pattern 1	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Pattern 1</td> <td>Pattern 2</td> </tr> <tr> <td> <table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>4</td></tr> </table> </td> <td> <table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>3</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>4</td></tr> </table> </td> </tr> </table>	Pattern 1	Pattern 2	<table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>4</td></tr> </table>	1	2	3	4	<table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>3</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>4</td></tr> </table>	1	3	2	4
Pattern 1		Pattern 2															
<table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>4</td></tr> </table>		1	2	3		4	<table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>3</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>4</td></tr> </table>	1	3	2	4						
1	2																
3	4																
1	3																
2	4																
6	01	Pattern 2															
	Others	Not available															
5	Select priority exposure level. (Copy) *	AE	Manual	Density													
4	Select priority doc level. (Copy) *	Bit 4-1:	0000	Text/Photo	"Photo mode" is unavailable if MODE 409 Bit No. 5 is set "AE (Auto)."												
3		0100	Text														
2		1000	Photo														
1		1100	Dot Matrix														
		Others	Not available														

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
410	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:54
		0	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description		
		0	1			
7	Select AE print density level. (Copy) *	Bit7-6:	00	Darker	Specifies level of auto density.	
6			01	Normal		
			10	Not available		
			11	Lighter		
4	Light original adjustment, (Copy: ADF only) *	Darker-Copy	Lighter Copy	Darker Copy: Scans originals in the density as specified. (The density is the same as that in BS scanning.) Lighter Copy: Scans originals in the density lighter than specified.		
3	Select priority manual density level. (Copy) *	Bit3-0:	0000	EXP1	Selects manual density level at mode initialization or level when auto density is switched to manual density: EXP1 (Lighter)   EXP5 (Normal)   EXP9 (Darker)	
2			0001	EXP2		
1			0010	EXP3		
0				0011		EXP4
				0100		EXP5
				0101		EXP6
				0110		EXP7
				0111		EXP8
			1000	EXP9		
		Others	Not available			

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
411	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select symbol bit. (Copy)	+	-	Selects direction (+/-) of print density adjustment by MODE 411 Bit 2 to 0.	
2	Adjust print density. (Copy) *	Bit 2-0:	000	0	Selects print density by adjusting development bias.
1					
			011	3	
0		Others	Not available		

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
412	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:08
		0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select auto sort mode. (Copy) *	Bit 7-6:	00	Sort off mode	Specifies mode of paper ejection when ejector option is attached.
6			01	Sort on mode	
			10	Not available	
			11	Grouping mode	
5	Prohibit shifting. (Copy)	No	Yes		
4	Select auto punch mode. (Copy) *	No	Yes	Settable with other functions of MODE 412 Bit Nos. 7-6.	
3	Select sort on/off auto switch. (Copy) *	No	Yes	Determines whether to switch "sort on → sort off" or "sort off → sort on" according to # of documents or the operation.	
2	Select priority in staple mode.	Bit 2-1:	00	No	
1			01	Corner staple	
			10	2-point staple	
			11	Center staple	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
413	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:04
		0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select FAX (G3-1) output bin. *	Bit 7-6:	00	First tray output	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Specify a tray to where FAX (G3-1) document is delivered to when the finisher has been attached.</li> <li>"Additional bin output" is valid only when the additional bin is attached.</li> </ul>
6			01	Second tray output	
			10	Additional bin output	
			11	Not available	
5	Select PC print output bin. *	Bit 5-4:	00	First tray output	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Specify a tray to where PC print is printed out when the finisher is attached.</li> <li>"Additional bin output" is valid only when the additional bin is attached.</li> </ul>
4			01	Second tray output	
			10	Additional bin output	
			11	Not available	
2	Select copy output bin. *	Bin 1	Bin 2	Specify a bin to where copied document is delivered to when the job separator has been attached.	
1	Select FAX (G3-1) output bin. *	Bin 1	Bin 2	Specify a bin to where faxed (G3-1) document is delivered when the job separator has been attached.	
0	Select PC print output bin. *	Bin 1	Bin 2	Specify a bin to where PC print is delivered to when the job separator has been attached.	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>414</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:A0
		1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic			Description
		0	1		
7	Select image compression ratio for reserving into copy memory.	Bit7-4:	0101	0.5	Shows image compression ratio per copied document for reserving it into copy memory. Reserve necessary capacity of memory for determined compression ratio before starting scanning.
6			0110	0.6	
5		0111	0.7		
4		1000	0.8		
		1001	0.9		
		<b>1010</b>	<b>1.0</b>		
		1011	1.1		
		1100	1.2		
		1101	1.3		
		Others	Not available		

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>415</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:6C
		0	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic			Description
		0	1		
7	Select sound volume 1. (Buzzer) *	Bit 7-5:	000	0 (No sound)	6 stage adjustment of key buzzer
6			001	1	
5		010	2		
		<b>011</b>	<b>3</b>		
		100	4		
		101	5		
		Others	Not available		
4	Select sound volume 2. (Alarm) *	Bit 4-2:	000	0 (No sound)	6 stage adjustment for alarm
3			001	1	
2		010	2		
		<b>011</b>	<b>3</b>		
		100	4		
		101	5		
	Others	Not available			

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
416	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:60
		0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description		
		0	1			
7	Select sound volume 3. (Monitor) *	Bit7-5:	000	0 (no tone)	6 stage adjustment of line monitor	
6			001	1		
5				010		2
				011		3
				100		4
				101		5
				Others		Not available
4	Direction alignment for images when the finisher is attached *	No	Yes	Specify the direction for image output when the finisher is attached.		
0	Disable sleep off. *	Yes	No	Specifies whether MODE 406 can be set to "No power source off."		

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
417	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:63
		0	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Restrict # of papers. (Copy) *	No	Yes	Specifies whether to restrict # of copies.	
6	Selects # of papers to be restricted. (Copy) *	Bit6-0:	0000001	1	Specifies # of papers when MODE 417 Bit 7 is set to "Yes."
5					
4			1100011	99	
3			Others	Not available	
2					
1					
0					

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit								HEX:58	
418	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
		0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
6	Document erase width.	Bit 6-5:	00	0 mm
5			01	1 mm
			<b>10</b>	<b>2 mm</b>
			11	3 mm
4	Stop when the lifetime of imaging unit ends.	<b>Stop</b>	Do not stop	Specify operation (stop or not stop) when the lifetime of imaging unit ends.
3	Display a message when the status of the imaging unit is "near life".	Do not display	<b>Display</b>	Specify operation (display or not display) when the status of the imaging unit is "near life".

MODE	Factory setting bit									
419	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:40
		0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select a copy output bin. *	Bit7-6:	00	First tray output	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Specify a tray to where printed document is delivered to when the finisher is attached.</li> <li>"Additional bin output" is valid only when the additional bin is attached.</li> </ul>
6			01	Second tray output	
			10	Additional bin output	
			11	Not available	
5	Select a FAX (G3-2) output bin. *	Bit5-4:	00	First tray output	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Specify a tray to where FAX (G3-2) document is delivered to when the finisher has been attached.</li> <li>"Additional bin output" is valid only when the additional bin is attached.</li> </ul>
4			01	Second tray output	
			10	Additional bin output	
			11	Not available	
3	Select a FAX (network) output bin. *	Bit3-2:	00	First tray output	
2			01	Second tray output	
			10	Additional bin output	
			11	Not available	
1	Select FAX (G3-2) output bin. *	Bin 1	Bin 2	Specify a bin to where FAX (G3-2) document is delivered when the job separator has been attached.	
0	Select FAX (network) output bin. *	Bin 1	Bin 2	Specify a bin to where FAX (network) document is delivered when the job separator has been attached.	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
420	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Auto-clear confirmation time *	Bit 7-0:	00000000	Function off	10-second steps
6			00000001	10 sec	
5			00000010	20 sec	
4					
3			00011110	300 sec	
2			Others	Not available	
1					
0					

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
422	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:08
		0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Total counter.	Bit 7-6:	00	Mode 1 (std)	Specifies a counting method of total counter.
6			01	Mode 2	
			10	Mode 3	
			Others	Not available	
5	Size counter.	Bit 5-3:	000	Do not count	Specifies sizes of papers to be counted by size counter.
4			001	A3, 11x17	
			010	A3, B4, 11x17, Legal	
			011	A3, B4, FLS, 11x17, Legal, 11x14	
		3	100	A6	
	Others	Not available			
2	Copy Kit counter. (Copy)	Bit 2-1:	00	Mode 1 (Do not count)	Select whether to set counting or not for the Copy Counter and select whether to inhibit the initiation of a new copy cycle or not when the current value reaches the set value.
1			01	Mode 2 (Counted and permits copying even when the set value is reached.)	
			10	Mode 3 (Counted and inhibits copying when the set value is reached.)	
			11	Not available	

FK-503

Adjustment / Setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
423	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:4E (For U.S.) HEX:4C (For Europe)
		0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Plug-in counter mode. (Copy) *	Paper count	Copy count	Sets plug-in counter threshold value, and reads the counter.
6	Key counter. (Copy) *	Available (copying is prohibited.)	Not available (copying is permitted.)	Sets whether to use key counter.
3	Document size detection option *	Yes	No	Specifies whether document size sensors can be used in the inchcorresponding option.
1	LCT paper size *	A4	Letter	
0	Automatically adjust the transfer current of image	Yes	No	

MODE	Factory setting bit									
424	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:10
		0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Metric and inch mixed modes. (Copy)	Mixed	Limited	Specifies whether to round off document sizes for the system specification in auto paper mode.
4	Restrict print mode. (Copy)	Yes	No	Specifies whether to disable "12-Sided Copy" in priority copy mode.
3	Print small size document. (Copy) *	Copy disabled	Copy enabled	Specifies whether to generate a warning when a document smaller than that detectable by document size sensors is loaded.
2	Restrict function. (Copy)	No	Yes	Specifies whether to disable some of copy functions (application, doc copy).

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
425	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
6	Select FLS size. (Copy) *	Bit 6-4:	000	210×330	Specify size of FLS used with in the machine.
5			001	203×330	
4			010	216×330	
			011	220×330	
3	Adjust image quality mode. (Copy)	Bit 3-0:	0000	Not available	Specifies the density of image at printing. When any of Bit 3 to 0 is 1, [*] key is displayed.
2					
1			1000		
0			Others		

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
426	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:50 (For U.S.)
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	HEX:00 (For Europe)

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Movement finisher bin	Not available	Available	
6	Set mixed AMS sheets without printing *	No	Yes	
5		Bit 5-0:	010000	Not available
4			Others	
3				
2				
1				
0				

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit								
429	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
									HEX:00 (For U.S.) HEX:04 (For Europe)

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Set drum dry when engine power is on	Not execute	Execute	Set whether to switch automatically to Photo mode when selecting OHP transparencies.
6	Correspond to OHP offset	Not switch quality mode	Switch quality mode	
5	Automatically reset values on the basic screen at completion of copying using the document feeder. <*>	No	Yes	
4	Set curl correction	Bit 4-3:	00	Not control
3			01	All-environment control
			10	Control for HH, LL environments
			11	Not available
2	Correspond to fluorescent lamp flickering	Control	Not control	
1	Setting of time that fan spin at full speed.	Bit 1-0:	00	20 sec
0			01	55 sec
			10	10 min
			11	Not available

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit	
432	Bit:	7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0
		0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1
		HEX:05

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Wait time (M) at full memory of PC print (Set range: 0, 1 to 30 minutes (1-minute steps))  PC print job is deleted when the wait time at full memory expires. *	Bit7-0: 00000000		Immediately delete
6		00000001		1 min
5		00000010		2 min
4				
3		00000101		5 min
2				
1		00011110		30 min
0		Others		Not available

MODE	Factory setting bit	
433 (Display) 434 (for machine) 435 (Communication)	Bit:	7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0
		0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
		HEX:04

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description		
		0	1			
7	Language selected *	Bit 7-2: 000000		Japanese	(Display-use) Select the language to display on the touch panel. (Machine -use) Select the language for sender, reception, Activity report (TX/RX), etc. (Network-use) Select the language to use for e-mail transmission.	
6		000001		English		
5		Others		Not available		
4						
3						
2						

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting
- The \* mark (Screen setting) does not apply to MODE 435 (Network-use).

MODE	Factory setting bit										
440	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:12 (For U.S.)	
		0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	HEX:04 (For Europe)	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description		
		0	1			
7	PDL set of PC print *	Bit 7-6:	00	Auto		
			01	PCL		
			10	PS		
			11	Others		
6						
5	Paper size set of PC print *	Bit 5-1:	00000	A3		
			00001	B4		
			00010	A4		
			00011	B5		
		4			00100	A5
					00101	B6
					00110	A6
					00111	5 1/2 x 8 1/2
					01000	Exec.
					01001	Letter
					01010	11 x 17
					01011	FLS 1
					01100	FLS 2
					01101	FLS 3
					01110	FLS 4
					01111	Legal
					10000	11 x 14
					10001	Envelope B5
					10010	Envelope Com10
					10011	Envelope C5
	10100			Envelope DL		
	10101			Envelope Monarch		
	10110	J-POST (Hagaki)				
	10111	Custom paper				
3						
2						
1						
		11000	K16			
		11001	K8			
		Others	Not available			

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
441	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX: 80
		1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select a paper feeder cassette to use when using PC printer function *	Bit 7-4:	0000	Tray 1	
6			0001	Tray 2	
5			0010	Tray 3	
4				0011	Tray 4
				<b>1000</b>	<b>Auto</b>
				1010	Bypass
				1100	LCT
			Others	Not available	
3	Select a paper orientation to set when using PC printer function *	Bit 3-2:	<b>00</b>	<b>Portrait</b>	
2			01	Landscape	
			Others	Not available	
1	Select a print method to use when using PC printer function *	Bit 1-0:	<b>00</b>	<b>1-sided print</b>	
0			01	2-sided print for short-edge binding	
			10	2-sided print for long-edge binding	
			11	Not available	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
442	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX: 01
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Select # (last 8 bits) of copies to print by PC printer *	Bit 7-0:	00000000	Not available
6			<b>00000001</b>	<b>1</b>
5				
4			11100111	999
3				
2			11111111	
1				
0				

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
443	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX: 00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
1	Select # (first 2 bits) of copies to print by PC printer *	Bit 1-0:	00	1
0				
			11	999

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
444	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Select a font # to be set when using PC printer function *	Bit7-1:	0000000	Courier
6			0000001	CG Times
5			0000010	CG Times Bold
4			0000011	CG Times Italic
3			0000100	CG Times Bold Italic
2			0000101	CG Omega
1			0000110	CG Omega Bold
			0000111	CG Omega Italic
			0001000	CG Omega Bold Italic
			0001001	Coronet
			0001010	Clarendon Condensed
			0001011	Univers Medium
			0001100	Univers Bold
			0001101	Univers Medium Italic
			0001110	Univers Bold Italic
			0001111	Univers Condensed Medium
			0010000	Univers Condensed Bold
			0010001	Univers Condensed Medium Italic
			0010010	Univers Condensed Bold Italic
			0010011	Antique Olive
		0010100	Antique Olive Bold	
		0010101	Antique Olive Italic	
		0010110	Garamond Antiqua	
		0010111	Garamond Halbfett	
		0011000	Garamond Kursiv	
		0011001	Garamond Kursiv Halbfett	
		0011010	Marigold	
		0011011	Albertus Medium	
		0011100	Albertus Extra Bold	
		0011101	Arial	
		0011110	Arial Bold	
		0011111	Arial Italic	
		0100000	Arial Bold Italic	
		0100001	Times New Roman	
		0100010	Times New Roman Bold	
		0100011	Times New Roman Italic	

FK-503

Adjustment / Setting

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
1			0100100	Times New Roman Bold Italic
			0100101	Helvetica
			0100110	Helvetica Bold
			0100111	Helvetica Oblique
			0101000	Helvetica Bold Oblique
			0101001	Helvetica Narrow
			0101010	Helvetica Narrow Bold
			0101011	Helvetica Narrow Oblique
			0101100	Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique
			0101101	Palatino Roman
			0101110	Palatino Bold
			0101111	Palatino Italic
			0110000	Palatino Bold Italic
			0110001	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book
			0110010	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi
			0110011	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book Oblique
			0110100	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi Oblique
			0110101	ITC Bookman Light
			Others	Not available

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
445	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:74 (For U.S.)
		0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	HEX:4C (For Europe)

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Symbol Set (PC print) *	Bit7-2:	000000	Desktop	
6			000001	ISO 4: United Kingdom	
5			000010	ISO 6: ASCII	
4			000011	ISO 11: Swedish	
3			000100	ISO 15: Italian	
2				000101	ISO 17: Spanish
				000110	ISO 21: German
				000111	ISO 60: Norwegian V1 ISO 60: Danish/Norw
				001000	ISO 69: French
				001001	ISO 8859/1 Latin1
				001010	ISO 8859/2 Latin2
				001011	ISO 8859/9 Latin5
				001100	ISO 8859/10 Latin 6
				001101	ISO 8859/15 Latin 9
				001110	Legal
				001111	Math-8
				010000	MC Text
				010001	Microsoft Publishing
				010010	PC-775
				<b>010011</b>	<b>PC-8, Code Page 437</b>
			010100	PC-850 Multilingual	
			010101	PC-852 Latin 2	
			010110	PC-858 Multilingual	
		010111	PC-8 Turkish		
		011000	PC-8 Danish/Norw		
		011001	PC-1004		
		011010	PI Font		
		011011	PS Math		
		011100	PS Text		
		<b>011101</b>	<b>Roman-8</b>		
		011110	Windows 3.0 Latin 1		
		011111	Windows Baltic		
		100000	Windows 3.1 Latin 1		
		100001	Windows 3.1 Latin 2		

FK-503

Adjustment / Setting

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
2			100010	Windows 3.1 Latin 5
			100011	PC-866
			Others	Not available

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
446	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:3C (For U.S.) HEX:40 (For Europe)
		0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Number Lines (PC print) *	Bit 7-0:	00000100	4
6			00000101	5
			00111100	60
5				
4			01000000	64
3			10000000	128
2			Others	Not available
1				
0				

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
447	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX: 00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Select the unit of font size to use when using PC printer function *	Pitch	Point	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
448	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:30
		0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select font size to use when using PC printer function (Scalable font size) (Last 8 bits) *	Bit 7-0:	00000000	4.00 (16)	
6			00010000		
5					
4			00110000		12.00 (48)
3					
2			11111111		
1					
0					

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
449	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
3	Select a font size to use when using PC printer function (Scalable font size) (First 8 bits) *	Bit 3-0:	0000	999.75 (3999)
2				
1			1111	
0				

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
450	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:E8
		1	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select font size to use when using PC printer function (Bitmap font size) (Last 8 bits) *	Bit 7-0:	00000000	0.44 (44)	
6			00101100		
5					
4			11101000		10.00 (1000)
3					
2			10101100		99.00 (9900)
1					
0			11111111		

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
451	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:03
		0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
5	Select font size to use when using PC printer function (Bitmap font size) (First 6 bits) *	Bit 5-0:	000000	10.00 (1000)	
4			000011		
3					
2			100110		99.0 (9900)
1					
0					

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
452	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Change between A4 and Letter size for PC printing *	No	Yes		
6	Set paper tray fixed/ priority of PC print	Priority	Fixed		
5	CR/LF Mapping (PC print) * <*>	Bit 5-4:	00	Not map	Specify mapping for the line return control code.
4			01	Mode 1 CR->CRLF, LF=LF, FF=FF	
			10	Mode 2 CR=CR, LF->CRLF, FF->CRFF	
			11	Mode 3 CR->CRLF, LF->CRLF, FF->CRLF	
0	Allow printing without a department instruction of PC print * <*>	Not available	Allowed	Allow/not allow PC printing when there is not a department instruction.	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
453	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Set OFF or ON of Post-Script error printing to apply when using PC printer function *	OFF	ON	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
455	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:2C
		0	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Select timeout timer (last 8 bits) for PC printing *	Bit 7-0:	00001010	10 sec
6			00001111	15 sec
5				
4			00101100	300 sec
3				
2			Others	Not available
1				
0				

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
456	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:01
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
1	Select timeout timer (first 2 bit) for PC printing *	Bit1-0:	00	0 sec
0			01	300 sec
			11	1000 sec

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
464	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:8C
		1	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Select RAW port number (last 8 bits). *	Bit 7-0:	00000000	Not available
6				
5			10001100	9100
4				
3			11111111	65535
2				
1				
0				

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting of IT Series Agent

MODE	Factory setting bit									
465	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:23
		0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Select RAW port number (first 8 bits). *	Bit 7-0:	00000000	0
6				
5			00100011	9100
4				
3			11111111	65535
2				
1				
0				

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting of IT Series Agent

MODE	Factory setting bit								HEX:00
466	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
6	Enable LDAP search * <*>	No	Yes	Set whether to enable LDAP searching.	
5	Select default LDAP server * <*>	Bit 5-3:	000	LDAP Server 1	
4			001	LDAP Server 2	
3				010	LDAP Server 3
				011	LDAP Server 4
				100	LDAP Server 5
				Others	Not available
0	Set to use SSL/TLS with HTTP * <*>	Not use	Use	Set whether to use SSL/TLS with HTTP.	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit								HEX:00
467	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
7	Select frame type for PC printing *	Bit7-5:	000	AUTO-detect	
6			001	Ethernet-II	
5				010	802.2
				011	802.3
				100	SNAP
				Others	Not available

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
470	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Setting export extension <*>	TXT	CSV	Set the export file extension for the IP Series Agent export function to CSV or TXT.
6	Setting simplified format <*>	OFF (mode 1)	ON (mode 2)	Set to perform the IP Series Agent import/export function by full format (including fax program registration) or simple format (excluding fax program registration).
5	Enable/disable IT Series Agent function <*>	Enable	Disable	Set whether to enable the IP Series Agent function.
4	PageScope Data AdministratorÇÃégóp	Use	Not use	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
471	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description	
		0	1		
2	Set whether to display the user's list screen, and the default screen * <*>	Bit2-1:	00	Not display list screen	Specify whether to display the user's list screen for machine authentication, and select the default screen when specifying the list screen.
1			01	Display list screen, entry screen default	
			11	Display list screen, list screen default	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. \*: Screen setting <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
473	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Set priority Job List screen <*>	Display by status	Display by print order	Set whether to prioritize the print order display.

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
477	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:00
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description		
		0	1			
				Fax registration/ Report output restriction	Destination display	Fax registration / report output restriction "Administrator only":
6	Set fax registration restriction and destination display <*>	Bit6-5:	00	Allow user	Display Tel. No./ Address	Fax registration and report output buttons move to the Admin.Management menu. Destination display "Display one-touch name": Display registered one-touch names for destinations specified for one-touch keys, Job List, destination names of result reports, and Activity Report (TX). (Do not display the tel. no./ address of the destination.)
5			01	Not available	Not available	
			10	Administrator only	Display Tel. No./ Address	
			11	Administrator only	Display one-touch name	

**NOTE**

- The features with (\*) are settable by users. <\*>: Soft switch setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>512</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:80
		1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Detect dial tone (DT)	No	Yes	

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>768</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:0D
		0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Soft timer adjustment value between DCS and TCF in V.17 and V.27 tar	Bit 7-0:	00000000	Not available
6			00000001	5 msec
5				
4			00001101	65 msec
3				
2			11111111	1275 msec
1				
0				

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>769</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:09
		0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Soft timer adjustment value between DCS and TCF in V.29	Bit 7-0:	00000000	Not available
6			00000001	5 msec
5				
4			00001001	45 msec
3				
2			11111111	1275 msec
1				
0				

MODE	Factory setting bit										
<b>770</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:22 (For U.S.)	
		0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	HEX:C8 (For Europe)	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Interval between CFR and PIX	Bit 7-0:	00000000	Not available
6			00000001	5 msec
5				
4			00100010	170 msec
3				
			11001000	1000 msec
2			11111111	1275 msec
1				
0				

MODE	Factory setting bit										
<b>771</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:23	
		0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1		

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	T1 timer for automatically sending packets	Bit 7-0:	00000000	Not available
6			00000001	1 sec
5				
4			00100011	35 sec
3				
2			11111111	255 sec
1				
0				

FK-503

Adjustment / Setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>772</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:23
		0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	T1 timer for automatically receiving packets	Bit 7-0:	00000000	Not available
6			00000001	1 sec
5				
4			<b>00100011</b>	<b>35 sec</b>
3				
2			11111111	255 sec
1				
0				

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>773</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:23
		0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	T1 timer for manually sending packets	Bit 7-0:	00000000	Not available
6			00000001	1 sec
5				
4			<b>00100011</b>	<b>35 sec</b>
3				
2			11111111	255 sec
1				
0				

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>774</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:23
		0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	T1 timer for manually receiving packets	Bit 7-0:	00000000	Not available
6			00000001	1 sec
5				
4			<b>00100011</b>	<b>35 sec</b>
3				
2			11111111	255 sec
1				
0				

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>775</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:23
		0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	T1 timer for automatically sending polling packets	Bit 7-0:	00000000	Not available
6			00000001	1 sec
5				
4			<b>00100011</b>	<b>35 sec</b>
3				
2			11111111	255 sec
1				
0				

FK-503

Adjustment / Setting

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>776</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:23
		0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	T1 timer for manually sending polling packets	Bit 7-0:	00000000	Not available
6			00000001	1 sec
5				
4			<b>00100011</b>	<b>35 sec</b>
3				
2			11111111	255 sec
1				
0				

MODE	Factory setting bit									
<b>777</b>	Bit:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	HEX:07 (For U.S.)
		0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	HEX:08 (For Europe)

Bit	Feature	Logic		Description
		0	1	
7	Interval between PIX and post command	Bit 7-0:	00000000	Not available
6			00000001	45 msec
5				
4			<b>00000111</b>	<b>75 msec</b>
3				
			<b>00001010</b>	<b>90 msec</b>
2			11111111	1315 msec
1				
0				

Blank Page

# Troubleshooting

## 12. Troubleshooting

### 12.1 Diagnosis by Alarm Code

- This section shows diagnoses of system troubles by alarm codes and their remedies.
- The default setting for diagnostic codes is “not to be displayed.” If you experience errors frequently, setup the soft switch (MODE 020) to display diagnostic codes. Then follow communication error codes tables for troubleshooting.
- Communication error codes tables shows communication error codes. Each of them has 6-digits on the panel and a report.  
Codes 00 to B4 indicate the upper 2 digits. Adding internal 4 digits to them to display 6 digits on the panel and a report.  
Communication reports (TX and RX) print out diagnostic codes for up to 50 activities. Any codes older than those activities cannot be printed.

#### NOTE

- **Before you proceed with a remedy according to the tables, make sure that the power source cable and the connectors are connected properly.**
- Setting up diagnostic code display

MODE 020	
Bit3	Meaning
0	Do not display codes.
1	Displays codes.

#### NOTE

- **See Section “Soft Switch List” for setting up soft switches.**

## 12.2 Communication Error Codes

### NOTE

- Cause - Re: Remote, Li: Line, Lo: Local

### 12.2.1 Errors in operations

Code	Description	Cause	Re	Li	Lo	Remedy
00	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Received DIS but no document in local terminal</li> <li>• Polling Reception is requested</li> <li>• Software failure at time of connection</li> </ul>	Error in operation			○	Reload a document and retry TX.
		Error in operation at remote end	○			Ask to reload a document and retry TX.
01	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Document pulled out while transmitting.</li> <li>• Document size was too small</li> </ul>	Error in operation			○	Reload a correct document and retry TX.
02	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Illegal dialing operation (Example; dialing * or # with DP setting)</li> </ul>	Error in setting up			○	Check the soft switch (MODE 006 Bit5 & MODE 011 Bit 5).
		Error in registration			○	Check the registered one-touch dialing number.
03	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mismatched TX password</li> </ul>	Sender's password and receiver's are not matched.	○		○	Check the group password of both sides.
04	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mismatched RX password</li> </ul>	Sender's password and receiver's are not matched.	○		○	Check the group password of both sides.
05	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mismatched password while polling</li> </ul>	Incorrect password was entered for setting up polling.			○	Check the status of the remote machine and the local password.
06	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Remote system has no relay function</li> </ul>	Failure in remote machine	○			Check the status of the remote machine.
07	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Remote system has not confidential communication function</li> </ul>	Failure in remote machine	○			Check the status of the remote machine.
09	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Incompatibility (Example; no document in local system while polling RX)</li> <li>• TX failure due to mismatch of communication type and/or transmission speed</li> </ul>	Error in operation on remote side	○			Ask the remote end to reload the document again.
		Transmission speeds are set 4800/2400 bps. Remote machine has only V.29.	○		○	Check the soft switch (MODE 049 Bit 4 -0). Check the maximum transmission speed for each one-touch dialing (only for registration in maintenance features).
10	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Error in F code TX</li> </ul>	Failure in remote machine	○			Check the status of the remote machine.
11	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Error in F code RX</li> </ul>	Failure in remote machine	○			Check the status of the remote machine.

**12.2.2 Terminal alarm**

Code	Description	Cause	Re	Li	Lo	Remedy
45	• Memory overflow or nearly full	Memory overflows or nearly full			○	Reset the terminal alarm and ask the remote end for resending.
46	• Document jamming	Feeding is not working continuously.			○	Reload a document.
		Jamming in a long document or in the middle of a page (Feeding is not completed even if feeding exceeds 1 m.)			○	Reload a document.
47	• "No print paper" or "Side cover opened" were detected	Out of print paper			○	Load print paper.
		Side cover was opened while RX			○	Close the side cover.

**12.2.3 Communication errors (TX)**

Code	Description	Cause	Re	Li	Lo	Remedy
33	• Protocol failure in V.34 sequence	Failure in remote machine	○			Try another remote machine.
		Line failure		○		Try another line.
70	• Busy tone while waiting for initial identification signal • Timeout or modem failure while detecting 2nd dialing tone • Cannot dial due to dialing/ringing conflict • T1 timeout while waiting for initial identification signal when FAX signal is not detected	Failure in remote machine	○			Try another remote machine.
		Line failure			○	Try another line.
71	• T1 timeout while waiting for initial identification signal after FAX signal is detected • Detected reverse polarity while waiting for initial identification signal	Failure in remote machine	○			Try another remote machine.
		Line failure			○	Try BACK to BACK communication.
72	• Received DCN in phase B while waiting for commands other than DCN	Interruption or failure in remote machine	○			Check the remote system and retry TX.

FK-503

Troubleshooting

Code	Description	Cause	Re	Li	Lo	Remedy
74	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Received DIS or DTC 3 times while waiting for response to TCF</li> <li>No response even after sending TSI/DCS and TCF 3 times</li> <li>Received FTT twice even TCF has lowest speed</li> </ul>	Failure in remote machine	○			Try another remote machine.
		Line failure		○		Try another line.
		Failure in FAX board			○	Replace FAX board
		Failure in MFBS board			○	Replace MFBS board
76	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reverse polarity while waiting for signal other than initial identification</li> </ul>	Failure in remote machine	○			Check the remote system and retry TX.
		Line failure		○		If same error will be experienced several times, set the soft switch (MODE 082 Bit 3) 0.
77	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No response to post message (T4 timeout)</li> <li>5 minute timeout in RNR, RR sequence (T5 timeout)</li> </ul>	Failure in remote machine	○			Try another remote machine.
		No RTC detection in remote machine (line failure)			○	Try another line.
78	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Received DCN while waiting for response to post message</li> </ul>	Interruption or failure in remote machine	○			Check the status of the remote machine and retry TX.
79	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Received PIP for post message (For response to EOP or PPS-EOP, communication is normal even error code is displayed)</li> </ul>	Failure in remote machine	○			Check the status of the remote machine.
7A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Received RTN for post message (where RTN reception is regarded as communication failure)</li> <li>Retry out of resending error</li> <li>PPR frame error</li> </ul>	Failure in remote machine	○			Check the status of the remote machine.
		Line failure		○		Check the line.
		Failure in TX level			○	Check TX level.
7C	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Received CRP 3 times for TCF</li> <li>Received CRP 3 times for post message</li> <li>Received CRP 3 times for DTC of polling reception</li> </ul>	Failure in remote machine	○			Try another remote machine.
		Line failure			○	Try another line.
7D	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>RX command error (without cutting off carrier)</li> </ul>	Failure in remote machine	○			Check the status of the remote machine.
7F	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No remote machine response after changing mode (T1 timeout)</li> </ul>	Failure in remote machine	○			Check the status of the remote machine.
8F	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Received PIN for post message</li> </ul>	Failure in remote machine	○			Check the status of the remote machine.

**12.2.4 Communication errors (RX)**

Code	Description	Cause				Remedy
			Re	Li	Lo	
33	• Protocol failure in V.34 sequence	Failure in remote machine	○			Try another remote machine.
		Line failure		○		Try another line.
91	• T1 timeout while waiting for initial identification signal	Failure in remote machine	○			Try another remote machine.
		Line failure		○		Try another line.
92	• Received DCN while waiting for commands other than DCN in phase B	Interruption or failure in remote machine	○			Check the status of the remote machine and retry TX.
95	• Detected low speed flag followed by 10 sec. timeout while waiting for detection of image signal carrier (HMCD ON)	Failure in remote machine	○			Try another remote system.
		Line failure		○		Try another line.
96	• Carrier disconnected for 15 seconds while receiving G3 image signal	Error in remote machine	○			Ask for resending.
		Failure in remote machine	○			Try another remote machine.
		Line failure		○		Try another line.
97	• T2 timeout while waiting for post message • T2 timeout while waiting for DCN after receiving last page • No response from remote system after changing mode (T2 timeout)	Error in remote machine	○			Try another remote machine.
		Accidental RTC detection (line failure)		○		Try another line.
98	• Received DCN while waiting for command other than DCN in phase D	Interruption or failure in remote machine	○			Ask for resending.
99	• Received PRI-Q as post message (Communication is regarded as normal even with error message)	Failure in remote machine	○			Check the status of the remote machine.
9A	• Cannot decode line correctly for 35 seconds while receiving ECM image signal	Failure in remote machine	○			Try another remote machine.
		Line failure		○		Try another line.
		Failure in FAX board			○	Replace FAX board
		Failure in MFBS board			○	Replace MFBS board
9C	• Received CRP 3 times while waiting for initial identification signal	Failure in remote machine	○			Try another remote machine.
		Failure in FAX board			○	Replace FAX board
		Failure in MFBS board			○	Replace MFBS board
		Line failure		○		Try another line.

Code	Description	Cause	Re	Li	Lo	Remedy
9D	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>RX command error (without cutting off carrier)</li> </ul>	Failure in remote machine	○			Check the status of the remote machine.
9F	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Interrupted page reception by EOR-Q or EOR-PRI-Q signal from sender in ECM procedure (next page may be received completely because ECM procedure runs continuously)</li> </ul>	Failure in remote machine	○			Try another remote machine.
		Line failure		○		Reduce the initial transmission speed and try resending.

**12.2.5 Malfunction**

Code	Description	Cause			Remedy
		Re	Li	Lo	
B0	• Power source off	Power source switch was turned off			○ None.
		Power source failure			○ None.
		Defective power source supply unit			○ Replace the power source supply unit.
B2	• System failure (Examples; image data conversion failure and error in sequence timing)	Warm restart switch was pressed			○ None.
		Failure in FAX board			○ Replace FAX board
		Failure in MFBS board			○ Replace MFBS board
		Line failure		○	Check line noise and reception level.
B4	• Modem failure	Document was not loaded for polling reception in V.34 mode	○		Check the document loaded in the remote side.
		Line failure		○	Check line noise and reception level.
		Failure in FAX board			○ Replace FAX board
		Failure in MFBS board			○ Replace MFBS board
B5	• Modem failure (modem failure in V.8 sequence at RX)	Line failure		○	Check line noise and reception level.
		Failure in FAX board			○ Replace FAX board
		Failure in MFBS board			○ Replace MFBS board
B6	• Modem failure (modem failure in V.8 sequence at RX)	Line failure		○	Check line noise and reception level.
		Failure in FAX board			○ Replace FAX board
		Failure in MFBS board			○ Replace MFBS board
B7	• System failure (Examples; image data conversion failure, error in sequence timing)	Warm restart switch was pressed			○ None.
		Failure in FAX board			○ Replace FAX board
		Failure in MFBS board			○ Replace MFBS board
		Line failure		○	Check line noise and reception level.

FK-503

Troubleshooting

## 12.3 Diagnosis by Symptoms

- Possible causes of various problems and their remedies are shown below. Carry out troubleshooting according to this table.

Symptom	Item No.	Cause	Remedy	
			YES	NO
Received image is stretched with ADF	1	Printed image is excessively stretched in the copy mode?  <b>NOTE</b> • <b>The following causes may be possible (improper document handling): special paper such as very thick paper, non-carbon print paper, carbon print paper.</b>	YES	Go to item 2.
			NO	Failure in remote terminal (improper document handling, error in the transmission unit of the remote terminal).
	2	Is an image from the service center also stretched?	YES	Go to item 3.
			NO	Go to item 4.
	3	Any improvement after replacing MFBS board?	YES	Replace MFBS board.
			NO	Replace the PWB-A
	4	Is the contact of feed roller gears OK?	YES	Go to item 5.
			NO	Replace the feed roller gear unit.
	5	Any paper dust on feed rollers or pick-up rollers?	YES	Clean up rollers.
			NO	Replace the leaf spring.
Received image is shrunk too much.	1	Printed image is excessively shrunk in the copy mode?	YES	Go to item 2.
			NO	Failure in the remote terminal (improper document handling, error in the transmission unit of the remote terminal).
	2	Is an image from the service center also shrunk?	YES	Go to item 4.
			NO	Go to item 3.
	3	Any improvement after checking the reading unit?	YES	END
			NO	Go to item 4.
	4	Any improvement after replacing MFBS board?	YES	Replace MFBS board.
			NO	Replace the PWB-A
Received image is too light or faded.	1	Are copied image or a test image also too light or faded?  <b>NOTE</b> • <b>The following causes may be possible (improper setting of document contrast): a document with small blue characters or file lines</b>	YES	Go to item 2.
			NO	Failure in the remote side (improper setting of document contrast, improper document handling, poor line condition, and error in the transmission unit of the remote terminal).
	2	Any improvement after replacing the imaging unit?	YES	Replace the imaging unit.
			NO	For details see Main service manual "Image quality problem".

Symptom	Item No.	Cause	Remedy	
Received image is squeezed	1	Are characters of copied image or a test image also squeezed? Improper setting of document contrast: Received image of small characters or blue copies with "contrast" switch set "Darker". Error in remote machine: The following causes are possible: A. Failure in board of scanner unit B. Improper adjustment of optical focus C. Dew on optical lenses (Proceed to anti-dew.)	YES	Failure in the remote side (improper setting of document contrast, and error in the transmission unit of the remote terminal).
			NO	Go to item 2.
	2	Any improvement after replacing the imaging unit?	YES	Replace the imaging unit.
			NO	For details see Copier service manual "Image quality problem".
Clock malfunctions	1	No improper operation?	YES	Refer User's Guide for operation.
			NO	Go to item 2.
	2	Any improvement after replacing RAMS board?	YES	Replace RAMS board.
			NO	Go to item 3.
	3	Any improvement after replacing MFBS board?	YES	Replace MFBS board.
			NO	Replace the PWB-A.
Neither "Sending" nor "Receiving" are displayed.	1	Is an alarm message on screen?	YES	Correct the failure and reset the alarm.
			NO	Go to item 2.
	2	Is the external telephone on-hooked?	YES	Go to item 3.
			NO	Set the external telephone off-hook then press the communication switch.
	3	Are you printing something such as report?	YES	Proceed to communication after completing print jobs.
			NO	Go to item 4.
	4	Any improvement after replacing Operating panel?	YES	Replace Operating panel.
			NO	Go to item 5.
	5	Any improvement after replacing the cable between Operating panel and BCRS?	YES	Replace the cable between Operating panel and BCRS.
			NO	Go to item 6.
	6	Any improvement after replacing FAX board?	YES	Replace FAX board.
			NO	Go to item 7.
	7	Any improvement after replacing MFBS board?	YES	Replace MFBS board.
			NO	Replace the PWB-A

FK-503

Troubleshooting

Symptom	Item No.	Cause	Remedy	
Cannot go to "Sending" nor "Receiving" modes	1	Is the password checked?	YES	Go to item 2
			NO	Go to item 3.
	2	Is the password correct?	YES	Disable password check and Go to item 3.
			NO	Match the password.
	3	Try to communicate with the service center. Same problem? Possible causes: D. FAX button is not pressed. E. Both systems are in the transmission (or reception) mode.	YES	Go to item 4.
			NO	END Possible causes are line trouble, trouble or improper operation in the remote terminal, or the remote FAX is not connected.
	4	Are the transmission level and equalizer of the service center set properly?	YES	Go to item 5.
			NO	Set them properly.
	5	Did you check the mode (TX or RX) of the remote side?	YES	Go to item 6.
			NO	Confirm it by phone.
	6	Any improvement after replacing MFBS - FAX cable?	YES	Replace MFBS - FAX cable.
			NO	Go to item 7.
	7	Any improvement after replacing FAX board?	YES	Replace FAX board.
			NO	Go to item 8.
	8	Any improvement after replacing MFBS board?	YES	Replace MFBS board.
			NO	Go to item 9.
	9	Any improvement after replacing Operating panel?	YES	Replace Operating panel.
			NO	Go to item 10.
	10	Any improvement after replacing the cable between Operating panel and BCRS?	YES	Replace the cable between Operating panel and BCRS.
			NO	Replace the PWB-A
Automatic reception disabled	1	Did you select the automatic reception mode?	YES	Go to item 2
			NO	Select the automatic reception mode.
	2	Is the external telephone on hook?	YES	Go to item 3.
			NO	Set the external telephone on-hook.
	3	Any improvement after replacing MFBS - FAX cable?	YES	Replace MFBS - FAX cable.
			NO	Go to item 4.
	4	Any improvement after replacing FAX board?	YES	Replace FAX board.
			NO	Go to item 5.
	5	Any improvement after replacing MFBS board?	YES	Replace MFBS board.
			NO	Go to item 6.
	6	Any improvement after replacing Operating panel?	YES	Replace Operating panel.
			NO	Go to item 7.
	7	Any improvement after replacing the cable between Operating panel and BCRS?	YES	Replace the cable between Operating panel and BCRS.
			NO	Replace the PWB-A

Symptom	Item No.	Cause	Remedy	
Cannot send dial number from 10 key pad	1	Is the external telephone off-hook?	YES	Go to item 2
			NO	Set the handset on-hook.
	2	Is the line type specified correctly?	YES	Go to item 3.
			NO	Specify the line type (MF, 10, 20 PPS) correctly.
	3	Dial by 10 key?	YES	Go to item 5.
			NO	Go to item 4.
	4	Did you register the phone number?	YES	Go to item 5.
			NO	Register the phone number.
	5	Any improvement after replacing MFBS - FAX cable?	YES	Replace the MFBS - FAX cable.
			NO	Go to item 6.
	6	Any improvement after replacing FAX board?	YES	Replace FAX board.
			NO	Go to item 7.
	7	Any improvement after replacing MFBS board?	YES	Replace MFBS board.
			NO	Go to item 8.
	8	Any improvement after replacing Operating panel?	YES	Replace Operating panel.
			NO	Go to item 9.
	9	Any improvement after replacing the cable between Operating panel and BCRS?	YES	Replace the cable between Operating panel and BCRS.
			NO	Replace the PWB-A
Cannot monitor communication	1	Is the sound volume switch OFF?	YES	Select a sound volume switch other than OFF.
			NO	Go to item 2
	2	Is S/W DIP SW set line monitoring?	YES	Go to item 3.
			NO	Set S/W DIP SW.
	3	Any improvement after replacing the speaker?	YES	Replace the speaker.
			NO	Go to item 4.
	4	Any improvement after replacing FAX board?	YES	Replace FAX board.
			NO	Go to item 5.
	5	Any improvement after replacing MFBS board?	YES	Replace MFBS board.
			NO	Go to item 6.
	6	Any improvement after replacing Operating panel?	YES	Replace Operating panel.
			NO	Go to item 7.
	7	Any improvement after replacing the cable between Operating panel and BCRS?	YES	Replace the cable between Operating panel and BCRS.
			NO	Replace the PWB-A

FK-503

Troubleshooting

Symptom	Item No.	Cause	Remedy	
			YES	Normal
Image memory (memory stored for TX image) is not backed up.	1	Proceed to the following procedure. Is the image memory backed up? F. TX: Disconnect the line cable and proceed a quick memory transmission. Turn OFF the power switch while waiting for the answer. Turn ON the power and check if data is stored in the image memory. G. RX: Turn OFF the power switch while proceeding memory reception without printing paper. Turn ON the power again and check if data is stored in the image memory.	YES	Normal
			NO	Go to item 2
	2	Is the connector of BCRS board connected?	YES	Go to item 3.
			NO	Connect the connector.
	3	Is the battery voltage appropriate? (1.2 V or more)	YES	Go to item 6.
			NO	Go to item 4.
	4	Is the battery full charged? (Approx. 24hr)	YES	Go to item 5.
			NO	Charge the battery.
	5	Any improvement after replacing the battery?	YES	Replace the battery.
			NO	Go to item 6.
	6	Any improvement after replacing MFBS board?	YES	Replace MFBS board.
			NO	Go to item 7.
	7	Any improvement after replacing RAMS board?	YES	Replace RAMS board.
			NO	Replace the PWB-A



KONICA MINOLTA

**SERVICE MANUAL**

**FIELD SERVICE**

---

# DF-605

# Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  to the left of the revised section.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.

## NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2005/08	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

# CONTENTS

## DF-605

### General

1.	Product specifications .....	1
----	------------------------------	---

### Maintenance

2.	Periodical check .....	5
2.1	Maintenance procedure (Periodical check parts) .....	5
2.1.1	Replacing the Pick-up Roller and Feed Roller .....	5
2.1.2	Replacing the Separation Roller .....	6
2.1.3	Cleaning of the Pick-up Roller, Feed Roller and Separation Roller .....	7
2.1.4	Cleaning of Miscellaneous Rolls .....	7
2.1.5	Cleaning of Miscellaneous Rollers .....	8
2.1.6	Cleaning of the Scanning Guide .....	9
2.1.7	Cleaning of the Reflective Sensor Section .....	9
3.	Other .....	10
3.1	Disassembly/Adjustment prohibited items .....	10
3.2	Disassembly/Assembly/Cleaning list (Other parts) .....	11
3.2.1	Disassembly/Assembly parts list .....	11
3.3	Disassembly/Assembly procedure .....	11
3.3.1	Front Cover/Rear Cover/Original Feed Tray Rear Cover .....	11
3.3.2	Main Control Board .....	12
3.3.3	Variable Resistor .....	12
3.3.4	Complete Stamp Unit 2 .....	14
3.3.5	Replacing the Replace Stamp 2 .....	15
4.	Firmware upgrade .....	16

### Adjustment/Setting

5.	How to use the adjustment section .....	17
6.	Tech. Rep. Mode .....	18
6.1	Tech. Rep. Mode function setting procedure .....	18
6.2	Setting in the Tech. Rep. Choice .....	18
6.2.1	Sheet-through-ADF .....	18
6.3	Setting in the Function .....	18
6.3.1	Org. Width Detect Adjust .....	18
6.4	I/O Check .....	19

6.4.1	Sheet-through-ADF (2-sided) .....	19
6.5	Setting in the Operation Check.....	21
6.5.1	Paper Passage .....	21
6.5.2	ADF Sensor Adjust .....	21
6.5.3	Backup Data Initialization .....	21
7.	Mechanical adjustment .....	22
7.1	Leading Edge Skew Adjustment.....	22
7.2	Adjustment of the Scanning Zoom Ratio in the Main and Sub-Scanning Directions .....	23
7.3	Adjustment of the Scanning Start Position in the Main and Sub-Scanning Directions .....	24
7.4	Document Size Detection Adjustment.....	26

## Troubleshooting

8.	Jam Display.....	27
8.1	Misfeed display .....	27
8.1.1	Misfeed display resetting procedure .....	27
8.2	Sensor layout.....	27
8.3	Solution .....	28
8.3.1	Initial check items .....	28
8.3.2	Misfeed at Paper Take-Up section .....	28
8.3.3	Misfeed at Transport section.....	29
8.3.4	Misfeed at Turnover section.....	29
8.3.5	Misfeed at Paper Exit section .....	30
9.	Malfunction code.....	31
9.1	Trouble code.....	31
9.2	Solution .....	31
9.2.1	C8301: ADF Cooling Fan Motor Failure.....	31
10.	Set error detection .....	32

# General

## 1. Product specifications

### A. Type

Name	Reverse Automatic Document Feeder	
Type	Paper Feed	Paper Feed from top of stack
	Turnover	Switch back system
	Paper Exit	Straight exit system
Installation	Screw clamp to the main unit	
Document Alignment	Center	
Document Loading	Left image side up	

### B. Functions

Modes	1-Sided Mode / 2-Sided Mode
-------	-----------------------------

### C. Paper type

Type of Document	Standard Mode Plain Paper	1-Sided Mode 35 to 128 g/m <sup>2</sup> (9.25 to 34 lb)
		2-Sided Mode 50 to 128 g/m <sup>2</sup> (13.25 to 34 lb)
	Mixed Original Detection Mode Plain Paper	1-Sided / 2-Sided Mode 50 to 128 g/m <sup>2</sup> (13.25 to 34 lb)
	FAX Mode Plain Paper	1-Sided Mode 35 to 128 g/m <sup>2</sup> (9.25 to 34 lb)
		2-Sided Mode 50 to 128 g/m <sup>2</sup> (13.25 to 34 lb)
Detectable Document Size*1	Metric area B6R to A3 Inch area 5.5 × 8.5R / 5.5 × 8.5 to 11 × 17	
Capacity	80 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) or load height of 11 mm or less.	

\*1: For the Combined Original Detection Mode, Refer to the Mixed Original Detection Enabled Size Combination Table.

**D. Paper feed prohibited originals**

- If fed, trouble occurrence will be highly possible.

Type of Original	Possible Trouble
Original that is stapled or clipped.	Feed failure, damage to the original, or drive failure due to clip clogging
Book original	Feed failure, damage to the original, or drive failure
Original weighing less than 35g/m <sup>2</sup> or 129g/m <sup>2</sup> or more	Feed failure
Torn original	Feed failure, damaged sheet
Highly curled original (15 mm or more)	Original misfeed due to dog-ear or skew
OHP transparencies	Feed failure
Label Sheet	Feed failure
Offset master	Feed failure
Sheets clipped or notched	Damaged sheet
Sheets patched	Patched part folded or torn sheet, Sheets misfed

**E. Paper feed not guaranteed originals**

- If fed, paper feed will be possible to some extent but trouble occurrence will be possible.

Type of Original	Possible Trouble
Sheets lightly curled (Curled amount: 10 - 15 mm)	Dog-eared, exit failure
Heat Sensitive Paper	Edge folded, exit failure, transport failure
Coated Paper (Ink Jet Paper)	Take-up failure, transport failure
Translucent paper	Take-up failure, transport failure
Paper immediately after paper exit from the main unit	Take-up failure, transport failure
Paper with many punched holes (e.g., loose leaf) limited to vertical feeding	Multi-page feed due to flashes from holes
Sheets with 2 to 4 holes	Transport failure
Sheets two-folded or Z-folded	Transport failure, image deformation
Sheets with rough surface (e.g., letterhead)	Take-up failure
Sheets folded	Image deformation, multi-page feed, take-up failure

**F. Mixed original feed chart**

For Metric

	Max. Original Size	297 mm		257 mm		210 mm		182 mm	148 mm
	Mixed Original Size	A3	A4	B4	B5	A4R	A5	B5R	A5R
297 mm	A3	OK	OK	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A4	OK	OK	-	-	-	-	-	-
257 mm	B4	OK	OK	OK	OK	-	-	-	-
	B5	OK	OK	OK	OK	-	-	-	-
210 mm	A4R	OK*	OK*	OK	OK	OK	OK	-	-
	A5	NG	NG	OK	OK	OK	OK	-	-
182 mm	B5R	NG	NG	OK*	OK*	OK	OK	OK	-
148 mm	A5R	NG	NG	NG	NG	NG	NG	OK	OK
123 mm	B6R	NG	NG	NG	NG	NG	NG	NG	OK

For Inch

	Max. Original Size	11		8.5			5.5
	Mixed Original Size	11 x 17	8.5 x 11	8.5 x 14	8.5 x 11R	5.5 x 8.5	8.5 x 5.5R
11	11 x 17	OK	OK	-	-	-	-
	8.5 x 11	OK	OK	-	-	-	-
8.5	8.5 x 14	OK*	OK*	OK	OK	OK	-
	8.5 x 11R	OK*	OK*	OK	OK	OK	-
5.5	8.5 x 5.5	NG	NG	OK	OK	OK	-
	8.5 x 5.5R	NG	NG	NG	NG	NG	OK

OK	Mixed Original Feed available (Tilted with in 1.5% or less)
NG	NO. Mixed Original Feed
-	Can not Set Original
*	Tilted with in 2% or less is 80%

**G. Machine specifications**

Power Requirements	DC 24 V (supplied from the main unit)
	DC 5 V (generated within the Automatic Document Feeder)
	DC 3.3 V (supplied from the main unit)
Max. Power Consumption	48 W or less
Dimensions	582 (W) x 558 (D) x 145 (H) mm 23 inch (W) x 20.5 inch (D) x 5.75 inch (H)
Weight	10 kg (22 lb) or less

**H. Operating**

- Conforms to the operating environment of the main unit.

**NOTE**

- **These specifications are subject to change without notice.**

Blank Page

# Maintenance

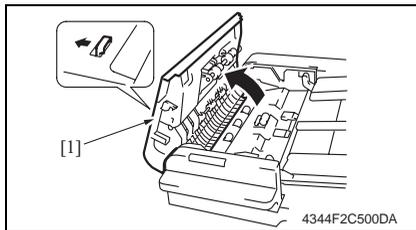
## 2. Periodical check

### 2.1 Maintenance procedure (Periodical check parts)

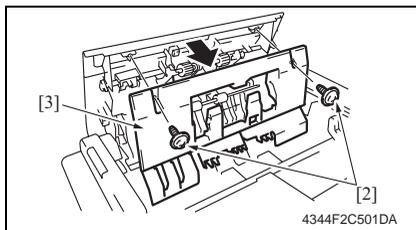
#### NOTE

- The alcohol described in the cleaning procedure of Maintenance represents the isopropyl alcohol.

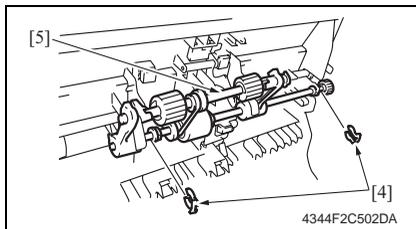
#### 2.1.1 Replacing the Pick-up Roller and Feed Roller



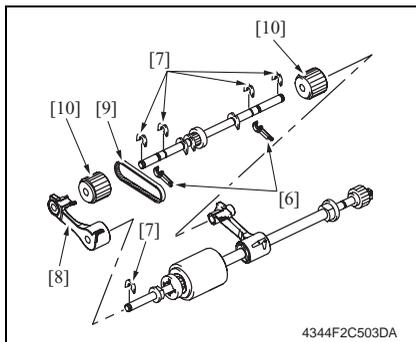
1. Open the Upper Door [1].



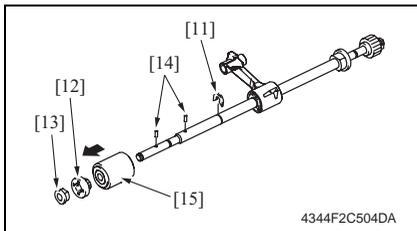
2. Remove two screws [2], and remove the cover [3].



3. Remove two C-clips [4], and remove the Pick-up Roller Assy [5].



4. Remove two levers [6].
5. Remove five C-rings [7].
6. Remove the arm [8].
7. Remove the belt [9].
8. Remove two Pick-up Rollers [10].

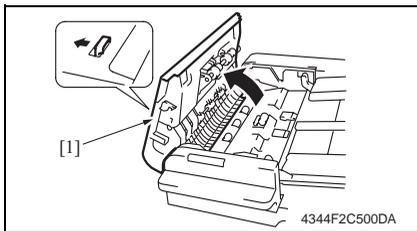


9. Remove the C-ring [11], and remove the gear [12] and the bushing [13].
10. Remove two pins [14].
11. Remove the Feed Roller [15].

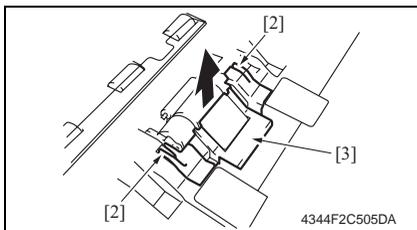
**NOTE**

- Use care not to lose the pin.

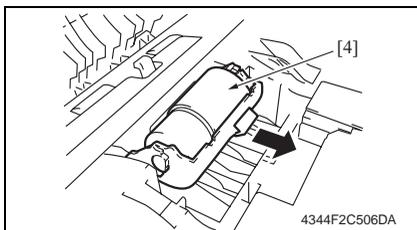
**2.1.2 Replacing the Separation Roller**



1. Open the Upper Door [1].



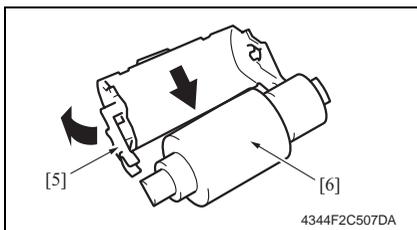
2. Hold the [2] sections in the figure, and remove the cover [3].



3. Remove the Separation Roller Assy [4].

**NOTE**

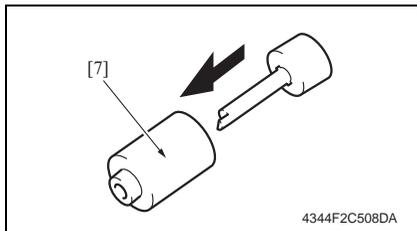
- Use care not to lose the spring at the bottom side of the Separation Roller Assy.



4. While opening up the holder [5], remove the shaft [6].

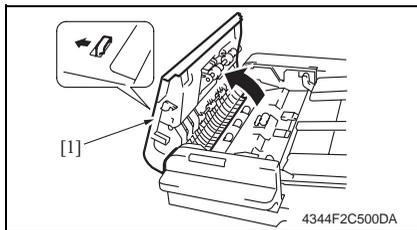
**NOTE**

- Opening the holder too much can break the holder.

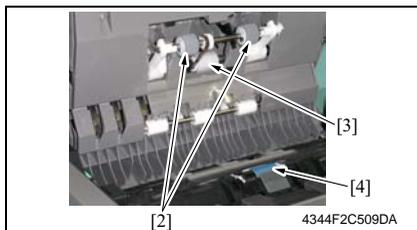


- Remove the Separation Roller [7] from the shaft.

### 2.1.3 Cleaning of the Pick-up Roller, Feed Roller and Separation Roller

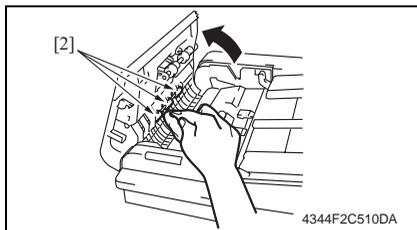


- Open the Upper Door [1].

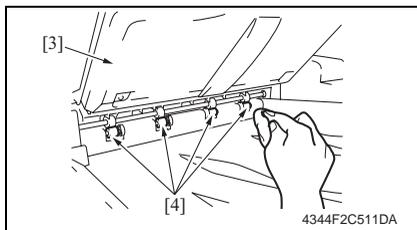


- Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Pick-up Roller [2], Feed Roller [3] and Separation Roller [4].

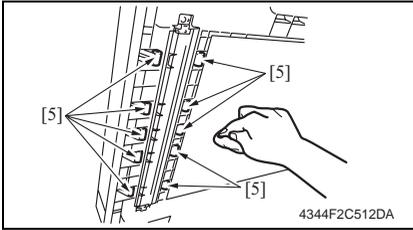
### 2.1.4 Cleaning of Miscellaneous Rolls



- Open the Upper Door [1].
- Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the roll [2].

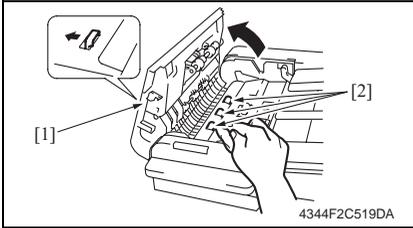


- Lift up the Original Feed Tray [3].
- Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the roll [4].

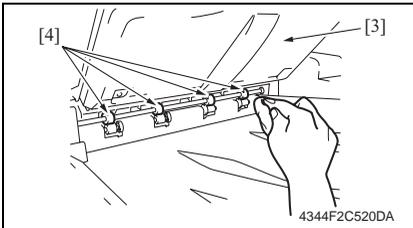


5. Open the Duplexing Document Feeder.
6. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the roll [5].

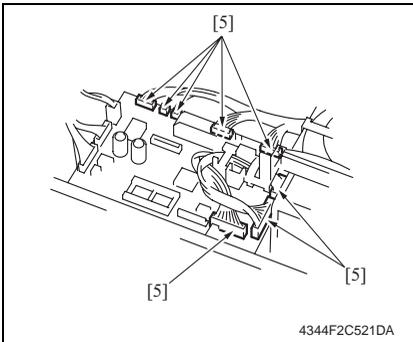
### 2.1.5 Cleaning of Miscellaneous Rollers



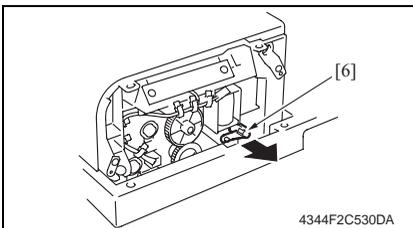
1. Open the Upper Door [1].
2. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the roller [2].



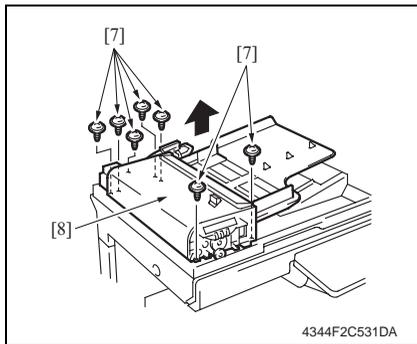
3. Lift up the Original Feed Tray [3].
4. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the roller [4].



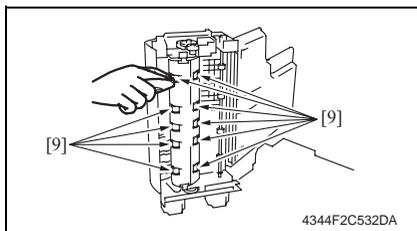
5. Remove the Front Cover and Rear Cover.
6. Disconnect eight connectors [5] on the board.



7. Remove the lever [6].

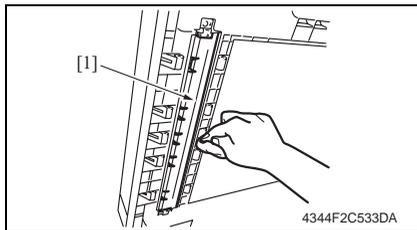


8. Remove seven screws [7], and remove the Paper Feed Unit [8].



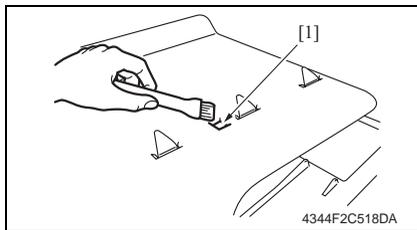
9. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the roller [9].

### 2.1.6 Cleaning of the Scanning Guide



1. Open the Duplexing Document Feeder.
2. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Scanning Guide [1] clean of dirt.

### 2.1.7 Cleaning of the Reflective Sensor Section



1. Clean the sensor [1] using a brush or other similar tools.

## 3. Other

### 3.1 Disassembly/Adjustment prohibited items

#### A. Screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied

- Blue paint or green paint is applied to some screws to prevent them from coming loose.
- As a general rule, screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied should not be removed or loosened.

#### B. Red-painted screws

- Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.

#### C. Variable Resistors on Board

#### NOTE

- Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.

#### D. Removal of PWBs

#### Caution

- When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to “SAFETY AND IMPORTANT WARNING ITEMS” and follow the corresponding removal procedures.
- The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.
- When it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.

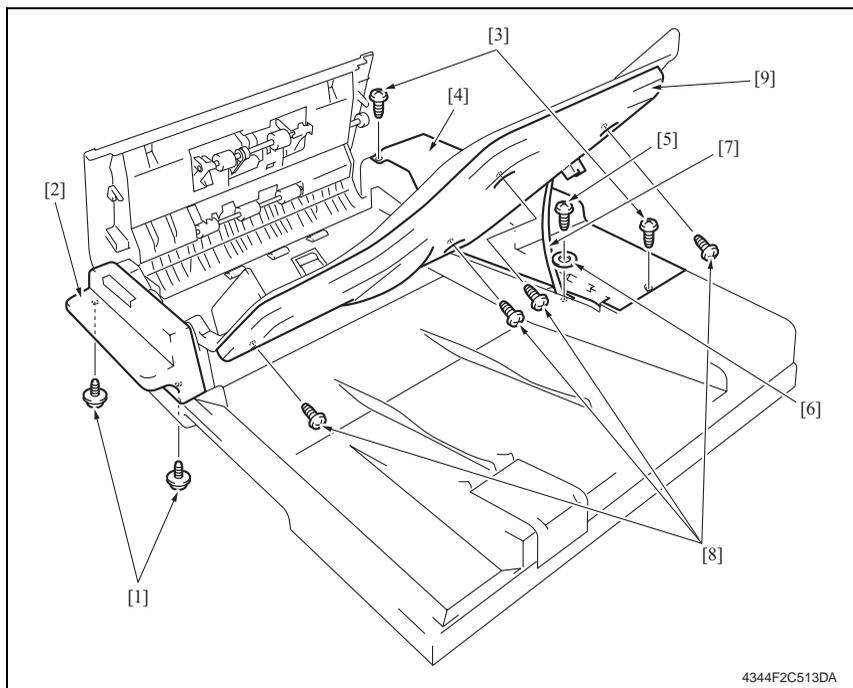
### 3.2 Disassembly/Assembly/Cleaning list (Other parts)

#### 3.2.1 Disassembly/Assembly parts list

No.	Section	Part name	Ref. Page
1	Exterior parts	Front Cover	☞ 11
2		Rear Cover	☞ 11
4		Original Feed Tray Rear Cover	☞ 11
5	Board and etc.	Main Control Board	☞ 12
6		Variable Resistor	☞ 12
7	Others	Complete Stamp Unit 2	☞ 14
8		Replace Stamp 2	☞ 15

### 3.3 Disassembly/Assembly procedure

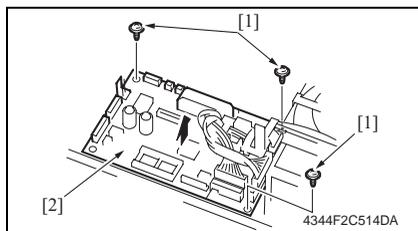
#### 3.3.1 Front Cover/Rear Cover/Original Feed Tray Rear Cover



1. Remove two screws [1], and remove the Front Cover [2].
2. Remove two screws [3].
3. Lift up the Original Feed Tray, and remove the Rear Cover [4].
4. Remove the screw [5] and the washer [6], and remove the stopper [7].
5. Lift up the Original Feed Tray.
6. Remove four screws [8], and remove the Original Feed Tray Rear Cover [9].

4344F2C513DA

### 3.3.2 Main Control Board

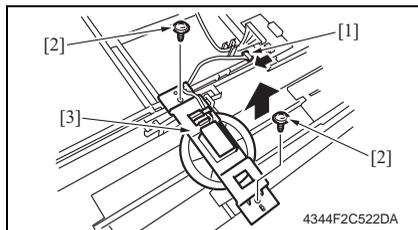


1. Turn OFF the Main Power Switch.
2. Remove the Rear Cover.
- ☞ 11
3. Disconnect all the connectors on the board.
4. Remove three screws [1], and then remove the Main Control Board [2].

#### NOTE

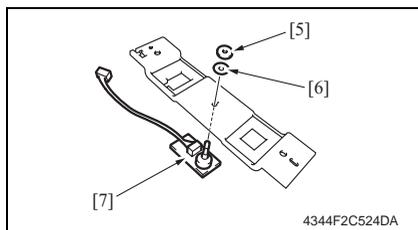
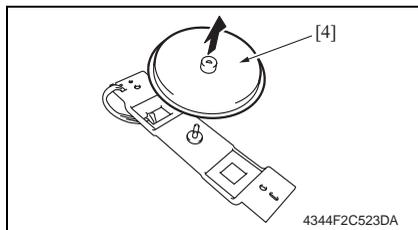
- Be sure to perform the following operation when the Main Control Board is replaced.
5. Initialize the backup data.
  - ☞ 21
  6. Perform document width detection adjustment.
  - ☞ 18
  7. Turn OFF the Main Power Switch and turn it ON again and check whether size detection operates normally.
  8. Upgrade the firmware.
  - ☞ 16

### 3.3.3 Variable Resistor

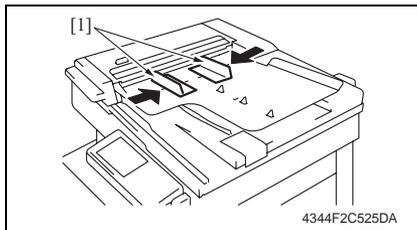


#### A. Removal Procedure

1. Turn OFF the Main Power Switch.
2. Remove the Original Feed Tray Rear Cover.
- ☞ 11
3. Disconnect the connector [1].
4. Remove two screws [2] and the mounting bracket [3].
5. Remove the gear [4].



6. Remove the nut [5] and the washer [6], and remove the Variable Resistor [7].



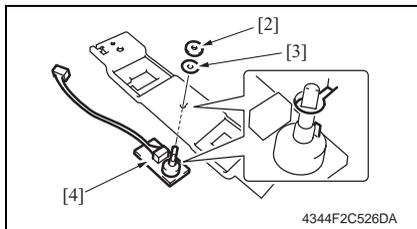
**B. Reinstallation Procedure**

1. Close the Side Edge Stop [1] of the Original Feed Tray.

**NOTE**

- Be sure to perform document width detection adjustment after replacing the Variable Resistor (PBA-VR).

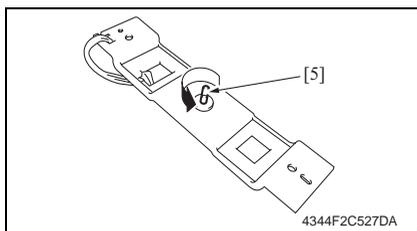
☞ 26



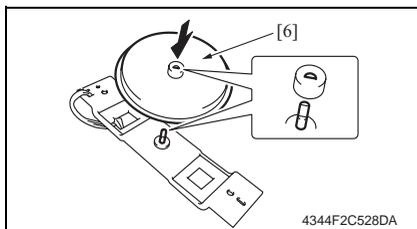
2. Use the nut [2] and the washer [3] to install the Variable Resistor [4].

**NOTE**

- Align the protrusion of the Variable Resistor and the cutout of the mounting bracket.



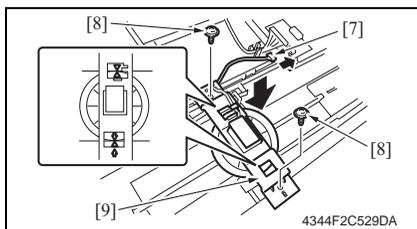
3. Turn the Variable Resistor [5] counterclockwise until it stops.



4. Reinstall the gear [6].

**NOTE**

- Note the mounting position of the gear and the Variable Resistor.



5. Connect the connector [7].
6. Use two screws [8] to install the Variable Resistor [9].

**NOTE**

- Install the gear and rack gear by aligning the arrows.

7. Install the Original Feed Tray Rear Cover and turn ON the Main Power Switch.

**NOTE**

- Be sure to perform the following operation when the Variable Resistor is replaced.

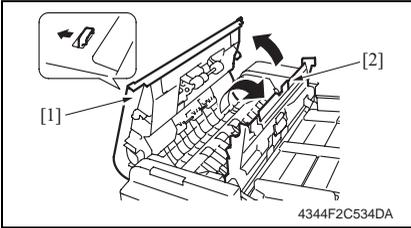
8. Initialize the backup data.

 21

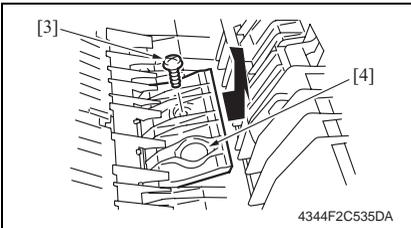
9. Perform document width detection adjustment.

 18

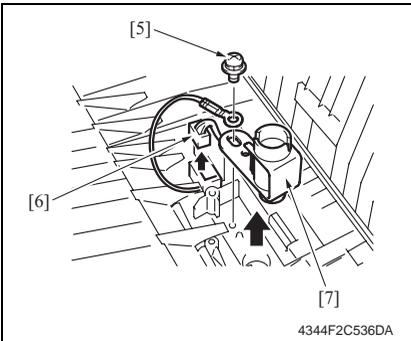
10. Turn OFF the Main Power Switch and turn it ON again and check whether size detection operates normally.

**3.3.4 Complete Stamp Unit 2**

1. Open the Upper Door [1].
2. Open the Processing Guide [2].

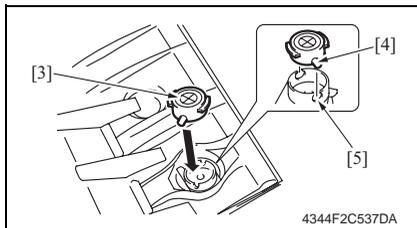
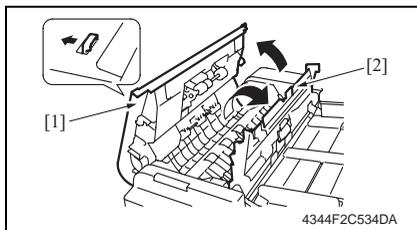


3. Remove the screw [3] and the cover [4].



4. Remove the screw [5] and disconnect the connector [6], and remove the Complete Stamp Unit 2 [7].

### 3.3.5 Replacing the Replace Stamp 2



1. Open the Upper Door [1].
2. Open the Processing Guide [2].

3. Remove the stamp.
4. Reinstall the new Replace Stamp 2 [3].

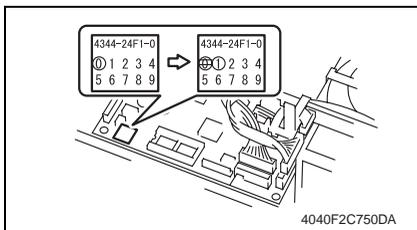
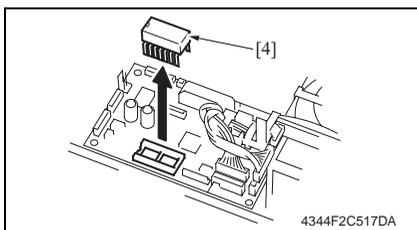
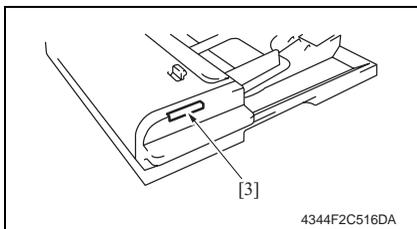
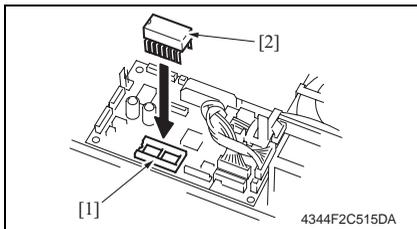
#### NOTE

- **Align the protrusion of the stamp to the crevice of the holder.**
5. Close the Processing Guide.
  6. Close the Upper Door.

# 4. Firmware upgrade

1. Prepare the firmware upgrade EP-ROM.
2. Turn OFF the Main Power Switch.
3. Remove the Rear Cover.

 11



4. Insert the prepared EP-ROM [2] to the IC socket section [1] of the Main Control Board.

**NOTE**

- Ensure that the EP-ROM is installed in the correct direction.

5. Turn ON the Main Power Switch.
6. Check the firmware update status at the Print Lamp Display Section [3] of the Duplexing Document Feeder.
  - Updating: Green and red light up alternately.
  - Successful completion: Blinks in green.
  - Failure: Blinks in red.
  - If failure occurs, redo the procedure from step 4.
7. After the firmware has been upgraded successfully, turn OFF the Main Power Switch and remove the EP-ROM [4] that was attached at step 4.

8. Turn ON the Main Power Switch.
9. Display Tech. Rep. Mode.
10. Touch the [ROM Version] and check the ADF ROM version.
11. Correct the version indication on the ROM label on the Main Control Board using a pen or other similar means.
12. Reinstall the Rear Cover.

## Adjustment/Setting

### 5. How to use the adjustment section

- “Adjustment/Setting” contains detailed information on the adjustment items and procedures for this machine.
- Throughout this “Adjustment/Setting,” the default settings are indicated by “ ”.

#### Advance Checks

Before attempting to solve the customer problem, the following advance checks must be made. Check to see if:

- The power supply voltage meets the specifications.
- The power supply is properly grounded.
- The machine shares the power supply with any other machine that draws large current intermittently (e.g., elevator and air conditioner that generate electric noise).
- The installation site is environmentally appropriate: high temperature, high humidity, direct sunlight, ventilation, etc.; levelness of the installation site.
- The original has a problem that may cause a defective image.
- The density is properly selected.
- The Original Glass, slit glass, or related part is dirty.
- Correct paper is being used for printing.
- The units, parts, and supplies used for printing (developer, PC Drum, etc.) are properly replenished and replaced when they reach the end of their useful service life.
- Toner is not running out.

#### CAUTION

- **To unplug the power cord of the machine before starting the service job procedures.**
- **If it is unavoidably necessary to service the machine with its power turned ON, use utmost care not to be caught in the Scanner Cables or gears of the Exposure Unit.**
- **Special care should be used when handling the Fusing Unit which can be extremely hot.**
- **The Developing Unit has a strong magnetic field. Keep watches and measuring instruments away from it.**
- **Take care not to damage the PC Drum with a tool or similar device.**
- **Do not touch IC pins with bare hands.**

## 6. Tech. Rep. Mode

### 6.1 Tech. Rep. Mode function setting procedure

☞ For details of how to display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.

### 6.2 Setting in the Tech. Rep. Choice

#### 6.2.1 Sheet-through-ADF

##### A. Registration Loop

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To adjust the length of the loop to be formed in paper before the Registration Rollers.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For factory adjustment only</li> </ul>

##### B. Zoom

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the CD and FD scan zoom ratios in the sheet-through ADF.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When setting up the ADF</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	☞ 23

##### C. Feed (CD)

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To adjust the CD image scan start position in the sheet-through ADF.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When setting up the ADF</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	☞ 24

##### D. Feed (FD)

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To adjust the FD image scan start position in the sheet-through ADF.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When setting up the ADF</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	☞ 24

### 6.3 Setting in the Function

#### 6.3.1 Org. Width Detect Adjust

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To detect the size of the original loaded in the ADF</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the Variable Resistor is replaced with a new one</li> <li>When the backup data is initialized</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	☞ 18

## 6.4 I/O Check

### 6.4.1 Sheet-through-ADF (2-sided)

Functions	• To check sensors on the paper path.
Use	• When a document misfeed occurs.

#### A. Check procedure

- To allow sensors to be checked for operation easily and safely, data applied to the IC on the board can be checked on the panel with the main unit in the standby state (including a misfeed, malfunction, and closure failure condition).

#### B. Procedure

1. Set the mode to the Tech. Rep. Mode.
2. Touch the [I/O Check].
3. Touch the [Sheet-through-ADF (2-sided)].
4. Operate the sensor to check by using paper or the like, and check the screen display. (Paper detected: 1, No paper detected: 0)

#### C. I/O check screen

- This is only typical screen which may be different from what are shown on each individual main unit.

Sheet-through-ADF (2-sided)		END
Empty	0	Org. Width Detect 1 0
Registration	0	Org. Width Detect 2 0
Before Scanning	0	Side Cover 0
Exit and Turn over	0	Org. Width Vol. 0
Orig. Length 1	0	
Orig. Length 2	0	
Orig. Length 3	0	
Orig. Length 4	0	
Behind Separator	0	
Org. Width Detect 0	0	

4344F3E519DA

**D. I/O check list**

Symbol	Panel display	Part/Signal name	Operation characteristics/ Panel display	
			1	0
PC5-ADF	Empty	Empty Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC9-ADF	Registration	Registration Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC8-ADF	Before Scanning	Original Detection Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC10-ADF	Exit and Turn Over	Exit/Turnover Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC1-ADF	Orig. Length 1	FD Paper Size Detection Sensor 1	Paper present	Paper not present
PC2-ADF	Orig. Length 2	FD Paper Size Detection Sensor 2	Blocked	Unblocked
PC3-ADF	Orig. Length 3	FD Paper Size Detection Sensor 3	Paper present	Paper not present
PC4-ADF	Orig. Length 4	FD Paper Size Detection Sensor 4	Paper present	Paper not present
PC6-ADF	Behind Separator	Separator Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PWB-SIZE	Org. Width Detect 0	Mix Document Size Detection Board	Paper present	Paper not present
	Org. Width Detect 1		Paper present	Paper not present
	Org. Width Detect 2		Paper present	Paper not present
PC7-ADF	Side Cover	Upper Door Open/Close Sensor	OPEN	CLOSE
PBA-VR	Orig. Width Vol.	Variable Resistor	Analog value	

Sheet-through-ADF (2-sided)

## 6.5 Setting in the Operation Check

### 6.5.1 Paper Passage

Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To check for paper passage through the ADF in each of the ADF modes.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Used for checking the document path for any abnormal condition when a document misfeed occurs.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p>&lt;Procedure&gt;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set the mode to the Tech. Rep. Mode.</li> <li>Touch the [Operation Check].</li> <li>Touch the [ADF].</li> <li>Touch the [Paper Passage].</li> <li>Select the Paper Passage Mode to be tested from [1-Sided No Detect] and [Double-Sided].</li> <li>Set the Original in the Take-up Tray.</li> <li>The Start key color changes from orange to green.</li> <li>Press the Start key. The operation starts.</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>After starting the operation by pressing the Start key, if the Start key is pressed during the operation, the operation will be suspended. Then, if the Start key is pressed again during the suspension, the operation will be resumed.</b></li> <li><b>If the Stop key is pressed during the test operation, the test will be forced to end.</b></li> <li><b>If there is no Original set in the Take-up Tray, the Start key will not work.</b></li> <li><b>All Originals set in the Take-up Tray are passed through. Upon the completion of all Originals passed through, the Paper Through Test ends.</b></li> </ul>

### 6.5.2 ADF Sensor Adjust

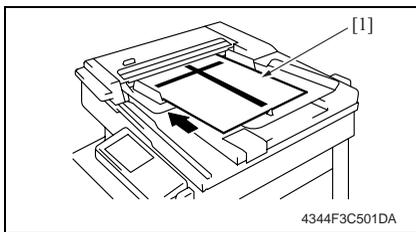
Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To make an automatic adjustment of the sensor.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When a document misfeed occurs.</li> <li>When the sensor is replaced.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p>&lt;Procedure&gt;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set the mode to the Tech. Rep. Mode.</li> <li>Touch the [Operation Check].</li> <li>Touch the [ADF].</li> <li>Touch the [ADF Sensor Adjust].</li> <li>Press the Start key to let the ADF start making an automatic adjustment of the sensor.</li> </ol>

### 6.5.3 Backup Data Initialization

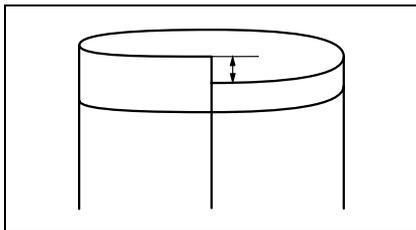
Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To initialize the values set through ADF Sensor Adjust and Org. Width Detect Adjust.</li> </ul>
Use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the Main Control Board is replaced.</li> <li>When the Variable Resistor is replaced.</li> </ul>
Setting/ Procedure	<p>&lt;Procedure&gt;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set the mode to the Tech. Rep. Mode.</li> <li>Touch the [Operation Check].</li> <li>Touch the [ADF].</li> <li>Touch the [Backup Data Initialization].</li> <li>[Touch [Yes] and [Enter] to start the initialization sequence.</li> </ol>

## 7. Mechanical adjustment

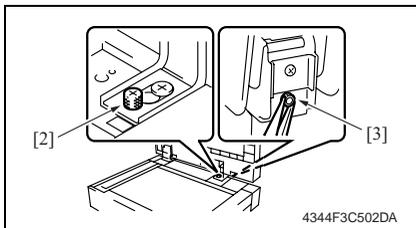
### 7.1 Leading Edge Skew Adjustment



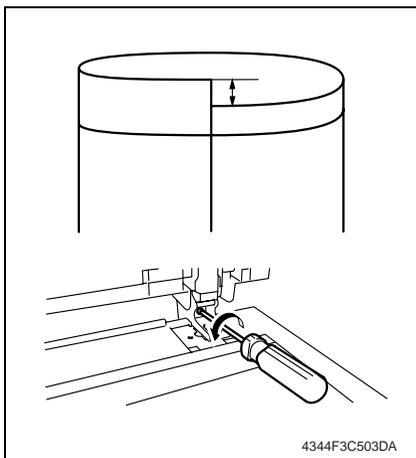
1. Load the test chart [1] in the Reverse Automatic Document Feeder and make one 1-sided copy five consecutive times.



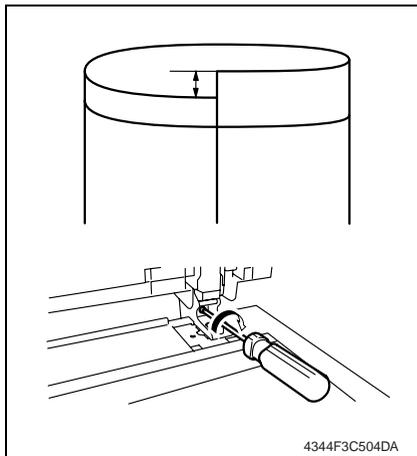
2. Fold each of the sample copies as illustrated and check for any deviation.  
Specifications:  $0 \pm 3.0$  mm
3. If the deviation does not fall within the specified range, perform the following adjustment procedure.



4. Loosen the decorative screw [2] and the nut [3] in the back to the right.

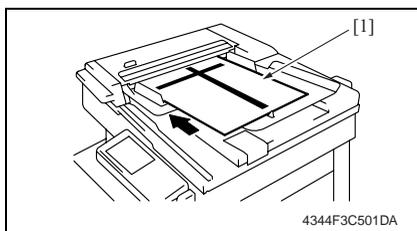


5. If there is a deviation as shown on the figure, turn the screw counter-clockwise to adjust it.

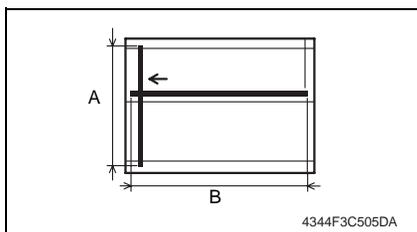


6. If there is a deviation as shown on the figure, turn the screw clockwise to adjust it.
7. After the adjustment procedure has been completed, tighten the decorative screw and the nut which has been loosened in step 4.

## 7.2 Adjustment of the Scanning Zoom Ratio in the Main and Sub-Scanning Directions



1. Load the test chart [1] in the Reverse Automatic Document Feeder and make a full-size copy.

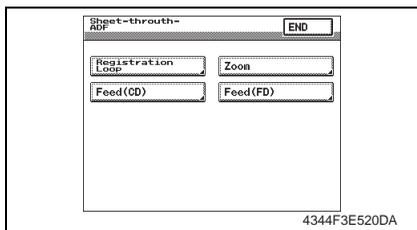


2. Check that the lengths of the reference lines reproduced on the copy, A (CD) and B (FD), meet the following specifications.

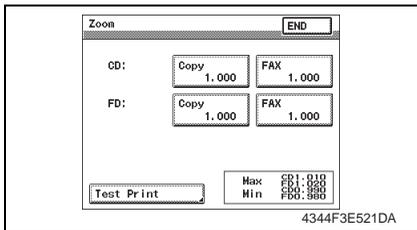
Specification:

A (CD):  $250 \pm 2.5 \text{ mm} (\pm 1.0 \%)$

B (FD):  $400 \pm 6.0 \text{ mm} (\pm 1.5 \%)$



3. If the length of the line reproduced on the copy falls outside the specified range, select Tech. Rep. Mode → [Tech. Rep. Choice] → [Sheet-through-ADF] → [Zoom].



4. Touch the [Copy] of CD or FD.
5. Press the Clear key.
6. Enter the value from the 10-Key Pad.
- If the line is longer than the specifications, adjust toward the reduction side.
- If the line is shorter than the specifications, adjust toward the enlargement side.

Adjustment Range:

CD:  $\times 1.010$  to  $\times 0.990$

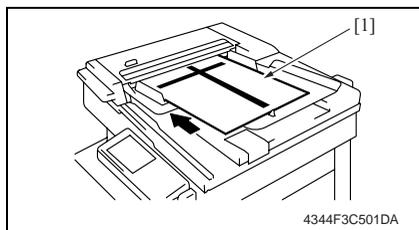
FD:  $\times 1.020$  to  $\times 0.980$

7. Touch the [END].
8. Produce another test print and check for width A.

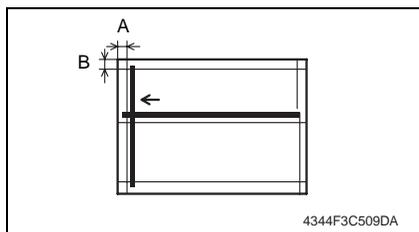
### 7.3 Adjustment of the Scanning Start Position in the Main and Sub-Scanning Directions

#### NOTE

- Make this adjustment after adjusting the scanning zoom ratio in the main and sub-scanning directions.



1. Load the test chart [1] in the Reverse Automatic Document Feeder and make a full-size copy.
2. Make a full-size copy using the 2-side original/2-side copy mode. (Face down the test chart)



3. Check that the margins reproduced on the copy meet the following specifications.

- In full size copy mode

Specification:

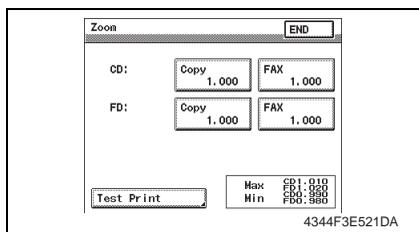
Width A:  $20 \pm 3.0$  mm

Width B:  $20 \pm 2.0$  mm

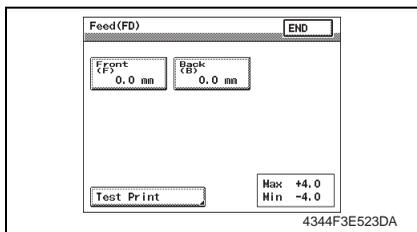
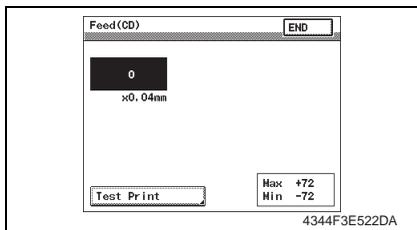
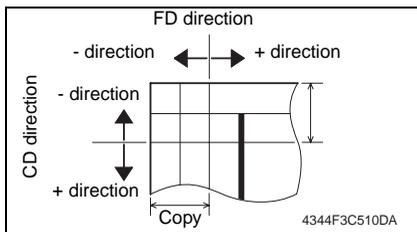
- In 2-side original mode

Specification:

Width A:  $20 \pm 3.5$  mm



4. If the length of the line reproduced on the copy falls outside the specified range, select Tech. Rep. Mode  $\rightarrow$  [Tech. Rep. Choice]  $\rightarrow$  [Sheet-through-ADF]  $\rightarrow$  [Feed (CD)] or [Feed (FD)].



5. By referring to the left figure, select [Feed (CD)] or [Feed (FD)] to adjust the deviation.
  - If the deviation is in the - direction with respect to the reference line: Adjust in the + direction.
  - If the deviation is in the + direction with respect to the reference line: Adjust in the - direction.

In the case of Feed (CD)

6. Press the Clear key.
7. Enter the numeric value from the 10-Key Pad.  
(1 mm = 24 dot)

Adjustment Range:

Max +72

Min -72

Press the \* key to change the sign to select either + or -.

In the case of Feed (FD)

8. Select [Front (F)] or [Back (B)].
9. Press the Clear key.
10. Enter the numeric value from the 10-Key Pad.  
(0.1 mm increments)

Adjustment Range:

Max +4.0 mm (F), +4.0 mm (B)

Min -4.0 mm (F), -4.0 mm (B)

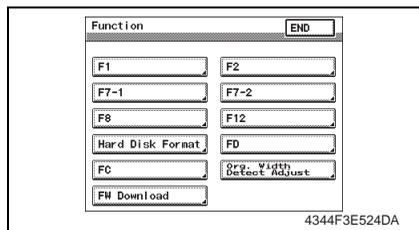
11. Touch the [END].
12. Make another copy and check the error.

## 7.4 Document Size Detection Adjustment

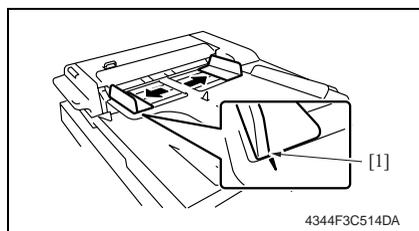
### NOTE

Make this adjustment after any of the following procedures has been performed.

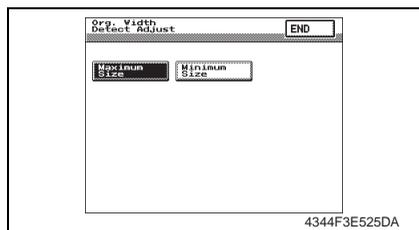
- When the Variable Resistor has been replaced.
- When the backup data has been initialized.



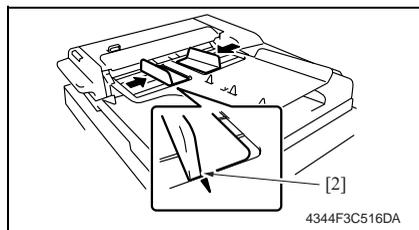
1. Display Tech. Rep. Mode.
2. Touch the [Function].
3. Touch the [Org. Width Detect Adjust].



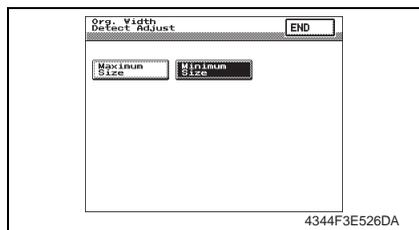
4. Align the original edge plane of the Side Edge Stop [1] of the Original Feed Tray to the outside ▼ mark.



5. Touch the [Maximum Size].
6. Press the Start key.



7. Align the original edge plane of the Side Edge Stop [2] of the Original Feed Tray to the inside ▼ mark.



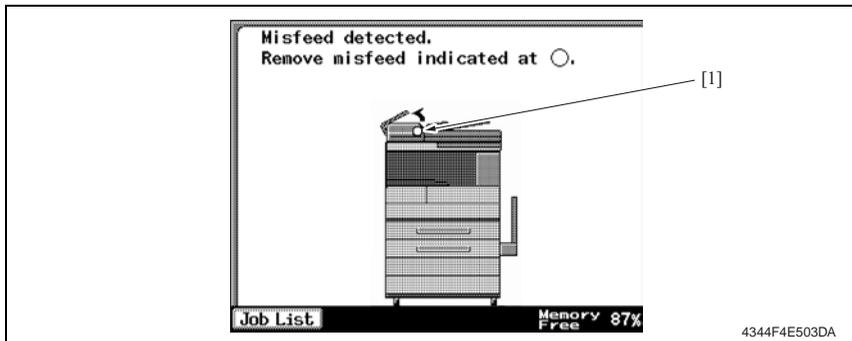
8. Touch the [Minimum Size].
9. Press the Start key.
10. Check whether size detection operates normally.

# Troubleshooting

## 8. Jam Display

### 8.1 Misfeed display

- When misfeed occurs, message, misfeed location “Blinking” and paper location “Lighting” are displayed on the Touch Panel of the main unit.

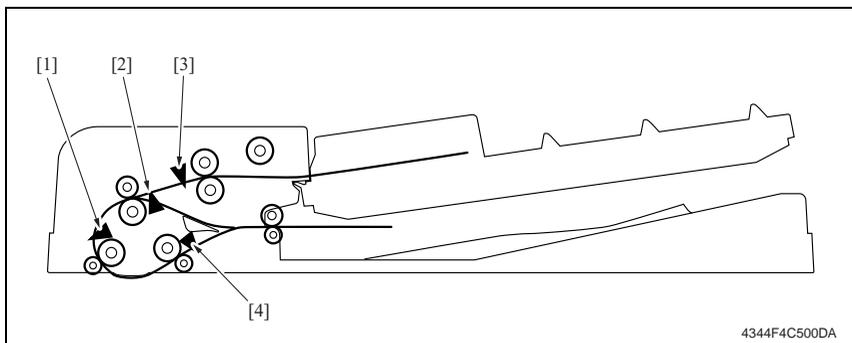


Panel display	Misfeed location	Misfeed access location	Action
[1]	Paper Take-Up section	Paper Take-Up section Cover	☞ 28
	Transport section	Paper Take-Up section Cover	☞ 29
	Turnover section	Paper Exit section Cover	☞ 29
	Paper Exit section	Paper Exit section Cover	☞ 30

#### 8.1.1 Misfeed display resetting procedure

- Open the corresponding door, clear the sheet of paper misfeed, and close the door.

### 8.2 Sensor layout



- |                               |         |                          |          |
|-------------------------------|---------|--------------------------|----------|
| [1] Original Detection Sensor | PC8-ADF | [3] Separator Sensor     | PC6-ADF  |
| [2] Registration Sensor       | PC9-ADF | [4] Exit/Turnover Sensor | PC10-ADF |

## 8.3 Solution

### 8.3.1 Initial check items

- When a paper misfeed occurs, first perform the following initial check items.

Check item	Action
Does paper meet product specifications?	Replace paper.
Is the paper curled, wavy, or damp?	Replace paper. Instruct the user on the correct paper storage procedures.
Is a foreign object present along the paper path, or is the paper path deformed or worn?	Clean the paper path and replace if necessary.
Are rolls/rollers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or replace the defective roll/roller.
Are the Edge Guide and Trailing Edge Stop at the correct position to accommodate the paper?	Set as necessary.
Are the actuators operating correctly?	Correct or replace the defective actuator.

### 8.3.2 Misfeed at Paper Take-Up section

#### A. Detection timing

Type	Description
Detection of misfeed at Paper Take-Up section	The Separator Sensor (PC6-ADF) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Paper Feed Motor (M1-ADF) is energized.
	The Registration Sensor (PC9-ADF) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Paper Feed Motor (M1-ADF) is energized.
Detection of paper left in Paper Take-Up section	The Separator Sensor (PC6-ADF) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Original Detection Sensor (PC8-ADF) is blocked by the paper.
	The Registration Sensor (PC9-ADF) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Original Detection Sensor (PC8-ADF) is blocked by the paper.

#### B. Action

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Paper Feed Motor (M1-ADF) Separator Sensor (PC6-ADF) Registration Sensor (PC9-ADF) Original Detection Sensor (PC8-ADF)	Main Control Board (PBA-CONT)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	PC6-ADF I/O check	PBA-CONT CN5CONT-11	DF-605 G-5
3	PC9-ADF I/O check	PBA-CONT CN6CONT-3	DF-605 G-3
4	PC8-ADF I/O check	PBA-CONT CN6CONT-6	DF-605 G-3
5	M1-ADF operation check	PBA-CONT CN7CONT-3 to 6	DF-605 C-6
6	Change PBA-CONT	-	-

### 8.3.3 Misfeed at Transport section

#### A. Detection timing

Type	Description
Detection of misfeed at Transport section	The Original Detection Sensor (PC8-ADF) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Registration Sensor (PC9-ADF) is blocked by the paper.
Detection of paper left in Transport section	The Original Detection Sensor (PC8-ADF) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Registration Sensor (PC9-ADF) is unblocked by the paper.

#### B. Action

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Paper Feed Motor (M1-ADF) Transport Motor (M2-ADF) Registration Sensor (PC9-ADF) Original Detection Sensor (PC8-ADF)	Main Control Board (PBA-CONT)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	PC9-ADF I/O check	PBA-CONT CN6CONT-3	DF-605 G-3
3	PC8-ADF I/O check	PBA-CONT CN6CONT-6	DF-605 G-3
4	M1-ADF operation check	PBA-CONT CN7CONT-3 to 6	DF-605 C-6
5	M2-ADF operation check	PBA-CONT CN8CONT-3 to 6	DF-605 C-6
6	Change PBA-CONT	-	-

### 8.3.4 Misfeed at Turnover section

#### A. Detection timing

Type	Description
Detection of misfeed at Turnover section	The Registration Sensor (PC9-ADF) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Transport Motor (M2-ADF) is energized.

#### B. Action

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Transport Motor (M2-ADF) Registration Sensor (PC9-ADF)	Main Control Board (PBA-CONT)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	PC9-ADF I/O check	PBA-CONT CN6CONT-3	DF-605 G-3
3	M2-ADF operation check	PBA-CONT CN8CONT-3 to 6	DF-605 C-6
4	Change PBA-CONT	-	-

### 8.3.5 Misfeed at Paper Exit section

#### A. Detection timing

Type	Description
Detection of misfeed at Paper Exit section	The Exit/Turnover Sensor (PC10-ADF) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Original Detection Sensor (PC8-ADF) is blocked by the paper.
Detection of paper left in Paper Exit section	The Exit/Turnover Sensor (PC10-ADF) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Original Detection Sensor (PC8-ADF) is unblocked by the paper.

#### B. Action

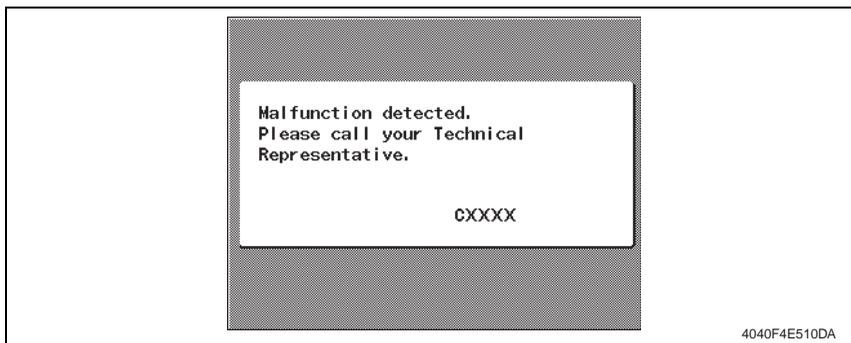
Relevant Electrical Parts	
Transport Motor (M2-ADF) Original Detection Sensor (PC8-ADF) Exit/Turnover Sensor (PC10-ADF)	Main Control Board (PBA-CONT)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	PC8-ADF I/O check	PBA-CONT CN6CONT-6	DF-605 G-3
3	PC10-ADF I/O check	PBA-CONT CN6CONT-9	DF-605 G-4
4	M2-ADF operation check	PBA-CONT CN8CONT-3 to 6	DF-605 C-6
5	Change PBA-CONT	-	-

## 9. Malfunction code

### 9.1 Trouble code

- The copier's CPU performs a self-diagnostics function that, on detecting a malfunction, gives the corresponding malfunction code and maintenance call mark on the Touch Panel.



### 9.2 Solution

#### 9.2.1 C8301: ADF Cooling Fan Motor Failure

##### A. Detection timing

Trouble Code	Description
C8301	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Lock signal remains HIGH for a predetermined continuous period of time while ADF Cooling Fan Motor is rotating.</li> </ul>

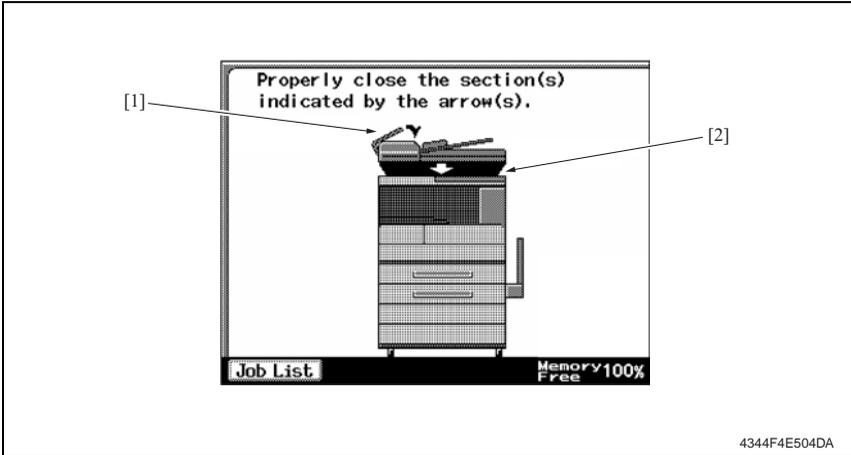
##### B. Action

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Cooling Fan Motor (M3-ADF)	Main Control Board (PBA-CONT)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the M3-ADF connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	M3-ADF operation check	PBA-CONT CN9CONT-2	DF-605 C-6
3	Change PBA-CONT	-	-

## 10. Set error detection

- When the ADF or cover set error for some reason is detected, the Panel of the main unit will have the following display.



<Panel display and detection timing for each>

Panel display	Description of error	Detection start	Detection timing
[1]	Upper Door closure	When the document is loaded into the ADF	Upper Door Open/Close Sensor (unblocked)
[2]	ADF closure	When the document is loaded into the ADF	Copier Size Reset Switch (ON)



KONICA MINOLTA

**SERVICE MANUAL**

**FIELD SERVICE**

---

# PC-102/PC-202

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  to the left of the revised section.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.

## NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2005/08	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

# CONTENTS

## PC-102/PC-202

### General

1. Product specifications .....	1
---------------------------------	---

### Maintenance

2. Periodical check .....	3
2.1 Maintenance procedure (Periodical check parts) .....	3
2.1.1 Replacing the Separation Roller Assy.....	3
2.1.2 Replacing the Paper Take-up Roller.....	4
2.1.3 Replacing the Pick-up Roller.....	6
3. Other .....	8
3.1 Disassembly/Adjustment prohibited items .....	8
3.2 Disassembly/Assembly/Cleaning list (Other parts).....	9
3.2.1 Disassembly/Assembly parts list.....	9
3.2.2 Cleaning parts list .....	9
3.3 Disassembly/Assembly procedure.....	10
3.3.1 Right Door/Rear Right Cover/Lower Right Cover/Front Right Cover.....	10
3.3.2 Rear Cover.....	10
3.4 Cleaning procedure .....	11
3.4.1 Separation Roller .....	11
3.4.2 Paper Take-up Roller.....	11
3.4.3 Pick-up Roller.....	12
3.4.4 Vertical Transport Roller.....	12

### Adjustment/Setting

4. How to use the adjustment section .....	13
5. I/O check .....	14
5.1 Check procedure .....	14
5.2 I/O check list .....	14
5.2.1 I/O check screen .....	14
5.2.2 Sensor check list.....	15
6. Mechanical adjustment .....	16
6.1 Registration (CD).....	16
6.2 Registration (FD) .....	18

# Troubleshooting

- 7. Jam Display ..... 21
  - 7.1 Misfeed display ..... 21
    - 7.1.1 Misfeed display resetting procedure ..... 21
  - 7.2 Sensor layout ..... 22
  - 7.3 Solution ..... 23
    - 7.3.1 Initial check items ..... 23
    - 7.3.2 Tray3 Paper Take-Up section/Vertical Transport section misfeed (PC-102/PC-202) ..... 24
    - 7.3.3 Tray4 Paper Take-Up section/Vertical Transport section misfeed (PC-202) ..... 25
- 8. Trouble code ..... 26
  - 8.1 Trouble code display ..... 26
  - 8.2 Trouble code list ..... 26
  - 8.3 Solution ..... 27
    - 8.3.1 C0206: Tray3 Lift-Up Failure  
C0208: Tray4 Lift-Up Failure ..... 27

PC-102/PC-202

General

Maintenance

Adjustment / Setting

Troubleshooting

# General

## 1. Product specifications

### A. Type

Name	2 way Paper Take-Up Cabinet	
Type	Front loading type 2 way paper take-up device	
Installation	Desk type	
Document Alignment	Center	

### B. Paper type

Type	Plain paper	56 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (15 to 24 lb)
Size	A5R to A3, 5.5 × 8.5R to 11 × 17	
Capacity	3rd Tray	500 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> , 21.25 lb)
	4th Tray	500 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> , 21.25 lb)

### C. Machine specifications

Power Requirements	DC 24 V ± 10 % (supplied from the main unit)	
	DC 5 V ± 5 %	
Max. Power Consumption	15 W or less	
Dimensions	570 mm (W) × 548 mm (D) × 263 mm (H)	
Weight	PC-102: 22.0 kg (48.5 lb)	
	PC-202: 25.9 kg (57 lb)	

### D. Operating environment

- Conforms to the operating environment of the main unit.

### NOTE

- These specifications are subject to change without notice.

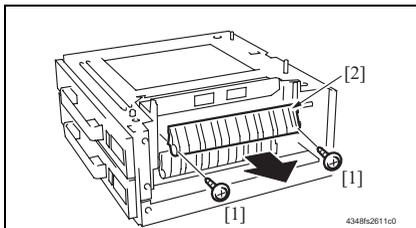
Blank Page

# Maintenance

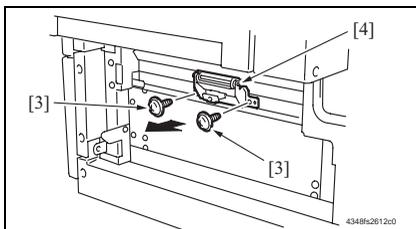
## 2. Periodical check

### 2.1 Maintenance procedure (Periodical check parts)

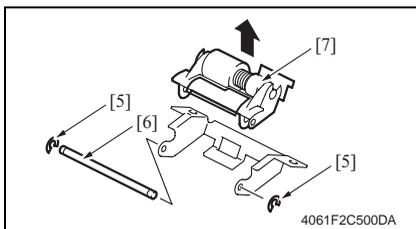
#### 2.1.1 Replacing the Separation Roller Assy



1. Remove the Right Door.
- 10
2. Remove two screws [1] and remove the Jam Access Cover [2].



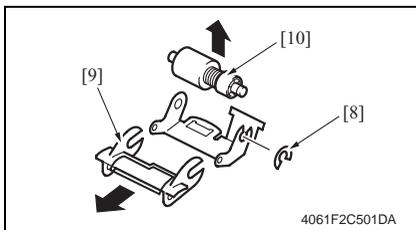
3. Remove two screws [3] and remove the Paper Separation Roller Mounting Bracket Assy [4].



4. Remove two C-rings [5] and the shaft [6], and remove the Paper Separation Roller Fixing Bracket Assy [7].

**NOTE**

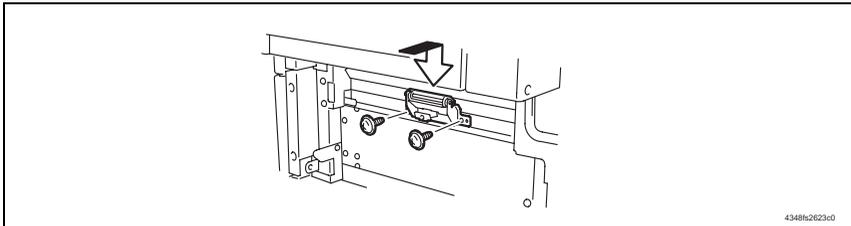
- Be careful not to lose spring at this time.



5. Remove the C-ring [8], the Guide [9], and remove the Separation Roller Assy [10].
6. Repeat steps 1 to 5 similarly for the 4th Drawer.

**NOTE**

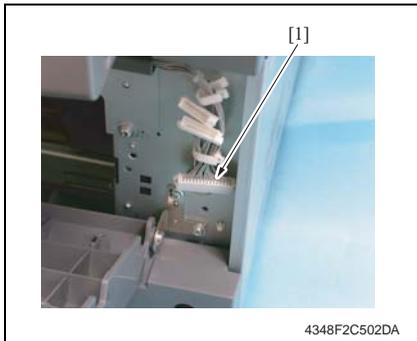
- Install the Separation Roller Assy while pressing the holder down so that it aligns to the metal bracket of the machine.
- Make sure that the Separation Roller Assy is not tilted to the right or left when installed.



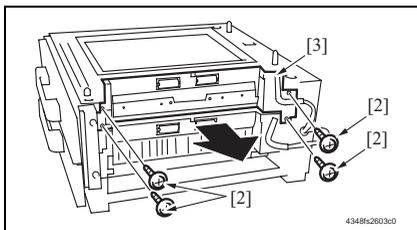
**NOTE**

- Replace the Separation Roller Assy, Paper Take-up Roller and Pick-up Roller at the same time.

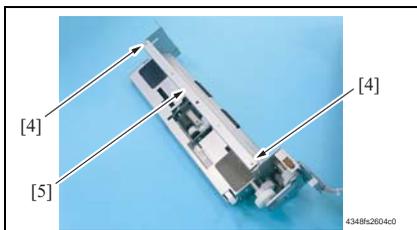
**2.1.2 Replacing the Paper Take-up Roller**



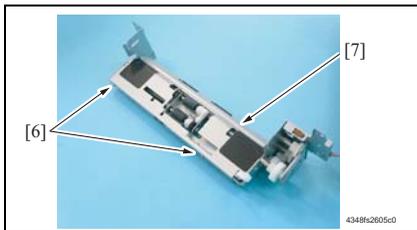
1. Remove the Rear Right Cover. (Remove the Right Lower Cover for 4th row.)
- ☞ 10
2. Remove the Tray3. (Remove the Tray4 from 4th row.)
3. Remove the Paper Separation Roller Mounting Bracket Assy.
- ☞ See steps 1 to 3 of "Replacing the Separation Roller Assy" on p. 3.
4. Disconnect the connector [1] and remove the harness from two wire saddles.



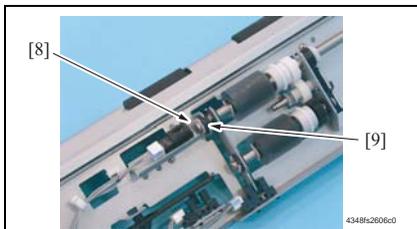
5. Remove four screws [2] and remove the Paper Take-up Unit [3].



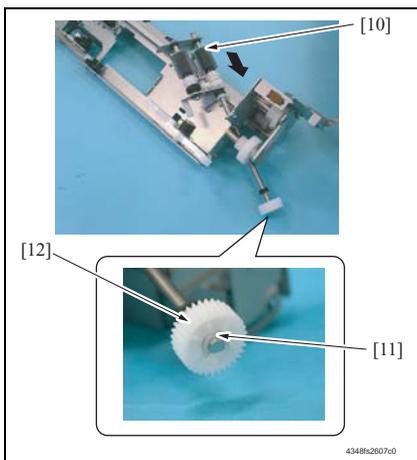
6. Remove two screws [4] and remove the Mounting Frame [5] for the Paper Separation Roller Mounting Bracket Assy.



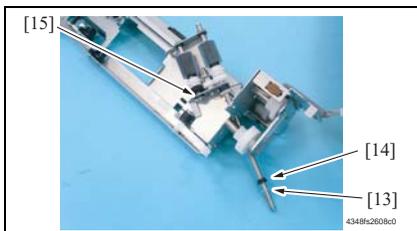
7. Remove two screws [6] and remove the Paper Take-up Cover [7].



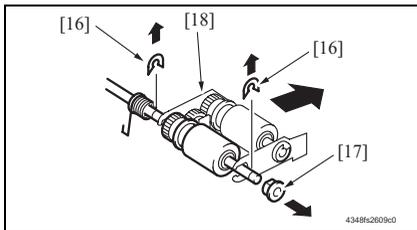
8. Remove the C-ring [8] and remove the bushing [9].



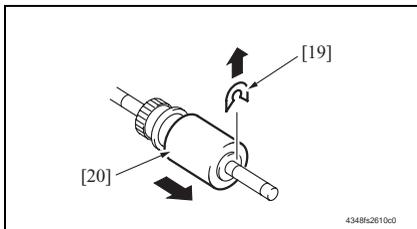
9. Shift the Shaft Assy [10] in the orientation as shown on the left, and remove the C-ring [11] and the gear [12].



10. Remove the C-ring [13], the bushing [14], and remove the shaft Assy [15].



11. Remove two E-rings [16] and the bushing [17], and remove the Pick-up Roller Fixing Bracket Assy [18].

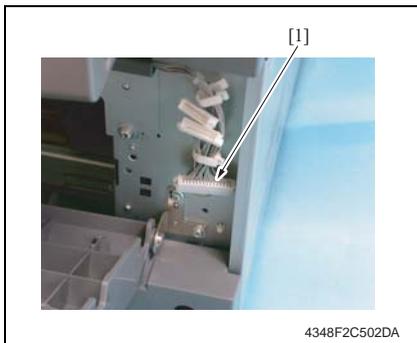


12. Remove the C-ring [19] and remove the Paper Take-up Roller [20].
13. Repeat steps 1 to 12 similarly for the 4th Drawer.

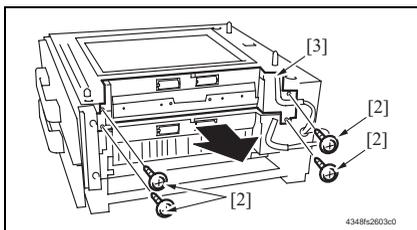
**NOTE**

- Replace the Separation Roller Assy, Paper Take-up Roller and Pick-up Roller at the same time.

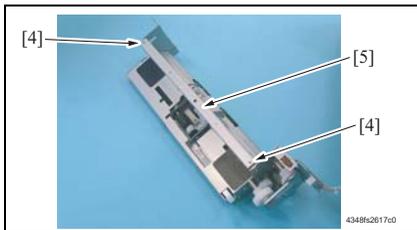
**2.1.3 Replacing the Pick-up Roller**



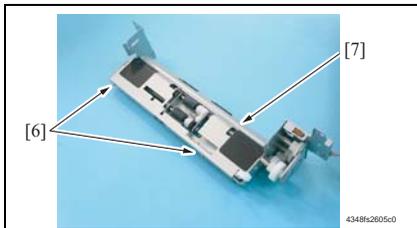
1. Remove the Rear Right Cover. (Remove the Right Lower Cover for 4th row.)
2. Remove the Tray3.(Remove the Tray4 from 4th row.)
3. Remove the Paper Separation Roller Mounting Bracket Assy.
4. Disconnect the connector [1] and remove the harness from two wire saddles.



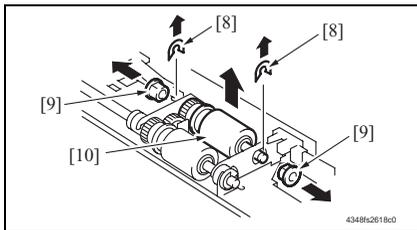
5. Remove four screws [2] and remove the Paper Take-up Unit [3].



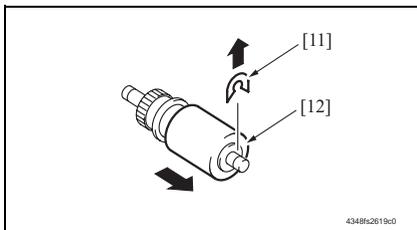
6. Remove two screws [4] and remove the Paper Separation Roller Mounting Bracket Assy [5] together with frame.



7. Remove two screws [6] and remove the Paper Take-up Cover [7].



8. Remove two C-rings [8], two bushings [9], and remove the Pick-up Roller Assy [10].



9. Remove the C-ring [11] and remove the Pick-up Roller [12].  
 10. Repeat steps 1 to 9 similarly for the 4th Drawer.

**NOTE**

- Replace the Separation Roller Assy, Paper Take-up Roller and Pick-up Roller at the same time.

### 3. Other

#### 3.1 Disassembly/Adjustment prohibited items

##### A. Screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied

- Blue paint or green paint is applied to some screws to prevent them from coming loose.
- As a general rule, screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied should not be removed or loosened.

##### B. Red-painted screws

- Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.

##### C. Variable Resistors on Board

##### NOTE

- Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.

##### D. Removal of PWBs

##### CAUTION

- When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to “SAFETY AND IMPORTANT WARNING ITEMS” and follow the corresponding removal procedures.
- The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.
- When it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.

## 3.2 Disassembly/Assembly/Cleaning list (Other parts)

### 3.2.1 Disassembly/Assembly parts list

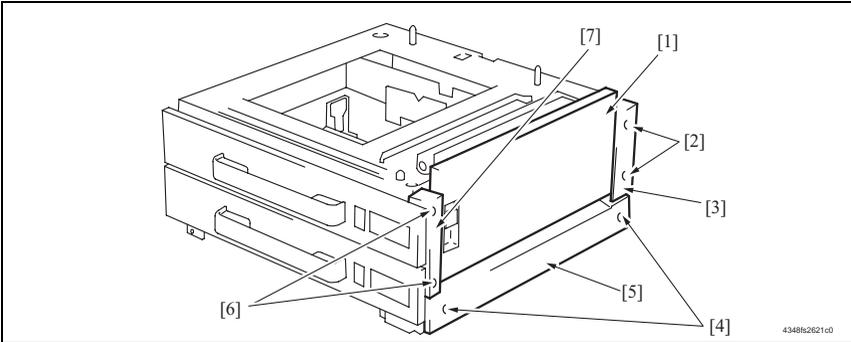
No	Section	Part name	Ref. page
1	Exterior parts	Right Door	 10
2		Rear Right Cover	 10
3		Lower Right Cover	 10
4		Front Right Cover	 10
5		Rear Cover	 10

### 3.2.2 Cleaning parts list

No	Section	Part name	Ref. page
1	Paper feed section	Separation Roller	 11
2		Paper Take-up Roller	 11
3		Pick-up Roller	 12
4	Transport section	Vertical Transport Roller	 12

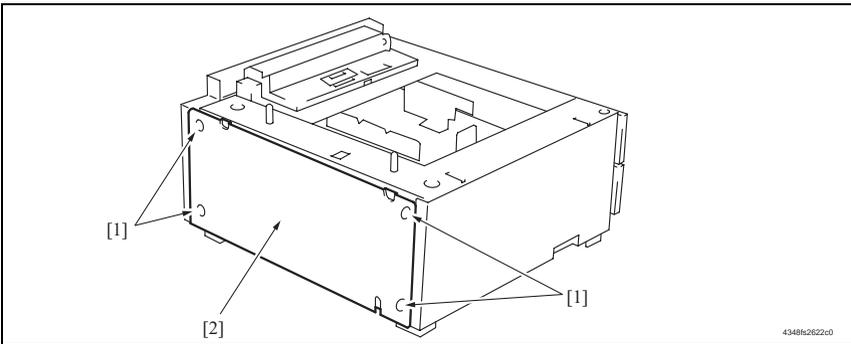
### 3.3 Disassembly/Assembly procedure

#### 3.3.1 Right Door/Rear Right Cover/Lower Right Cover/Front Right Cover



1. Open the Right Door [1].
2. Remove the Right Door [1].
3. Remove two screws [2] and remove the Rear Right Cover [3].
4. Remove two screws [4] and remove the Lower Right Cover [5].
5. Remove two screws [6] and remove the Front Right Cover [7].

#### 3.3.2 Rear Cover



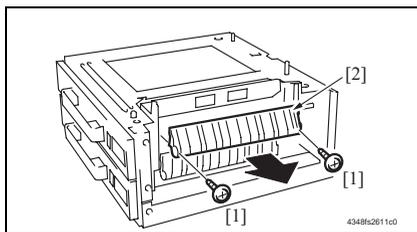
1. Remove four screws [1] and remove the Rear Cover [2].

### 3.4 Cleaning procedure

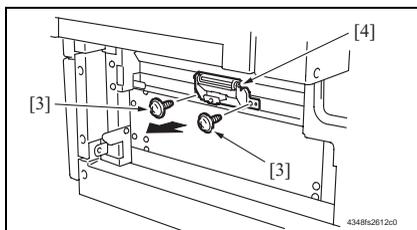
#### NOTE

- The alcohol described in the cleaning procedure represents the isopropyl alcohol.

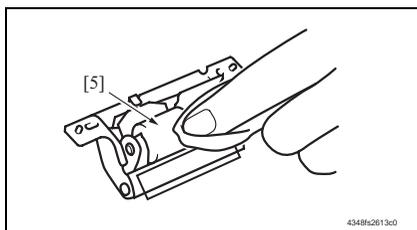
#### 3.4.1 Separation Roller



1. Remove the Right Door.
- 10
2. Remove two screws [1] and remove the Jam Access Cover [2].

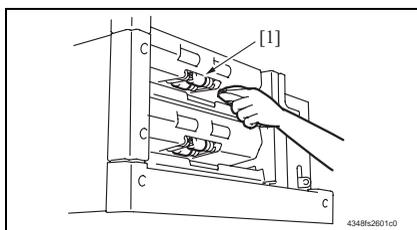


3. Remove two screws [3] and remove the Paper Separation Roller Mounting Bracket Assy [4].



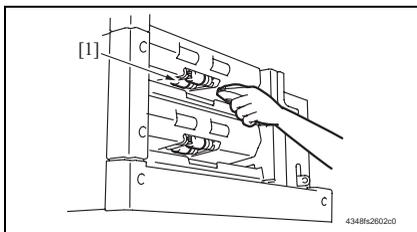
4. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Separation Roller [5] clean of dirt.
5. Repeat steps 1 to 4 similarly for the 4th Drawer.

#### 3.4.2 Paper Take-up Roller



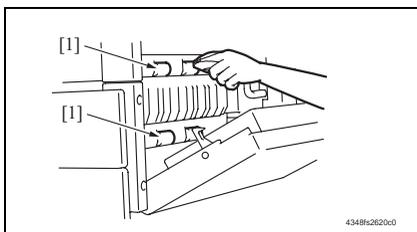
1. Remove the Tray3.(Remove the Tray4 from 4th row.)
2. Remove the Paper Separation Roller Mounting Bracket Assy.
- See steps 1 to 3 of the cleaning procedure for "Separation Roller" on p. 11.
3. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Paper Take-up Roller [1] clean of dirt.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 similarly for the 4th Drawer.

### 3.4.3 Pick-up Roller



1. Remove the Tray3.(Remove the Tray4 from 4th row.)
2. Remove the Paper Separation Roller Mounting Bracket Assy.
  - ☞ See steps 1 to 3 of the cleaning procedure for "Separation Roller" on p. 11.
3. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Pick-up Roller [1] clean of dirt.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 similarly for the 4th Drawer.

### 3.4.4 Vertical Transport Roller



1. Open the Right Door.
2. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Vertical Transport Roller [1] clean of dirt.

# Adjustment/Setting

## 4. How to use the adjustment section

- “Adjustment/Setting” contains detailed information on the adjustment items and procedures for this machine.
- Throughout this “Adjustment/Setting,” the default settings are indicated by “ ”.

### Advance Checks

Before attempting to solve the customer problem, the following advance checks must be made. Check to see if:

- The power supply voltage meets the specifications.
- The power supply is properly grounded.
- The machine shares the power supply with any other machine that draws large current intermittently (e.g., elevator and air conditioner that generate electric noise).
- The installation site is environmentally appropriate: high temperature, high humidity, direct sunlight, ventilation, etc.; levelness of the installation site.
- The original has a problem that may cause a defective image.
- The density is properly selected.
- The Original Glass, slit glass, or related part is dirty.
- Correct paper is being used for printing.
- The units, parts, and supplies used for printing (developer, PC Drum, etc.) are properly replenished and replaced when they reach the end of their useful service life.
- Toner is not running out.

### CAUTION

- **To unplug the power cord of the machine before starting the service job procedures.**
- **If it is unavoidably necessary to service the machine with its power turned ON, use utmost care not to be caught in the Scanner Cables or gears of the Exposure Unit.**
- **Special care should be used when handling the Fusing Unit which can be extremely hot.**
- **The Developing Unit has a strong magnetic field. Keep watches and measuring instruments away from it.**
- **Take care not to damage the PC Drum with a tool or similar device.**
- **Do not touch IC pins with bare hands.**

## 5. I/O check

### 5.1 Check procedure

- To allow sensors to be checked for operation easily and safely, data applied to the IC on the board can be checked on the panel with the main unit in the standby state (including a misfeed, malfunction, and closure failure condition).

<Procedure>

1. Display Tech. Rep. Mode.

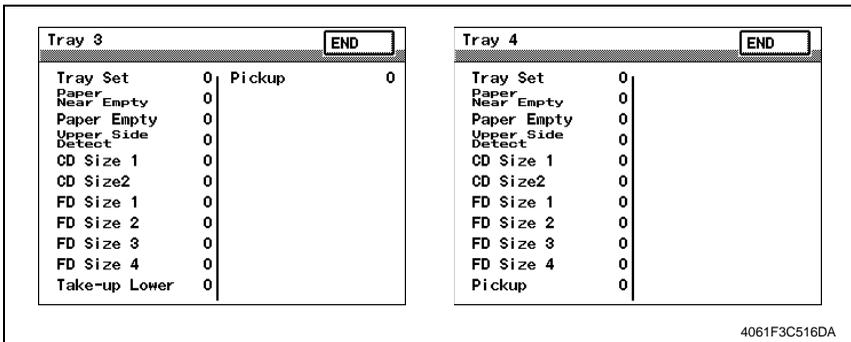
☞ For details of how to display the Service Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.

2. Touch the [I/O Check].
3. Touch the [Printer].
4. Touch the [Tray 3] or [Tray 4].

### 5.2 I/O check list

#### 5.2.1 I/O check screen

- This is only typical screen which may be different from what are shown on each individual main unit.



**5.2.2 Sensor check list**

**A. Printer (PC-102/PC-202)**

Symbol	Panel display		Part/Signal name	Operation characteristics/ Panel display	
				1	0
PC112-PF	Tray 3	Tray Set	Tray3 Set Sensor	Set	Out of position
PC113-PF		Paper Near Empty	Tray3 Paper Near-Empty Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC115-PF		Paper Empty	Tray3 Paper Empty Sensor	Paper not present	Paper present
PC114-PF		Upper Side Detect	Tray3 Lift Sensor	Raised Position	Not raised
PC118-PF		CD Size 1	Tray3 CD Paper Size Sensor 1	Maximum value	Not at maximum value
PC119-PF		CD Size 2	Tray3 CD Paper Size Sensor 2	Maximum value	Not at maximum value
PWB-13 PF		FD Size 1	Tray3 FD Paper Size Detection Board	Maximum value	Not at maximum value
		FD Size 2		Maximum value	Not at maximum value
		FD Size 3		Maximum value	Not at maximum value
		FD Size 4		Maximum value	Not at maximum value
PC111-PF	Take-up Lower	Door Sensor	When opened	When closed	
PC116-PF	Pickup	Tray3 Paper Take-Up Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present	
PC121-PF	Tray 4	Tray Set	Tray4 Set Sensor	Set	Out of position
PC122-PF		Paper Near Empty	Tray4 Paper Near-Empty Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC124-PF		Paper Empty	Tray4 Paper Empty Sensor	Paper not present	Paper present
PC123-PF		Upper Side Detect	Tray4 Lift Sensor	Raised Position	Not raised
PC127-PF		CD Size 1	Tray4 CD Paper Size Sensor 1	Maximum value	Not at maximum value
PC128-PF		CD Size 2	Tray4 CD Paper Size Sensor 2	Maximum value	Not at maximum value
PWB-14 PF		FD Size 1	Tray4 FD Paper Size Detection Board	Maximum value	Not at maximum value
		FD Size 2		Maximum value	Not at maximum value
		FD Size 3		Maximum value	Not at maximum value
		FD Size 4		Maximum value	Not at maximum value
PC125-PF	Pickup	Tray4 Paper Take-Up Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present	

PC-102/PC-202

Adjustment / Setting

# 6. Mechanical adjustment

## 6.1 Registration (CD)

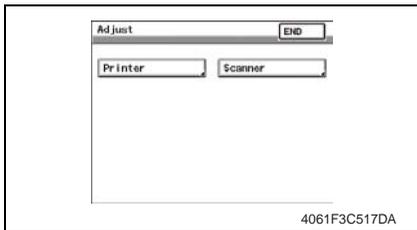
### NOTE

Make this adjustment after any of the following procedures has been performed.

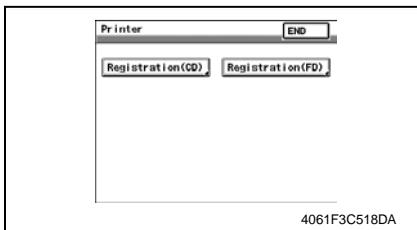
- When the PH Unit has been replaced.
- When the image on the copy is offset in the CD direction.
- When a faint image occurs on the leading edge of the image.

1. Display Tech. Rep. Mode.

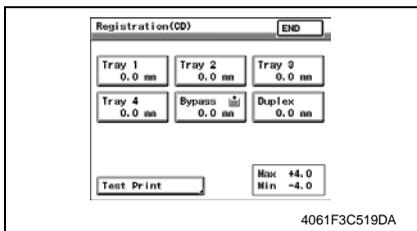
☞ For details of how to display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.



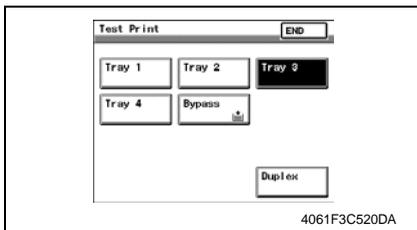
2. Press the Stop key followed by the Start key to display the Adjust Mode.
3. Touch the [Printer].



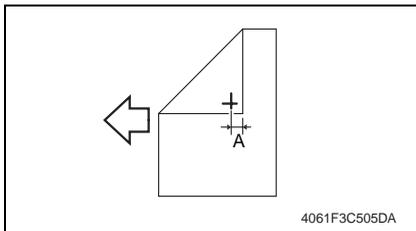
4. Touch the [Registration (CD)].



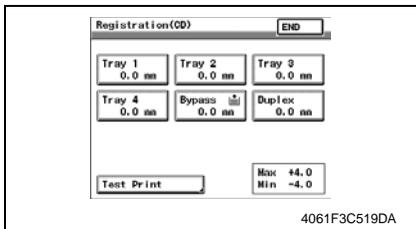
5. Touch the [Test Print].



6. Touch the [Tray 3] or [Tray 4].
7. Press the Start key.



8. Measure the width of printed reference line A.  
Specification: 10 mm ± 2.0 mm
9. If width A falls within the specified range, finish the adjustment procedure. If outside the specified range, perform the adjustment below.



10. Touch [END] to display the Registration (CD) screen.
11. Touch the [Tray 3] or [Tray 4].

12. Press the Clear key and use the 10-Key Pad to set the value.
  - If width A is wider than the specified range, enter a negative value.
  - If width A is narrower than the specified range, enter a positive value.

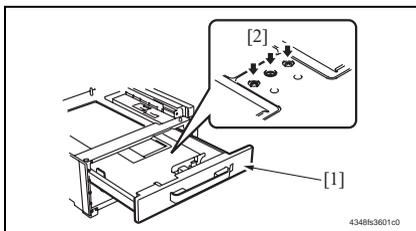
Adjustment range: + 4.0 max. and -4.0 min.

Use the \* key to switch between + and -.

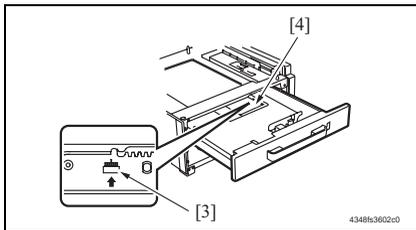
13. Turn OFF the Main Power Switch, wait for 10 sec., then turn the switch ON.

**NOTE**

- If width A falls outside the specified range, redo the adjustment from step 13.



14. Slide out the Tray [1] and unload paper from it.
15. Loosen three screws [2] at the center of the Paper Lifting Plate.



16. Watching the graduations [3] provided in the drawer, move the Edge Guide [4] in the rear.
  - If width A is greater than the specified value, move the Edge Guide toward the front.
  - If width A is smaller than the specified value, move the Edge Guide toward the rear.

17. Perform another test print and check the reference deviation.
18. Repeat the adjustment until the reference line falls within the specified range.
19. Tighten the adjustment screw.
20. Repeat steps 1 to 19 similarly for the tray 4.

## 6.2 Registration (FD)

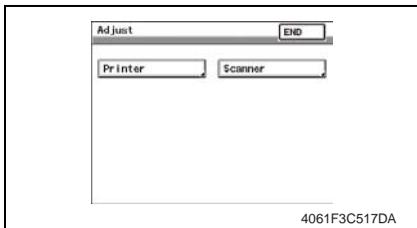
### NOTE

Make this adjustment after any of the following procedures has been performed.

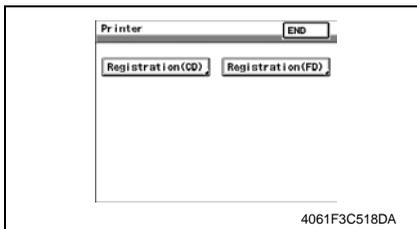
- When the PH Unit has been replaced.
- When the image on the copy is offset in the FD direction.

1. Display Tech. Rep. Mode.

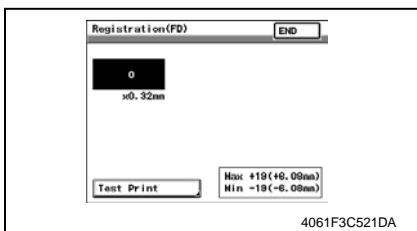
☞ For details of how to display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.



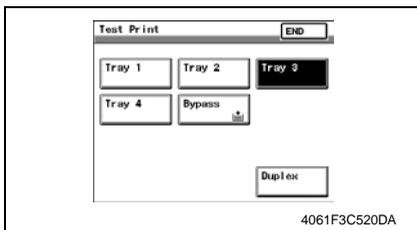
2. Press the Stop key followed by the Start key to display the Adjust Mode.
3. Touch the [Printer].



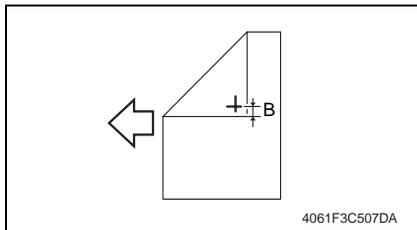
4. Touch the [Registration (FD)].



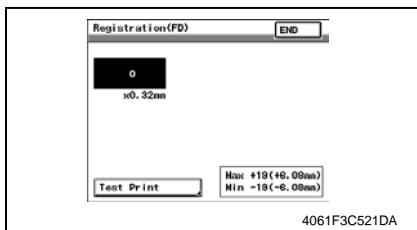
5. Touch the [Test Print].



6. Touch the [Tray 3] or [Tray 4].
7. Press the Start key.



8. Measure the width of printed reference line B.  
Specification: 11.3 mm  $\pm$  1.5 mm
9. If width B falls within the specified range, finish the adjustment procedure. If outside the specified range, perform the adjustment below.



10. Touch [END] to display the Registration (FD) screen.

11. Press the Clear key and use the 10-Key Pad to set the value.

- If width B is wider than the specified range, enter a negative value.
- If width B is narrower than the specified range, enter a positive value.

Adjustment range: + 19.0 (+6.08 mm) max. and -19.0 (-6.08 mm) min.

Use the \* key to switch between + and -.

12. Perform another test print and check the reference deviation.

13. Repeat the adjustment until the reference line falls within the specified range.

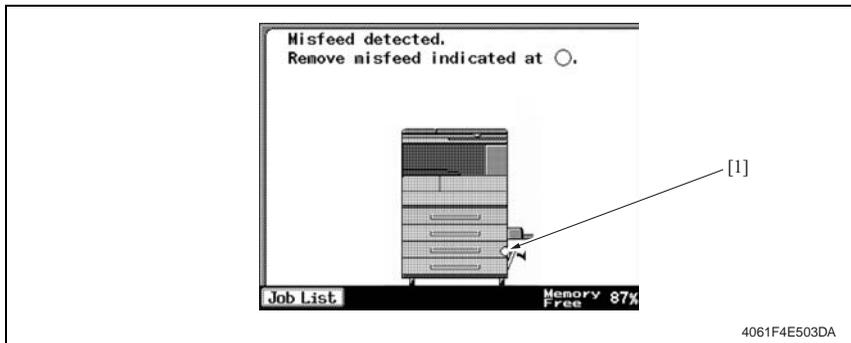
Blank Page

# Troubleshooting

## 7. Jam Display

### 7.1 Misfeed display

- When misfeed occurs, message, misfeed location “Blinking” and paper location “Lighting” are displayed on the Touch Panel of the main unit.

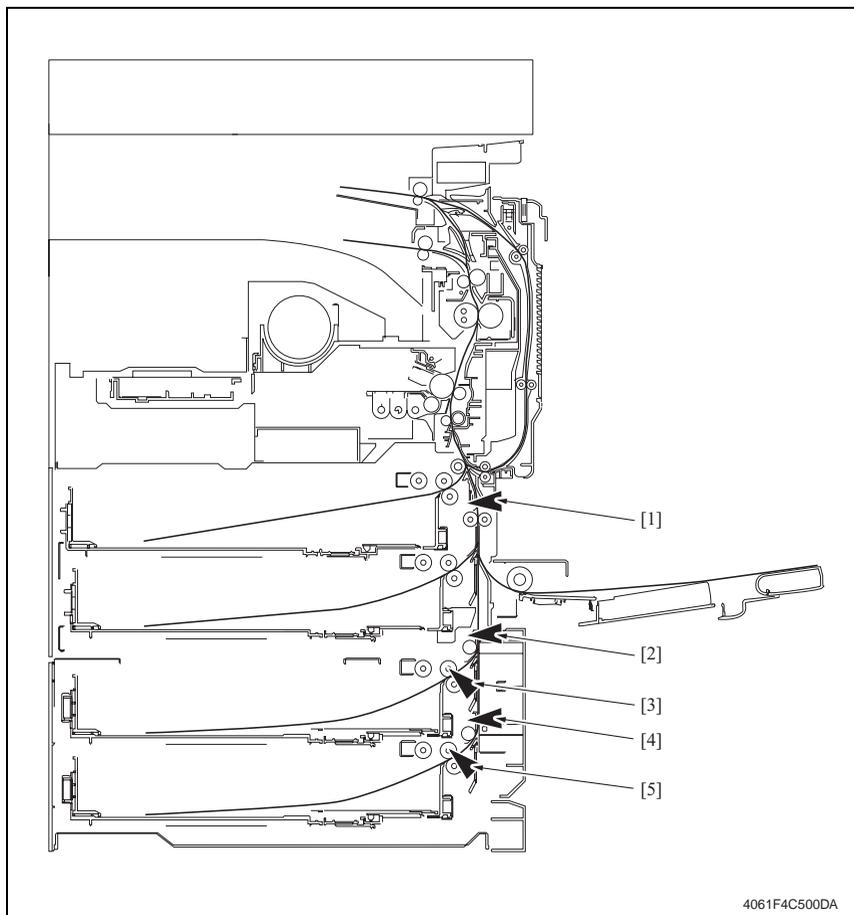


No.	Misfeed location	Misfeed access location	Action
[1]	Tray 3 Paper Take-Up Section	Right Door	☞ 24
	Tray 3 Paper Vertical Transport Section		☞ 25
	Tray 4 Paper Take-Up Section	Right Door	☞ 25
	Tray 4 Paper Vertical Transport Section		

#### 7.1.1 Misfeed display resetting procedure

- Open the corresponding door, clear the sheet of paper misfeed, and close the door.

### 7.2 Sensor layout



4061F4C500DA

- |                                      |          |                                      |          |
|--------------------------------------|----------|--------------------------------------|----------|
| [1] Vertical Conveyance Sensor       | PC2      | [4] Tray4 Vertical Conveyance Sensor | PC126-PF |
| [2] Tray3 Vertical Conveyance Sensor | PC117-PF | [5] Tray4 Paper Take-Up Sensor       | PC125-PF |
| [3] Tray3 Paper Take-Up Sensor       | PC116-PF |                                      |          |

### 7.3 Solution

#### 7.3.1 Initial check items

- When a paper misfeed occurs, first perform the following initial check items.

Check item	Action
Does paper meet product specifications?	Replace paper.
Is the paper curled, wavy, or damp?	Replace paper. Instruct the user on the correct paper storage procedures.
Is a foreign object present along the paper path, or is the paper path deformed or worn?	Clean the paper path and replace if necessary.
Are the Paper Separator Fingers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or replace the defective Paper Separator Finger.
Are rolls/rollers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or replace the defective roll/roller.
Are the Edge Guide and Trailing Edge Stop at the correct position to accommodate the paper?	Set as necessary.
Are the actuators operating correctly?	Correct or replace the defective actuator.

**7.3.2 Tray3 Paper Take-Up section/Vertical Transport section misfeed (PC-102/PC-202)**

**A. Detection timing**

Type	Description
Tray3 Paper Take-Up section/ Vertical transport section misfeed detection	The leading edge of the paper does not block the Tray3 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC117-PF) even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Tray3 Paper Feed Motor (M122-PF) is energized.
	The Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2) is not blocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after the Tray3 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC117-PF) has been blocked by a paper.
	The Tray3 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC117-PF) is not unblocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after PC117-PF has been blocked by a paper.
Tray3 detection of paper remaining	The Tray3 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC117-PF) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.
	The Tray3 Paper Take-Up Sensor (PC116-PF) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

**B. Action**

Relevant electrical parts	
Tray3 Paper Take-Up Sensor (PC116-PF) Tray3 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC117-PF) Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2) Tray3 Paper Feed Motor (M122-PF)	Main Control Board (PWB-C2 PF)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical components)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	PC116-PF sensor check	PWB-C2 PF PJ6C2 PF-8 (ON)	PC-202 C-4
3	PC117-PF sensor check	PWB-C2 PF PJ6C2 PF-11 (ON)	PC-202 C-4
4	PC2 sensor check	PWB-A PJ22A-9 (ON)	D-7
5	M122-PF operation check	PWB-C2 PF PJ5C2 PF-1 to 4	PC-202 C-4
6	PWB-C2 PF replacement	-	-

**7.3.3 Tray4 Paper Take-Up section/Vertical Transport section misfeed (PC-202)**

**A. Detection timing**

Type	Description
Tray4 Paper Take-Up section/ Vertical transport section misfeed detection	The leading edge of the paper does not block the Tray4 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC126-PF) even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Tray4 Paper Feed Motor (M123-PF) is energized.
	The Tray3 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC117-PF) is not blocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after the Tray4 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC126-PF) has been blocked by a paper.
	The Tray4 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC126-PF) is not unblocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after PC126-PF has been blocked by a paper.
Tray4 detection of paper remaining	The Tray4 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC126-PF) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.
	The Tray4 Paper Take-Up Sensor (PC125-PF) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

**B. Action**

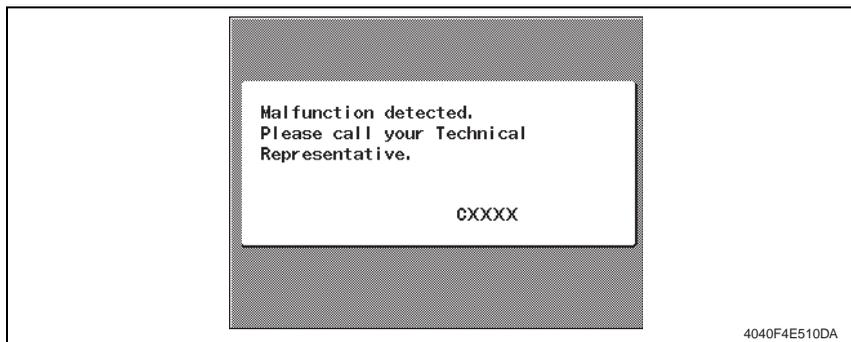
Relevant electrical parts	
Tray4 Paper Take-Up Sensor (PC125-PF) Tray4 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC126-PF) Tray3 Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC117-PF) Tray4 Paper Feed Motor (M123-PF)	Main Control Board (PWB-C2 PF)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical components)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	PC125-PF sensor check	PWB-C2 PF PJ10C2 PF-8 (ON)	PC-202 G-6
3	PC126-PF sensor check	PWB-C2 PF PJ11C2 PF-2 (ON)	PC-202 G-6
4	PC117-PF sensor check	PWB-C2 PF PJ6C2 PF-11 (ON)	PC-202 C-4
5	M123-PF operation check	PWB-C2 PF PJ5C2 PF-1 to 4	PC-202 G-6
6	PWB-C2 PF replacement	-	-

## 8. Trouble code

### 8.1 Trouble code display

- The main unit's CPU performs a self-diagnostics function that, on detecting a malfunction, gives the corresponding malfunction code on the Touch Panel.



### 8.2 Trouble code list

Code	Item	Description
C0206	Tray3 Lift-Up Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Lift-Up Sensor is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the paper lift-up operation for the drawer began.</li> </ul>
C0208	Tray4 Lift-Up Failure	

- Open and close the Front Door or turn OFF and ON the Main Power Switch.

### 8.3 Solution

#### 8.3.1 C0206: Tray3 Lift-Up Failure C0208: Tray4 Lift-Up Failure

Relevant electrical parts	
Tray3 Lift Motor (M-124-PF) Tray4 Lift Motor (M-125-PF) Tray3 Lift Sensor (PC114-PF) Tray4 Lift Sensor (PC123-PF)	Main Control Board (PWB-C2 PF) Main unit Control Board (PWB-MC) Main unit DC Power Supply (PU1)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical components)
1	Check the motor and sensor connectors for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check the connector of each motor for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	Check the PU1 connector for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
4	PC114-PF sensor check	PWB-C2 PF PJ6C2 PF-3 (ON)	PC-202 C-3
5	PC123-PF sensor check	PWB-C2 PF PJ10C2 PF-3 (ON)	PC-202 G-5
6	M124-PF operation check	PWB-C2 PF PJ4C2 PF-4 to 5	PC-202 C-5
7	M125-PF operation check	PWB-C2 PF PJ8C2 PF-12 to 13	PC-202 G-3
8	PWB-C2 PF replacement	-	-
9	PWB-MC replacement	-	-
10	PU1 replacement	-	-

Blank Page



KONICA MINOLTA

**SERVICE MANUAL**

FIELD SERVICE

---

# PC-402

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  to the left of the revised section.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.

## NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2005/08	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

# CONTENTS

## PC-402

### General

1. Product specification .....	1
--------------------------------	---

### Maintenance

2. Periodical check .....	3
2.1 Maintenance procedure (Periodical check parts) .....	3
2.1.1 Replacing the Separation Roller Assy.....	3
2.1.2 Replacing the Paper Take-up Roller.....	4
2.1.3 Replacing the Pick-up Roller.....	6
3. Other .....	8
3.1 Disassembly/Adjustment prohibited items .....	8
3.2 Disassembly/Assembly/Cleaning list (Other parts).....	9
3.2.1 Disassembly/Assembly parts list.....	9
3.2.2 Cleaning parts list .....	9
3.3 Disassembly/Assembly procedure.....	10
3.3.1 Right Door/Rear Right Cover/Lower Right Cover/Front Right Cover.....	10
3.3.2 Rear Cover.....	10
3.3.3 Drawer.....	11
3.3.4 Wire.....	11
3.4 Cleaning procedure .....	14
3.4.1 Separation Roller .....	14
3.4.2 Paper Take-up Roller.....	14
3.4.3 Pick-up Roller.....	14
3.4.4 Vertical Transport Roller.....	15

### Adjustment/Setting

4. How to use the adjustment section .....	17
5. I/O check .....	18
5.1 Check procedure .....	18
5.2 I/O check list .....	18
5.2.1 I/O check screen .....	18
5.2.2 I/O check list.....	19
6. Mechanical adjustment .....	20
6.1 Registration (CD).....	20

6.2	Registration (FD) .....	22
6.3	Shifter Movement Timing Belt Adjustment .....	24

## Troubleshooting

7.	Jam Display .....	25
7.1	Misfeed display .....	25
7.1.1	Misfeed display resetting procedure .....	25
7.2	Sensor layout .....	26
7.3	Solution .....	27
7.3.1	Initial check items .....	27
7.3.2	LCT Paper Take-Up section/LCT Vertical Transport Section .....	28
8.	Trouble code .....	29
8.1	Trouble code display .....	29
8.2	Trouble code list .....	29
8.3	Solution .....	32
8.3.1	C0001: LCT communication error .....	32
8.3.2	C0209: LCT Elevator Motor Failure .....	32
8.3.3	C0210: LCT Lift Failure .....	33
8.3.4	C0212: LCT Lock Release Failure .....	33
8.3.5	C0213: LCT Shift Gate Operation Failure .....	34
8.3.6	C0214: LCT Shift Failure .....	34
8.3.7	C0215: LCT Shift Motor Failure .....	35

# General

## 1. Product specification

### A. Type

Name	Large Capacity Cabinet	
Type	Front loading type LCC	
Installation	Desk type	
Document Alignment	Center	

### B. Paper type

Type	Plain paper	56 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (15 to 24 lb)
Size	A4, 8.5 × 11	
Capacity	2500 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> , 21.25 lb)	

### C. Machine specifications

Power Requirements	DC 24 V ± 10 % (supplied from the main unit)	
	DC 5 V ± 5 %	
Max. Power Consumption	45 W or less	
Dimensions	570 mm (W) × 548 mm (D) × 263 mm (H)	
Weight	26.0 kg (57 lb)	

### D. Operating environment

- Conforms to the operating environment of the main unit.

#### NOTE

- These specifications are subject to change without notice.

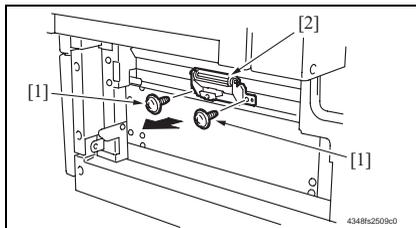
Blank Page

# Maintenance

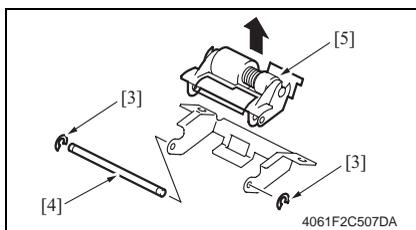
## 2. Periodical check

### 2.1 Maintenance procedure (Periodical check parts)

#### 2.1.1 Replacing the Separation Roller Assy



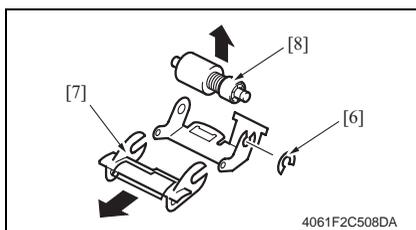
1. Remove the Right Door.  
➤ 10
2. Remove two screws [1] and remove the Paper Separation Roller Mounting Bracket Assy [2].



3. Remove two C-rings [3] and the shaft [4], and remove the Paper Separation Roller Fixing Bracket Assy [5].

#### NOTE

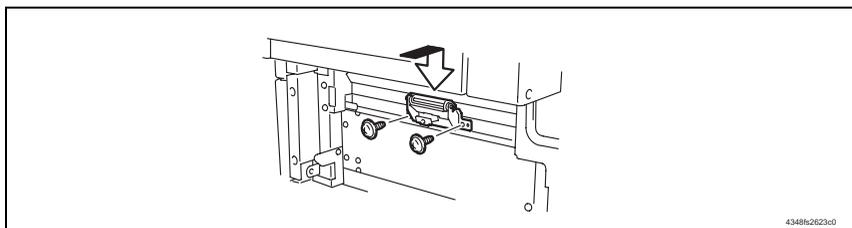
- Be careful not to lose spring at this time.



4. Remove the C-ring [6], the Guide [7], and remove the Separation Roller Assy [8].

#### NOTE

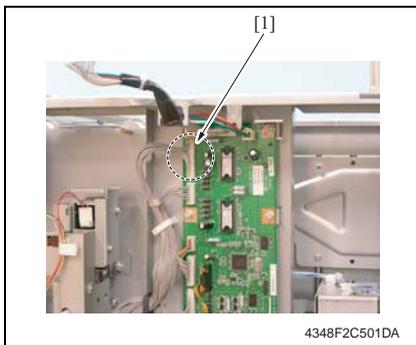
- Install the Separation Roller Assy while pressing the holder down so that it aligns to the metal bracket of the machine.
- Make sure that the Separation Roller Assy is not tilted to the right or left when installed.



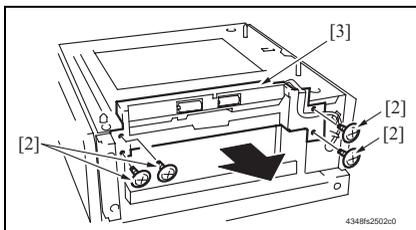
#### NOTE

- Replace the Separation Roller Assy, Paper Take-up Roller and Pick-up Roller at the same time.

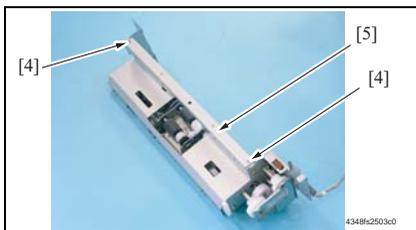
### 2.1.2 Replacing the Paper Take-up Roller



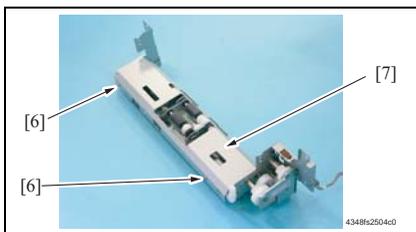
1. Remove the Rear Cover and the Rear Right Cover.  
☞ 10
2. Remove the Tray3.
3. Remove the Paper Separation Roller Mounting Bracket Assy.  
☞ See steps 1 to 2 of "Replacing the Separation Roller" on p. 3.
4. Disconnect the connector [1] from the Main Control Board.



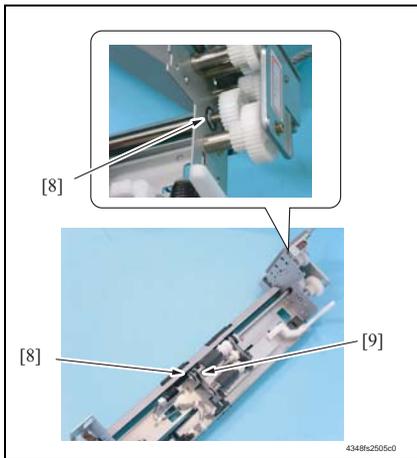
5. Remove four screws [2] and remove the Paper Take-up Unit [3].



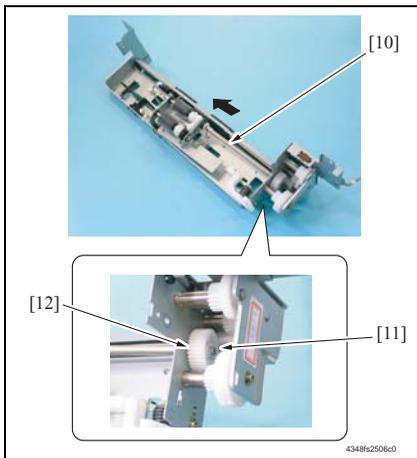
6. Remove two screws [4] and remove the Mounting Frame [5] for the Paper Separation Roller Mounting Bracket Assy.



7. Remove two screws [6] and remove the Paper Take-up Cover [7].

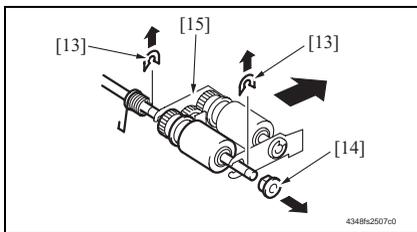


8. Remove two C-rings [8] and remove the bushing [9].

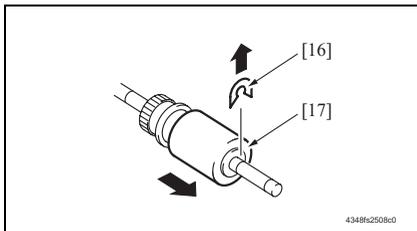


9. Shift the Shaft Assy [10] in the orientation as shown on the left, and remove the C-ring [11] and the gear [12].

10. Remove the shaft Assy [10].



11. Remove two E-rings [13] and the bushing [14], and remove the Pick-up Roller Fixing Bracket Assy [15].

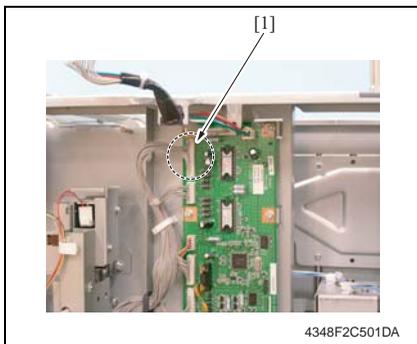


12. Remove the C-ring [16] and remove the Paper Take-up Roller [17].

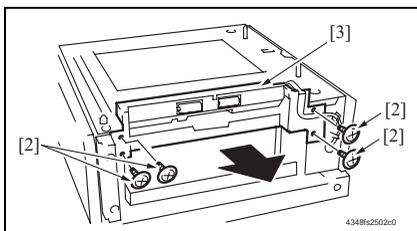
**NOTE**

- Replace the Separation Roller Assy, Paper Take-up Roller and Pick-up Roller at the same time.

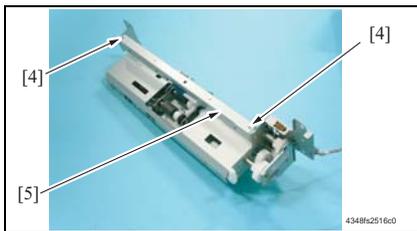
**2.1.3 Replacing the Pick-up Roller**



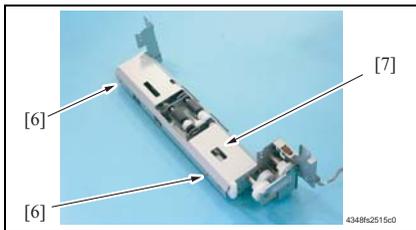
1. Remove the Rear Cover and the Rear Right Cover.
- ☞ 10
2. Remove the Tray3.
3. Remove the Paper Separation Roller Mounting Bracket Assy.
- ☞ See steps 1 to 2 of "Replacing the Separation Roller" on p. 3.
4. Disconnect the connector [1] from the Main Control Board.



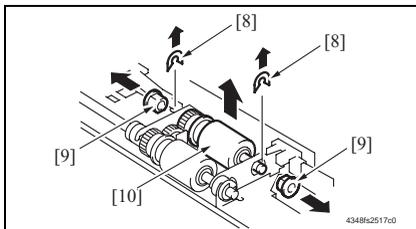
5. Remove four screws [2] and the Paper Take-up Unit [3].



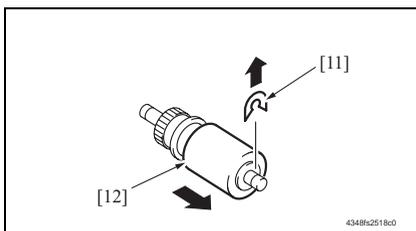
6. Remove two screws [4] and remove the Paper Separation Roller Mounting Bracket Assy [5] together with frame.



7. Remove two screws [6] and remove the Paper Take-up Cover [7].



8. Remove two C-rings [8], two bushings [9], and the Pick-up Roller Assy [10].



9. Remove the C-ring [11] and remove the Pick-up Roller [12].

**NOTE**

- **Replace the Separation Roller Assy, Paper Take-up Roller and Pick-up Roller at the same time.**

## 3. Other

### 3.1 Disassembly/Adjustment prohibited items

#### A. Screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied

- Blue paint or green paint is applied to some screws to prevent them from coming loose.
- As a general rule, screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied should not be removed or loosened.

#### B. Red-painted screws

- Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.

#### C. Variable Resistors on Board

#### NOTE

- Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.

#### D. Removal of PWBs

#### CAUTION

- When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to “SAFETY AND IMPORTANT WARNING ITEMS” and follow the corresponding removal procedures.
- The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.
- When it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.

### 3.2 Disassembly/Assembly/Cleaning list (Other parts)

#### 3.2.1 Disassembly/Assembly parts list

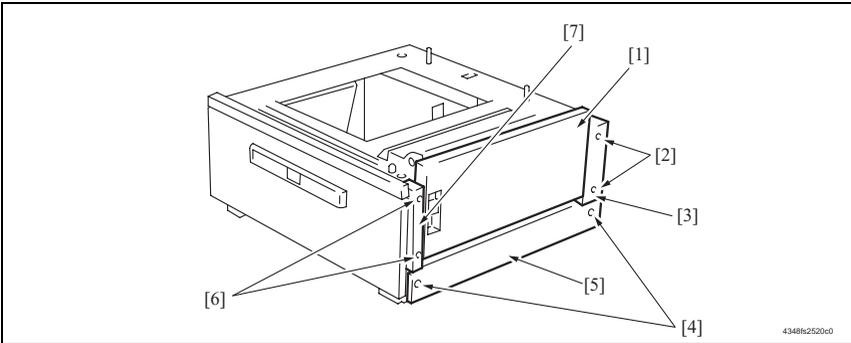
No	Section	Part name	Ref. page
1	Exterior parts	Right Door	 10
2		Rear Right Cover	 10
3		Lower Right Cover	 10
4		Front Right Cover	 10
5		Rear Cover	 10
6	Unit	Drawer	 11
7		Wire	 11

#### 3.2.2 Cleaning parts list

No	Section	Part name	Ref. page
1	Paper feed section	Separation Roller	 14
2		Paper Take-up Roller	 14
3		Pick-up Roller	 14
4	Transport section	Vertical Transport Roller	 15

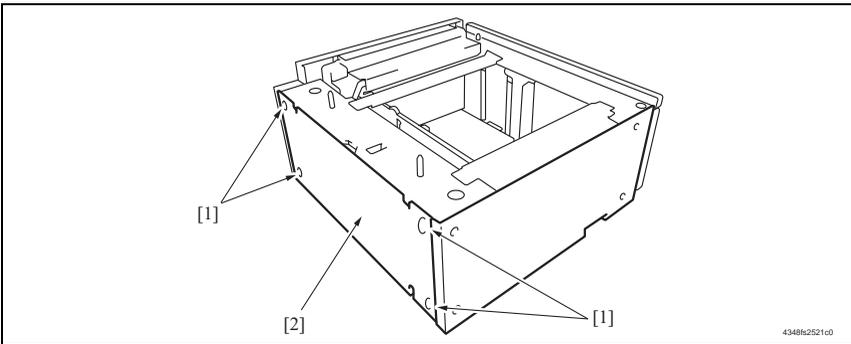
### 3.3 Disassembly/Assembly procedure

#### 3.3.1 Right Door/Rear Right Cover/Lower Right Cover/Front Right Cover



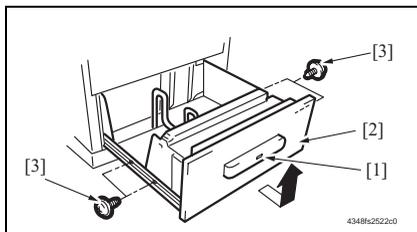
1. Open the Right Door [1].
2. Remove the Right Door [1].
3. Remove two screws [2] and remove the Rear Right Cover [3].
4. Remove two screws [4] and remove the Lower Right Cover [5].
5. Remove two screws [6] and remove the Front Right Cover [7].

#### 3.3.2 Rear Cover

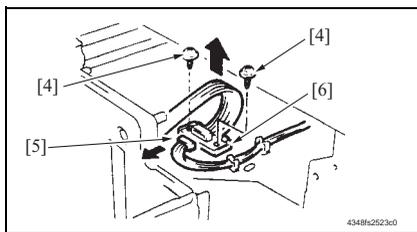


1. Remove four screws [1] and remove the Rear Cover [2].

**3.3.3 Drawer**



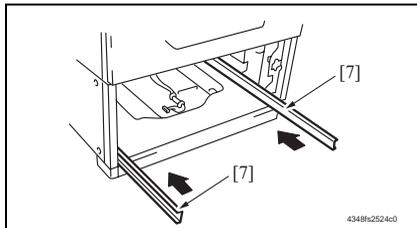
1. Press the Drawer Eject Button [1] and slide out the drawer [2].
2. Remove the paper.
3. Remove four screws [3] and slide out the drawer [2].



4. Remove two screws [4], the connector [5], and remove the Connector Board [6].
5. Remove the Drawer.

**NOTE**

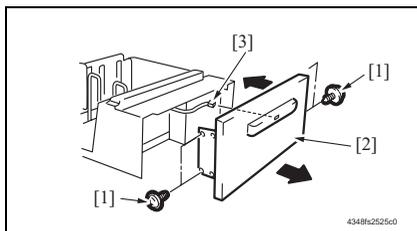
- When removing the Connector Board, use care not to drop the drawer from the guide rail.



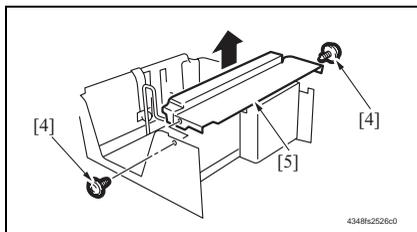
**CAUTION**

- To prevent injuries, press the guide rail [7] inside the machine.

**3.3.4 Wire**



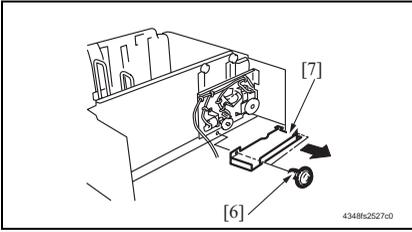
1. Remove the Drawer.
- 11
2. Remove four screws [1] and remove the Front Cover Assy [2].
3. Unplug the connector [3].



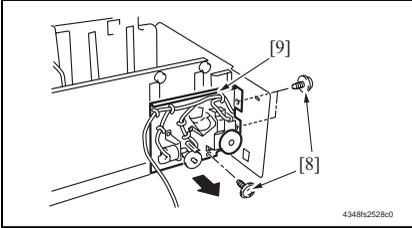
4. Remove two screws [4] and the Inner Cover Assy [5].

**NOTE**

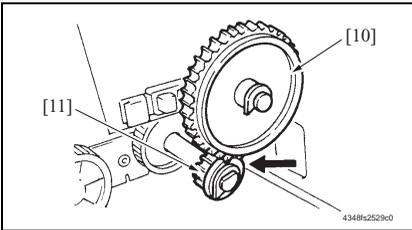
- Do not peel off pulley protective mylar sheet.



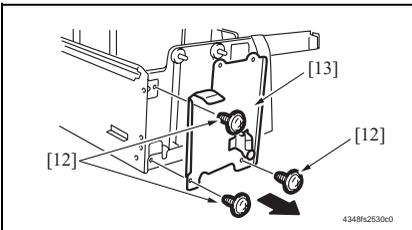
- Remove two screws [6] and remove the Driver Cover [7].



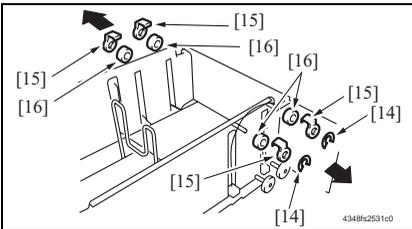
- Remove three screws [8] and remove the Driver Mounting Plate Assy [9].

**NOTE**

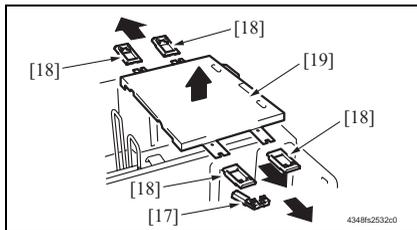
- When assembling, be sure to engage rib of gear 1 [10] with convex section of gear 2 [11].



- Remove three screws [12] and remove the Reinforcement Bracket Assy [13].



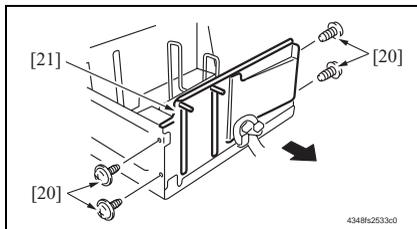
- Remove two C-clips [14].
- Remove four Pulley Covers [15].
- Unhook four pulleys [16].



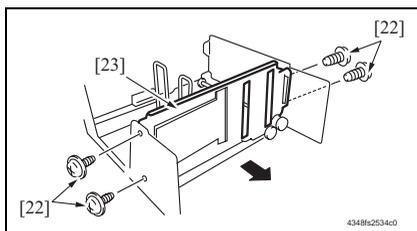
11. Remove the Ground Plate [17].
12. Remove four Cable Holding Jigs [18] and remove the Main Drawer [19].

**NOTE**

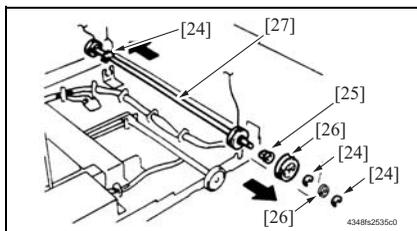
- Use care not to bend the wires.



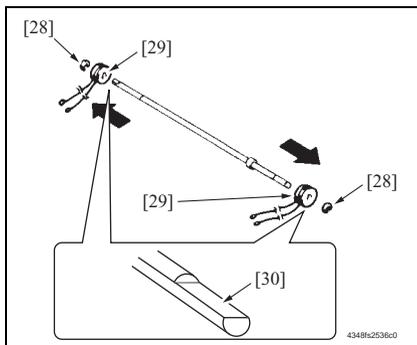
13. Remove four screws [20] and remove the Rear Trailing Edge Assy [21].



14. Remove four screws [22] and remove the Front Trailing Edge Assy [23].



15. Remove three C-rings [24], the bushing [25], and two gears [26].
16. Remove the Take-up Drum Assy [27].



17. Remove two C-rings [28] and the Take-up Drum [29].

**NOTE**

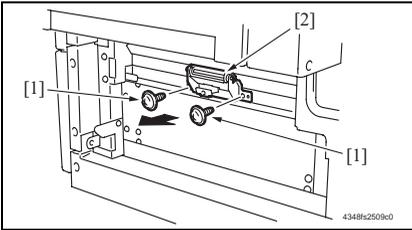
- Take care not to lose fixing pins.
- When reinstalling the Take-up Drum, check that the direction of the wire coming from both Take-up Drums are the same.
- Install so that cut parts [30] at both ends of shaft face up.

### 3.4 Cleaning procedure

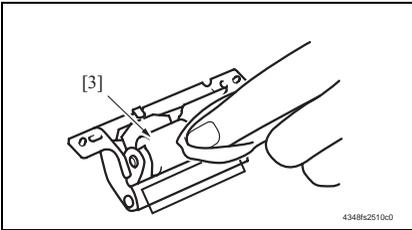
#### NOTE

- The alcohol described in the cleaning procedure represents the isopropyl alcohol.

#### 3.4.1 Separation Roller

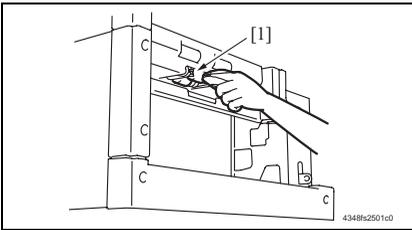


1. Remove the Right Door.  
☞ 10
2. Remove two screws [1] and remove the Paper Separation Roller Mounting Bracket Assy [2].



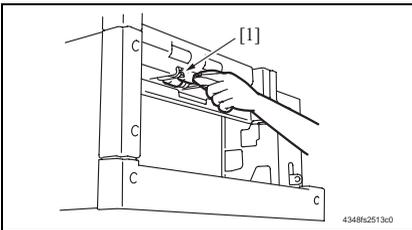
3. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Separation Roller [3] clean of dirt.

#### 3.4.2 Paper Take-up Roller



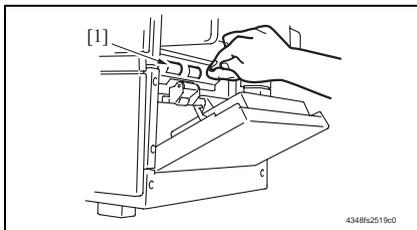
1. Remove the Tray3.
2. Remove the Paper Separation Roller Mounting Bracket Assy.  
☞ See steps 1 to 2 of the cleaning procedure for "Separation Roller" on p. 14.
3. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Paper Take-Up Roller [1] clean of dirt.

#### 3.4.3 Pick-up Roller



1. Remove the Tray3.
2. Remove the Paper Separation Roller Mounting Bracket Assy.  
☞ See steps 1 to 2 of the cleaning procedure for "Separation Roller" on p. 14.
3. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Pick-up Roller [1] clean of dirt.

### 3.4.4 Vertical Transport Roller



1. Open the Right Door.
2. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Vertical Transport Roller [1] clean of dirt.

Blank Page

## Adjustment/Setting

### 4. How to use the adjustment section

- “Adjustment/Setting” contains detailed information on the adjustment items and procedures for this machine.
- Throughout this “Adjustment/Setting,” the default settings are indicated by “ ”.

#### Advance Checks

Before attempting to solve the customer problem, the following advance checks must be made. Check to see if:

- The power supply voltage meets the specifications.
- The power supply is properly grounded.
- The machine shares the power supply with any other machine that draws large current intermittently (e.g., elevator and air conditioner that generate electric noise).
- The installation site is environmentally appropriate: high temperature, high humidity, direct sunlight, ventilation, etc.; levelness of the installation site.
- The original has a problem that may cause a defective image.
- The density is properly selected.
- The Original Glass, slit glass, or related part is dirty.
- Correct paper is being used for printing.
- The units, parts, and supplies used for printing (developer, PC Drum, etc.) are properly replenished and replaced when they reach the end of their useful service life.
- Toner is not running out.

#### CAUTION

- **To unplug the power cord of the machine before starting the service job procedures.**
- **If it is unavoidably necessary to service the machine with its power turned ON, use utmost care not to be caught in the Scanner Cables or gears of the Exposure Unit.**
- **Special care should be used when handling the Fusing Unit which can be extremely hot.**
- **The Developing Unit has a strong magnetic field. Keep watches and measuring instruments away from it.**
- **Take care not to damage the PC Drum with a tool or similar device.**
- **Do not touch IC pins with bare hands.**

## 5. I/O check

### 5.1 Check procedure

- To allow sensors to be checked for operation easily and safely, data applied to the IC on the board can be checked on the panel with the main unit in the standby state (including a misfeed, malfunction, and closure failure condition).

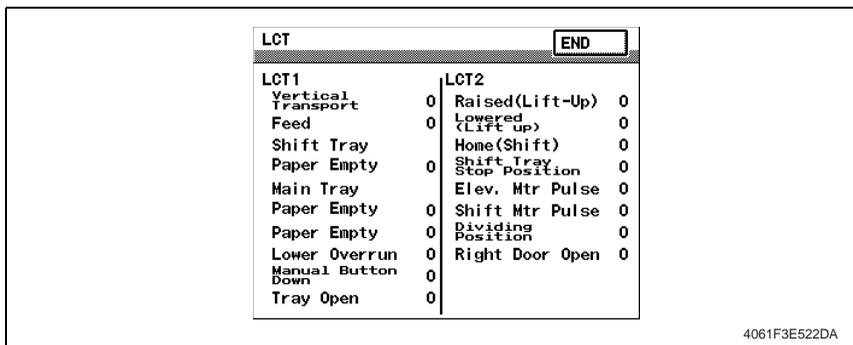
<Procedure>

- Display Tech. Rep. Mode.  
 ☞ For details of how to display the Service Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.
- Touch the [I/O Check].
- Touch the [Printer].
- Touch the [LCT].

### 5.2 I/O check list

#### 5.2.1 I/O check screen

- This is only typical screen which may be different from what are shown on each individual main unit.



**5.2.2 I/O check list**

**A. Printer (PC-402)**

Symbol	Panel display		Part/Signal name	Operation characteristics/ Panel display	
				1	0
PC2-LCT	LCT	Vertical Transport	Vertical Conveyance Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC1-LCT		Feed	Paper Feed Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC9-LCT		Shift Tray Paper Empty	Shift Tray Paper Empty Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC3-LCT		Main Tray Paper Empty	Upper Paper Empty Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PWB-E LCT		Paper Empty	Paper Empty Board	Paper present	Paper not present
PC7-LCT		Lower Overrun	Lower Limit Sensor	malfunction	operational
UN1-LCT		Manual Button Down	Paper Descent Key	ON	OFF
PC6-LCT		Tray Open	Tray Set Sensor	Open	Close
PC4-LCT		Raised (lift-Up)	Tray Upper Limit Sensor	At raised position	Not at raised position
PC13-LCT		Lowered (Lift up)	Tray Lower Position Sensor	At lower limit	Not at lower limit
PC12-LCT		Home (Shift)	Shifter Home Position Sensor	At home	Not at home
PC11-LCT		Shift Tray Stop Position	Shifter Return Position Sensor	At stop position	Not at stop position
PC10-LCT		Elev. Mtr Pulse	Elevator Motor Pulse Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC8-LCT		Shift Mtr Pulse	Shift Motor Pulse Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC14-LCT		Dividing Position	Shift Gate Home Position Sensor	At home	Not at home
PC5-LCT		Right Door Open	Right Lower Door Sensor	Open	Close

PC-402

Adjustment / Setting

# 6. Mechanical adjustment

## 6.1 Registration (CD)

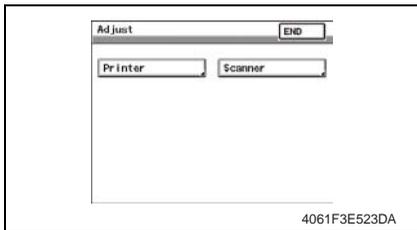
### NOTE

Make this adjustment after any of the following procedures has been performed.

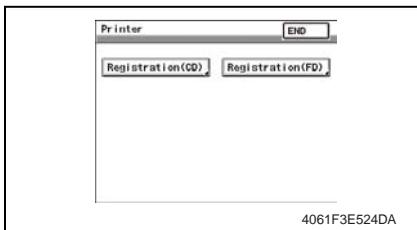
- When the PH Unit has been replaced.
- When the image on the copy is offset in the CD direction.
- When a faint image occurs on the leading edge of the image.

1. Display Tech. Rep. Mode.

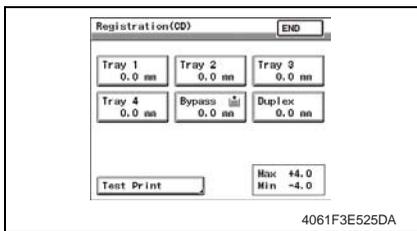
☞ For details of how to display the Service Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.



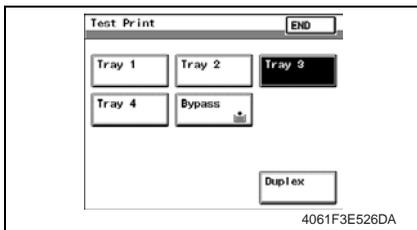
2. Press the Stop key followed by the Start key to display the Adjust Mode.
3. Touch the [Printer].



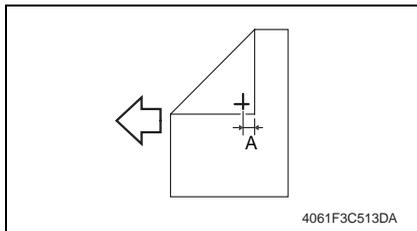
4. Touch the [Registration (CD)].



5. Touch the [Test Print].

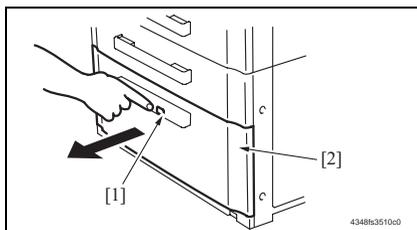


6. Touch the [Tray 3].
7. Press the Start key.

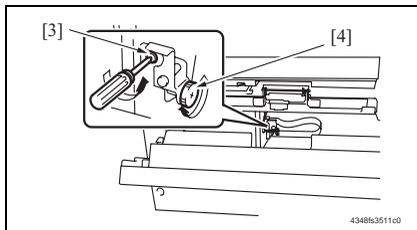


8. Measure the width of printed reference line A.  
Specification: 10 mm ± 2.0 mm
9. If the measured width A falls outside the specified range, enter the correction value.
10. Produce another test print and check to see if width A falls within the specified range.

• If adjustment cannot be completed only by inputting numeric value, perform adjustment according to the following procedure.



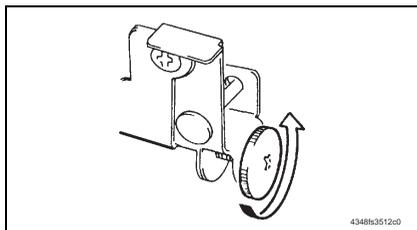
11. Press the Drawer Release button [1] and then slide out the drawer [2] from the Paper Feed Cabinet.



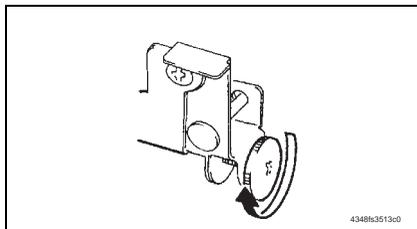
12. Open the Right Door.
13. Loosen the adjustment screw [3] and turn screw D [4] to make the adjustment.

**NOTE**

• Do not damage the passage surface of the Right Door.



• If width A is greater than the specified value: Turn screw D counterclockwise.



• If width A is smaller than the specified value: Turn screw D clockwise.

14. Perform another test print and check the reference deviation.
15. Tighten the adjustment screw.

## 6.2 Registration (FD)

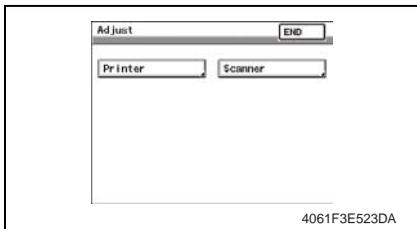
### NOTE

Make this adjustment after any of the following procedures has been performed.

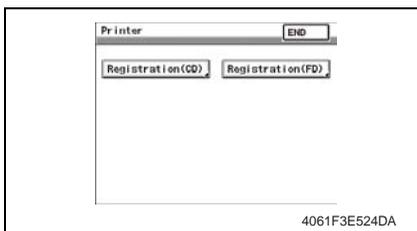
- When the PH Unit has been replaced.
- When the image on the copy is offset in the FD direction.

1. Display Tech. Rep. Mode.

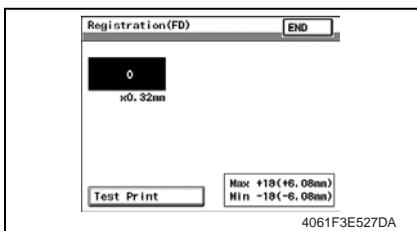
☞ For details of how to display the Service Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.



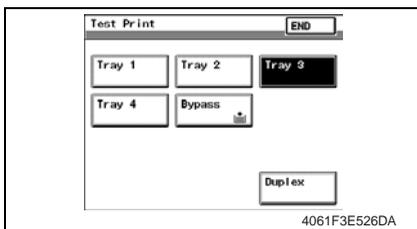
2. Press the Stop key followed by the Start key to display the Adjust Mode.
3. Touch the [Printer].



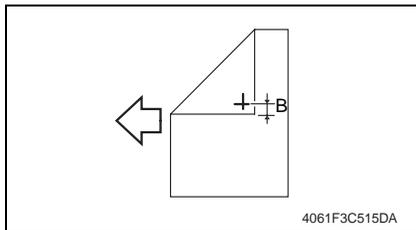
4. Touch the [Registration (FD)].



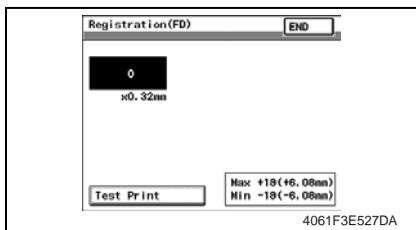
5. Touch the [Test Print].



6. Touch the [Tray 3].
7. Press the Start key.



8. Measure the width of printed reference line B.  
Specification: 11.3 mm  $\pm$  1.5 mm
9. If width B falls within the specified range, finish the adjustment procedure.  
If outside the specified range, perform the adjustment below.



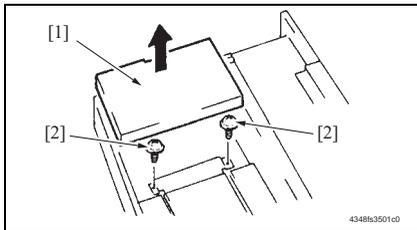
10. Touch [END] to display the Registration (FD) screen.

11. Press the Clear key and use the 10-Key Pad to set the value.
  - If width B is wider than the specified range, enter a negative value.
  - If width B is narrower than the specified range, enter a positive value.

**Adjustment range: + 19.0 (+6.08 mm) max. and -19.0 (-6.08 mm) min.**  
Use the \* key to switch between + and -.

12. Perform another test print and check the reference deviation.
13. Repeat the adjustment until the reference line falls within the specified range.

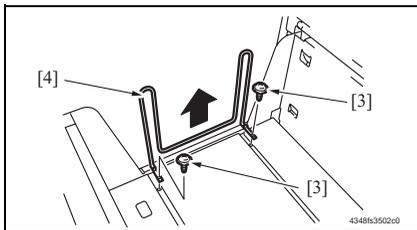
### 6.3 Shifter Movement Timing Belt Adjustment



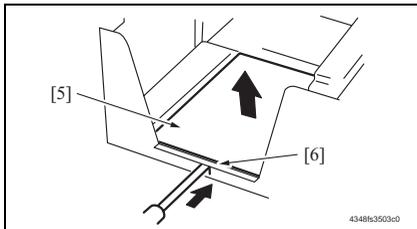
1. Slide out the Drawer and remove it.
2. Lift the Main Drawer [1], and remove two screws [2] fixing the Shift Tray.

**NOTE**

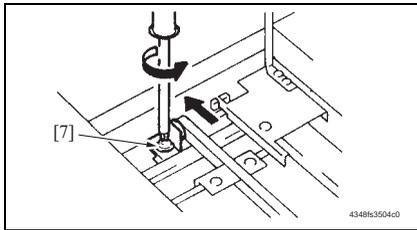
- When reinstalling, use caution because the wire of the Main Drawer comes off easily.



3. Remove two screws [3] and remove the Shifter [4].



4. Push the tab [6] of the Shift Tray [5] as shown on the left and release the lock.
5. Remove the Shift Tray [5].



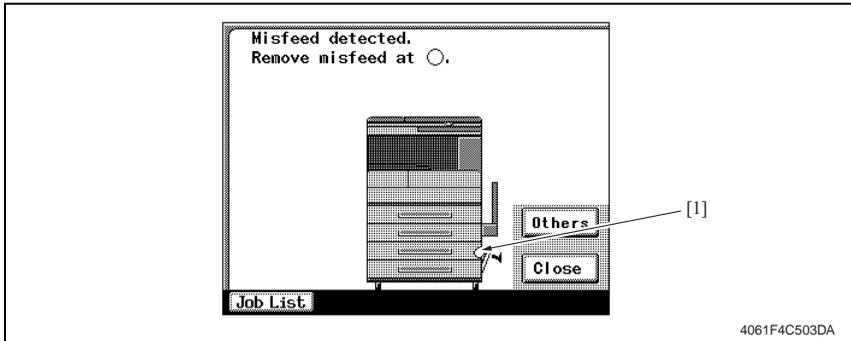
6. Loosen the screw [7] fixing the Tension Pulley Assy as shown to the left and move it in the direction of the arrow.
7. After moving the Shifter, tighten the fixing screw [7].

# Troubleshooting

## 7. Jam Display

### 7.1 Misfeed display

- When misfeed occurs, message, misfeed location “Blinking” and paper location “Lighting” are displayed on the Touch Panel of the main unit.

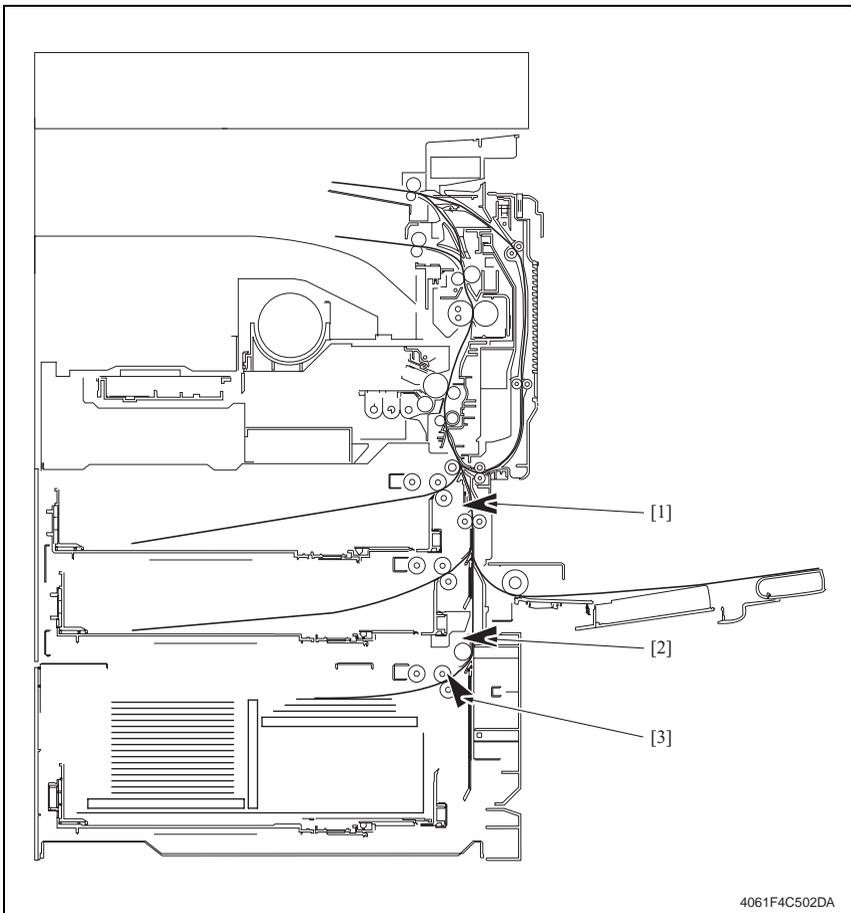


No.	Misfeed location	Misfeed access location	Action
[1]	LCT Paper Take-Up section	Right Door	👉 28
	LCT Vertical Transport Section		

#### 7.1.1 Misfeed display resetting procedure

- Open the corresponding door, clear the sheet of paper misfeed, and close the door.

### 7.2 Sensor layout



4061F4C502DA

- |                                |         |                       |         |
|--------------------------------|---------|-----------------------|---------|
| [1] Vertical Conveyance Sensor | PC2     | [3] Paper Feed Sensor | PC1-LCT |
| [2] Vertical Conveyance Sensor | PC2-LCT |                       |         |

### 7.3 Solution

#### 7.3.1 Initial check items

- When a paper misfeed occurs, first perform the following initial check items.

Check item	Action
Does paper meet product specifications?	Replace paper.
Is the paper curled, wavy, or damp?	Replace paper. Instruct the user on the correct paper storage procedures.
Is a foreign object present along the paper path, or is the paper path deformed or worn?	Clean the paper path and replace if necessary.
Are the Paper Separator Fingers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or replace the defective Paper Separator Finger.
Are rolls/rollers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or replace the defective roll/roller.
Are the Edge Guide and Trailing Edge Stop at the correct position to accommodate the paper?	Set as necessary.
Are the actuators operating correctly?	Correct or replace the defective actuator.

### 7.3.2 LCT Paper Take-Up section/LCT Vertical Transport Section

#### A. Detection timing

Type	Description
LCT Paper Take-Up section/ Vertical transport section misfeed detection	The leading edge of the paper does not block the Paper Feed Sensor (PC1-LCT) or the LCT Vertical Transport Sensor (PC2-LCT) even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Paper Feed Motor (M1-LCT) is energized.
	The Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2) is not blocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after the LCT Vertical Transport Sensor (PC2-LCT) has been blocked by a paper.
	The Paper Feed Sensor (PC1-LCT) is not unblocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after PC1-LCT has been blocked by a paper.
LCT detection of paper remaining	The LCT Vertical Transport Sensor (PC2-LCT) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.
	The Paper Feed Sensor (PC1-LCT) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

#### B. Action

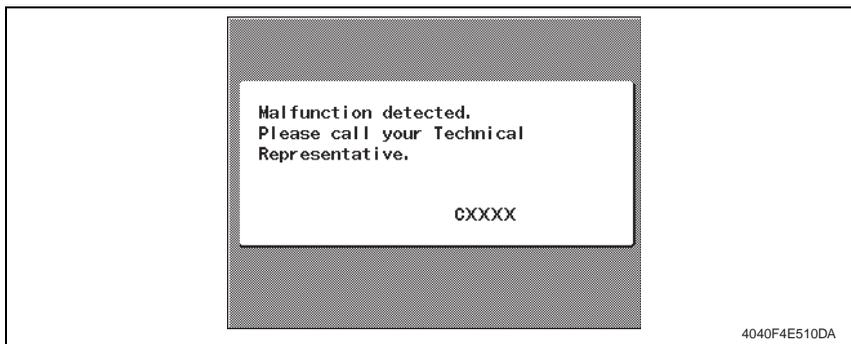
Relevant electrical parts	
Paper Feed Sensor (PC1-LCT) Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2-LCT) Vertical Conveyance Sensor (PC2) Paper Feed Motor (M1-LCT)	Main Control Board (PWB-C1 LCT)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical components)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	PC1-LCT sensor check	PWB-C1 LCT PJ5C1 LCT-2 (ON)	PC-402 C-8
3	PC2-LCT sensor check	PWB-C1 LCT PJ5C1 LCT-5 (ON)	PC-402 C-7
4	PC2 sensor check	PWB-A PJ22A-9 (ON)	D-7
5	M1-LCT operation check	PWB-C1 LCT PJ6C1 LCT-1 to 4	PC-402 C-8
6	PWB-C1 LCT replacement	-	-

## 8. Trouble code

### 8.1 Trouble code display

- The main unit's CPU performs a self-diagnostics function that, on detecting a malfunction, gives the corresponding malfunction code on the Touch Panel.



### 8.2 Trouble code list

Code	Item	Description
C0001	LCT communication error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Due to a software malfunction, etc., the time on the watchdog timer has run out and a reset is performed.</li> </ul>
C0209	LCT Elevator Motor Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Elevator Motor Pulse Sensor (PC10-LCT) cannot detect both edges of H/L even after the set period of time has elapsed while the Elevator Motor (M5-LCT) is turning backward/forward (raise/lower).</li> </ul>

Code	Item	Description
C0210	LCT Lift Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Tray Upper Limit Sensor (PC4-LCT) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the paper lift-up operation began.</li> <li>• The Tray Upper Limit Sensor (PC4-LCT) is not blocked even after the set pulse is detected by the Elevator Motor Pulse Sensor (PC10-LCT) after the paper lift-up operation began.</li> <li>• The Tray Lower Position Sensor (PC13-LCT) is not unblocked even after the set pulse is detected by the Elevator Motor Pulse Sensor (PC10-LCT) after the paper lift-up operation began.</li> <li>• The Tray Upper Limit Sensor (PC4-LCT) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the paper lift-up operating.</li> <li>• The Tray Lower Position Sensor (PC13-LCT) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the paper lift-down operation began.</li> <li>• The Tray Lower Position Sensor (PC13-LCT) is not blocked even after the set pulse is detected by the Elevator Motor Pulse Sensor (PC10-LCT) after the paper lift-down operation began.</li> <li>• The Tray Upper Limit Sensor (PC4-LCT) is not unblocked even after the set pulse is detected by the Elevator Motor Pulse Sensor (PC10-LCT) after the paper lift-down operation began.</li> <li>• The Lower Limit Sensor (PC7-LCT) is blocked while the paper lift-down operating.</li> </ul>
C0212	LCT Lock Release Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The drawer cannot be determined to be out of position even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Tray Lock Solenoid (SL1-LCT) is energized after the lowering operation is finished.</li> </ul>
C0213	LCT Shift Gate Operation Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Shift Gate Home Position Sensor (PC14-LCT) cannot be set to L even after the set period of time has elapsed after the operation of the Shift Gate Motor (M3-LCT) began with the Shift Gate Home Position Sensor (PC14-LCT) set to L.</li> </ul>

Code	Item	Description
C0214	LCT Shift Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Shifter Return Position Sensor (PC11-LCT) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the shift operation began (shift to the right).</li> <li>• The Shifter Return Position Sensor (PC11-LCT) is not blocked even after the set pulse is detected by the Shift Motor Pulse Sensor (PC8-LCT) after the shift operation began (shift to the right).</li> <li>• The Shifter Home Position Sensor (PC12-LCT) is not unblocked even after the set pulse is detected by the Shift Motor Pulse Sensor (PC8-LCT) after the shift operation began (shift to the right).</li> <li>• The Shifter Home Position Sensor (PC12-LCT) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the return operation began (shift to the left).</li> <li>• The Shifter Home Position Sensor (PC12-LCT) is not blocked even after the set pulse is detected by the Shift Motor Pulse Sensor (PC8-LCT) after the return operation began (shift to the left).</li> <li>• The Shifter Return Position Sensor (PC11-LCT) is not unblocked even after the set pulse is detected by the Shift Motor Pulse Sensor (PC8-LCT) after the return operation began (shift to the left).</li> </ul>
C0215	LCT Shift Motor Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Shift Motor Pulse Sensor (PC8-LCT) cannot detect both edges of H/L even after the set period of time has ward/forward (raise/lower).</li> </ul>

- Open and close the Front Door or turn OFF and ON the Main Power Switch.

## 8.3 Solution

### 8.3.1 C0001: LCT communication error

Relevant electrical parts			
Main Control Board (PWB-C1 LCT)			
Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical components)
1	Turn the main unit off, then on again.	-	-
2	PWB-C1 LCT replacement	-	-

### 8.3.2 C0209: LCT Elevator Motor Failure

Relevant electrical parts			
Elevator Motor (M5-LCT)		Interface Board (PWB-H LCT)	
Elevator Motor Pulse Sensor (PC10-LCT)		Main Control Board (PWB-C1 LCT)	
Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical components)
1	Check the motor and sensor connectors for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check the connector of motor for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	PC10-LCT sensor check	PWB-C1 LCT PJ2H<A> LCT-5 (ON)	PC-402 G-5
4	M5-LCT operation check	PWB-C1 LCT PJ2H<B> LCT-6 to 7	PC-402 G-6
5	PWB-H LCT replacement	-	-
6	PWB-C1 LCT replacement	-	-

**8.3.3 C0210: LCT Lift Failure**

Relevant electrical parts	
Tray Upper Limit Sensor (PC4-LCT) Tray Lower Position Sensor (PC13-LCT) Elevator Motor Pulse Sensor (PC10-LCT) Lower Limit Sensor (PC7-LCT)	Main Control Board (PWB-C1 LCT)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical components)
1	Check the sensor connectors for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	PC4-LCT sensor check	PWB-C1 LCT PJ5C1 LCT-12 (ON)	PC-402 C-7
3	PC13-LCT sensor check	PWB-C1 LCT PJ2H<A> LCT-9 (ON)	PC-402 G-3
4	PC10-LCT sensor check	PWB-C1 LCT PJ2H<A> LCT-5 (ON)	PC-402 G-5
5	PC7-LCT sensor check	PWB-C1 LCT PJ2H<A> LCT-2 (ON)	PC-402 G-6
6	PWB-C1 LCT replacement	-	-

**8.3.4 C0212: LCT Lock Release Failure**

Relevant electrical parts	
Tray Lock Solenoid (SL1-LCT)	Main Control Board (PWB-C1 LCT)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical components)
1	Check the SL1-LCT connector for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	SL1-LCT operation check	PWB-C1 LCT PJ7C1 LCT-4 (ON)	PC-402 C-8
3	PWB-C1 LCT replacement	-	-

**8.3.5 C0213: LCT Shift Gate Operation Failure**

Relevant electrical parts	
Shift Gate Home Position Sensor (PC14-LCT) Shift Gate Motor (M3-LCT)	Main Control Board (PWB-C1 LCT)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical components)
1	Check the motor and sensor connectors for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check the connector of motor for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	PC14-LCT sensor check	PWB-C1 LCT PJ2H<B> LCT-1 (ON)	PC-402 G-6
4	M3-LCT operation check	PWB-C1 LCT PJ2H<B> LCT-2 to 3	PC-402 G-6
5	PWB-C1 LCT replacement	-	-

**8.3.6 C0214: LCT Shift Failure**

Relevant electrical parts	
Shift Motor Pulse Sensor (PC8-LCT) Shifter Return Position Sensor (PC11-LCT) Shifter Home Position Sensor (PC12-LCT)	Main Control Board (PWB-C1 LCT)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical components)
1	Check the sensor connectors for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	PC8-LCT sensor check	PWB-C1 LCT PJ2H<A> LCT-3 (ON)	PC-402 G-5
3	PC11-LCT sensor check	PWB-C1 LCT PJ2H<A> LCT-7 (ON)	PC-402 G-4
4	PC12-LCT sensor check	PWB-C1 LCT PJ2H<A> LCT-8 (ON)	PC-402 G-4
5	PWB-C1 LCT replacement	-	-

**8.3.7 C0215: LCT Shift Motor Failure**

Relevant electrical parts	
Shift Motor (M4-LCT) Shift Motor Pulse Sensor (PC8-LCT)	Main Control Board (PWB-C1 LCT)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical components)
1	Check the motor and sensor connectors for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check the connector of motor for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	PC8-LCT sensor check	PWB-C1 LCT PJ2H<A> LCT-3 (ON)	PC-402 G-5
4	M4-LCT operation check	PWB-C1 LCT PJ2H<B> LCT-4 to 5	PC-402 G-6
5	PWB-C1 LCT replacement	-	-

PC-402

Troubleshooting

Blank Page



KONICA MINOLTA

**SERVICE MANUAL**

**FIELD SERVICE**

---

# JS-502

# Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  to the left of the revised section.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.

## NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2005/08	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

# CONTENTS

## JS-502

### General

1. System configuration.....	1
------------------------------	---

### Maintenance

2. Other .....	3
2.1 Disassembly/Adjustment prohibited items .....	3
2.2 Disassembly/Assembly/Cleaning list (Other parts).....	4
2.2.1 Disassembly/Assembly parts list.....	4
2.3 Disassembly/Assembly procedure.....	4
2.3.1 Upper Cover.....	4

### Adjustment/Setting

3. How to use the adjustment section .....	5
4. Sensor Check.....	6
4.1 Check procedure .....	6
4.2 I/O check list .....	6
4.2.1 I/O check screen .....	6
4.2.2 I/O check list.....	6

JS-502

General

Maintenance

Adjustment / Setting

Blank Page

# General

## 1. System configuration

### A. Type

Name	Job Separator
Type	Expansion drawer
Installation	Installed in the copier
Document Alignment	Center

### B. Paper type

Exit Tray	Size	Type	capacity	
Tray 1	A6R to A3R (5.5 to 11 x 17 inch) width: 90 mm to 297 mm (3.5 to 11.75 inch) length: 139.7 mm to 432 mm (5.5 to 17 inch)	Plain Paper (56 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> ,15 to 24 lb)	250 sheets	
		Special	OHP transparencies	20 sheets
			Thick paper (91 to 210g/m <sup>2</sup> , 24.25 to 55.75 lb)	
			Envelope	
			Label	
			Letterhead	
Governmentstandard postcards				
Tray 2	A5 to A3R (5.5 to 8.5 inch) Max.: 297 mm x 432 mm (11.75 to 17 inch) Min.: 139.7 mm x 139.7 mm (5.5 to 5.5 inch)	Plain Paper (56 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> ,15 to 24 lb)	100 sheets	

### C. Machine specifications

Power Requirements	DC 5 V ± 5 % (supplied from the main unit)
Max. Power Consumption	0.2 W or less
Dimensions	450 mm (W) x 443 mm (D) x 75 mm (H) 17.75 inch (W) x 17.5 inch (D) x 3 inch (H)
Weight	Approx. 1.7 kg (3.75 lb)

### D. Operating environment

- Conforms to the operating environment of the main unit.

#### NOTE

- These specifications are subject to change without notice.

Blank Page

# Maintenance

## 2. Other

### 2.1 Disassembly/Adjustment prohibited items

#### A. Screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied

- Blue paint or green paint is applied to some screws to prevent them from coming loose.
- As a general rule, screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied should not be removed or loosened.

#### B. Red-painted screws

- Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.

#### C. Variable Resistors on Board

##### NOTE

- Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.

#### D. Removal of PWBs

##### Caution

- When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to “SAFETY AND IMPORTANT WARNING ITEMS” and follow the corresponding removal procedures.
- The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.
- When it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.

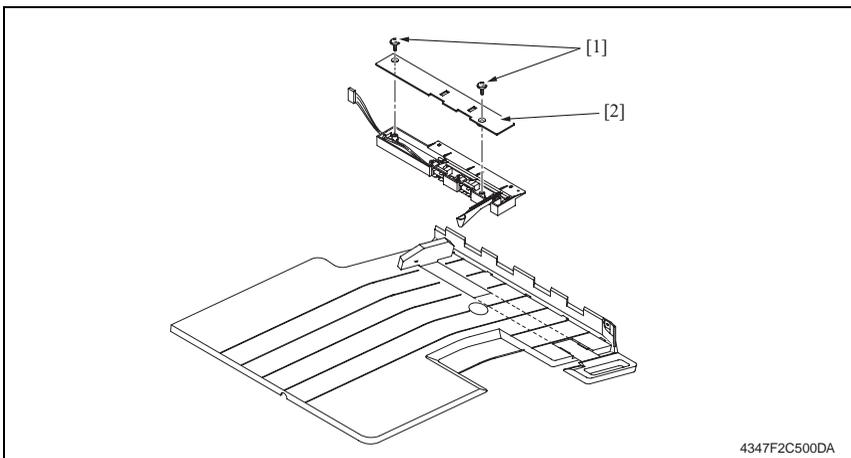
## 2.2 Disassembly/Assembly/Cleaning list (Other parts)

### 2.2.1 Disassembly/Assembly parts list

No.	Section	Part name	Ref. Page
1	Exterior parts	Upper Cover	 4

## 2.3 Disassembly/Assembly procedure

### 2.3.1 Upper Cover



1. Remove two screws [1], and remove the Upper Cover [2].

## Adjustment/Setting

### 3. How to use the adjustment section

- “Adjustment/Setting” contains detailed information on the adjustment items and procedures for this machine.
- Throughout this “Adjustment/Setting,” the default settings are indicated by “ ”.

#### Advance Checks

Before attempting to solve the customer problem, the following advance checks must be made. Check to see if:

- The power supply voltage meets the specifications.
- The power supply is properly grounded.
- The machine shares the power supply with any other machine that draws large current intermittently (e.g., elevator and air conditioner that generate electric noise).
- The installation site is environmentally appropriate: high temperature, high humidity, direct sunlight, ventilation, etc.; levelness of the installation site.
- The original has a problem that may cause a defective image.
- The density is properly selected.
- The Original Glass, slit glass, or related part is dirty.
- Correct paper is being used for printing.
- The units, parts, and supplies used for printing (developer, PC Drum, etc.) are properly replenished and replaced when they reach the end of their useful service life.
- Toner is not running out.

#### CAUTION

- **To unplug the power cord of the machine before starting the service job procedures.**
- **If it is unavoidably necessary to service the machine with its power turned ON, use utmost care not to be caught in the Scanner Cables or gears of the Exposure Unit.**
- **Special care should be used when handling the Fusing Unit which can be extremely hot.**
- **The Developing Unit has a strong magnetic field. Keep watches and measuring instruments away from it.**
- **Take care not to damage the PC Drum with a tool or similar device.**
- **Do not touch IC pins with bare hands.**

## 4. Sensor Check

### 4.1 Check procedure

- To allow sensors to be checked for operation easily and safely, data applied to the IC on the board can be checked on the panel with the main unit in the standby state (including a misfeed, malfunction, and closure failure condition).

<Procedure>

1. Display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen.

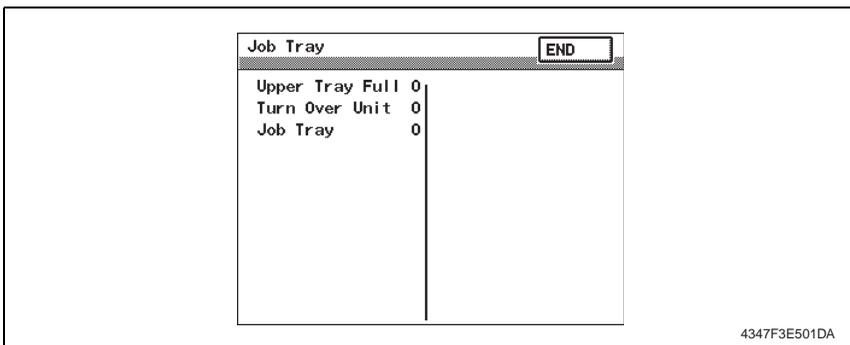
☞ For details of how to display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.

2. Touch [I/O Check].
3. Touch [Job Tray].

### 4.2 I/O check list

#### 4.2.1 I/O check screen

- This is only typical screen which may be different from what are shown on each individual main unit.



#### 4.2.2 I/O check list

##### A. Job Tray

Symbol	Panel display	Part/Signal name	Operation characteristics/ Panel display	
			1	0
PC1-JOB	Upper Tray Full	Paper Full Detection Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
-	Turn Over Unit	Turn Over Unit Set signal	Set	Not set
-	Job Tray	Job Tray Set signal	Set	Not set



KONICA MINOLTA

**SERVICE MANUAL**

**FIELD SERVICE**

---

# FS-508/PU-501 /OT-601

# Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  to the left of the revised section.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.

## NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2005/08	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

# CONTENTS

## FS-508/PU-501/OT-601

### General

1.	Product specifications .....	1
1.1	FS-508 .....	1
1.2	PU-501 .....	3
1.3	OT-601 .....	4

### Maintenance

2.	Periodical check .....	5
2.1	Maintenance procedure (Periodical check parts) .....	5
2.1.1	Cleaning of the Roller and Roll .....	5
3.	Firmware upgrade .....	7
3.1	Preparations for Firmware rewriting.....	7
3.1.1	Service environment .....	7
3.1.2	Writing into the Compact flash .....	7
3.1.3	Checking ROM version .....	7
3.2	Firmware rewriting .....	7
3.2.1	Finisher .....	7
4.	Other .....	10
4.1	Disassembly/Adjustment prohibited items .....	10
4.2	Disassembly/Assembly/Cleaning list (Other parts).....	11
4.2.1	Disassembly/Assembly parts list.....	11
4.3	Disassembly/Assembly procedure.....	12
4.3.1	Horizontal Transport Upper Front Cover/Horizontal Transport Front Right Cover/Horizontal Transport Lower Front Cover .....	12
4.3.2	Horizontal Transport Upper Cover.....	12
4.3.3	Front Door .....	13
4.3.4	Horizontal Transport Left Front Cover .....	13
4.3.5	Paper Exit Front Cover/Paper Exit Rear Cover/Connector Cover .....	13
4.3.6	2nd Drawer.....	14
4.3.7	Output Tray (OT-601).....	14
4.3.8	1st Drawer.....	14
4.3.9	Sorted Copy Tray .....	15
4.3.10	Horizontal Transport Unit .....	15
4.3.11	Stapler Unit .....	16

4.3.12	Punch Unit (PU-501).....	17
4.3.13	Storage Paddle Drive Clutch.....	18
4.3.14	Exit Paddle Drive Clutch .....	19

## Adjustment/Setting

5.	How to use the adjustment section .....	23
6.	I/O Check .....	24
6.1	Check procedure .....	24
6.2	I/O check list.....	24
6.2.1	I/O check screen.....	24
6.2.2	I/O check list .....	25
7.	Test Mode .....	26
7.1	Entering Function Mode .....	26
7.2	Function Modes.....	27
8.	Mechanical adjustment .....	29
8.1	Staple Position Adjustment.....	29
8.2	Adjustment of the Installation Position of the Shutter Drive Gear.....	30
8.3	Punch Hole Deviance Adjustment (PU-501) .....	31
8.4	Punch Hold Position Adjustment (PU-501).....	32
8.5	Punch Loop Length Adjustment (PU-501).....	33

## Troubleshooting

9.	Jam Display.....	35
9.1	Misfeed Display .....	35
9.1.1	Misfeed Display Resetting Procedure.....	35
9.2	Sensor layout.....	36
9.3	Solution .....	37
9.3.1	Initial Check Items .....	37
9.3.2	Transport Section Misfeed .....	38
9.3.3	Finisher Staple Misfeed .....	39
9.3.4	Finisher Punch Misfeed (PU-501).....	39
9.3.5	Finisher Bundle Exit Misfeed .....	40
10.	Malfunction code.....	41
10.1	Trouble code.....	41
10.2	Solution .....	42
10.2.1	C1183: Elevator Motor Ascent/Descent Drive Failure.....	42
10.2.2	C1190: Aligning Plate 1 Drive Failure .....	43
10.2.3	C1191: Aligning Plate 2 Drive Failure .....	43
10.2.4	C11A0: Paper Holding Drive Failure .....	44

10.2.5	C11A1: Exit Roller Pressure/Retraction Failure .....	44
10.2.6	C11A3: Shutter Drive Failure .....	45
10.2.7	C11B0: Staple Drive Failure.....	45
10.2.8	C11B2: Staple Drive Failure.....	46
10.2.9	C11C0: Punch Cam Motor Unit Failure.....	46
10.2.10	CC155: Finishing Option Flash ROM Failure .....	47

FS-508/PU-501/OT-601

General

Maintenance

Adjustment / Setting

Troubleshooting

FS-508/PU-501/OT-601

General

Maintenance

Adjustment / Setting

Troubleshooting

Blank Page

# General

## 1. Product specifications

### 1.1 FS-508

#### A. Type

Name	Multi staple finisher built into the copier
Installation	Installed in the copier
Document Alignment	Center
Consumables	Staples

#### B. Functions

Modes	Non sort, sort, group, sort stable, and punch (when PU-501 is mounted)
-------	--

#### C. Paper type

##### (1) Non sort

Type	Size	Weight	Max. Capacity		
Plain paper		56 to 90g/m <sup>2</sup> 15 to 24 lb	Exit Tray1	200 sheets	
			Exit Tray2	A4R, 8.5 x 11R or less	1000 sheets
				B4, 8.5 x 14R or greater	500 sheets
Thick paper	A6R to A3 5.5 to 11 x17	91 to 210g/m <sup>2</sup> 24.25 to 55.75 lb	20 sheets		
OHP transparencies	Max. 297 mm x 431.8 mm 11.75 x 17 inch	-			
Translucent paper	Min. 100 mm x 139.7 mm 4 x 5.5 inch	-			
Government-standard postcards		-			
Envelope		-			
Label		-			
Letterhead		-			

##### (2) Sort/Group

Type	Size	Weight	Max. Capacity		
Plain paper	A6R to A3 5.5 to 11 x17 Max. 297 mm x 431.8 mm 11.75 x 17 inch Min. 182 mm x 139.7 mm 7.25 x 5.5 inch	56 to 90g/m <sup>2</sup> 15 to 24 lb	Exit Tray1	200 sheets	
			Exit Tray2	A4R, 8.5 x 11R or less	1000 sheets
				B4, 8.5 x 14R or greater	500 sheets

**(3) Sort Staple**

Type	Size	Weight	Max. Capacity	
Plain paper	A6R to A3 5.5 to 11 x 17 Max. 297 mm x 431.8 mm 11.75 x 17 inch Min. 182 mm x 139.7 mm 7.25 x 5.5 inch	56 to 90g/m <sup>2</sup> 15 to 24 lb	Exit Tray1	200 sheets
			Exit Tray2	A4R, 8.5 x 11R or less
				B4, 8.5 x 14R or greater

**(4) Punch**

Type	Size	Weight	Exit Tray
Plain paper	B5R/B5 to A3 8.5 to 11 x 17	60 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> 15 to 24 lb	Exit Tray1 Exit Tray2 OT-601 MT-501

**D. Stapling**

Staple Filling Mode	Dedicated Staple Cartridge (5000 staples)		
Staple Detection	Available (Nearly Empty: 20 remaining staples)		
Stapling Position	Front: Diagonal 45° 1 point *1	A4, A3R, B5, B4R	
	Rear: Diagonal 45° 1 point *1	8.5 x 11, 11 x 17	
	Front: Parallel 1 point	A4R, B5R, A5	
	Rear: Parallel 1 point	8.5 x 11R, 8.5 x 114R, 5.5 x 8.5	
	Side: Parallel 2 point	A4, A4R, A3R, B5, B5R, B4R, A5 8.5 x 11, 8.5 x 11R, 8.5 x 14R, 11 x 17, 5.5 x 8.5	
Manual Staple	None		

\*1: Diagonal 30° for B5 and B4R

**E. Hole Punch**

No. of Holes	Metric: 4holes, Inch: 2holes / 3holes
Punch dust full detection	Available

**F. Machine specifications**

Power Requirements	DC 24 V (supplied from the main unit)
	DC 5.1 V (generated by Finisher)
Max. Power Consumption	63 W
Dimensions	319 mm (W) x 558 mm (D) x 573 mm (H) 12.5 inch (W) x 22 inch (D) x 22.5 inch (H)
Weight	21.4 kg (47.25 lb)

**G. Operating environment**

- Conforms to the operating environment of the main unit.

## 1.2 PU-501

### A. Type

Name	Punch Unit PU-501
Installation	Built into the Finisher
Paper Size	B5R/B5 to A3 8.5 x 11R, 8.5 x 11, 8.5 x 14R, 11 x 17
Paper Type	Plain Paper (60 to 163 g/m <sup>2</sup> , 16 to 43.5 lb)
Punch Hole	Metric: 4hole, Inch: 2,3hole
Number of Stored Punch Wastes	Metric (4hole): For 1,500 sheets of paper (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) Inch (2,3hole): For 1,000 sheets of paper (75 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
Document Alignment	Center

### B. Machine specifications

Power Requirements	Supplied by the Finisher
Dimensions	114 mm (W) x 461 mm (D) x 136 mm (H) 4.5 inch (W) x 18.25 inch (D) x 5.25 inch (H)
Weight	Approx. 1.9 kg (4.25 lbs) or less

### C. Operating environment

- Conforms to the operating environment of the main unit.

### 1.3 OT-601

#### A. Type

Name	Output Tray OT-601
Installation	Fixed to the Finisher
Mode	Non sort, sort, group, and sort stable
Number of Bins	1 bin
Document Alignment	Center

#### B. Paper Type

Mode	Size	Type	Capacity	
Non sort	A6R to A3 5.5 to 11 x17 Max. 297 mm x 431.8 mm 11.75 x 17 inch Min. 100 mm x 139.7 mm 4 x 5.5 inch	Plain Paper (56 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> , 15 to 24 lb)	200 sheets (up to a height of 24 mm)	
		Special	OHP transparencies	20 sheets (up to a height of 24 mm)
			Thick paper (91 to 210g/m <sup>2</sup> , 24.25 to 55.75 lb)	
			Envelope	
			Label	
			Letterhead	
			Translucent paper	
			Governmentstandard postcards	
sort / group	A6R to A3 5.5 to 11 x17 Max. 297 mm x 431.8 mm 11.75 x 17 inch Min. 182 mm x 139.7 mm 7.25 x 5.5 inch	Plain Paper (56 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> , 15 to 24 lb)	200 sheets (up to a height of 24 mm)	
sort stable	200 sheets or 20 copies (up to a height of 24 mm)			

#### C. Machine specifications

Dimensions	282 mm (W) x 368 mm (D) x 57 mm (H) 11 inch (W) x 14.5 inch (D) x 2.25 inch (H)
Weight	0.7 kg (1.5 lb)

#### D. Operating environment

- Conforms to the operating environment of the main unit.

#### NOTE

##### How product names appear in the document

- FS-508: Finisher
- PU-501: Punch Unit
- OT-601: Output Tray

#### NOTE

- These specifications are subject to change without notice.

# Maintenance

## 2. Periodical check

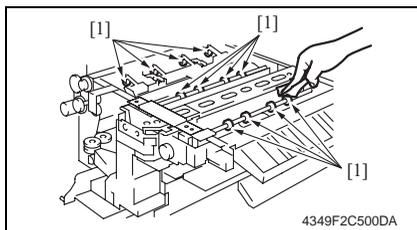
### 2.1 Maintenance procedure (Periodical check parts)

**NOTE**

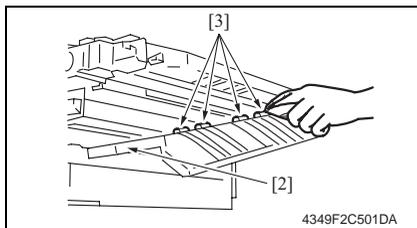
- The alcohol described in the cleaning procedure of Maintenance represents the isopropyl alcohol.

#### 2.1.1 Cleaning of the Roller and Roll

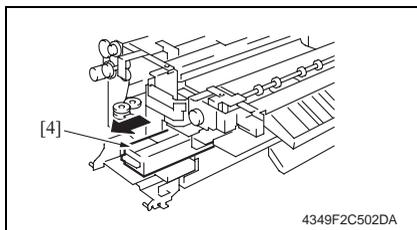
1. Remove the Sorted Copy Tray.  
☞ 15
2. Remove the Horizontal Transport Unit.  
☞ 15
3. Remove the Horizontal Transport Top Cover.  
☞ 12



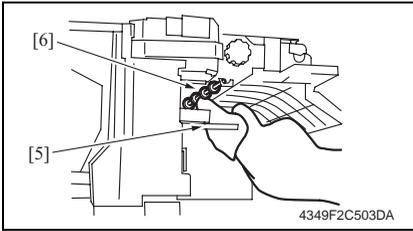
4. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the roller and roll [1].



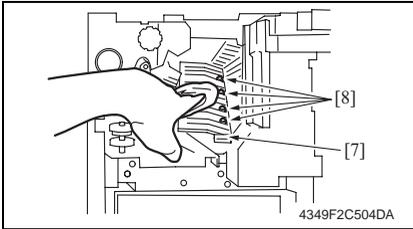
5. Lower Processing Guide FN1 [2].
6. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the roll [3].



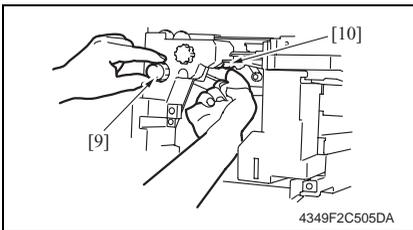
7. Remove Punch Waste Storage Box FN3.1 [4].  
(only when PU-501 is installed)



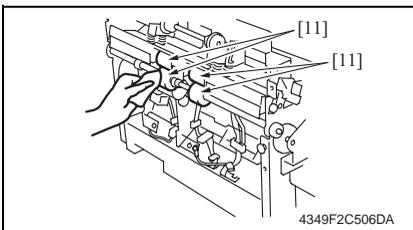
8. Lower Processing Guide FN-3 [5].
9. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the roll [6].



10. Lower Processing Guide FN-4 [7].
11. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the roll [8].



12. While turning Processing Knob FN-5 [9], wipe the roll [10] using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol.



13. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the roller [11].

## 3. Firmware upgrade

### 3.1 Preparations for Firmware rewriting

#### 3.1.1 Service environment

- Drive which enables writing/reading of Compact flash
- Compact flash (with 32 MB or more)

#### 3.1.2 Writing into the Compact flash

- Copy the firmware files using the computer.

#### NOTE

- **Copy only those files to be upgraded to the compact flash.**
- **If wrong firmware is copied, no screen display is given and thus no firmware can be downloaded.**

#### 3.1.3 Checking ROM version

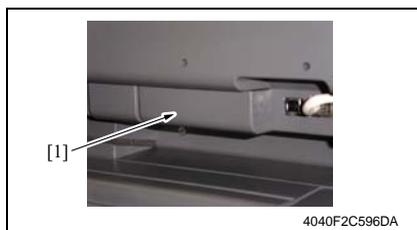
- Before attempting to upgrade the firmware, check the current ROM version.  
☞ See the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.

### 3.2 Firmware rewriting

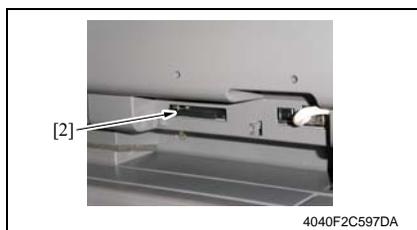
#### 3.2.1 Finisher

#### NOTE

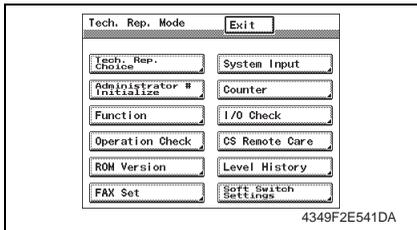
- **NEVER** remove or insert the Compact Flash card with the machine power turned ON.
- **Make sure that the MSC firmware has not been copied to the compact flash card.**
- **The engine firmware and Finisher firmware can be upgraded at the same time.**  
☞ See the Maintenance of the main unit service manual.
- **If the files copied to the compact flash card are those of either the engine or Finisher, or wrong, no screen display is given and thus no firmware can be downloaded.**



1. Turn OFF the main power switch.
2. Remove the Compact flash Cover [1].



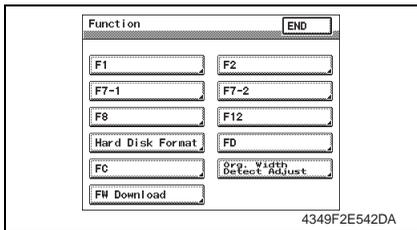
3. Insert the compact flash card [2], to which the finisher upgrading files have been copied, into the slot.



4. Open the Right Door.

**NOTE**

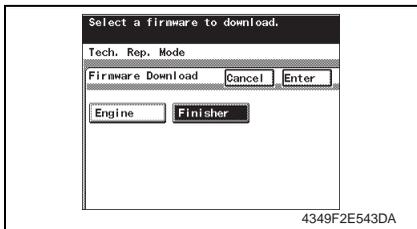
- Be sure to open the Right Door before turning ON the main power switch.
5. Turn ON the main power switch.
6. Display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen.
- ☞ For details of how to display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.
7. Touch [Function].
8. Touch [FW Download].



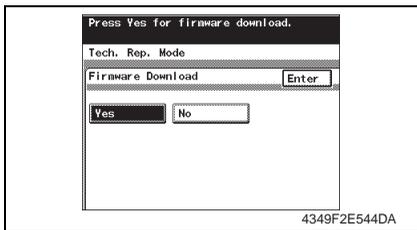
9. Select [Finisher] and touch [Enter].

**NOTE**

- Touch [Engine] also if the Engine firmware is to be upgraded at the same time.



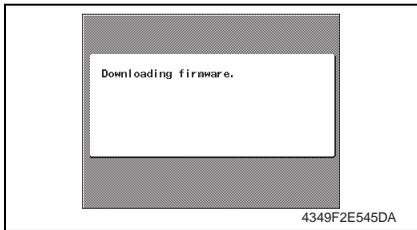
10. Select [Yes] and touch [Enter].

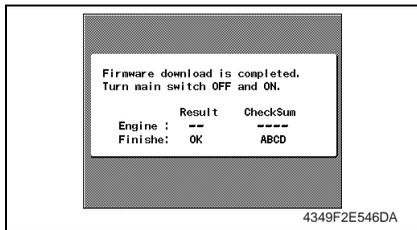


11. The firmware upgrading sequence will start.

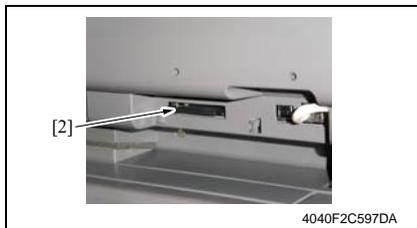
**NOTE**

- The firmware upgrading sequence will last for 5 to 6 min. During this period, NEVER turn off the machine power.
- If the Engine firmware is also upgraded, the entire sequence will take about 10 to 11 min.





12. When the upgrading sequence is completed, turn OFF the main power switch.



13. Remove the compact flash card [2] from the slot. After some while thereafter, turn ON the main power switch.

14. Display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen.

☞ For details of how to display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.

15. Touch [ROM Version].

16. Make sure if the version of Firmware is updated.

## 4. Other

### 4.1 Disassembly/Adjustment prohibited items

#### A. Screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied

- Blue paint or green paint is applied to some screws to prevent them from coming loose.
- As a general rule, screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied should not be removed or loosened.

#### B. Red-painted screws

- Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.

#### C. Variable Resistors on Board

#### NOTE

- Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.

#### D. Removal of PWBs

#### Caution

- When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to “SAFETY AND IMPORTANT WARNING ITEMS” and follow the corresponding removal procedures.
- The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.
- When it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.

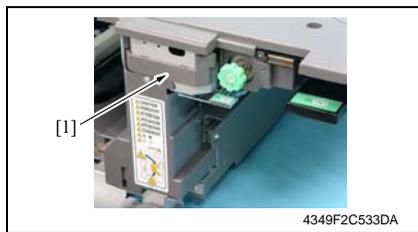
## 4.2 Disassembly/Assembly/Cleaning list (Other parts)

### 4.2.1 Disassembly/Assembly parts list

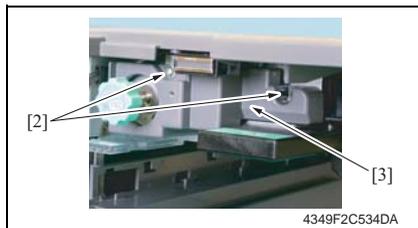
No.	Section	Part name	Ref.Page
1	Exterior parts	Horizontal Transport Upper Front Cover	☞ 12
2		Horizontal Transport Upper Cover	☞ 12
3		Horizontal Transport Front Right Cover	☞ 12
4		Front Door	☞ 13
5		Horizontal Transport Lower Front Cover	☞ 12
6		Horizontal Transport Left Front Cover	☞ 13
7		Paper Exit Front Cover	☞ 13
8		2nd Drawer	☞ 14
9		Output Tray OT-601 (Option)	☞ 14
10		1st Drawer	☞ 14
11		Connector Cover	☞ 13
12		Paper Exit Rear Cover	☞ 13
13	Unit	Sorted Copy Tray	☞ 15
14		Horizontal Transport Unit	☞ 15
15		Stapler Unit	☞ 16
16		Punch Unit PU-501 (Option)	☞ 17
17	Others	Storage Paddle Drive Clutch	☞ 18
18		Exit Paddle Drive Clutch	☞ 19

### 4.3 Disassembly/Assembly procedure

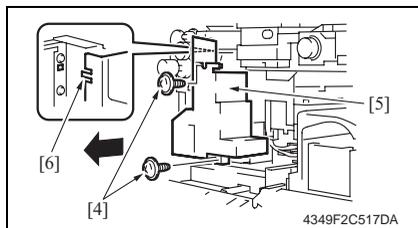
#### 4.3.1 Horizontal Transport Upper Front Cover/Horizontal Transport Front Right Cover/Horizontal Transport Lower Front Cover



1. Open the Front Door.
2. Unhook the tab, and remove the Horizontal Transport Upper Front Cover [1].



3. Remove two screws [2], and remove the Horizontal Transport Front Right Cover [3].

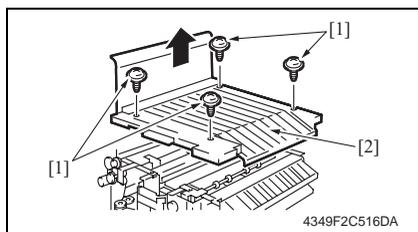


4. Remove two screws [4], and remove the Horizontal Transport Lower Front Cover [5].

#### NOTE

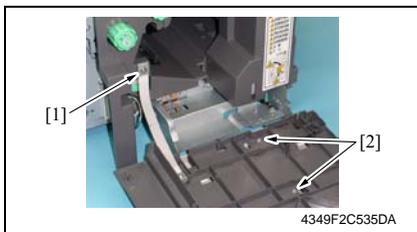
- At reinstallation, first fit the tab [6] into position.

#### 4.3.2 Horizontal Transport Upper Cover

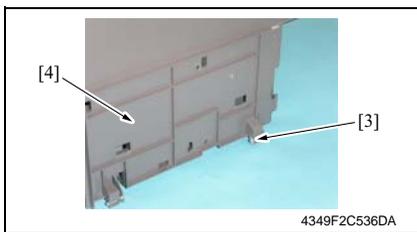


1. Remove four screws [1], and remove the Horizontal Transport Upper Cover [2].

**4.3.3 Front Door**

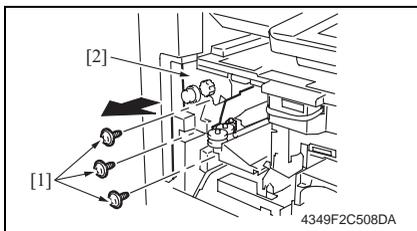


1. Open the Front Door.
2. Remove the screw [1], and remove the stopper.
3. Remove two screws [2], and remove the dummy cover.



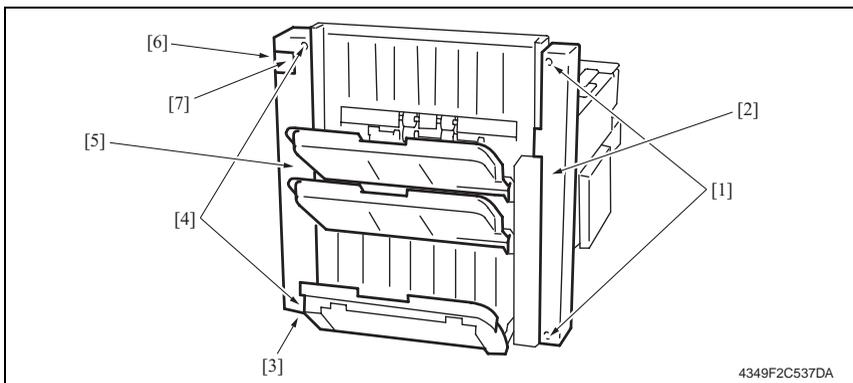
4. Close the Front Door.
5. Remove the clip [3], and remove the Front Door [4].

**4.3.4 Horizontal Transport Left Front Cover**

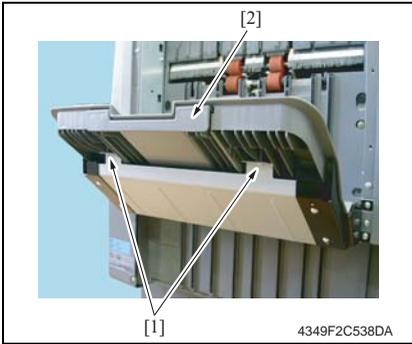


1. Remove three screws [1], and remove the Horizontal Transport Left Front Cover [2].

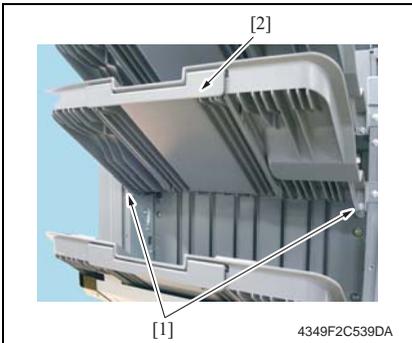
**4.3.5 Paper Exit Front Cover/Paper Exit Rear Cover/Connector Cover**



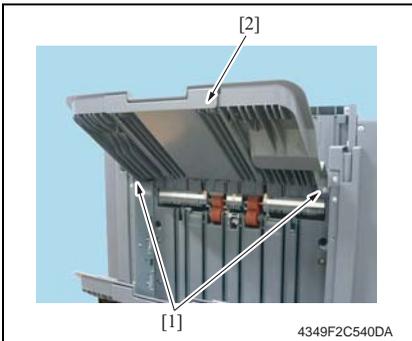
1. Remove two screws [1], and remove the Paper Exit Front Cover [2].
2. Loosen the screw [3], remove two screws [4], and remove the Paper Exit Rear Cover [5].
3. Remove the screw [6], and remove the Connector Cover [7].

**4.3.6 2nd Drawer**

1. Remove two screws [1], and remove the 2nd Drawer [2].

**4.3.7 Output Tray (OT-601)**

1. Remove two screws [1], and remove the Exit Tray [2].

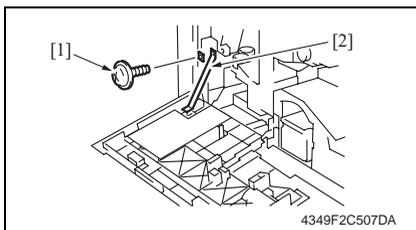
**4.3.8 1st Drawer**

1. Remove two screws [1], and remove the 1st Drawer [2].

### 4.3.9 Sorted Copy Tray

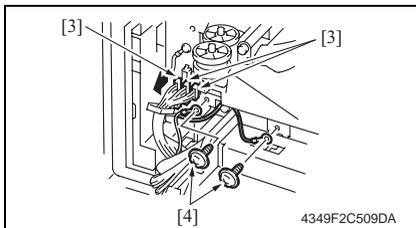
#### NOTE

- When removing the Sorted Copy Tray, set the Sorted Copy Tray to its home position.
- If the Exit Tray (OT-601) is installed, remove it in advance.

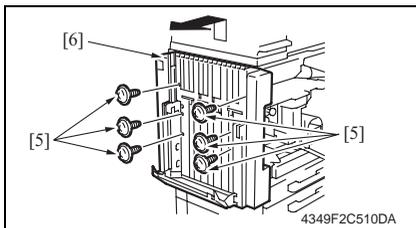


1. Open the Front Door.
2. Remove the screw [1], and remove the Front Door Stopper [2].
3. Remove the Horizontal Transport Left Front Cover.

13

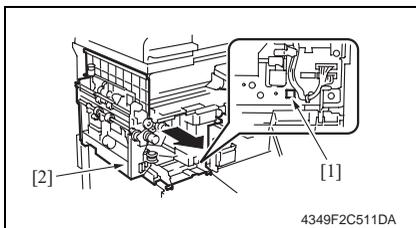


4. Disconnect three connectors [3].
5. Remove two screws [4], and remove the ground wire.



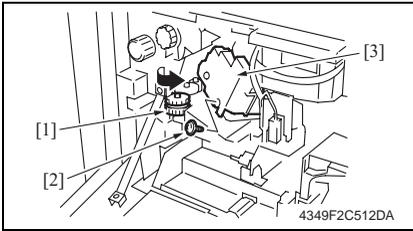
6. Remove six screws [5], and lift the Sorted Copy Tray [6] upward and off the copier.

### 4.3.10 Horizontal Transport Unit

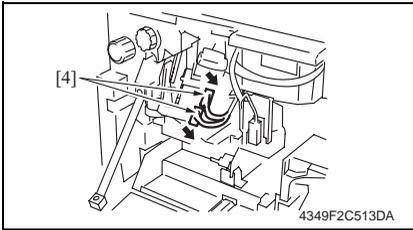


1. Remove the Sorted Copy Tray.  
 15
2. Remove the Front Right Door.  
 13
3. While holding down the lock release button [1], remove the Horizontal Transport Unit [2].

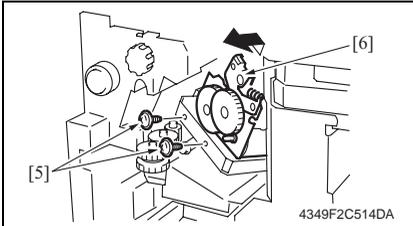
## 4.3.11 Stapler Unit



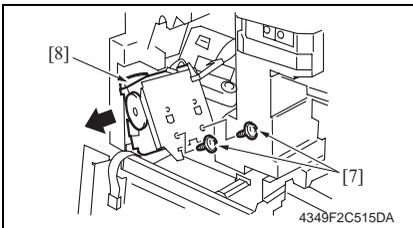
1. Open the Front Door.
2. Turn the dial [1], and move the stapler forward.
3. Remove the Staple Cartridge.
4. Remove the screw [2], and remove the cover [3].



5. Disconnect two connectors [4].

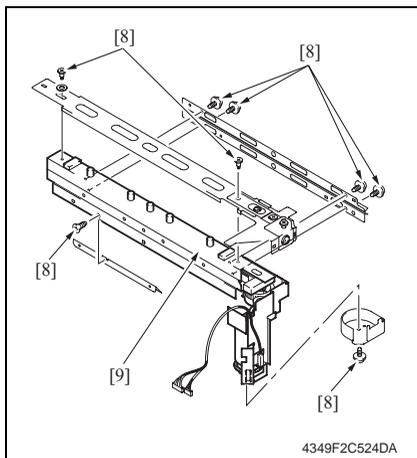
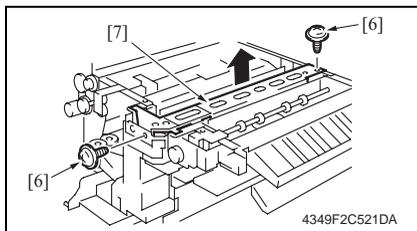
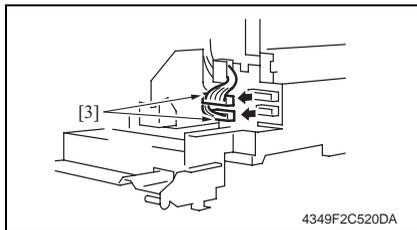
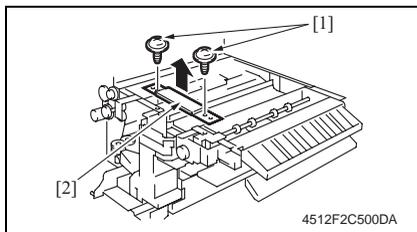


6. Remove two screws [5], and remove the Stapler Unit Assy [6].



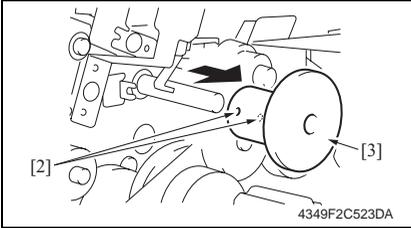
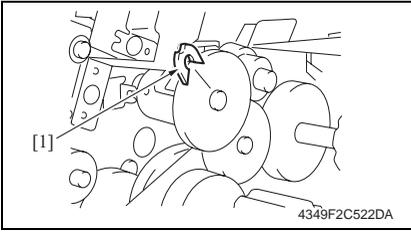
7. Remove two screws [7] and remove the Stapler Unit [8].

**4.3.12 Punch Unit (PU-501)**



1. Remove the Sorted Copy Tray.  
👉 15
2. Remove the Horizontal Transport Unit.  
👉 15
3. Remove the Horizontal Transport Upper Cover.  
👉 12
4. Remove two screws [1], and remove the Reinforcement Bracket [2].
5. Disconnect two connectors [3].
6. Remove two screws [6], and remove the Punch Kit [7].
7. Remove eight screws [8], and the Punch Unit [9].

### 4.3.13 Storage Paddle Drive Clutch

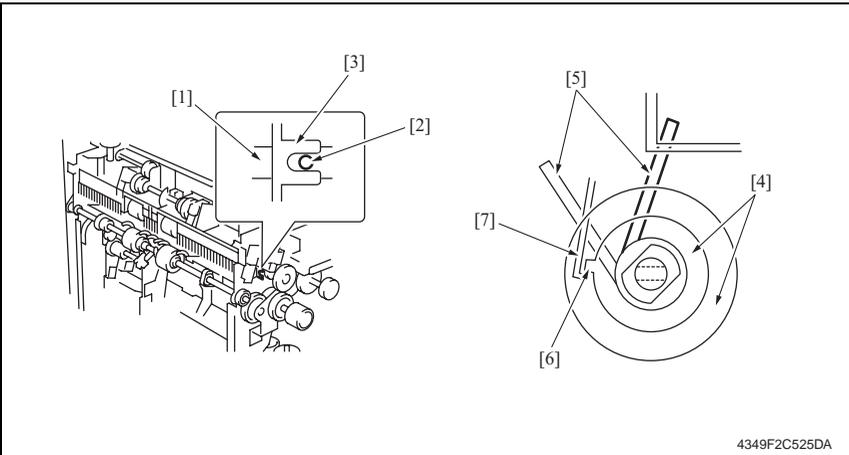


#### A. Removal Procedure

1. Remove the Sorted Copy Tray.  
☞ 15
2. Remove the Horizontal Transport Unit.  
☞ 15
3. Remove the Horizontal Transport Upper Cover.  
☞ 12
4. Remove the C-ring [1].
5. Loosen two hexagonal socket head screws [2], and remove the Storage Paddle Drive Clutch Assy [3].

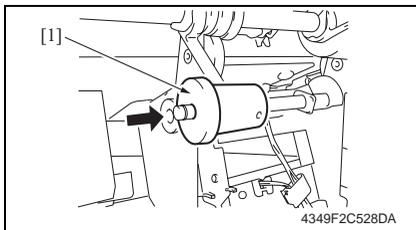
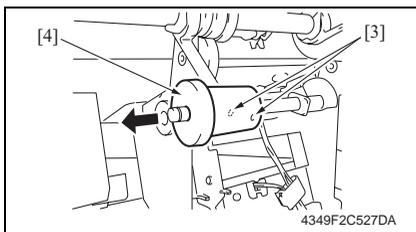
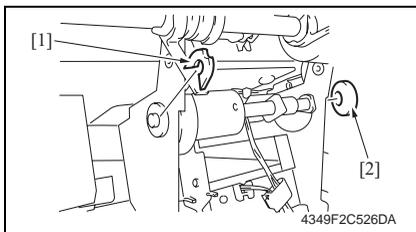
#### B. Reinstallation Procedure

1. Check that the 2-mm hole [2] of the storage paddle drive shaft [1] and the cutout of the frame [3] are aligned and install the Storage Paddle Drive Clutch Assy [4].
2. Refer to the figure below and check the paddle position [5].



3. Hook the Solenoid Flapper [7] to the tab [6] of the Storage Paddle Drive Clutch Assy [4].
4. Attach the C-ring and reinstall the Storage Paddle Drive Clutch Assy.
5. Adjust the spacing between the C-ring and the Storage Paddle Drive Clutch Assy to 0.2 mm and tighten two hexagonal socket head screws.

### 4.3.14 Exit Paddle Drive Clutch



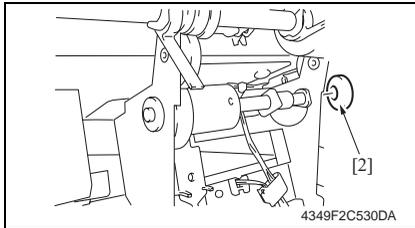
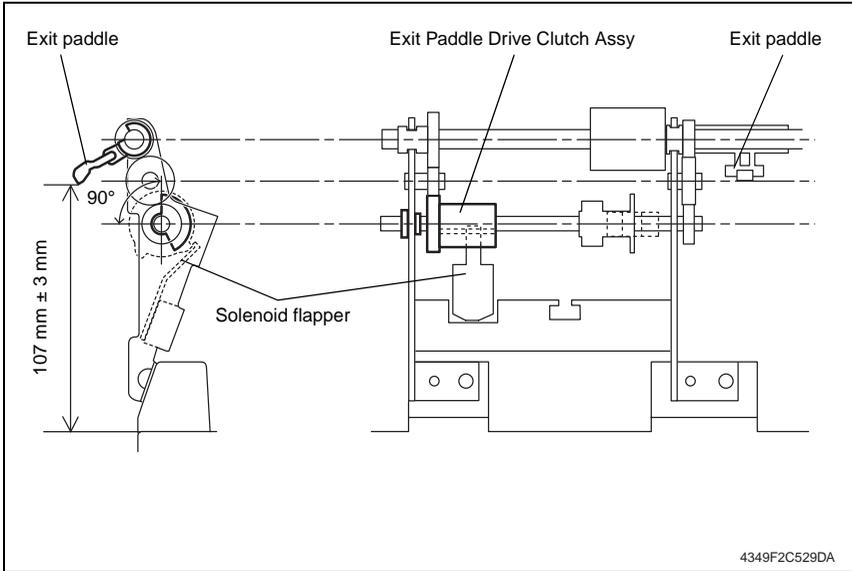
#### A. Removal Procedure

1. Remove the Sorted Copy Tray.
- 15
2. Remove the Horizontal Transport Unit.
- 15
3. Remove the Horizontal Transport Upper Cover.
- 12
4. Remove the C-ring [1].
5. Remove the gear [2].
6. Loosen two hexagonal socket head screws [3], and remove the Exit Paddle Drive Clutch Assy [4].

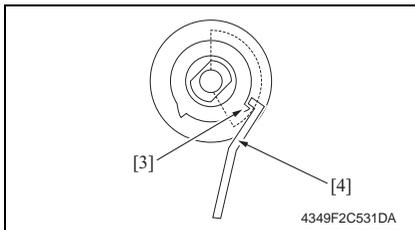
#### B. Reinstallation Procedure

1. Reinstall the Exit Paddle Drive Clutch Assy [1].

### Precaution for Exit Paddle Drive Clutch Reinstallation



2. Install the gear [2].



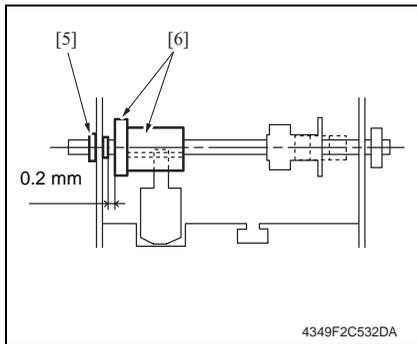
3. Hook the Solenoid Flapper [4] to the tab [3] of the Exit Paddle Drive Clutch Assy.

**NOTE**

- Install the Exit Paddle Drive Clutch Assy with the side having a wider spacing between the tabs facing upward.

FS-508/PU-501/OT-601

Maintenance



4. Attach the C-ring and press the Exit Paddle Drive Clutch Assy [6] to the bushing [5].
5. Adjust the spacing between the bushing [5] and the Exit Paddle Drive Clutch Assy [6] to 0.2 mm and tighten two hexagonal socket head screws.

FS-508/PU-501/OT-601

Maintenance

Blank Page

# Adjustment/Setting

## 5. How to use the adjustment section

- “Adjustment/Setting” contains detailed information on the adjustment items and procedures for this machine.
- Throughout this “Adjustment/Setting,” the default settings are indicated by “ ”.

### Advance Checks

Before attempting to solve the customer problem, the following advance checks must be made. Check to see if:

- The power supply voltage meets the specifications.
- The power supply is properly grounded.
- The machine shares the power supply with any other machine that draws large current intermittently (e.g., elevator and air conditioner that generate electric noise).
- The installation site is environmentally appropriate: high temperature, high humidity, direct sunlight, ventilation, etc.; levelness of the installation site.
- The original has a problem that may cause a defective image.
- The density is properly selected.
- The Original Glass, slit glass, or related part is dirty.
- Correct paper is being used for printing.
- The units, parts, and supplies used for printing (developer, PC Drum, etc.) are properly replenished and replaced when they reach the end of their useful service life.
- Toner is not running out.

### CAUTION

- **To unplug the power cord of the machine before starting the service job procedures.**
- **If it is unavoidably necessary to service the machine with its power turned ON, use utmost care not to be caught in the Scanner Cables or gears of the Exposure Unit.**
- **Special care should be used when handling the Fusing Unit which can be extremely hot.**
- **The Developing Unit has a strong magnetic field. Keep watches and measuring instruments away from it.**
- **Take care not to damage the PC Drum with a tool or similar device.**
- **Do not touch IC pins with bare hands.**

## 6. I/O Check

### 6.1 Check procedure

- To allow sensors to be checked for operation easily and safely, data applied to the IC on the board can be checked on the panel with the main unit in the standby state (including a misfeed, malfunction, and closure failure condition).

<Procedure>

1. Display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen.

☞ For details of how to display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.

2. Touch [I/O Check].
3. Touch [Finisher].

### 6.2 I/O check list

#### 6.2.1 I/O check screen

- This is only typical screen which may be different from what are shown on each individual main unit.

<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <th colspan="2" style="text-align: left;">Finisher</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Fwd</th> <th style="text-align: center;">END</th> </tr> <tr> <td>Paper Path Sensor</td> <td>Lower (Elev.)</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Paper Passage (ModdSurface)</td> <td>(Elev.)</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Paper Passage (FOedOptional Tray)</td> <td>(Elevate)</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Tray</td> <td>Elevate Tray position</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Elevate Tray</td> <td>Upper/Lowered</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Shutter Status</td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Front Door Set</td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Punch Pulse</td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	Finisher		Fwd	END	Paper Path Sensor	Lower (Elev.)	0		Paper Passage (ModdSurface)	(Elev.)	0		Paper Passage (FOedOptional Tray)	(Elevate)	0		Tray	Elevate Tray position	0		Elevate Tray	Upper/Lowered	0		Shutter Status		0		Front Door Set		0		Punch Pulse		0		<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <th colspan="2" style="text-align: left;">Finisher</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Back</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Fwd</th> <th style="text-align: center;">END</th> </tr> <tr> <td>Finisher Tray</td> <td>Staple Home</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Align Home 1</td> <td>Punch</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Align Home 2</td> <td>Punch Pos. 1</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Home (Shutter)</td> <td>Punch Pos. 2</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Paddle Home (Exit)</td> <td>Punch Scraps Full Detect</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Exit R Home</td> <td>Home (Paper Hold R)</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Empty (Finisher)</td> <td>Middle Guide</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Staple</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Staple Home (CD)</td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Self Priming</td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Staple Empty</td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	Finisher		Back	Fwd	END	Finisher Tray	Staple Home	0			Align Home 1	Punch	0			Align Home 2	Punch Pos. 1	0			Home (Shutter)	Punch Pos. 2	0			Paddle Home (Exit)	Punch Scraps Full Detect	0			Exit R Home	Home (Paper Hold R)	0			Empty (Finisher)	Middle Guide	0			Staple					Staple Home (CD)		0			Self Priming		0			Staple Empty		0										
Finisher		Fwd	END																																																																																																						
Paper Path Sensor	Lower (Elev.)	0																																																																																																							
Paper Passage (ModdSurface)	(Elev.)	0																																																																																																							
Paper Passage (FOedOptional Tray)	(Elevate)	0																																																																																																							
Tray	Elevate Tray position	0																																																																																																							
Elevate Tray	Upper/Lowered	0																																																																																																							
Shutter Status		0																																																																																																							
Front Door Set		0																																																																																																							
Punch Pulse		0																																																																																																							
Finisher		Back	Fwd	END																																																																																																					
Finisher Tray	Staple Home	0																																																																																																							
Align Home 1	Punch	0																																																																																																							
Align Home 2	Punch Pos. 1	0																																																																																																							
Home (Shutter)	Punch Pos. 2	0																																																																																																							
Paddle Home (Exit)	Punch Scraps Full Detect	0																																																																																																							
Exit R Home	Home (Paper Hold R)	0																																																																																																							
Empty (Finisher)	Middle Guide	0																																																																																																							
Staple																																																																																																									
Staple Home (CD)		0																																																																																																							
Self Priming		0																																																																																																							
Staple Empty		0																																																																																																							
<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <th colspan="2" style="text-align: left;">Finisher</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Back</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Fwd</th> <th style="text-align: center;">END</th> </tr> <tr> <td>Saddle</td> <td>Lavable Guide Home (Saddle)</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Exit (Saddle)</td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Saddle Empty</td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Saddle Reset</td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Staple Home 1 (Saddle)</td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Self Priming 1 (Saddle)</td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Staple Empty 1 (Saddle)</td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Staple Home 2 (Saddle)</td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Self Priming 2 (Saddle)</td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Staple Empty 2 (Saddle)</td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Home (Saddle In &amp; Out Guide)</td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	Finisher		Back	Fwd	END	Saddle	Lavable Guide Home (Saddle)	0			Exit (Saddle)		0			Saddle Empty		0			Saddle Reset		0			Staple Home 1 (Saddle)		0			Self Priming 1 (Saddle)		0			Staple Empty 1 (Saddle)		0			Staple Home 2 (Saddle)		0			Self Priming 2 (Saddle)		0			Staple Empty 2 (Saddle)		0			Home (Saddle In & Out Guide)		0			<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <th colspan="2" style="text-align: left;">Finisher</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Back</th> <th style="text-align: center;">END</th> </tr> <tr> <td>Mail Bins</td> <td>3rd Mail Bin</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Paper Passage 1 (Mail Bins)</td> <td>Empty</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Paper Passage 2 (Mail Bins)</td> <td>3rd Mail Bin Full</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Mail Bin Door</td> <td>4th Mail Bin</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1st Mail Bin</td> <td>Empty</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Empty</td> <td>4th Mail Bin Full</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1st Mail Bin Full</td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2nd Mail Bin</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Empty</td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2nd Mail Bin Full</td> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	Finisher		Back	END	Mail Bins	3rd Mail Bin			Paper Passage 1 (Mail Bins)	Empty	0		Paper Passage 2 (Mail Bins)	3rd Mail Bin Full	0		Mail Bin Door	4th Mail Bin	0		1st Mail Bin	Empty	0		Empty	4th Mail Bin Full	0		1st Mail Bin Full		0		2nd Mail Bin				Empty		0		2nd Mail Bin Full		0	
Finisher		Back	Fwd	END																																																																																																					
Saddle	Lavable Guide Home (Saddle)	0																																																																																																							
Exit (Saddle)		0																																																																																																							
Saddle Empty		0																																																																																																							
Saddle Reset		0																																																																																																							
Staple Home 1 (Saddle)		0																																																																																																							
Self Priming 1 (Saddle)		0																																																																																																							
Staple Empty 1 (Saddle)		0																																																																																																							
Staple Home 2 (Saddle)		0																																																																																																							
Self Priming 2 (Saddle)		0																																																																																																							
Staple Empty 2 (Saddle)		0																																																																																																							
Home (Saddle In & Out Guide)		0																																																																																																							
Finisher		Back	END																																																																																																						
Mail Bins	3rd Mail Bin																																																																																																								
Paper Passage 1 (Mail Bins)	Empty	0																																																																																																							
Paper Passage 2 (Mail Bins)	3rd Mail Bin Full	0																																																																																																							
Mail Bin Door	4th Mail Bin	0																																																																																																							
1st Mail Bin	Empty	0																																																																																																							
Empty	4th Mail Bin Full	0																																																																																																							
1st Mail Bin Full		0																																																																																																							
2nd Mail Bin																																																																																																									
Empty		0																																																																																																							
2nd Mail Bin Full		0																																																																																																							

4349F3E519DA

**6.2.2 I/O check list**

**A. Finisher (FS-508/PU-501)**

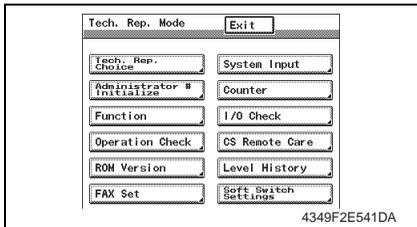
Symbol	Panel display	Part/Signal name	Operation characteristics/ Panel display	
			1	0
PC5-FN	Paper Passage (Middle)	Transport Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC4-FN	Paper Passage (Feed in)	Entrance Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC3-FN	Elevate Tray Upper/Lowered	Elevator Tray Home Position Sensor	Raised Position	Not raised
S2-FN	Shutter Status	Shutter Detection Switch	Closed	Open
S1-FN	Front Door Set	Front Cover Detection Switch	Closed	Open
PC2-PK	Punch Pulse	Punch Motor Pulse Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC14-FN	Lower (Elev.)	Elevator Tray Lower Limit Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC15-FN	Surface (Elev.)	Top Face Detection Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
-	Optional Tray (Elevate)	Short Connector	Set	Not set
PC3-FN	Elevate Tray Position	Elevator Tray Home Position Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC6-FN	Align Home 1	Alignment Home Position Sensor 1	At home	Not at home
PC7-FN	Align Home 2	Alignment Home Position Sensor 2	At home	Not at home
PC16-FN	Home (Shutter)	Shutter Home Position Sensor	At home	Not at home
PC11-FN	Paddle Home (Exit)	Exit Paddle Home Position Sensor	At home	Not at home
PC12-FN	Exit R Home	Exit Roller Home Position Sensor	At home	Not at home
PC8-FN	Empty (Finisher)	Storage Tray Detecting Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC10-FN	Staple Home (CD)	Staple Home Position Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
-	Self Priming	Self-Priming Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
-	Staple Empty	Staple Empty Detection Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
-	Staple Home	Staple Home Position Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC3-PK	Punch Pos. 1	Punch Positioning Sensor 1	Unblocked	Blocked
PC4-PK	Punch Pos. 2	Punch Positioning Sensor 2	Unblocked	Blocked
PC1-PK	Punch Scraps Full Detect	Punch Trash Full	Blocked	Unblocked
PC22-SK	Home (Paper Hold R)	Crease Roller Home Position Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
S4-FN	Middle Guide	Transport Jam Detection Switch	Closed	Open

Finisher

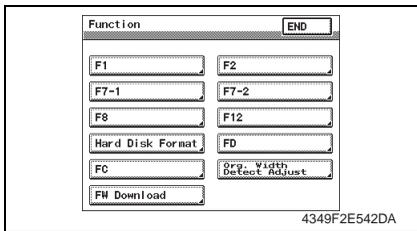
# 7. Test Mode

## 7.1 Entering Function Mode

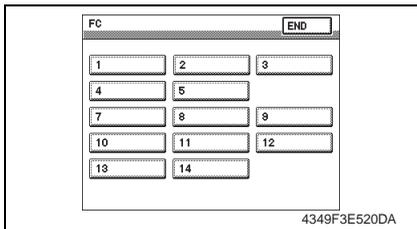
1. Display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen.  
 ☞ For details of how to display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.



2. Touch [Function].



3. Touch [FC].



4. Touch the button for the desired function.

## 7.2 Function Modes

### 1: Staple unit CD movement mode

- Returns the Staple Unit to the predetermined position after it moves to the 2-point stapling position for A4.
  - Moves from the predetermined position to the inner 2-point stapling position for A4.
  - Moves from the starting position and stops after the predetermined time.
  - Moves to the front of A4.
  - Moves from the starting position and stops after the predetermined time.
  - Moves to the predetermined position.
  - The operation is finished.

### 2: Aligning movement mode

- Aligning Plates 1 and 2 return to the predetermined position after moving to the aligning position for A4R.
  - Moves from the predetermined position to the second predetermined position for A4R.
  - Stops after the predetermined time.
  - Moves to the aligning position for A4R.
  - Stops after the predetermined time.
  - Moves to the predetermined position.
  - The operation is finished.

### 3: Elevator Tray ascent operation mode

- The Elevator Tray is raised to mailbin 1. (Mailbin 1 → Additional Mailbin → Mailbin 2)
  - The Exit opens.
  - The Shutter closes.
  - The Paper Output Tray is raised to mailbin 1.
  - The Shutter opens.
  - The Exit closes.
  - The operation is finished.

### 4: Elevator Tray descent operation mode

- The Elevator Tray is lowered from mailbin 1. (Mailbin 2 → Additional Mailbin → Mailbin 1)
  - The Exit opens.
  - The Shutter closes.
  - The Paper Output Tray is lowered from mailbin 1.
  - The Shutter opens.
  - The Exit closes.
  - The operation is finished.

### 5: Punch Unit movement mode (appears only when the Punch Kit PU-501 is installed)

- The punch is driven once at a standard hole.
  - The operation is finished.

### 7: Exit open/close mode

- Opens and closes the Exit.
  - The Exit opens.
  - Stops after the predetermined time.
  - The Exit closes.
  - The operation is finished.

**8: Creasing Unit movement mode (appears only when the Saddle Kit SD-502 is installed)**

☞ For details, see SD-502 Service Manual.

**9: Saddle Unit exit open/close mode (appears only when the Saddle Kit SD-502 is installed)**

☞ For details, see SD-502 Service Manual.

**10: Transport drive mode**

- Transport drive is performed for the predetermined time. (Performs the same transport drive as the pre-drive with the high speed of the connected copier.)
  - Drives the Entrance Motor (M3-FN).
  - Drives the Transport Motor (M2-FN).
  - Drives the Exit Motor (M1-FN).
  - The operation is finished.
- If the Mail Bin Kit MT-501 is installed, the Mailbins are also driven.
- If the Saddle Kit SD-502 is also installed, the Saddle Transport Motor (M8-SK) is also driven.

**11: Shutter drive mode**

- Opens and closes the Shutter.
  - The Exit opens.
  - The Shutter closes.
  - Stops after the predetermined time.
  - The Shutter opens.
  - The Exit closes.
  - The operation is finished.

**12: Mailbin Solenoid movement mode (appears only when the Mail Bin Kit MT-501 is installed)**

☞ For details, see MT-501 Service Manual.

**13: Storage Paddle operation mode**

- Performs the single rotate operation for the Storage Paddle.
  - The operation is finished.

**14: Exit Paddle movement mode**

- Performs the single rotate operation for the Storage Paddle.
  - The operation is finished.

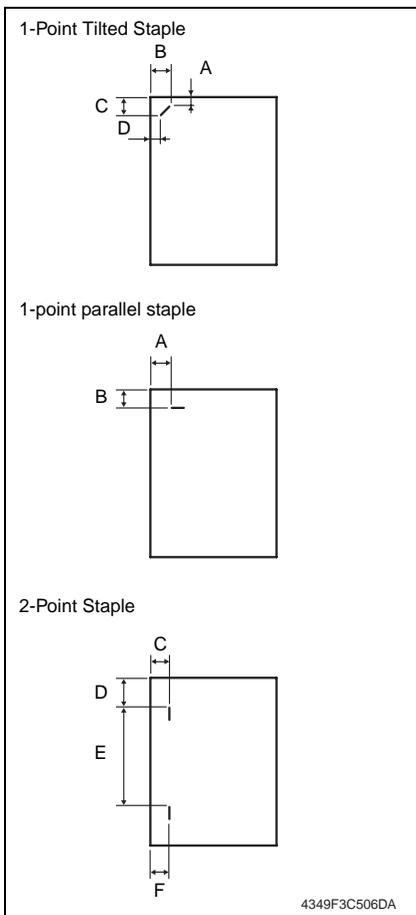
## 8. Mechanical adjustment

### 8.1 Staple Position Adjustment

**NOTE**

Make this adjustment after any of the following procedures has been performed.

- When the Stapler has been replaced.
- When staple position is misaligned.



1. Set the staple mode and make a copy.
2. Check the staple position of the paper.
  - 1-Point Tilted Staple  
(Paper Width: 216 to 297 mm)  
279 to 297 mm: 45° tilt,  
B5, B4R: 30° tilt

Measurement position	Specification	Adjustment range
A, C	4.4 mm	—
B, D	12.1 mm	+1 mm to -2mm

- 1-Point Parallel Staple  
(Paper Width: 182 to 216 mm)

Measurement position	Specification	Adjustment range
A	4.5 mm	—
B	6 mm	+1 mm to -2mm

- 2-Point Staple

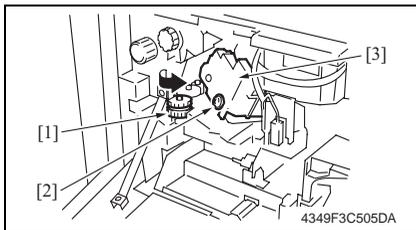
Measurement position	Specification	Adjustment range
C, F	6 mm	+1 mm to -2mm
D	Y	—
E	X	—

$$Y = (\text{paper width} - X - 11) / 2$$

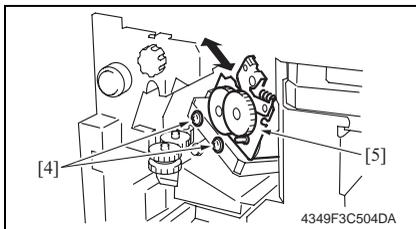
- X = A3R, A4: 137  
B4R, B5: 114  
A4R: 190  
B5R: 162

Substitute above into the equation.

3. If the staple position is misaligned, adjust with the following procedure.



4. Open the Front Door.
5. Turn the dial [1], and move the stapler forward.
6. Loosen the screw [2], and remove the cover [3].



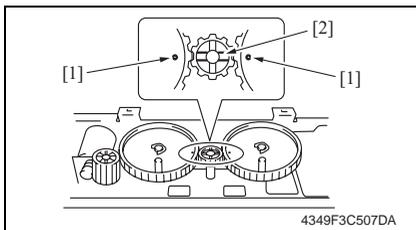
7. Loosen two adjustment screws [2] and move the Stapler Unit [3] in the direction of the arrow to make the adjustment.
8. Make another copy and check the staple position.

## 8.2 Adjustment of the Installation Position of the Shutter Drive Gear

### NOTE

Make this adjustment after any of the following procedures has been performed.

- When any of gear 1, 2, or 3 has been replaced.
- When gears 1, 2, and 3 has been disassembled.



1. Set three gears.

### NOTE

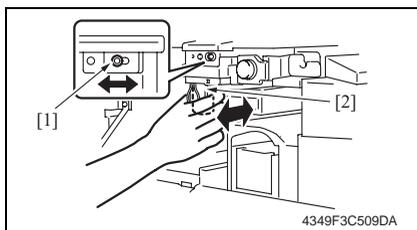
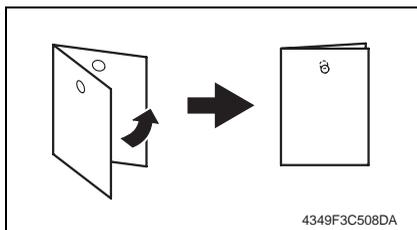
- Set the gears so that the marks on Gears 1 and 3 [1] are aligned with the rib of Gear 2 [2] as shown on the right.

### 8.3 Punch Hole Deviance Adjustment (PU-501)

#### NOTE

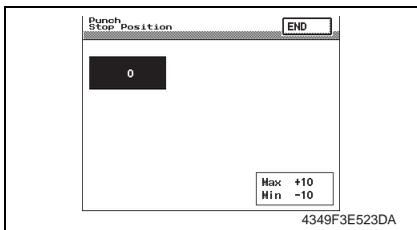
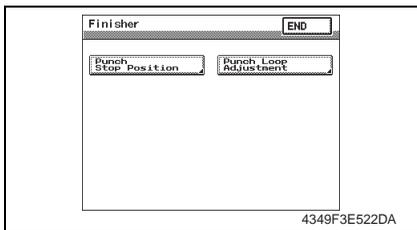
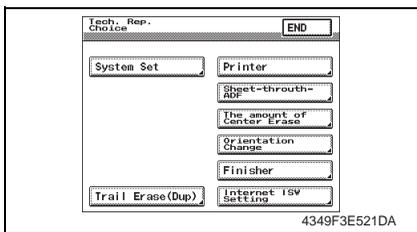
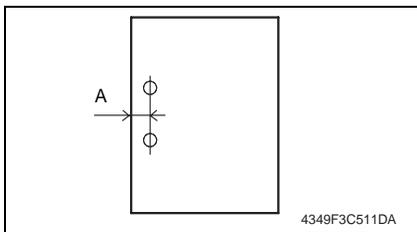
Make this adjustment after any of the following procedures has been performed.

- When the Punch Kit has been replaced.
- When the Punch Kit has been removed.



1. Set the copier into the Hole Punch mode and make a 1-sided copy from a 1-sided original.
2. Fold the output paper in half and check whether the punch hole positions are aligned.  
Specification:  $0 \pm 2$  mm
3. If the punch hole position is misaligned, adjust with the following procedure.
4. Remove the Horizontal Transport Lower Front Cover.  
▶ 12
5. Loosen the adjustment screw [1], and move the Punch Unit [2] forward or backward to make the adjustment.
6. Make another copy and check the punch hole position.

### 8.4 Punch Hold Position Adjustment (PU-501)



1. Set the copier into the Hole Punch mode and make a 1-sided copy from a 1-sided original.
2. Check width A on the output paper.
  
3. Display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen.
  - ☞ For details of how to display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.
4. Touch [Tech. Rep. Choice].
  
5. Touch [Finisher].
6. Touch [Punch Stop Position].
  
7. Press the Clear key and use the 10- Key Pad to set the value.
  - To make width A wider, enter a positive value.
  - To make width A narrower, enter a negative value.

Adjustment range: +10 max. and -10 min.

1 increment: 0.5 mm

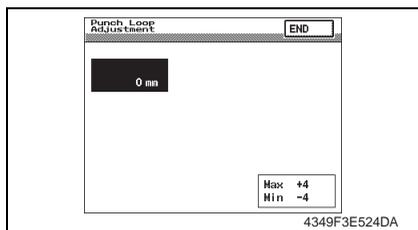
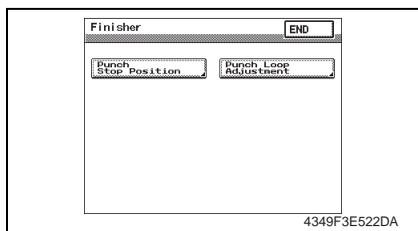
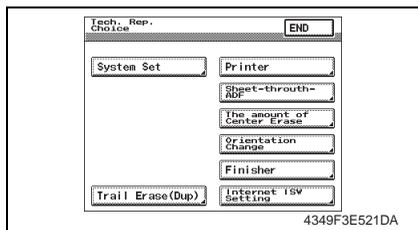
Use the \* key to switch between + and -.

## 8.5 Punch Loop Length Adjustment (PU-501)

### NOTE

This adjustment must be made in any of the following cases:

- When a slant occurs in the punch hole position.
- When misfeed frequently occurs in punch hole mode.



1. Display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen.  
 For details of how to display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.
  2. Touch [Tech. Rep. Choice].
  3. Touch [Finisher].
  4. Touch [Punch Loop Adjustment].
  5. Press the Clear key and use the 10-Key Pad to set the value.
    - To make loop length larger, enter a positive value.
    - To make loop length smaller, enter a positive value.
- Adjustment range: +4 max. and -4 min.  
 1 increment: 1 mm  
 Use the \* key to switch between + and -.

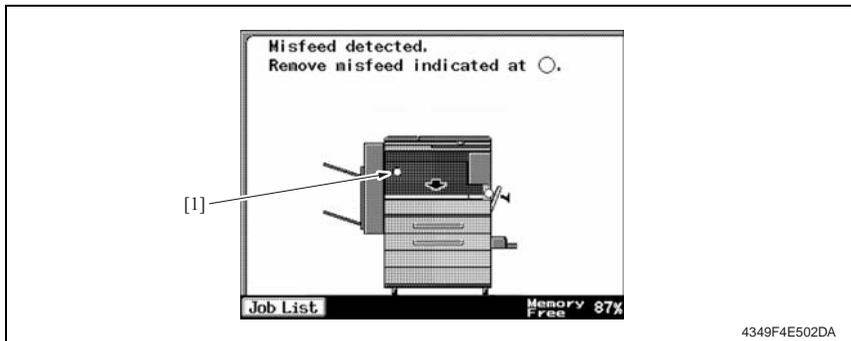
Blank Page

# Troubleshooting

## 9. Jam Display

### 9.1 Misfeed Display

- When a paper misfeed occurs, the misfeed message, misfeed location, and paper location are displayed on the Touch Panel of the machine.

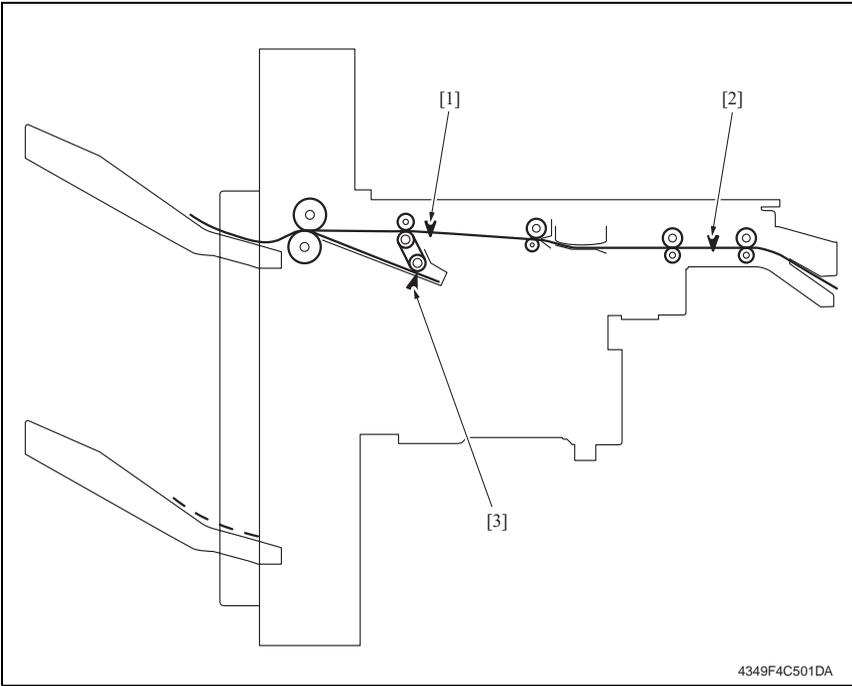


Display	Misfeed Location	Misfeed processing location	Action
[1]	Transport Section Misfeed	Front Door	☞ 38
	Finisher Staple Misfeed	Front Door	☞ 39
	Finisher Punch Misfeed	Front Door	☞ 39
	Finisher Bundle Exit Misfeed	Front Door	☞ 40

#### 9.1.1 Misfeed Display Resetting Procedure

- Open the corresponding door, clear the sheet of paper misfeed, and close the door.

### 9.2 Sensor layout



- |                                   |        |
|-----------------------------------|--------|
| [1] Transport Sensor              | PC5-FN |
| [2] Entrance Sensor               | PC4-FN |
| [3] Storage Tray Detecting Sensor | PC8-FN |

## 9.3 Solution

### 9.3.1 Initial Check Items

- When a paper misfeed occurs, first make checks of the following initial check items

Check Item	Action
Does paper meet product specifications?	Change paper.
Is paper curled, wavy, or damp.	Change paper. Instruct user in correct paper storage.
Is a foreign object present along the paper path, or is the paper path deformed or worn?	Clean or change the paper path.
Are rolls/rollers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or change the defective roll/roller.
Are the Edge Guide and Trailing Edge Stop at correct position to accommodate paper?	Set as necessary.
Are actuators found operational as checked for correct operation?	Correct or change the defective actuator.

### 9.3.2 Transport Section Misfeed

#### A. Detection Timing

Type	Description
Finisher Transport Section misfeed detection	The Entrance Sensor (PC4-FN) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the copier's Paper Exit Sensor (PC4) is blocked by the paper.
	The Entrance Sensor (PC4-FN) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the copier's Paper Exit Sensor (PC4) is unblocked by the paper.
Finisher Paper Exit Section misfeed detection	The Transport Sensor (PC5-FN) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Entrance Sensor (PC4-FN) is blocked by the paper.
	The Transport Sensor (PC5-FN) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Entrance Sensor (PC4-FN) is unblocked by the paper.
Detection of paper remaining in the Transport Section	The Entrance Sensor (PC4-FN) is blocked when the Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.
	The Transport Sensor (PC5-FN) is blocked when the Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

#### B. Action

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Paper Exit Sensor (PC4) Entrance Sensor (PC4-FN) Transport Sensor (PC5-FN)	Main Control Board (PWB-A FN) Mechanical Control Board (PWB-A)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	PC4 I/O check	PWB-A PJ18A-11 (ON)	M-12
3	PC4-FN I/O check	PWB-A FN PJ25A FN-4 (ON)	FS-508 G-4
4	PC5-FN I/O check	PWB-A FN PJ20A FN-9 (ON)	FS-508 B-5
5	Change PWB-A FN	-	-
6	Change PWB-A	-	-

### 9.3.3 Finisher Staple Misfeed

#### A. Detection Timing

Type	Description
Finisher Staple misfeed detection	The Staple Home Position Sensor in the Staple Unit is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Staple Motor rotates forward, and then the Staple Motor rotates backward, and the Staple Home Position Sensor in the Staple Unit is blocked within the set period of time.

#### B. Action

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Staple Unit	Main Control Board (PWB-A FN)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	Drive Coupling Section check	-	-
3	I/O Check	-	-
4	Change Staple Unit	-	-
5	Change PWB-A FN	-	-

### 9.3.4 Finisher Punch Misfeed (PU-501)

#### A. Detection Timing

Type	Description
Finisher Punch misfeed detection	Punch Positioning Sensors 1 and 2 are not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Punch Motor is energized.

#### B. Action

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Punch Unit	Main Control Board (PWB-A FN)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	Drive Coupling Section check	-	-
3	I/O Check	-	-
4	Change Punch Unit	-	-
5	Change PWB-A FN	-	-

**9.3.5 Finisher Bundle Exit Misfeed**

**A. Detection Timing**

Type	Description
Finisher Bundle Exit misfeed detection	The Storage Tray Detecting Sensor (PC8-FN) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Exit Motor (M1-FN) is energized.

**B. Action**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Storage Tray Detecting Sensor (PC8-FN) Exit Motor (M1-FN)	Main Control Board (PWB-A FN)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	PC8-FN I/O check	PWB-A FN PJ13A FN-8 (ON)	FS-508 G-8
3	Change PWB-A FN	-	-

## 10. Malfunction code

### 10.1 Trouble code

- The machine's CPU performs a self-diagnostics function that, on detecting a malfunction, gives the corresponding malfunction code and maintenance call mark on the Touch Panel.

Code	Description	Detection Timing
C1183	Elevator Motor Ascent/Descent Drive Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Elevator Tray Lower Limit Sensor (PC14-FN) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Main Power Switch is set to ON.</li> <li>The Elevator Tray Home Position Sensor (PC3-FN) and Top Face Detection Sensor (PC15-FN) are not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Elevator Motor (M11-FN) is energized.</li> <li>The Elevator Tray does not stop at the position for the specified tray after the Elevator Motor (M11-FN) is energized (beginning of descent operation) and the Elevator Tray Lower Limit Sensor (PC14-FN) is blocked.</li> <li>The Top Face Detection Sensor (PC15-FN) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Elevator Motor (M11-FN) is energized (beginning of ascent operation) when paper is being fed out.</li> <li>The Lock signal is detected after the set period of time has elapsed after the Elevator Motor (M11-FN) is energized.</li> </ul>
C1190	Aligning Plate 1 Drive Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Alignment Home Position Sensor 1 (PC6-FN) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Main Power Switch is set to ON.</li> <li>The Alignment Home Position Sensor 1 (PC6-FN) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Alignment Motor 1 (M4-FN) is energized.</li> </ul>
C1191	Aligning Plate 2 Drive Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Alignment Home Position Sensor 2 (PC7-FN) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Main Power Switch is set to ON.</li> <li>The Alignment Home Position Sensor 2 (PC7-FN) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Alignment Motor 2 (M5-FN) is energized.</li> </ul>
C11A0	Paper Holding Drive Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Exit Paddle Home Position Sensor (PC11-FN) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Exit Paddle Solenoid (SL2-FN) is activated (beginning of paddle retraction operation).</li> <li>The Exit Paddle Home Position Sensor (PC11-FN) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Exit Paddle Solenoid (SL2-FN) is activated (beginning of paddle paper-holding operation).</li> </ul>
C11A1	Exit Roller Pressure/Retraction Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Exit Roller Home Position Sensor (PC12-FN) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Exit Open/Close Motor (M6-FN) is energized (beginning of pressure operation).</li> <li>The Exit Roller Home Position Sensor (PC12-FN) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Exit Open/Close Motor (M6-FN) is energized (beginning of retraction operation).</li> </ul>

Code	Description	Detection Timing
C11A3	Shutter Drive Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Shutter Home Position Sensor (PC16-FN) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Exit Open/Close Motor (M6-FN) is energized (beginning of shutter-opening operation).</li> <li>The Shutter Home Position Sensor (PC16-FN) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Exit Open/Close Motor (M6-FN) is energized (beginning of shutter-closing operation).</li> </ul>
C11B0	Staple Unit CD Drive Failure	The Staple Home Position Sensor (PC10-FN) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Stapling Unit Moving Motor (M7-FN) is energized (beginning of return operation to predetermined position).
C11B2	Staple Drive Failure	The Home Position Sensor is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Staple Motor is energized (beginning of staple operation).
C11C0	Punch Cam Motor Unit Failure	The Punch Motor Pulse Sensor cannot detect both edges of H/L even after the set period of time has elapsed while the Punch Drive Motor is energized.
CC155	Finishing Option Flash ROM Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Data of flash ROM of the finishing options is determined to be faulty when the power is turned ON.</li> </ul>

## 10.2 Solution

### 10.2.1 C1183: Elevator Motor Ascent/Descent Drive Failure

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Elevator Motor (M11-FN)	Top Face Detection Sensor (PC15-FN)
Elevator Tray Home Position Sensor (PC3-FN)	Elevator Board (PWB-B FN)
Elevator Tray Lower Limit Sensor (PC14-FN)	Main Control Board (PWB-A FN)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the M11-FN connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check M11-FN for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	If OT-601 is connected, check the connector for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
4	Check the installation position of the OT-601 tray, and correct as necessary.	-	-
5	M11-FN operation check	PWB-A FN PJ7A FN-1 to 2	FS-508 G-7
6	PC3-FN I/O check	PWB-A FN PJ12A FN-2 (ON)	FS-508 G-4
7	PC14-FN I/O check	PWB-B FN PJ2B FN-3 (ON)	FS-508 H-6
8	PC15-FN I/O check	PWB-B FN PJ2B FN-6 (ON)	FS-508 H-6
9	Change PWB-B FN	-	-
10	Change PWB-A FN	-	-

**10.2.2 C1190: Aligning Plate 1 Drive Failure**

**10.2.3 C1191: Aligning Plate 2 Drive Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Alignment Motor 1 (M4-FN) Alignment Motor 2 (M5-FN) Alignment Home Position Sensor 1 (PC6-FN) Alignment Home Position Sensor 2 (PC7-FN)	Main Control Board (PWB-A FN)

- C1190

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the M4-FN connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check M4-FN for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	M4-FN operation check	PWB-A FN PJ14A FN-1 to 4	FS-508 G-7
4	PC6-FN I/O check	PWB-A FN PJ13A FN-3 (ON)	FS-508 G-8
5	Change PWB-A FN	-	-

- C1191

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the M5-FN connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check M5-FN for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	M5-FN operation check	PWB-A FN PJ14A FN-5 to 8	FS-508 G-8
4	PC7-FN I/O check	PWB-A FN PJ13A FN-6 (ON)	FS-508 G-8
5	Change PWB-A FN	-	-

**10.2.4 C11A0: Paper Holding Drive Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Exit Paddle Solenoid (SL2-FN) Exit Paddle Home Position Sensor (PC11-FN)	Main Control Board (PWB-A FN)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the SL2-FN connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	PC11-FN I/O check	PWB-A FN PJ17A FN-7 (ON)	FS-508 B-7
3	SL2-FN operation check	PWB-A FN PJ18A FN-6 (REM)	FS-508 B-7
4	Change PWB-A FN	-	-

**10.2.5 C11A1: Exit Roller Pressure/Retraction Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Exit Open/Close Motor (M6-FN) Exit Roller Home Position Sensor (PC12-FN)	Main Control Board (PWB-A FN)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the M6-FN connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check M6-FN for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	M6-FN operation check	PWB-A FN PJ20A FN-1 to 2	FS-508 B-6
4	PC12-FN I/O check	PWB-A FN PJ20A FN-7 (ON)	FS-508 B-5
5	Change PWB-A FN	-	-

**10.2.6 C11A3: Shutter Drive Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Exit Open/Close Motor (M6-FN) Shutter Home Position Sensor (PC16-FN)	Elevator Board (PWB-B FN) Main Control Board (PWB-A FN)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the M6-FN connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check M6-FN for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	M6-FN operation check	PWB-A FN PJ20A FN-1 to 2	FS-508 B-6
4	PC16-FN I/O check	PWB-B FN PJ2B FN-9 (ON)	FS-508 H-6
5	Change PWB-B FN	-	-
6	Change PWB-A FN	-	-

**10.2.7 C11B0: Staple Drive Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Stapling Unit Moving Motor (M7-FN) Staple Home Position Sensor (PC10-FN)	Main Control Board (PWB-A FN)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check for interference with the Shutter and Exit Roller, and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check the M7-FN connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	Check M7-FN for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	-	-
4	M7-FN operation check	PWB-A FN PJ15A FN-1 to 4	FS-508 G-9
5	PC10-FN I/O check	PWB-A FN PJ17A FN-3 (ON)	FS-508 B-7
6	Change PWB-A FN	-	-

**10.2.8 C11B2: Staple Drive Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Staple Unit	Main Control Board (PWB-A FN)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the Staple unit connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check the Staple Unit for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	Staple Unit operation check	-	-
4	Change Staple Unit	-	-
5	Change PWB-A FN	-	-

**10.2.9 C11C0: Punch Cam Motor Unit Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Punch Unit	Main Control Board (PWB-A FN)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the Punch Unit connectors for proper connection, and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check the Punch Unit for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	Punch Unit I/O check	-	-
4	Change Punch Unit	-	-
5	Change PWB-A FN	-	-

**10.2.10 CC155: Finishing Option Flash ROM Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Main Control Board (PWB-A FN)	

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Disconnect and then connect the power cord. Turn OFF the Main Power Switch, wait for 10 sec. or more, and turn ON the Main Power Switch.	-	-
2	Rewrite firmware using the Compact Flash card.	-	-
3	Change PWB-A FN	-	-

FS-508/PU-501/OT-601

Troubleshooting

Blank Page



KONICA MINOLTA

**SERVICE MANUAL**

**FIELD SERVICE**

---

# MT-501

# Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  to the left of the revised section.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.

## NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2005/08	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

# CONTENTS

## MT-501

### General

1. Product specification .....	1
--------------------------------	---

### Maintenance

2. Periodical check .....	3
2.1 Maintenance procedure (Periodical check parts) .....	3
2.1.1 Cleaning of the Roller and Roll .....	3
3. Other .....	4
3.1 Disassembly/Adjustment prohibited items .....	4
3.2 Disassembly/Assembly list (Other parts) .....	5
3.3 Disassembly/Assembly procedure .....	5
3.3.1 Rear Cover/Right Door .....	5
3.3.2 Front Cover/Upper Cover/Paper Output Tray .....	6

### Adjustment/Setting

4. How to use the adjustment section .....	7
5. I/O check .....	8
5.1 Check procedure .....	8
5.2 I/O check list .....	8
5.2.1 I/O check screen .....	8
5.2.2 I/O check list.....	9
6. Test Mode Operations .....	10
6.1 Entering Function Mode .....	10
6.2 Function Modes .....	10

### Troubleshooting

7. Jam Display .....	11
7.1 Misfeed display .....	11
7.1.1 Misfeed display resetting procedure .....	11
7.2 Sensor layout .....	12
7.3 Solution .....	13
7.3.1 Initial check items .....	13
7.3.2 Transport Section Misfeed .....	14

MT-501

General

Maintenance

Adjustment / Setting

Troubleshooting

Blank Page

# General

## 1. Product specification

### A. Type

Name	Mail Bin Kit
Installation	Install at the top section of the Finisher Elevator Tray.
Number of Bins	4 bins
Number of Sheets Stored per Bin	125 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
Storable Paper	Plain paper (56 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> ), recycled paper (60 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
Storable Paper Size	A5, B5R, and A4R (5-1/2, 8.5 × 11)

### B. Machine specifications

Power Requirements	DC 24 V (supplied from the Finisher) DC 5 V (generated inside the Mail Bin)
Dimensions	624 mm (W) × 503 mm (D) × 390 mm (H)
Weight	8 kg

### C. Operating environment

- Conforms to the operating environment of the main unit.

#### NOTE

- These specifications are subject to change without notice.

Blank Page

# Maintenance

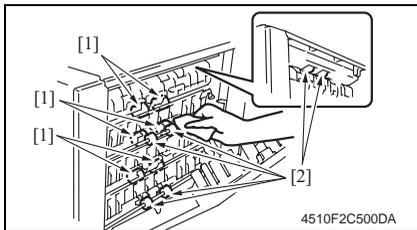
## 2. Periodical check

### 2.1 Maintenance procedure (Periodical check parts)

#### NOTE

- The alcohol described in the cleaning procedure of Maintenance represents the isopropyl alcohol.

#### 2.1.1 Cleaning of the Roller and Roll



1. Open the Right Door.
2. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the roller and roll.

### 3. Other

#### 3.1 Disassembly/Adjustment prohibited items

##### A. Screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied

- Blue paint or green paint is applied to some screws to prevent them from coming loose.
- As a general rule, screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied should not be removed or loosened.

##### B. Red-painted screws

- Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.

##### C. Variable Resistors on Board

###### NOTE

- Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.

##### D. Removal of PWBs

###### NOTE

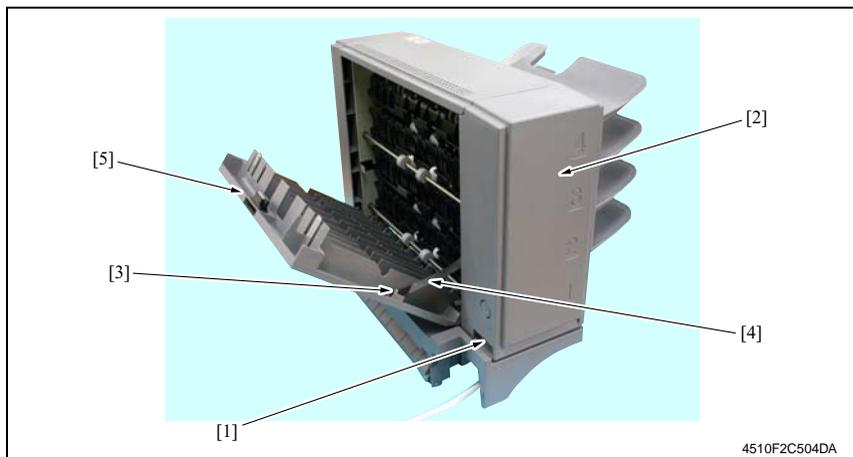
- When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to “SAFETY AND IMPORTANT WARNING ITEMS” and follow the corresponding removal procedures.
- The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.
- When it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.

### 3.2 Disassembly/Assembly list (Other parts)

No.	Section	Part name	Ref. page
1	Exterior parts	Rear Cover	☞ 5
2		Front Cover	☞ 6
3		Upper Cover	☞ 6
4		Right Door	☞ 5
5		Paper Output Tray	☞ 6

### 3.3 Disassembly/Assembly procedure

#### 3.3.1 Rear Cover/Right Door



1. Remove the screw [1] and remove the Rear Cover [2].
2. Remove the screw [3], the stopper [4], and remove the Right Door [5].

### 3.3.2 Front Cover/Upper Cover/Paper Output Tray



4510F2C505DA

1. Remove the screw [1] and remove the Front Cover [2].
2. Remove the Rear Cover.
3. Remove the Upper Cover [3].
4. Remove the Paper Output Trays [4].

 5

## Adjustment/Setting

### 4. How to use the adjustment section

- “Adjustment/Setting” contains detailed information on the adjustment items and procedures for this machine.
- Throughout this “Adjustment/Setting,” the default settings are indicated by “ ”.

#### Advance Checks

Before attempting to solve the customer problem, the following advance checks must be made. Check to see if:

- The power supply voltage meets the specifications.
- The power supply is properly grounded.
- The machine shares the power supply with any other machine that draws large current intermittently (e.g., elevator and air conditioner that generate electric noise).
- The installation site is environmentally appropriate: high temperature, high humidity, direct sunlight, ventilation, etc.; levelness of the installation site.
- The original has a problem that may cause a defective image.
- The density is properly selected.
- The Original Glass, slit glass, or related part is dirty.
- Correct paper is being used for printing.
- The units, parts, and supplies used for printing (developer, PC Drum, etc.) are properly replenished and replaced when they reach the end of their useful service life.
- Toner is not running out.

#### CAUTION

- **To unplug the power cord of the machine before starting the service job procedures.**
- **If it is unavoidably necessary to service the machine with its power turned ON, use utmost care not to be caught in the Scanner Cables or gears of the Exposure Unit.**
- **Special care should be used when handling the Fusing Unit which can be extremely hot.**
- **The Developing Unit has a strong magnetic field. Keep watches and measuring instruments away from it.**
- **Take care not to damage the PC Drum with a tool or similar device.**
- **Do not touch IC pins with bare hands.**

## 5. I/O check

### 5.1 Check procedure

- To allow sensors to be checked for operation easily and safely, data applied to the IC on the board can be checked on the panel with the main unit in the standby state (including a misfeed, malfunction, and closure failure condition).

<Procedure>

1. Display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen.

☞ For details of how to display the Service Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.

2. Touch the [I/O Check] key.

3. Touch the [Finisher] key.

4. Touch [Fwd] three times.

### 5.2 I/O check list

#### 5.2.1 I/O check screen

- This is only typical screen which may be different from what are shown on each individual main unit.

Finisher		Back	END
Mail Bins		3rd Mail Bin	
Paper Passage 1 (Mail Bins)	0	Empty	0
Paper Passage 2 (Mail Bins)	0	3rd Mail Bin Full	0
Mail Bin Door	0	4th Mail Bin	
1st Mail Bin		Empty	0
Empty	0	4th Mail Bin Full	0
1st Mail Bin Full	0		
2nd Mail Bin			
Empty	0		
2nd Mail Bin Full	0		

4510F3C506DA

**5.2.2 I/O check list**

Symbol	Panel display		Part/Signal name	Operation characteristics/ Panel display	
				1	0
PC10-MK	Finisher	Paper Passage 1 (Mail Bins)	Lower Transport Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC9-MK		Paper Passage 2 (Mail Bins)	Upper Transport Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC11-MK		Mail Bin Door	Cover Open/Close Sensor	Open	Close
PC1-MK		1st Mail Bin Empty	Paper Detection Sensor 1	Paper not present	Paper present
PC5-MK		1st Mail bin Full	Paper Full Detection Sensor 1	Blocked	Unblocked
PC2-MK		2nd Mail Bin Empty	Paper Detection Sensor 2	Paper not present	Paper present
PC6-MK		2nd Mail Bin Full	Paper Full Detection Sensor 2	Blocked	Unblocked
PC3-MK		3rd Mail Bin Empty	Paper Detection Sensor 3	Paper not present	Paper present
PC7-MK		3rd Mail Bin Full	Paper Full Detection Sensor 3	Blocked	Unblocked
PC4-MK		4th Mail Bin Empty	Paper Detection Sensor 4	Paper not present	Paper present
PC8-MK		4th Mail Bin Full	Paper Full Detection Sensor 4	Blocked	Unblocked

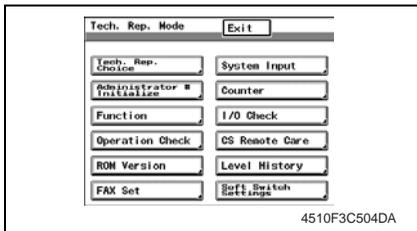
MT-501

Adjustment / Setting

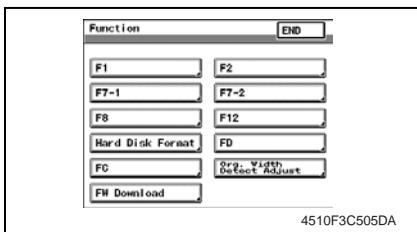
# 6. Test Mode Operations

## 6.1 Entering Function Mode

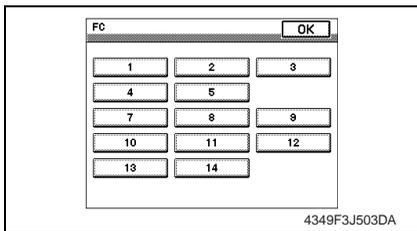
1. Display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen.  
 ☞ For details of how to display the Service Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.



2. Touch [Function].



3. Touch [FC].



4. Touch [12].

## 6.2 Function Modes

### 12: Mailbin solenoid drive mode

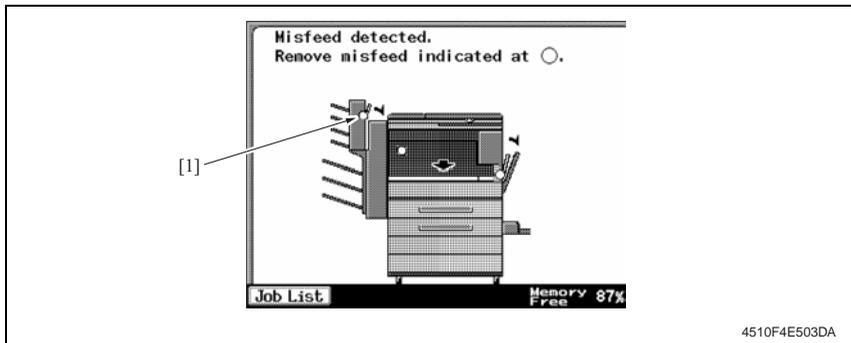
- Bin Entrance Switching Solenoids 1, 2 and 3 switch, in order, at the predetermined times.
  - Bin Entrance Switching Solenoid 1 (SL1-MK) activates for the predetermined time.
  - Bin Entrance Switching Solenoid 2 (SL2-MK) activates for the predetermined time.
  - Bin Entrance Switching Solenoid 3 (SL3-MK) activates for the predetermined time.
  - All Bin Entrance Switching Solenoids deactivate.
  - The operation is finished.

# Troubleshooting

## 7. Jam Display

### 7.1 Misfeed display

- When misfeed occurs, message, misfeed location “Blinking” and paper location “Lighting” are displayed on the Touch Panel of the main unit.

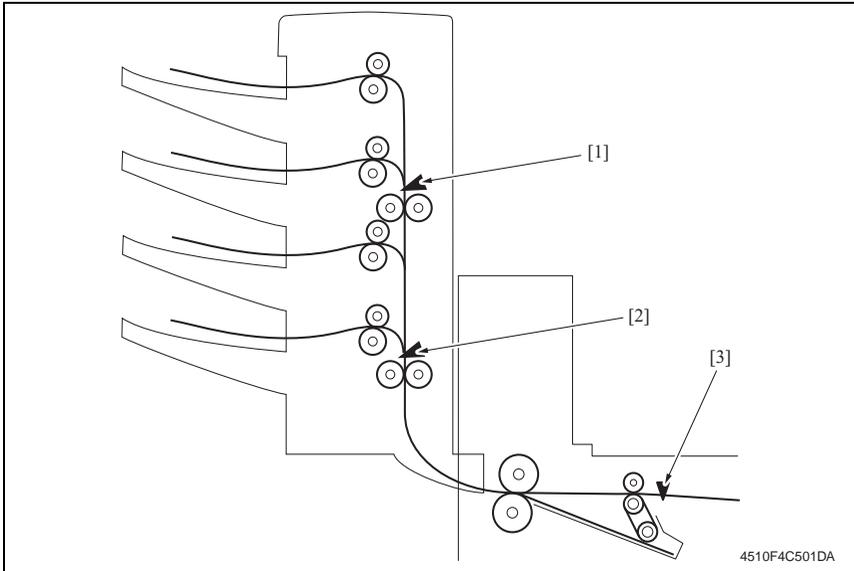


No.	Misfeed location	Misfeed access location	Action
[1]	Vertical Transport Section	Right Door	14

#### 7.1.1 Misfeed display resetting procedure

- Open the corresponding door, clear the sheet of paper misfeed, and close the door.

### 7.2 Sensor layout



- |                            |         |
|----------------------------|---------|
| [1] Upper Transport Sensor | PC9-MK  |
| [2] Lower Transport Sensor | PC10-MK |
| [3] Transport Sensor       | PC5-FN  |

### 7.3 Solution

#### 7.3.1 Initial check items

- When a paper misfeed occurs, first perform the following initial check items.

Check item	Action
Does paper meet product specifications?	Replace paper.
Is the paper curled, wavy, or damp?	Replace paper. Instruct the user on the correct paper storage procedures.
Is a foreign object present along the paper path, or is the paper path deformed or worn?	Clean the paper path and replace if necessary.
Are rolls/rollers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or replace the defective roll/roller.
Are the Edge Guide and Trailing Edge Stop at the correct position to accommodate the paper?	Set as necessary.
Are the actuators operating correctly?	Correct or replace the defective actuator.

### 7.3.2 Transport Section Misfeed

#### A. Detection timing

Type	Description
Transport Section misfeed detection	The Lower Transport Sensor (PC10-MK) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Transport Sensor (PC5-FN) is unblocked by the paper.
	The Upper Transport Sensor (PC9-MK) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Lower Transport Sensor (PC10-MK) is blocked by the paper.
Detection of paper remaining in the Transport Section	The Lower Transport Sensor (PC10-MK) is blocked when the Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.
	The Upper Transport Sensor (PC9-MK) is blocked when the Power Switch is set to ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

#### B. Action

Relevant electrical parts	
Transport Sensor (PC5-FN) Lower Transport Sensor (PC10-MK) Upper Transport Sensor (PC9-MK)	Main Control Board (PWB-A MK)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control signal	Location (Electrical components)
1	Initial checks	-	-
2	PC5-FN sensor check	PWB-MK CN102A MK-5 (ON)	C-5
3	PC10-MK sensor check	PWB-MK CN102A MK-8 (ON)	C-5
4	PC9-MK sensor check	PWB-MK CN101A MK-8 (ON)	C-4
5	PWB-A MK replacement	-	-



KONICA MINOLTA

**SERVICE MANUAL**

**FIELD SERVICE**

---

# SD-502

# Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  to the left of the revised section.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show  in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.  
A number within  represents the number of times the revision has been made.

## NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0:  
The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2005/08	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

# CONTENTS

## SD-502

### General

1. Product specifications .....	1
---------------------------------	---

### Maintenance

2. Periodical check .....	3
2.1 Maintenance procedure (Periodical check parts) .....	3
2.1.1 Cleaning of the Rollers and Rolls .....	3
3. Service tool .....	3
3.1 CE Tool list.....	3
4. Other .....	4
4.1 Disassembly/Adjustment prohibited items .....	4
4.2 Disassembly/Assembly list (Other parts) .....	5
4.2.1 Disassembly/Assembly parts list.....	5
4.3 Disassembly/Assembly procedure.....	5
4.3.1 Paper Output Tray/Front Cover .....	5
4.3.2 Rear Cover.....	6
4.3.3 Upper Cover.....	6
4.3.4 Saddle Unit .....	7
4.3.5 Crease Unit.....	8
4.3.6 Stapler Unit .....	9
4.3.7 In & Out Guide Drive Motor.....	13
4.3.8 Crease Roller .....	15

### Adjustment/Setting

5. How to use the adjustment section .....	19
6. I/O Check .....	20
6.1 Check procedure .....	20
6.2 I/O check list .....	20
6.2.1 I/O check screen .....	20
6.2.2 I/O check list.....	21
7. Test mode.....	22
7.1 Entering Function Mode .....	22
7.2 Function Modes .....	22
8. Mechanical adjustment .....	23

8.1	Fold Angle Adjustment .....	23
8.2	Fold Position Adjustment .....	24
8.3	Center Staple Angle Adjustment .....	25
8.4	Center Staple Position Adjustment .....	26

## Troubleshooting

9.	Jam Display .....	27
9.1	Misfeed Display .....	27
9.2	Sensor layout .....	27
9.3	Solution .....	28
9.3.1	Initial Check Items .....	28
9.3.2	Creasing Section Misfeed .....	28
9.3.3	Staple Unit Misfeed .....	29
9.3.4	Paper Bundle Exit Misfeed .....	30
10.	Malfunction code .....	31
10.1	Trouble code .....	31
10.2	Solution .....	32
10.2.1	C11A2: Saddle Exit Roller Pressure/Retraction Failure .....	32
10.2.2	C11A4: Saddle Exit Motor Failure .....	32
10.2.3	C11A5: Saddle In & Out Guide Motor Failure .....	33
10.2.4	C11A6: Saddle Layable Guide Drive Failure .....	33
10.2.5	C11B5: Side Staple 1 Drive Failure .....	34
10.2.6	C11B6: Side Staple 2 Drive Failure .....	34
10.2.7	C11D0: Crease Motor Drive Failure .....	34

SD-502

General

Maintenance

Adjustment / Setting

Troubleshooting

# General

## 1. Product specifications

### A. Type

Name	Saddle Sticher SD-502	
Type	Built into the Finisher	
Installation	Screwed to the Finisher	
Document Alignment	Center	
Stapling Function	Center parallel two points No. of sheets to be stapled together: 2 to 15	

### B. Paper type

Type	Plain Paper	56 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> 15 to 24 lb
Size	B5R to A3	
Capacity	200 sheets or 20 copies	

### C. Machine specifications

Power Requirements	DC 24 V (supplied from the Finisher) DC 5 V	
Max. Power Consumption	9.5 W or less	
Dimensions	445 mm (W) x 203 mm (D) x 478 mm (H) 17.5 inch (W) x 8 inch (D) x 18.75 inch (H)	
Weight	9.3 kg (20.5 lb)	

### D. Operating environment

- Conforms to the operating environment of the main unit.

### E. Consumables

- Staples 2000 (MS-2C) x 2

### NOTE

- **These specifications are subject to change without notice.**

Blank Page

# Maintenance

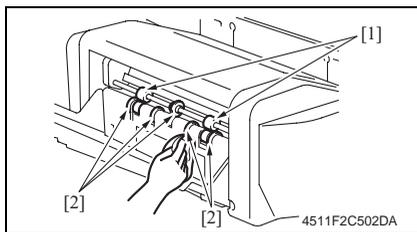
## 2. Periodical check

### 2.1 Maintenance procedure (Periodical check parts)

**NOTE**

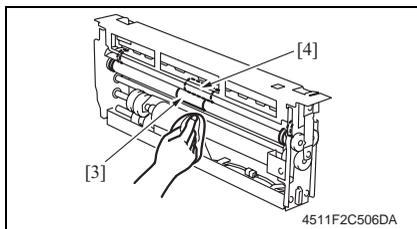
- The alcohol described in the cleaning procedure of Maintenance represents the isopropyl alcohol.

#### 2.1.1 Cleaning of the Rollers and Rolls



1. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the roller [1] and roll [2].

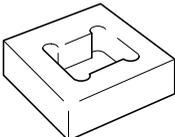
#### 2. Remove the Crease Unit.



3. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the roller [3] and roll [4].

## 3. Service tool

### 3.1 CE Tool list

Tool name	Shape	Personnel	Parts No.	Remarks
Stapler Unit Positioning Jig		1	4511-7901-01	

## 4. Other

### 4.1 Disassembly/Adjustment prohibited items

#### A. Screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied

- Blue paint or green paint is applied to some screws to prevent them from coming loose.
- As a general rule, screws to which blue paint or green paint is applied should not be removed or loosened.

#### B. Red-painted screws

- Do not remove or loosen any of the red-painted screws in the field. It should also be noted that, when two or more screws are used for a single part, only one representative screw may be marked with the red paint.

#### C. Variable Resistors on Board

#### NOTE

- Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.

#### D. Removal of PWBs

#### Caution

- When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to “SAFETY AND IMPORTANT WARNING ITEMS” and follow the corresponding removal procedures.
- The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.
- When it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.

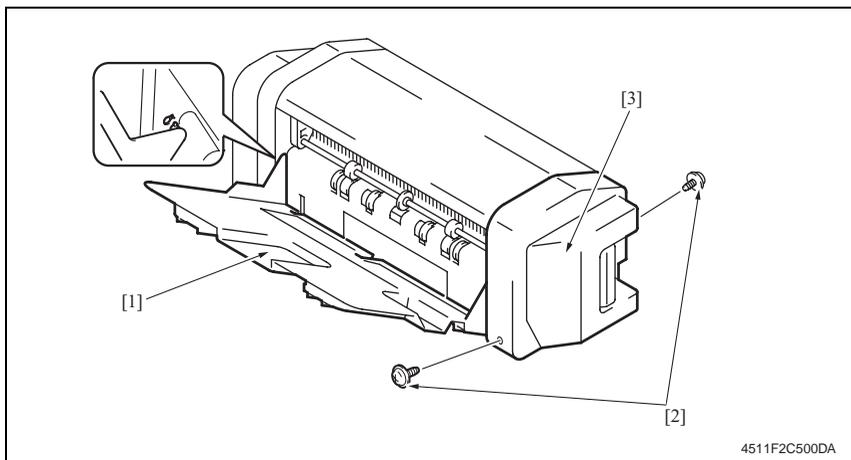
## 4.2 Disassembly/Assembly list (Other parts)

### 4.2.1 Disassembly/Assembly parts list

No.	Section	Part name	Ref. Page
1	Exterior parts	Paper Output Tray	☞ 5
2		Front Cover	☞ 5
3		Upper Cover	☞ 6
4		Rear Cover	☞ 6
5	Unit	Saddle Unit	☞ 7
6		Crease Unit	☞ 8
7		Stapler Unit	☞ 9
8	Others	In & Out Guide Drive Motor	☞ 13
9		Crease Roller	☞ 15

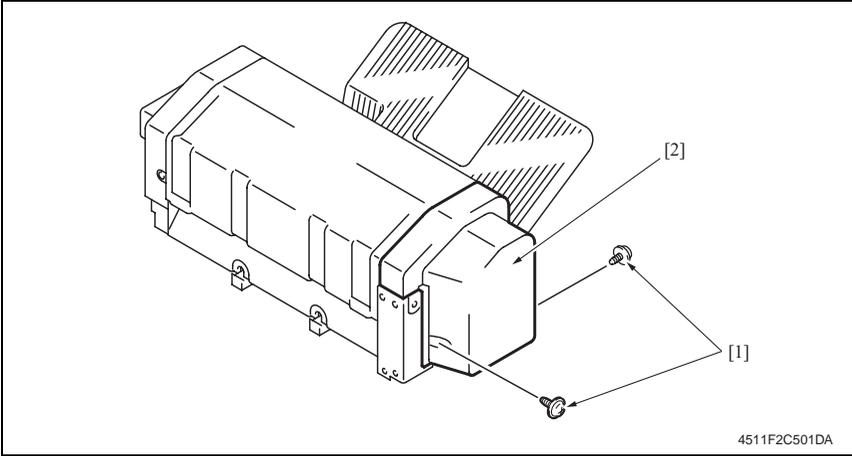
## 4.3 Disassembly/Assembly procedure

### 4.3.1 Paper Output Tray/Front Cover



1. Align the cutout and remove the Paper Output Tray [1].
2. Remove two screws [2], and remove the Front Cover [3].

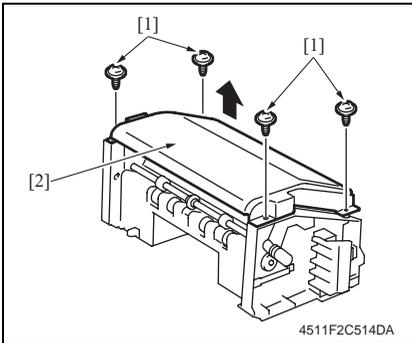
### 4.3.2 Rear Cover



1. Remove two screws [1], and remove the Rear Cover [2].

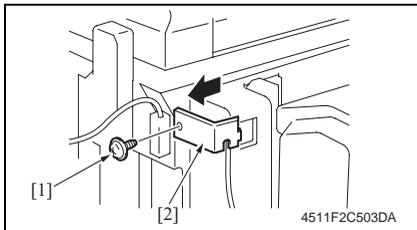
### 4.3.3 Upper Cover

1. Remove the Front Cover.  
🔧 5
2. Remove the Rear Cover.  
🔧 6

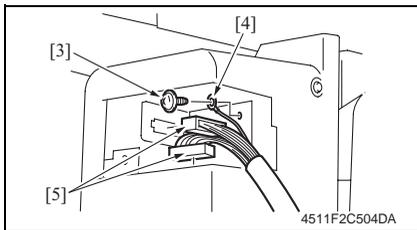


3. Remove four screws [1], and remove the Upper Cover [2].

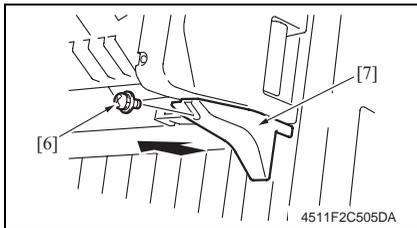
**4.3.4 Saddle Unit**



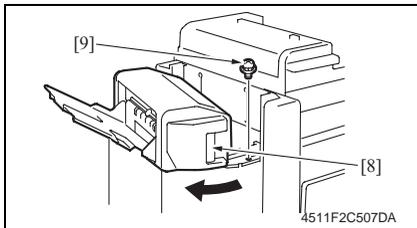
1. Remove the screw [1], and remove the Connector Cover [2].



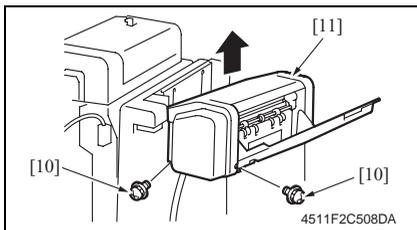
2. Remove the screw [3], and remove the ground wire [4].
3. Unplug two connectors [5].



4. Remove the screw [6], and remove the Lower Front Cover [7].



5. Pull the lock release lever [8], and open the Saddle Unit.
6. Remove the screw [9].



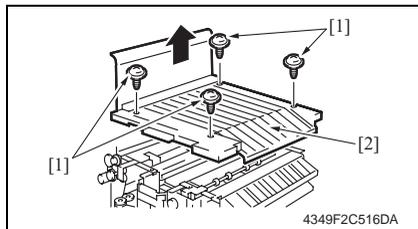
7. Remove two screws [10], and remove the Saddle Unit [11].

SD-502

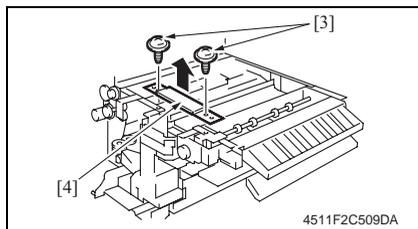
Maintenance

### 4.3.5 Crease Unit

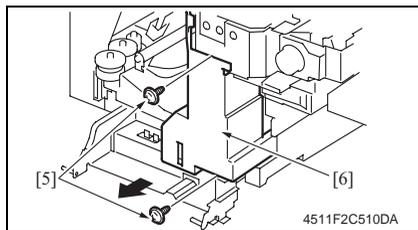
1. Remove the Saddle Unit.  
☞ 7
2. Remove the Elevator Tray.  
☞ For details, see FS-508 Service Manual.
3. Remove the Horizontal Transport Unit.  
☞ For details, see FS-508 Service Manual.



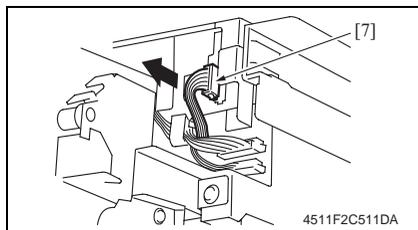
4. Remove four screws [1], and remove the Horizontal Transport Upper Cover [2].



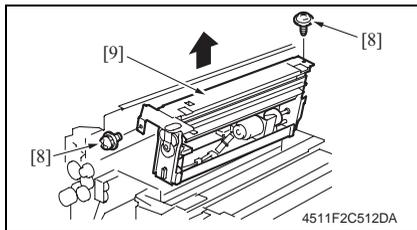
5. Remove two screws [3], and remove the Reinforcement Bracket [4].



6. Remove two screws [5], and remove the Horizontal Transport Lower Front Cover [6].



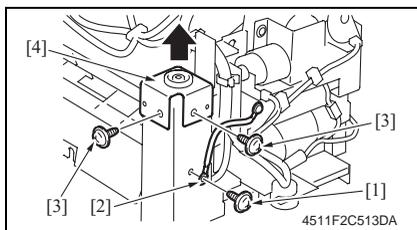
7. Unplug the connector [7].



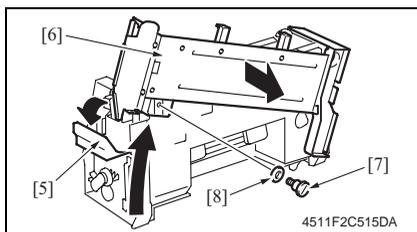
8. Remove two screws [8], and remove the Crease Unit [9].

### 4.3.6 Stapler Unit

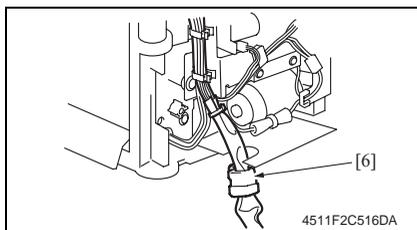
1. Remove the Saddle Unit.  
☞ 7
2. Remove the Paper Output Tray.  
☞ 5
3. Remove the Front Cover.  
☞ 5
4. Remove the Rear Cover.  
☞ 6
5. Remove the Upper Cover.  
☞ 6



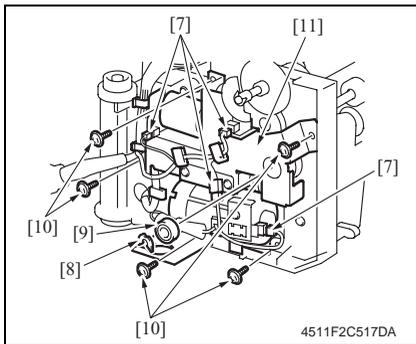
6. Remove the screw [1], and remove the ground wire [2].
7. Remove two screws [3], and remove the holder [4].



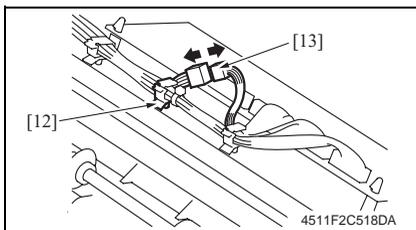
8. Release the lock release lever [5], and slide the Saddle Unit Mounting Plate [6].
9. Remove the shoulder screw [7] and the washer [8], and remove the Saddle Unit Mounting Plate [6].



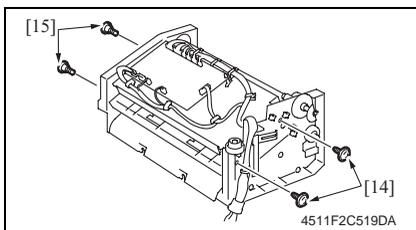
10. Remove the harness clamp [6] from the Metal Bracket.



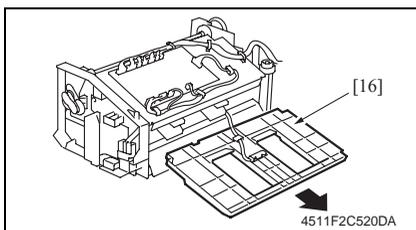
11. Remove the harness from the wire saddle.
12. Unplug four connectors [7].
13. Remove the C-ring [8], and remove the bearing [9].
14. Remove five screws [10], and remove the Drive Unit [11].



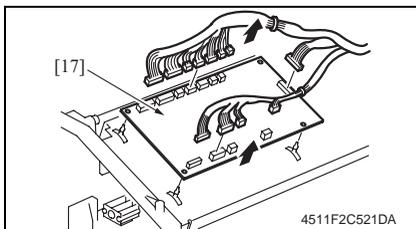
15. Remove the wire saddle [12], and unplug the connector [13].



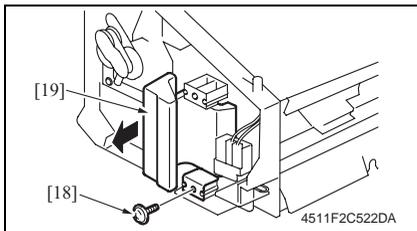
16. Remove two screws [14] and two shoulder screws [15].



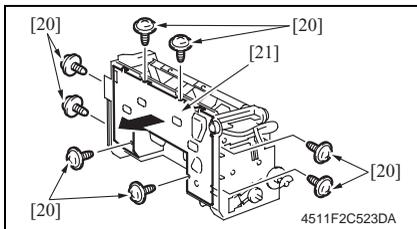
17. Remove the Empty [16].



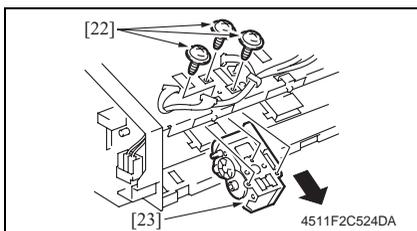
18. Unplug all the connectors on the Main Control Board.
19. Remove the PWB support, and then remove the Main Control Board [17].



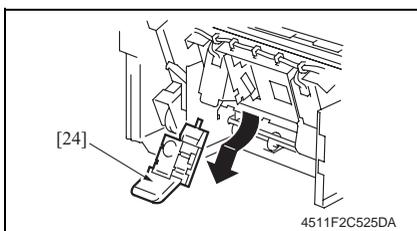
20. Remove the screw [18], and remove the lock release lever [19].



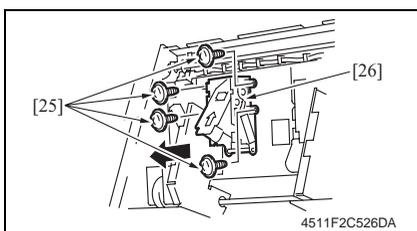
21. Remove eight screws [20], and remove the Lower Cover [21].



22. Remove the wire saddle and unplug the connector.  
23. Remove three screws [22], and remove the Clincher 1 [23].



24. Remove the Staple Cartridge 1 [24].

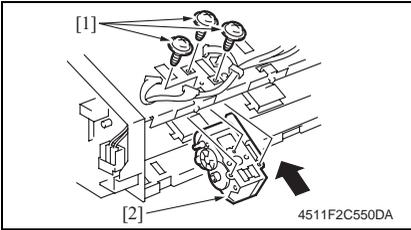


25. Remove four screws [25], and remove the Stapler 1 [26].

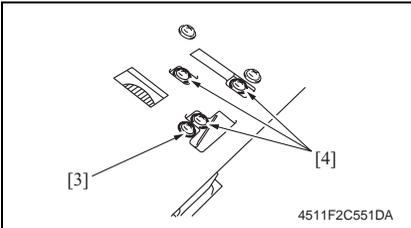
**NOTE**  
• To replace Clincher 2 and Stapler 2, repeat steps 22 to 25.

**Precaution for Clincher Reinstallation**

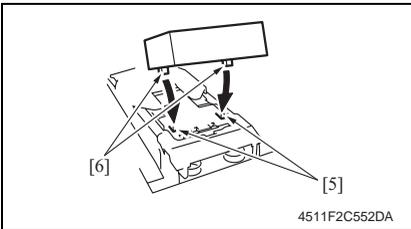
- When the Clincher is installed, the position of the Stapler and the Clincher will be misaligned. Be sure to perform the following adjustment.



1. Use three screws [1] to temporary fix the Clincher [2].



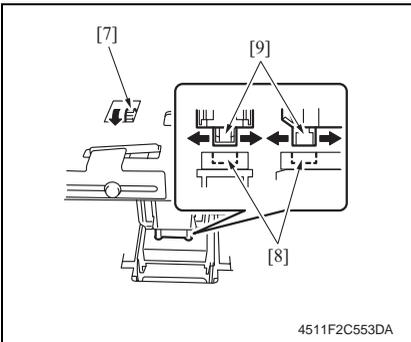
2. Loosen the screw [3] of the stopper.
3. Loosen three screws [4] of the Clincher.



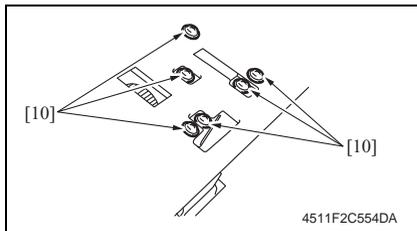
4. Aligning the protrusions of the jig [6] with the recesses in the Stapler [5], fit the jig to the Stapler.

**NOTE**

- **Make sure that the protrusions of the jig properly rest in the recesses.**



5. Turn the gear [7] of the Clincher and then slide the Clincher Assy so that the protrusion of the Clincher [9] fits into the recess in the jig [8].



6. Tighten six screws [10].

**NOTE**

- Turn the gear again and check to see that the protrusion of the Clincher smoothly fits into the recess in the jig.

7. Turn the gear and remove the jig.

**4.3.7 In & Out Guide Drive Motor**

1. Remove the Saddle Unit.



7

2. Remove the Paper Output Tray.



5

3. Remove the Front Cover.



5

4. Remove the Rear Cover.

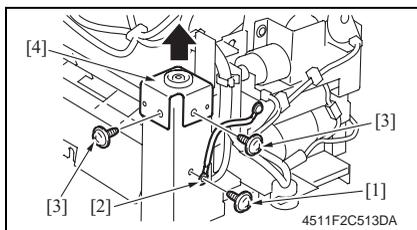


6

5. Remove the Upper Cover.

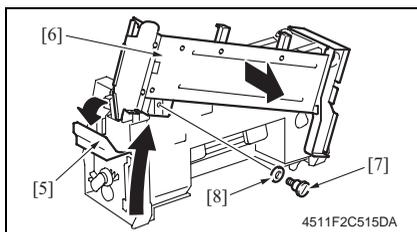


6



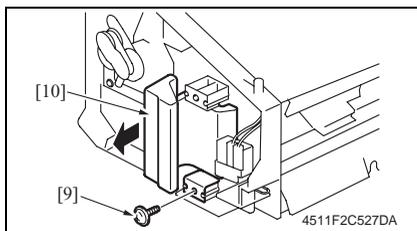
6. Remove the screw [1], and remove the ground wire [2].

7. Remove two screws [3], and remove the holder [4].

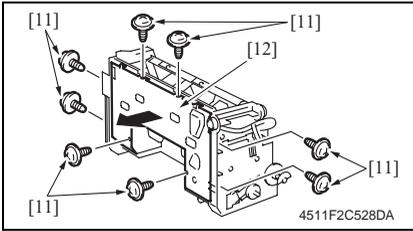


8. Release the lock release lever [5], and slide the Saddle Unit Mounting Plate [6].

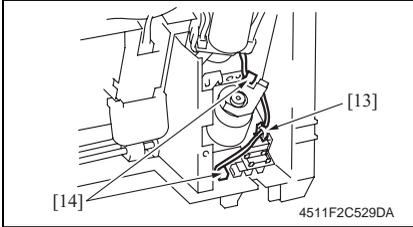
9. Remove the shoulder screw [7] and the washer [8], and remove the Saddle Unit Mounting Plate [6].



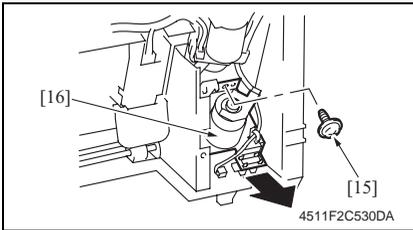
10. Remove the screw [9], and remove the lock release lever [10].



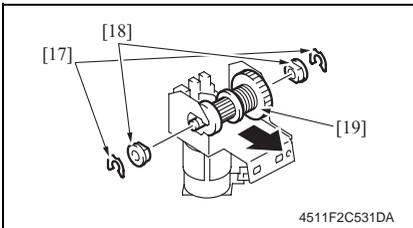
11. Remove eight screws [11], and remove the Lower Cover [12].



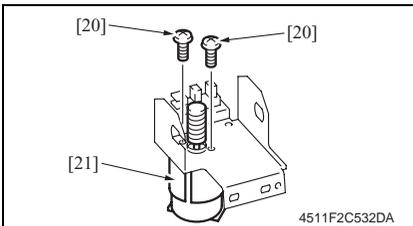
12. Remove the wire saddle [13], and unplug two connectors [14].



13. Remove the screw [15], and remove the In & Out Guide Drive Motor Assy [16].

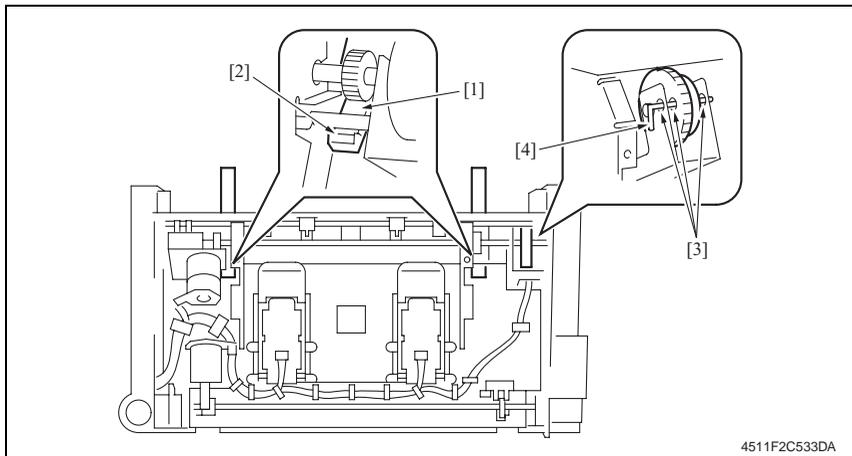


14. Remove two C-rings [17].
15. Remove two bushings [18], and remove the Clutch Gear Assy [19].



16. Remove two screws [20], and remove the In & Out Guide Drive Motor [21].

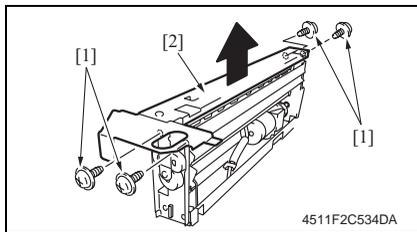
**Precaution for In & Out Guide Drive Motor Reinstallation**



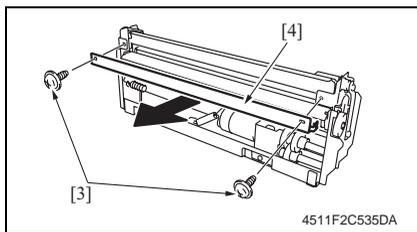
1. Press the two In & Out Guides [1] in and check that they touch the stopper [2] simultaneously.
2. Check that pins [4] can be inserted through the positioning holes [3] (3 holes) of the In & Out Guide Sensor Assy.
3. Use two screws to secure the In & Out Guide Drive Motor.

**4.3.8 Crease Roller**

1. Remove the Crease Unit.



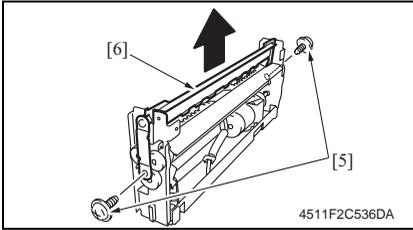
2. Remove four screws [1], and remove the Upper Plate [2].



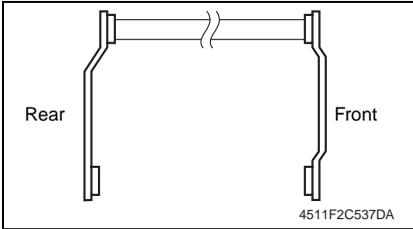
3. Remove two screws [3], and remove the guide plate [4].

SD-502

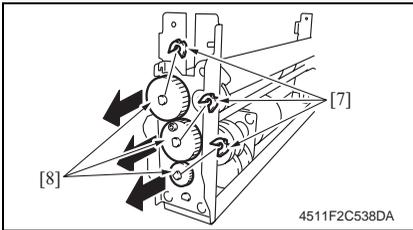
Maintenance



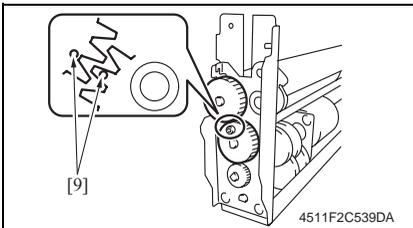
4. Remove two screws [5], and remove the Chopper Assy [6].



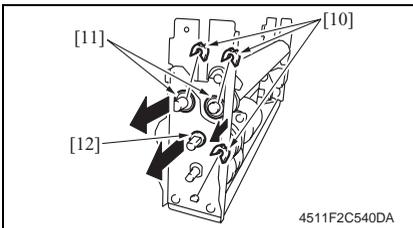
- Install the Chopper Assy in the direction shown in the left figure.



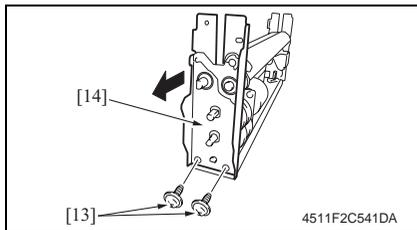
5. Remove three C-rings [7], and remove three gears [8].



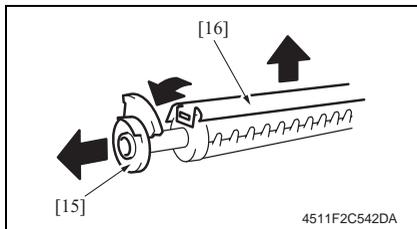
- Install the gear so that the mark [9] is aligned to the position shown in the left figure.



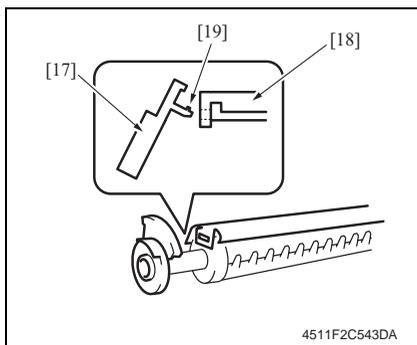
6. Remove three C-rings [10], and remove two bearings [11].
7. Remove the bushing [12].



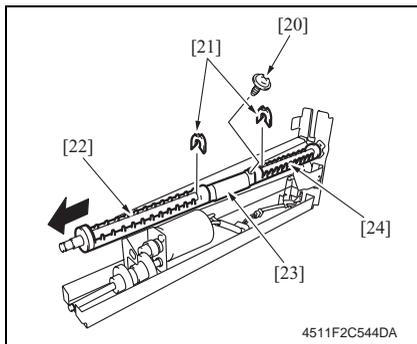
8. Remove two screws [13], and remove the Rear Holder [14].



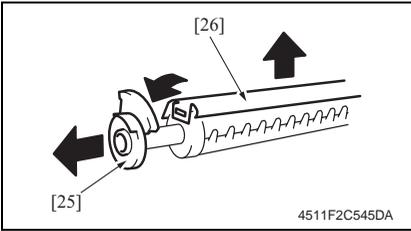
9. Remove the gear [15] of Crease Roller 1, and remove the Lower Guide Plate [16].



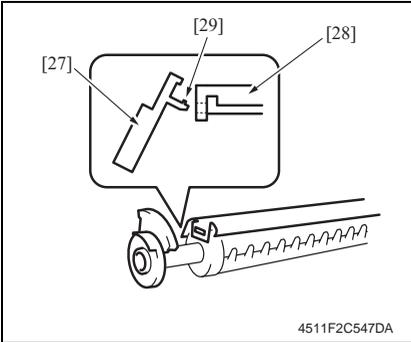
- When installing the gear [17] to the Lower Guide Plate [18], insert the gear [17] at an angle and use care not to break the tabs [19].
- Install the Lower Guide Plate as shown on the left.
- Install the gear of Crease Roller 1 so that it is above one gear tooth.



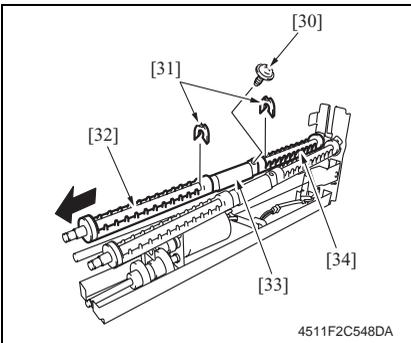
10. Remove the screw [20].
11. Remove two C-rings [21], and remove the Crease Roller A [22], B [23], and C [24].



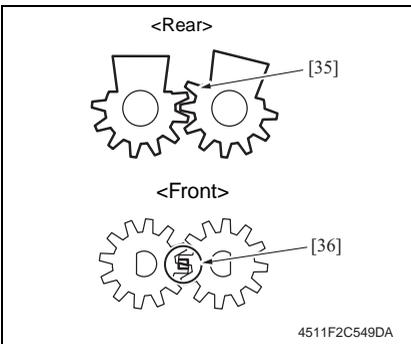
12. Remove the gear [25] of Crease Roller 2, and remove the Lower Guide Plate [26].

**NOTE**

- When installing the gear [27] to the Lower Guide Plate [28], insert the gear [27] at an angle and use care not to break the tabs [29].
- Install the Lower Guide Plate as shown on the left.



13. Remove the screw [30].
14. Remove two C-rings [31], and remove the Crease Roller A [32], B [33], and C [34].

**Precaution for Roller 1 and 2 Reinstallation**

- Install the rear gear [35] of Crease Roller 2 so that it is above one gear tooth.
- Align the mark [36] of the front gear.

## Adjustment/Setting

### 5. How to use the adjustment section

- “Adjustment/Setting” contains detailed information on the adjustment items and procedures for this machine.
- Throughout this “Adjustment/Setting,” the default settings are indicated by “ ”.

#### Advance Checks

Before attempting to solve the customer problem, the following advance checks must be made. Check to see if:

- The power supply voltage meets the specifications.
- The power supply is properly grounded.
- The machine shares the power supply with any other machine that draws large current intermittently (e.g., elevator and air conditioner that generate electric noise).
- The installation site is environmentally appropriate: high temperature, high humidity, direct sunlight, ventilation, etc.; levelness of the installation site.
- The original has a problem that may cause a defective image.
- The density is properly selected.
- The Original Glass, slit glass, or related part is dirty.
- Correct paper is being used for printing.
- The units, parts, and supplies used for printing (developer, PC Drum, etc.) are properly replenished and replaced when they reach the end of their useful service life.
- Toner is not running out.

#### CAUTION

- **To unplug the power cord of the machine before starting the service job procedures.**
- **If it is unavoidably necessary to service the machine with its power turned ON, use utmost care not to be caught in the Scanner Cables or gears of the Exposure Unit.**
- **Special care should be used when handling the Fusing Unit which can be extremely hot.**
- **The Developing Unit has a strong magnetic field. Keep watches and measuring instruments away from it.**
- **Take care not to damage the PC Drum with a tool or similar device.**
- **Do not touch IC pins with bare hands.**

## 6. I/O Check

### 6.1 Check procedure

- To allow sensors to be checked for operation easily and safely, data applied to the IC on the board can be checked on the panel with the main unit in the standby state (including a misfeed, malfunction, and closure failure condition).

<Procedure>

1. Display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen.

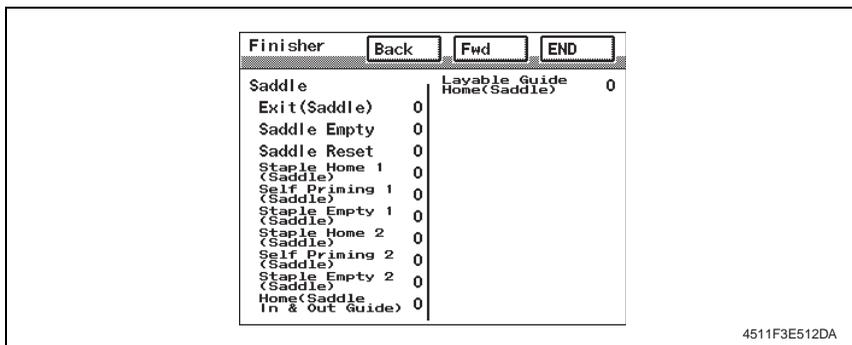
☞ For details of how to display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.

2. Touch [I/O Check].
3. Touch [Finisher].
4. Touch [Fwd] two times.

### 6.2 I/O check list

#### 6.2.1 I/O check screen

- This is only typical screen which may be different from what are shown on each individual main unit.



**6.2.2 I/O check list**

**A. Finisher (SD-502)**

Symbol	Panel display	Part/Signal name	Operation characteristics/ Panel display		
			1	0	
PC20-SK	Exit (Saddle)	Saddle Exit Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present	
PC21-SK	Saddle Empty	Saddle Tray Empty Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present	
S4-SK	Saddle Reset	Saddle Interlock Switch	Open	Closed	
-	Finisher	Staple Home 1 (Saddle)	Blocked	Unblocked	
-		Self Priming 1 (Saddle)	Blocked	Unblocked	
-		Staple Empty 1 (Saddle)	Blocked	Unblocked	
-		Staple Home 2 (Saddle)	Blocked	Unblocked	
-		Self Priming 2 (Saddle)	Blocked	Unblocked	
-		Staple Empty 2 (Saddle)	Blocked	Unblocked	
PC23-SK		Home (Saddle In & Out Guide)	In & Out Guide Home Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC26-SK		Layable Guide Home (Saddle)	Layable Guide Home Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked

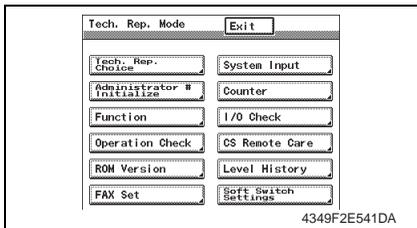
SD-502

Adjustment / Setting

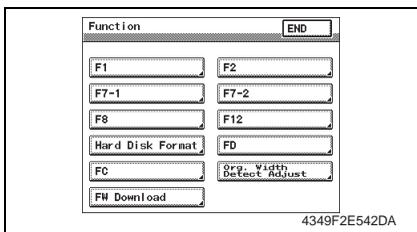
# 7. Test mode

## 7.1 Entering Function Mode

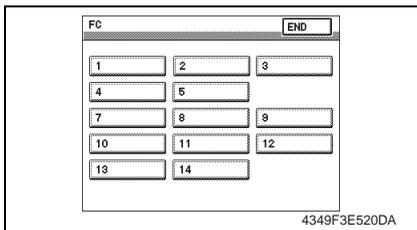
1. Display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen.  
 ☞ For details of how to display the Tech. Rep. Mode screen, see the Adjustment/Setting of the main unit service manual.



2. Touch [Function].



3. Touch [FC].



4. Touch [8] or [9].

## 7.2 Function Modes

### 8: Creasing Unit movement mode

- Performs the creasing drive once.
  - Raises the Layable guide.
  - Stops after the predetermined time.
  - Lowers the Layable guide.
  - The operation is finished.

### 9: Saddle Unit exit open/close mode

- Opens the Saddle Exit after the Saddle Exit is opened and closed.
  - Stops after the predetermined time.
  - The Saddle Exit closes.
  - The Saddle In & Out Guide advances.
  - Stops after the predetermined time.
  - The Saddle In & Out Guide retracts.
  - The operation is finished.

## 8. Mechanical adjustment

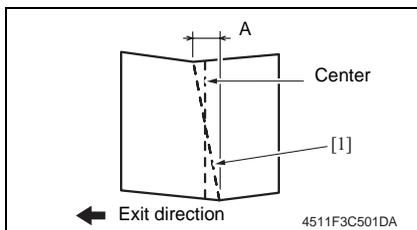
### 8.1 Fold Angle Adjustment

#### NOTE

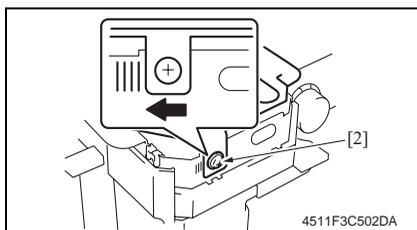
Make this adjustment after any of the following procedures has been performed.

- When the Crease Unit has been replaced.
- When a slant occurs in the crease.

1. Enter the Crease mode and make a copy. (A3 Size)



2. Fold the output paper along the crease [1].
3. Fold the output paper and half and measure the width A of the paper. Specification:  $0 \pm 1.5$  mm
4. If the fold position is slanted as shown on the left, make the following adjustment.



5. Open the Front Door, loosen the adjustment screw [2], and move the Crease Unit to the left to make the adjustment. Graduated in 1-mm divisions
- If the fold position is slanted opposite to the figure of step 4, move the Crease Unit to the right to make the adjustment.

6. Make another copy and check the fold position.

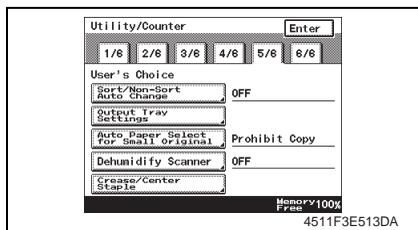
## 8.2 Fold Position Adjustment

### NOTE

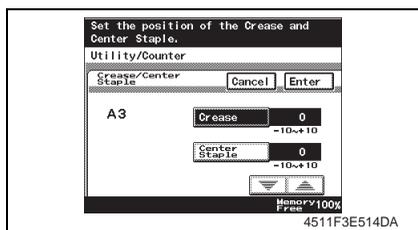
Make this adjustment after any of the following procedures has been performed.

- When the Crease Unit has been replaced.
- When a deviation occurs in the crease.
- When fold angle adjustment has been made.

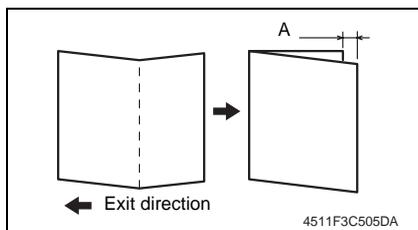
1. Enter the Booklet + Crease mode and make a copy. (A3 Size)



2. Press the Utility/Counter key, and touch [User's Choice].
3. Touch the [5/6] tab.
4. Touch [Crease/Center Staple].

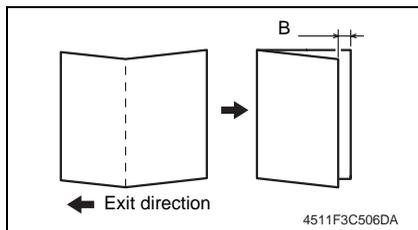


5. Select [A3] and touch [Enter].
6. Touch [Crease].
7. Check the copy of step 1 and make the following adjustment.



**If the fold is offset as shown on the left.**

8. Fold the copy along the crease and measure width A.  
Specification:  $0 \pm 1.5$  mm
9. Touch [▲] and set the appropriate numeric value.  
Adjustment range: 0 to +10  
(1 increment 0.5 mm)



**If the fold is offset as shown on the left.**

10. Fold the copy along the crease and measure width B.  
Specification:  $0 \pm 1.5$  mm
11. Touch [▼] and set the appropriate numeric value.  
Adjustment range: 0 to -10  
(1 increment 0.5 mm)

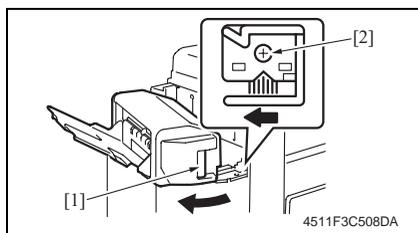
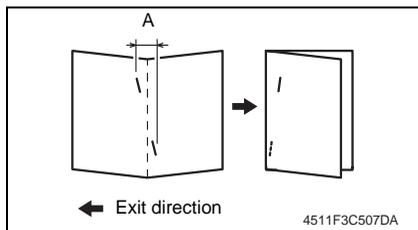
12. Touch [Enter].
13. Make another copy, and check the deviation.

### 8.3 Center Staple Angle Adjustment

#### NOTE

Make this adjustment after any of the following procedures has been performed.

- When Staple Unit 1 or 2 has been replaced.
- When a slant occurs in the position of the center staple.



1. Set to Booklet + 2-point Staple and Crease mode and make a copy. Measure the width A of the paper. Specification:  $0 \pm 1.5$  mm
2. If the staple position is slanted as shown on the left, make the following adjustment.
3. Release the lock release lever [1] of the Saddle Unit.
4. Loosen the adjustment screw [2] and move the lock lever to the left to make the adjustment.
  - If the staple position is slanted opposite to the figure of step 2, move the lock lever to the right to make the adjustment.

5. Make another copy and check the staple position.

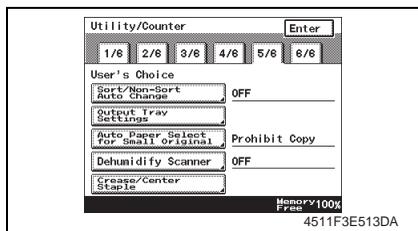
## 8.4 Center Staple Position Adjustment

### NOTE

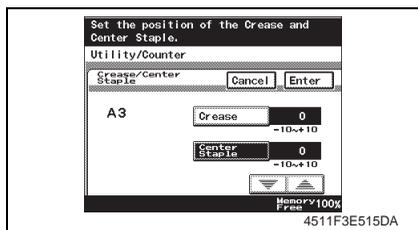
Make this adjustment after any of the following procedures has been performed.

- When Staple Unit 1 or 2 has been replaced.
- When center staple position is misaligned.
- When center staple angle adjustment has been made.

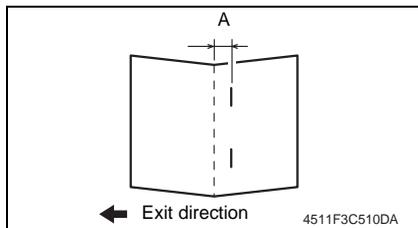
1. Make a copy in the Center Staple mode. (A3 Size)



2. Press the Utility/Counter key, and touch [User's Choice].
3. Touch the [5/6] tab.
4. Touch [Crease/Center Staple].

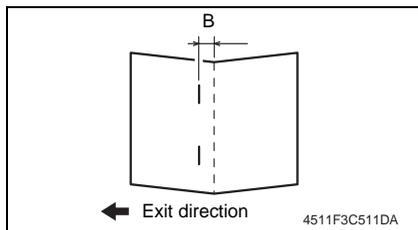


5. Select [A3] and touch [Enter].
6. Touch [Center Staple].
7. Check the copy of step 1 and make the following adjustment.



### If the staple position is offset as shown on the left

8. Fold the copy in half at the center and measure width A. Specification:  $0 \pm 1.5$  mm
9. Touch [ $\blacktriangle$ ] and set the appropriate numeric value. Adjustment range: 0 to +10 (1 increment 0.5 mm)



### If the staple position is offset as shown on the left

10. Fold the copy in half at the center and measure width B. Specification:  $0 \pm 1.5$  mm
11. Touch [ $\blacktriangledown$ ] and set the appropriate numeric value. Adjustment range: 0 to -10 (1 increment 0.5 mm)

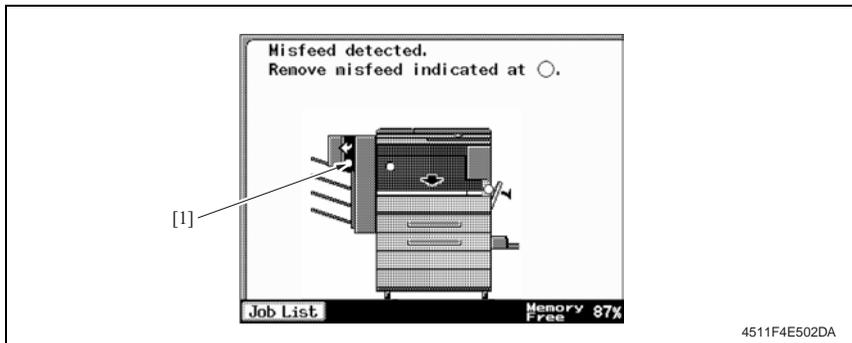
12. Touch [Enter].
13. Make another copy, and check the deviation.

# Troubleshooting

## 9. Jam Display

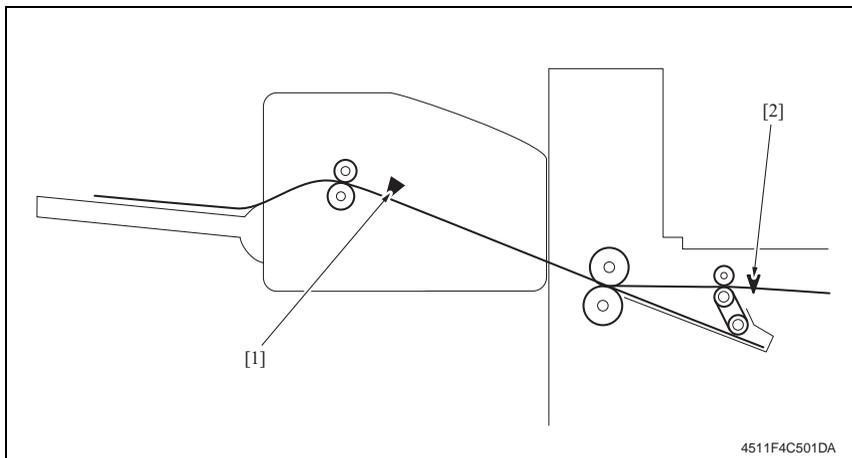
### 9.1 Misfeed Display

- When a paper misfeed occurs, the misfeed message, misfeed location, and paper location are displayed on the Touch Panel of the machine.



Display	Misfeed Location	Misfeed processing location	Action
[1]	Creasing Section Misfeed	Front Door	☞ 28
	Staple Unit Misfeed	Front Door	☞ 29
	Paper Bundle Exit Misfeed	Front Door	☞ 30

### 9.2 Sensor layout



- [1] Saddle Exit Sensor                      PC20-SK
- [2] Transport Sensor                        PC5-FN

### 9.3 Solution

#### 9.3.1 Initial Check Items

- When a paper misfeed occurs, first make checks of the following initial check items

Check Item	Action
Does paper meet product specifications?	Change paper.
Is paper curled, wavy, or damp.	Change paper. Instruct user in correct paper storage.
Is a foreign object present along the paper path, or is the paper path deformed or worn?	Clean or change the paper path.
Are rolls/rollers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or change the defective roll/roller.
Are the Edge Guide and Trailing Edge Stop at correct position to accommodate paper?	Set as necessary.
Are actuators found operational as checked for correct operation?	Correct or change the defective actuator.

#### 9.3.2 Creasing Section Misfeed

##### A. Detection Timing

Type	Description
Creasing Section misfeed detection	The Entrance Sensor (PC4-FN) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Entrance Motor (M3-FN) is energized (beginning of backward rotation operation).
	The Entrance Sensor (PC4-FN) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Entrance Motor (M3-FN) is energized (beginning of forward rotation operation).

##### B. Action

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Entrance Motor (M3-FN) Entrance Sensor (PC4-FN)	Main Control Board (PWB-C SK)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	PC4-FN I/O check	PWB-A FN PJ25A FN-4 (ON)	FS-508 B-6
3	Change PWB-C SK	-	-

### 9.3.3 Staple Unit Misfeed

#### A. Detection Timing

Type	Description
Staple Unit misfeed detection	The Staple Home Position Sensor in the Staple Unit is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Staple Motor rotates forward, and then the Staple Motor rotates backward, and the Staple Home Position Sensor in the Staple Unit is blocked within the set period of time.

#### B. Action

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Staple Unit 1 Staple Unit 2	Main Control Board (PWB-C SK)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	Drive Coupling Section check	-	-
3	I/O Check	-	-
4	Change Staple Unit 1	-	-
5	Change Staple Unit 2	-	-
6	Change PWB-C SK	-	-

SD-502

Troubleshooting

### 9.3.4 Paper Bundle Exit Misfeed

#### A. Detection Timing

Type	Description
Paper Bundle misfeed detection	The Storage Tray Detecting Sensor (PC8-FN) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Exit Motor (M1-FN) is energized.
	The Saddle Exit Sensor (PC20-SK) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Exit Motor (M1-FN) is energized.
	The Saddle Exit Sensor (PC20-SK) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Saddle Exit Sensor (PC20-SK) is blocked.

#### B. Action

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Exit Motor (M1-FN) Saddle Exit Motor (M8-SK) Storage Tray Detecting Sensor (PC8-FN)	Saddle Exit Sensor (PC20-SK) Main Control Board (PWB-C SK)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Initial check items	-	-
2	PC8-FN I/O check	PWB-A FN PJ13A FN-8 (ON)	FS-508 G-8
3	PC20-SK I/O check	PWB-C SK PJ19C SK-8 (ON)	SD-502 B-4
4	Change PWB-C SK	-	-

## 10. Malfunction code

### 10.1 Trouble code

- The machine's CPU performs a self-diagnostics function that, on detecting a malfunction, gives the corresponding malfunction code and maintenance call mark on the Touch Panel.

Code	Item	Description
C11A2	Saddle Exit Roller Pressure/Retraction Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Saddle Exit Roller Home Position Sensor (PC18-SK) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Saddle Exit Open/Close Motor (M9-SK) is energized (beginning of pressure operation).</li> <li>The Saddle Exit Roller Home Position Sensor (PC18-SK) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Saddle Exit Open/Close Motor (M9-SK) is energized (beginning of retraction operation).</li> </ul>
C11A4	Saddle Exit Motor Failure	The Lock signal is detected after the set period of time has elapsed after the Saddle Exit Motor (M8-SK) is energized.
C11A5	Saddle In & Out Guide Motor Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The In &amp; Out Guide Home Sensor (PC23-SK) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the In &amp; Out Guide Motor (M13-SK) is energized (beginning of advancing operation).</li> <li>The In &amp; Out Guide Home Sensor (PC23-SK) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the In &amp; Out Guide Motor (M13-SK) is energized (beginning of retracting operation).</li> </ul>
C11A6	Saddle Layable Guide Drive Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Layable Guide Home Sensor (PC26-SK) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Layable Guide Motor (M14-SK) is energized (beginning of return operation to predetermined position).</li> <li>The Layable Guide Home Sensor (PC26-SK) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Layable Guide Motor (M14-SK) is energized (beginning of return operation to predetermined position).</li> </ul>
C11B5	Side Staple 1 Drive Failure	Home Position Sensor 1 is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after Saddle Staple Motor 1 is energized (beginning of staple operation).
C11B6	Side Staple 2 Drive Failure	Home Position Sensor 2 is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after Saddle Staple Motor 2 is energized (beginning of staple operation).
C11D0	Crease Motor Drive Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Crease Roller Home Position Sensor (PC22-SK) is not unblocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Crease Motor (M10-SK) is energized (beginning of backward rotation operation).</li> <li>The Crease Roller Home Position Sensor (PC22-SK) is not blocked even after the set period of time has elapsed after the Crease Motor (M10-SK) is energized (beginning of forward rotation operation).</li> </ul>

## 10.2 Solution

### 10.2.1 C11A2: Saddle Exit Roller Pressure/Retraction Failure

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Saddle Exit Open/Close Motor (M9-SK) Saddle Exit Roller Home Position Sensor (PC18-SK)	Main Control Board (PWB-C SK)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the M9-SK connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check M9-SK for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	M9-SK operation check	PWB-C SK PJ4C SK-6 to 7	SD-502 H-6
4	PC18-SK I/O check	PWB-C SK PJ9C SK-6 (ON)	SD-502 B-3
5	Change PWB-C SK	-	-

### 10.2.2 C11A4: Saddle Exit Motor Failure

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Saddle Exit Motor (M8-SK)	Main Control Board (PWB-C SK)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the M8-SK connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check M8-SK for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	M8-SK operation check	PWB-C SK PJ4C SK-6 to 7	SD-502 H-6
4	Change PWB-C SK	-	-

**10.2.3 C11A5: Saddle In & Out Guide Motor Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
In & Out Guide Motor (M13-SK) In & Out Guide Home Sensor (PC23-SK)	Main Control Board (PWB-C SK)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the M13-SK connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check M13-SK for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	M13-SK operation check	PWB-C SK PJ4C SK-4 to 5	SD-502 H-6
4	PC23-SK I/O check	PWB-C SK PJ10C SK-3 (ON)	SD-502 B-4
5	Change PWB-C SK	-	-

**10.2.4 C11A6: Saddle Layable Guide Drive Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Layable Guide Motor (M14-SK) Layable Guide Home Sensor (PC26-SK)	Main Control Board (PWB-C SK)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the M14-SK connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check M14-SK for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	M14-SK operation check	PWB-C SK PJ4C SK-8 to 9	SD-502 H-6
4	PC26-SK I/O check	PWB-C SK PJ10C SK-6 (ON)	SD-502 B-4
5	Change PWB-C SK	-	-

**10.2.5 C11B5: Side Staple 1 Drive Failure****10.2.6 C11B6: Side Staple 2 Drive Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Staple Unit 1 Staple Unit 2	Main Control Board (PWB-C SK)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the Staple Unit 1 and 2 connectors for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check Staple Units 1 and 2 for proper drive coupling, and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	Staple Units 1 and 2 operation check	-	-
4	Change Staple Units 1 and 2	-	-
5	Change PWB-C SK	-	-

**10.2.7 C11D0: Crease Motor Drive Failure**

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Crease Motor (M10-SK) Crease Roller Home Position Sensor (PC22-SK)	Main Control Board (PWB-C SK)

Step	Action	WIRING DIAGRAM	
		Control Signal	Location (Electrical Component)
1	Check the M10-SK connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	-	-
2	Check M10-SK for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	-	-
3	M10-SK operation check	PWB-C SK PJ3C SK-1 to 2	SD-502 D-7
4	PC22-SK I/O check	PWB-C SK PJ2C SK-3 (ON)	SD-502 D-7
5	Change PWB-C SK	-	-



KONICA MINOLTA

© 2005 KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC.

Use of this manual should be strictly supervised to  
avoid disclosure of confidential information.

Printed in Japan  
DD4040PE1-1050